PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual		
	DeatCIC 0.0 Manual	
	PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual	

Contents

1	Intro	oduction		1
	1.1	Project St	reering Committee	1
	1.2	Core Con	tributors Present	1
	1.3	Core Con	tributors Past	2
	1.4	Other Cor	ntributors	2
	1.5	More Info	ormation	3
2	Post	GIS Instal	llation	4
	2.1	Short Vers	sion	4
	2.2	Install Re	quirements	5
	2.3	Getting th	ne Source	7
	2.4	Compiling	g and Install from Source: Detailed	7
		2.4.1 C	onfiguration	7
		2.4.2 B	uilding	9
		2.4.3 B	uilding PostGIS Extensions and Deploying them	9
		2.4.4 Te	esting	11
		2.4.5 In	nstallation	20
	2.5	Creating a	a spatial database using EXTENSIONS	21
	2.6	Create a s	spatially-enabled database without using extensions	21
	2.7	Installing	and Using the address standardizer	22
		2.7.1 In	nstalling Regex::Assemble	23
	2.8	Installing,	, Upgrading Tiger Geocoder and loading data	23
		2.8.1 Ti	iger Geocoder Enabling your PostGIS database: Using Extension	23
		2.	8.1.1 Converting a Tiger Geocoder Regular Install to Extension Model	25
		2.8.2 Ti	iger Geocoder Enabling your PostGIS database: Not Using Extensions	25
		2.8.3 U	sing Address Standardizer Extension with Tiger geocoder	26
		2.8.4 Lo	oading Tiger Data	26
		2.8.5 U	pgrading your Tiger Geocoder Install	27
	2.9	Create a s	spatially-enabled database from a template	28
	2.10	Upgrading	g	28

		2.10.1	Soft upgrade	28
			2.10.1.1 Soft Upgrade Pre 9.1+ or without extensions	28
			2.10.1.2 Soft Upgrade 9.1+ using extensions	29
		2.10.2	Hard upgrade	29
	2.11	Comm	on Problems during installation	30
	2.12	Loader	Dumper	31
3	Post	GIS Fre	equently Asked Questions	32
4	Usin	g PostG	GIS: Data Management and Queries	36
	4.1	GIS O	bjects	36
		4.1.1	OpenGIS WKB and WKT	36
		4.1.2	PostGIS EWKB, EWKT and Canonical Forms	37
		4.1.3	SQL-MM Part 3	38
	4.2	PostGI	S Geography Type	38
		4.2.1	Geography Basics	39
		4.2.2	When to use Geography Data type over Geometry data type	40
		4.2.3	Geography Advanced FAQ	41
	4.3	Using	OpenGIS Standards	41
		4.3.1	The SPATIAL_REF_SYS Table and Spatial Reference Systems	42
		4.3.2	The GEOMETRY_COLUMNS VIEW	43
		4.3.3	Creating a Spatial Table	43
		4.3.4	Manually Registering Geometry Columns in geometry_columns	44
		4.3.5	Ensuring OpenGIS compliancy of geometries	47
		4.3.6	Dimensionally Extended 9 Intersection Model (DE-9IM)	51
			4.3.6.1 Theory	52
	4.4	Loadin	ng GIS (Vector) Data	55
		4.4.1	Loading Data Using SQL	55
		4.4.2	shp2pgsql: Using the ESRI Shapefile Loader	55
	4.5	Retriev	ring GIS Data	57
		4.5.1	Using SQL to Retrieve Data	57
		4.5.2	Using the Dumper	58
	4.6	Buildin	ng Indexes	58
		4.6.1	GiST Indexes	59
		4.6.2	BRIN Indexes	59
		4.6.3	Using Indexes	60
	4.7	Compl	ex Queries	61
		4.7.1	Taking Advantage of Indexes	61
		4.7.2	Examples of Spatial SQL	61

5	Rast	ter Data	Management, Queries, and Applications	65
	5.1	Loadin	ng and Creating Rasters	65
		5.1.1	Using raster2pgsql to load rasters	65
		5.1.2	Creating rasters using PostGIS raster functions	69
	5.2	Raster	Catalogs	69
		5.2.1	Raster Columns Catalog	70
		5.2.2	Raster Overviews	71
	5.3	Buildin	ng Custom Applications with PostGIS Raster	71
		5.3.1	PHP Example Outputting using ST_AsPNG in concert with other raster functions	72
		5.3.2	ASP.NET C# Example Outputting using ST_AsPNG in concert with other raster functions	72
		5.3.3	Java console app that outputs raster query as Image file	74
		5.3.4	Use PLPython to dump out images via SQL	75
		5.3.5	Outputting Rasters with PSQL	76
6	Usin	g PostC	GIS Geometry: Building Applications	77
	6.1	Using	MapServer	77
		6.1.1	Basic Usage	77
		6.1.2	Frequently Asked Questions	78
		6.1.3	Advanced Usage	79
		6.1.4	Examples	80
	6.2	Java C	lients (JDBC)	81
	6.3	C Clie	nts (libpq)	82
		6.3.1	Text Cursors	82
		6.3.2	Binary Cursors	82
7	Perf	ormanc	e tips	83
	7.1	Small	tables of large geometries	83
		7.1.1	Problem description	83
		7.1.2	Workarounds	83
	7.2	CLUS	TERing on geometry indices	84
	7.3	Avoidi	ng dimension conversion	84
	7.4	Tuning	your configuration	85
		7.4.1	Startup	85
		7.4.2	Runtime	85

8	Post	GIS Ref	ference	87
	8.1	Postgre	eSQL PostGIS Geometry/Geography/Box Types	87
		8.1.1	box2d	87
		8.1.2	box3d	87
		8.1.3	geometry	88
		8.1.4	geometry_dump	88
		8.1.5	geography	88
	8.2	PostGI	S Grand Unified Custom Variables (GUCs)	89
		8.2.1	postgis.backend	89
		8.2.2	postgis.gdal_datapath	89
		8.2.3	postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers	90
		8.2.4	postgis.enable_outdb_rasters	92
	8.3	Manag	ement Functions	92
		8.3.1	AddGeometryColumn	92
		8.3.2	DropGeometryColumn	94
		8.3.3	DropGeometryTable	95
		8.3.4	PostGIS_Full_Version	96
		8.3.5	PostGIS_GEOS_Version	96
		8.3.6	PostGIS_LibXML_Version	97
		8.3.7	PostGIS_Lib_Build_Date	97
		8.3.8	PostGIS_Lib_Version	98
		8.3.9	PostGIS_PROJ_Version	98
		8.3.10	PostGIS_Scripts_Build_Date	99
		8.3.11	PostGIS_Scripts_Installed	99
		8.3.12	PostGIS_Scripts_Released	100
		8.3.13	PostGIS_Version	100
		8.3.14	Populate_Geometry_Columns	101
		8.3.15	UpdateGeometrySRID	102
	8.4	Geome	etry Constructors	103
		8.4.1	ST_BdPolyFromText	103
		8.4.2	ST_BdMPolyFromText	104
		8.4.3	ST_Box2dFromGeoHash	105
		8.4.4	ST_GeogFromText	105
		8.4.5	ST_GeographyFromText	106
		8.4.6	ST_GeogFromWKB	106
		8.4.7	ST_GeomFromTWKB	107
		8.4.8	ST_GeomCollFromText	108
		8.4.9	ST_GeomFromEWKB	108
		8.4.10	ST_GeomFromEWKT	110

8.4.11	ST_GeometryFromText
8.4.12	ST_GeomFromGeoHash
8.4.13	ST_GeomFromGML
8.4.14	ST_GeomFromGeoJSON
8.4.15	ST_GeomFromKML
8.4.16	ST_GMLToSQL
8.4.17	ST_GeomFromText
8.4.18	ST_GeomFromWKB
8.4.19	ST_LineFromEncodedPolyline
8.4.20	ST_LineFromMultiPoint
8.4.21	ST_LineFromText
8.4.22	ST_LineFromWKB
8.4.23	ST_LinestringFromWKB
8.4.24	ST_MakeBox2D
8.4.25	ST_3DMakeBox
8.4.26	ST_MakeLine
8.4.27	ST_MakeEnvelope
8.4.28	ST_MakePolygon
8.4.29	ST_MakePoint
8.4.30	ST_MakePointM
8.4.31	ST_MLineFromText
	ST_MPointFromText
8.4.33	ST_MPolyFromText
8.4.34	ST_Point
8.4.35	ST_PointFromGeoHash
8.4.36	ST_PointFromText
8.4.37	ST_PointFromWKB
8.4.38	ST_Polygon
8.4.39	ST_PolygonFromText
8.4.40	ST_WKBToSQL
8.4.41	ST_WKTToSQL
Geome	etry Accessors
8.5.1	GeometryType
8.5.2	ST_Boundary
8.5.3	ST_CoordDim
8.5.4	ST_Dimension
8.5.5	ST_EndPoint
8.5.6	ST_Envelope
8.5.7	ST_BoundingDiagonal

8.5

8.5.8 ST_ExteriorRing
8.5.9 ST_GeometryN
8.5.10 ST_GeometryType
8.5.11 ST_InteriorRingN
8.5.12 ST_IsClosed
8.5.13 ST_IsCollection
8.5.14 ST_IsEmpty
8.5.15 ST_IsRing
8.5.16 ST_IsSimple
8.5.17 ST_IsValid
8.5.18 ST_IsValidReason
8.5.19 ST_IsValidDetail
8.5.20 ST_M
8.5.21 ST_NDims
8.5.22 ST_NPoints
8.5.23 ST_NRings
8.5.24 ST_NumGeometries
8.5.25 ST_NumInteriorRings
8.5.26 ST_NumInteriorRing
8.5.27 ST_NumPatches
8.5.28 ST_NumPoints
8.5.29 ST_PatchN
8.5.30 ST_PointN
8.5.31 ST_Points
8.5.32 ST_SRID
8.5.33 ST_StartPoint
8.5.34 ST_Summary
8.5.35 ST_X
8.5.36 ST_XMax
8.5.37 ST_XMin
8.5.38 ST_Y
8.5.39 ST_YMax
8.5.40 ST_YMin
8.5.41 ST_Z
8.5.42 ST_ZMax
8.5.43 ST_Zmflag
8.5.44 ST_ZMin
Geometry Editors
8.6.1 ST_AddPoint

8.6

	8.6.2	ST_Affine
	8.6.3	ST_Force2D
	8.6.4	ST_Force3D
	8.6.5	ST_Force3DZ
	8.6.6	ST_Force3DM
	8.6.7	ST_Force4D
	8.6.8	ST_ForceCollection
	8.6.9	ST_ForceSFS
	8.6.10	ST_ForceRHR
	8.6.11	ST_ForceCurve
	8.6.12	ST_LineMerge
	8.6.13	ST_CollectionExtract
	8.6.14	ST_CollectionHomogenize
	8.6.15	ST_Multi
	8.6.16	ST_Normalize
	8.6.17	ST_RemovePoint
	8.6.18	ST_Reverse
	8.6.19	ST_Rotate
	8.6.20	ST_RotateX
	8.6.21	ST_RotateY
	8.6.22	ST_RotateZ
	8.6.23	ST_Scale
	8.6.24	ST_Segmentize
	8.6.25	ST_SetPoint
	8.6.26	ST_SetSRID
	8.6.27	ST_SnapToGrid
	8.6.28	ST_Snap
	8.6.29	ST_Transform
	8.6.30	ST_Translate
	8.6.31	ST_TransScale
8.7	Geome	try Outputs
	8.7.1	ST_AsBinary
	8.7.2	ST_AsEncodedPolyline
	8.7.3	ST_AsEWKB
	8.7.4	ST_AsEWKT
	8.7.5	ST_AsGeoJSON
	8.7.6	ST_AsGML
	8.7.7	ST_AsHEXEWKB
	8.7.8	ST_AsKML

	8.7.9	ST_AsLatLonText
	8.7.10	ST_AsSVG
	8.7.11	ST_AsText
	8.7.12	ST_AsTWKB
	8.7.13	ST_AsX3D
	8.7.14	ST_GeoHash
8.8	Operato	ors
	8.8.1	&&
	8.8.2	&&(geometry,box2df)
	8.8.3	&&(box2df,geometry)
	8.8.4	&&(box2df,box2df)
	8.8.5	&&&
	8.8.6	&&&(geometry,gidx)
	8.8.7	&&&(gidx,geometry)
	8.8.8	&&&(gidx,gidx)
	8.8.9	&< <u>240</u>
	8.8.10	& <i< td=""></i<>
	8.8.11	&>
	8.8.12	<<
	8.8.13	<
	8.8.14	=
	8.8.15	>>
	8.8.16	@
	8.8.17	@(geometry,box2df)
	8.8.18	@(box2df,geometry)
	8.8.19	@(box2df,box2df)
	8.8.20	l&>
	8.8.21	l>>
	8.8.22	~
	8.8.23	~(geometry,box2df)
	8.8.24	~(box2df,geometry)
	8.8.25	~(box2df,box2df)
	8.8.26	~=
	8.8.27	<->
	8.8.28	l=l
	8.8.29	<#>
	8.8.30	<<->>
	8.8.31	<<#>>>
8.9	Spatial	Relationships and Measurements

8.9.1	ST_3DClosestPoint
8.9.2	ST_3DDistance
8.9.3	ST_3DDWithin
8.9.4	ST_3DDFullyWithin
8.9.5	ST_3DIntersects
8.9.6	ST_3DLongestLine
8.9.7	ST_3DMaxDistance
8.9.8	ST_3DShortestLine
8.9.9	ST_Area
8.9.10	ST_Azimuth
8.9.11	ST_Centroid
8.9.12	ST_ClosestPoint
8.9.13	ST_ClusterDBSCAN
8.9.14	ST_ClusterIntersecting
8.9.15	ST_ClusterKMeans
8.9.16	ST_ClusterWithin
8.9.17	ST_Contains
8.9.18	ST_ContainsProperly
8.9.19	ST_Covers
8.9.20	ST_CoveredBy
8.9.21	ST_Crosses
8.9.22	ST_LineCrossingDirection
8.9.23	ST_Disjoint
8.9.24	ST_Distance
8.9.25	ST_MinimumClearance
8.9.26	ST_MinimumClearanceLine
8.9.27	ST_HausdorffDistance
8.9.28	ST_MaxDistance
8.9.29	ST_DistanceSphere
8.9.30	ST_DistanceSpheroid
8.9.31	ST_DFullyWithin
8.9.32	ST_DWithin
8.9.33	ST_Equals
8.9.34	ST_GeometricMedian
8.9.35	ST_HasArc
8.9.36	ST_Intersects
8.9.37	ST_Length
8.9.38	ST_Length2D
8.9.39	ST_3DLength

	8.9.40	ST_LengthSpheroid
	8.9.41	ST_Length2D_Spheroid
	8.9.42	ST_LongestLine
	8.9.43	ST_OrderingEquals
	8.9.44	ST_Overlaps
	8.9.45	ST_Perimeter
	8.9.46	ST_Perimeter2D
	8.9.47	ST_3DPerimeter
	8.9.48	ST_PointOnSurface
	8.9.49	ST_Project
	8.9.50	ST_Relate
	8.9.51	ST_RelateMatch
	8.9.52	ST_ShortestLine
	8.9.53	ST_Touches
	8.9.54	ST_Within
8.10	SFCG	AL Functions
	8.10.1	postgis_sfcgal_version
	8.10.2	ST_Extrude
	8.10.3	ST_StraightSkeleton
	8.10.4	ST_ApproximateMedialAxis
	8.10.5	ST_IsPlanar
	8.10.6	ST_Orientation
	8.10.7	ST_ForceLHR
	8.10.8	ST_MinkowskiSum
	8.10.9	ST_3DIntersection
	8.10.10	ST_3DDifference
	8.10.11	ST_3DUnion
	8.10.12	2.ST_3DArea
	8.10.13	ST_Tesselate
	8.10.14	ST_Volume
	8.10.15	ST_MakeSolid
	8.10.16	ST_IsSolid
8.11	Geome	try Processing
	8.11.1	ST_Buffer
	8.11.2	ST_BuildArea
	8.11.3	ST_ClipByBox2D
	8.11.4	ST_Collect
	8.11.5	ST_ConcaveHull
	8.11.6	ST_ConvexHull

	8.11.7 ST_CurveToLine	5
	8.11.8 ST_DelaunayTriangles	7
	8.11.9 ST_Difference	2
	8.11.10 ST_Dump	3
	8.11.11 ST_DumpPoints	5
	8.11.12 ST_DumpRings	9
	8.11.13 ST_FlipCoordinates	0
	8.11.14 ST_GeneratePoints	1
	8.11.15 ST_Intersection	2
	8.11.16 ST_LineToCurve	4
	8.11.17 ST_MakeValid	6
	8.11.18 ST_MemUnion	6
	8.11.19 ST_MinimumBoundingCircle	7
	8.11.20 ST_MinimumBoundingRadius	9
	8.11.21 ST_Polygonize	9
	8.11.22 ST_Node	0
	8.11.23 ST_OffsetCurve	1
	8.11.24 ST_RemoveRepeatedPoints	4
	8.11.25 ST_SharedPaths	5
	8.11.26 ST_ShiftLongitude	7
	8.11.27 ST_WrapX	8
	8.11.28 ST_Simplify	8
	8.11.29 ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology	9
	8.11.30 ST_SimplifyVW	0
	8.11.31 ST_SetEffectiveArea	1
	8.11.32 ST_Split	2
	8.11.33 ST_SymDifference	5
	8.11.34 ST_Subdivide	6
	8.11.35 ST_SwapOrdinates	9
	8.11.36 ST_Union	0
	8.11.37 ST_UnaryUnion	2
	8.11.38 ST_VoronoiLines	3
	8.11.39 ST_VoronoiPolygons	4
8.12	Linear Referencing	7
	8.12.1 ST_LineInterpolatePoint	7
	8.12.2 ST_LineLocatePoint	9
	8.12.3 ST_LineSubstring	
	8.12.4 ST_LocateAlong	1
	8.12.5 ST_LocateBetween	2

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual xiii

	8.12.6	ST_LocateBetweenElevations
	8.12.7	ST_InterpolatePoint
	8.12.8	ST_AddMeasure
8.13	Tempor	ral Support
	8.13.1	ST_IsValidTrajectory
	8.13.2	ST_ClosestPointOfApproach
	8.13.3	ST_DistanceCPA
	8.13.4	ST_CPAWithin
8.14	Long T	ransactions Support
	8.14.1	AddAuth
	8.14.2	CheckAuth
	8.14.3	DisableLongTransactions
	8.14.4	EnableLongTransactions
	8.14.5	LockRow
	8.14.6	UnlockRows
8.15	Miscell	laneous Functions
	8.15.1	ST_Accum
	8.15.2	Box2D
	8.15.3	Box3D
	8.15.4	ST_EstimatedExtent
	8.15.5	ST_Expand
	8.15.6	ST_Extent
	8.15.7	ST_3DExtent
	8.15.8	Find_SRID
	8.15.9	ST_MemSize
	8.15.10	ST_PointInsideCircle
8.16	Excepti	ional Functions
	8.16.1	PostGIS_AddBBox
	8.16.2	PostGIS_DropBBox
	8.16.3	PostGIS_HasBBox
D 4	D.C	425
	er Refei	
9.1		Support Data types
	9.1.1	geomval
	9.1.2	addbandarg
		rastbandarg
		raster
		reclassarg
	9.1.6	summarystats

9

	9.1.7	unionarg
9.2	Raster	Management
	9.2.1	AddRasterConstraints
	9.2.2	DropRasterConstraints
	9.2.3	AddOverviewConstraints
	9.2.4	DropOverviewConstraints
	9.2.5	PostGIS_GDAL_Version
	9.2.6	PostGIS_Raster_Lib_Build_Date
	9.2.7	PostGIS_Raster_Lib_Version
	9.2.8	ST_GDALDrivers
	9.2.9	UpdateRasterSRID
	9.2.10	ST_CreateOverview
9.3	Raster	Constructors
	9.3.1	ST_AddBand
	9.3.2	ST_AsRaster
	9.3.3	ST_Band
	9.3.4	ST_MakeEmptyRaster
	9.3.5	ST_Tile
	9.3.6	ST_Retile
	9.3.7	ST_FromGDALRaster
9.4	Raster	Accessors
	9.4.1	ST_GeoReference
	9.4.2	ST_Height
	9.4.3	ST_IsEmpty
	9.4.4	ST_MemSize
	9.4.5	ST_MetaData
	9.4.6	ST_NumBands
	9.4.7	ST_PixelHeight
	9.4.8	ST_PixelWidth
	9.4.9	ST_ScaleX
	9.4.10	ST_ScaleY
	9.4.11	ST_RasterToWorldCoord
	9.4.12	ST_RasterToWorldCoordX
	9.4.13	ST_RasterToWorldCoordY
	9.4.14	ST_Rotation
	9.4.15	ST_SkewX
	9.4.16	ST_SkewY
	9.4.17	ST_SRID
	9.4.18	ST_Summary

	9.4.19	ST_UpperLeftX
	9.4.20	ST_UpperLeftY
	9.4.21	ST_Width
	9.4.22	ST_WorldToRasterCoord
	9.4.23	ST_WorldToRasterCoordX
	9.4.24	ST_WorldToRasterCoordY
9.5	Raster	Band Accessors
	9.5.1	ST_BandMetaData
	9.5.2	ST_BandNoDataValue
	9.5.3	ST_BandIsNoData
	9.5.4	ST_BandPath
	9.5.5	ST_BandPixelType
	9.5.6	ST_HasNoBand
9.6	Raster	Pixel Accessors and Setters
	9.6.1	ST_PixelAsPolygon
	9.6.2	ST_PixelAsPolygons
	9.6.3	ST_PixelAsPoint
	9.6.4	ST_PixelAsPoints
	9.6.5	ST_PixelAsCentroid
	9.6.6	ST_PixelAsCentroids
	9.6.7	ST_Value
	9.6.8	ST_NearestValue
	9.6.9	ST_Neighborhood
	9.6.10	ST_SetValue
	9.6.11	ST_SetValues
	9.6.12	ST_DumpValues
	9.6.13	ST_PixelOfValue
9.7	Raster	Editors
	9.7.1	ST_SetGeoReference
	9.7.2	ST_SetRotation
	9.7.3	ST_SetScale
	9.7.4	ST_SetSkew
	9.7.5	ST_SetSRID
	9.7.6	ST_SetUpperLeft
	9.7.7	ST_Resample
	9.7.8	ST_Rescale
	9.7.9	ST_Reskew
	9.7.10	ST_SnapToGrid
	9.7.11	ST_Resize

	9.7.12	T_Transform	5
9.8	Raster	and Editors	7
	9.8.1	T_SetBandNoDataValue	7
	9.8.2	T_SetBandIsNoData	8
9.9	Raster	and Statistics and Analytics	9
	9.9.1	T_Count	9
	9.9.2	T_CountAgg	0
	9.9.3	T_Histogram	1
	9.9.4	T_Quantile	3
	9.9.5	T_SummaryStats	5
	9.9.6	T_SummaryStatsAgg	7
	9.9.7	T_ValueCount	8
9.10	Raster	utputs	0
	9.10.1	T_AsBinary	0
	9.10.2	T_AsGDALRaster	1
	9.10.3	T_AsJPEG	2
	9.10.4	T_AsPNG	3
	9.10.5	T_AsTIFF	4
9.11	Raster	rocessing	5
	9.11.1	Map Algebra 53:	5
		.11.1.1 ST_Clip	5
		.11.1.2 ST_ColorMap	7
		.11.1.3 ST_Intersection	0
		.11.1.4 ST_MapAlgebra	2
		.11.1.5 ST_MapAlgebra	8
		.11.1.6 ST_MapAlgebraExpr	0
		.11.1.7 ST_MapAlgebraExpr	3
		.11.1.8 ST_MapAlgebraFct	7
		.11.1.9 ST_MapAlgebraFct	1
		.11.1.10 ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb	5
		.11.1.11 ST_Reclass	7
		.11.1.12 ST_Union	9
	9.11.2	Built-in Map Algebra Callback Functions	0
		.11.2.1 ST_Distinct4ma	0
		.11.2.2 ST_InvDistWeight4ma	1
		.11.2.3 ST_Max4ma	2
		.11.2.4 ST_Mean4ma	3
		.11.2.5 ST_Min4ma	
		.11.2.6 ST_MinDist4ma	

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual xvii

		9.11.2.7	ST_Range4ma
		9.11.2.8	ST_StdDev4ma
		9.11.2.9	ST_Sum4ma
	9.11.3	DEM (El	evation)
		9.11.3.1	ST_Aspect
		9.11.3.2	ST_HillShade
		9.11.3.3	ST_Roughness
		9.11.3.4	ST_Slope
		9.11.3.5	ST_TPI
		9.11.3.6	ST_TRI
	9.11.4	Raster to	Geometry
		9.11.4.1	Box3D
		9.11.4.2	ST_ConvexHull
		9.11.4.3	ST_DumpAsPolygons
		9.11.4.4	ST_Envelope
		9.11.4.5	ST_MinConvexHull
		9.11.4.6	ST_Polygon
9.12	Raster	Operators	
	9.12.1	&&	
	9.12.2	&<	
	9.12.3	&>	
	9.12.4	=	
	9.12.5	@	
	9.12.6	~=	
	9.12.7	~	
9.13	Raster	and Raste	Band Spatial Relationships
	9.13.1	ST_Cont	ains
	9.13.2	ST_Cont	ainsProperly
	9.13.3	ST_Cove	rs
	9.13.4	ST_Cove	redBy
	9.13.5	ST_Disjo	int
	9.13.6	ST_Inter	sects
	9.13.7	ST_Over	laps
	9.13.8	ST_Touc	hes
	9.13.9	ST_Same	Alignment
	9.13.10	ST_NotS	ameAlignmentReason
	9.13.11	ST_With	in
	9.13.12	ST_DWi	hin
	9.13.13	ST_DFul	lyWithin

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual xviii

10	Post(GIS Raster Frequently Asked Questions	608
11	Торо	logy	612
	11.1	Topology Types	612
		11.1.1 getfaceedges_returntype	612
		11.1.2 TopoGeometry	613
		11.1.3 validatetopology_returntype	613
	11.2	Topology Domains	614
		11.2.1 TopoElement	614
		11.2.2 TopoElementArray	614
	11.3	Topology and TopoGeometry Management	615
		11.3.1 AddTopoGeometryColumn	615
		11.3.2 DropTopology	616
		11.3.3 DropTopoGeometryColumn	616
		11.3.4 Populate_Topology_Layer	617
		11.3.5 TopologySummary	
		11.3.6 ValidateTopology	
	11.4	Topology Constructors	
		11.4.1 CreateTopology	
		11.4.2 CopyTopology	
		11.4.3 ST_InitTopoGeo	
		11.4.4 ST_CreateTopoGeo	
		11.4.5 TopoGeo_AddPoint	
		11.4.6 TopoGeo_AddLineString	
		11.4.7 TopoGeo_AddPolygon	
	11.5	Topology Editors	
		11.5.1 ST_AddIsoNode	
		11.5.2 ST_AddIsoEdge	
		11.5.3 ST_AddEdgeNewFaces	
		11.5.4 ST_AddEdgeModFace	
		11.5.5 ST_RemEdgeNewFace	
		11.5.6 ST_RemEdgeModFace	
		11.5.7 ST_ChangeEdgeGeom	
		11.5.8 ST_ModEdgeSplit	
		11.5.9 ST_ModEdgeHeal	
		11.5.10 ST_NewEdgeHeal	
		11.5.11 ST_MoveIsoNode	
		11.5.12 ST_NewEdgesSplit	
		11.5.13 ST_RemoveIsoNode	631

11.5.14 ST_RemoveIsoEdge	532
11.6 Topology Accessors	532
11.6.1 GetEdgeByPoint	532
11.6.2 GetFaceByPoint	533
11.6.3 GetNodeByPoint	534
11.6.4 GetTopologyID	535
11.6.5 GetTopologySRID	535
11.6.6 GetTopologyName	536
11.6.7 ST_GetFaceEdges	536
11.6.8 ST_GetFaceGeometry	537
11.6.9 GetRingEdges	538
11.6.10 GetNodeEdges	538
11.7 Topology Processing	539
11.7.1 Polygonize	539
11.7.2 AddNode	540
11.7.3 AddEdge	540
11.7.4 AddFace	541
11.7.5 ST_Simplify	543
11.8 TopoGeometry Constructors	543
11.8.1 CreateTopoGeom	543
11.8.2 toTopoGeom	545
11.8.3 TopoElementArray_Agg	546
11.9 TopoGeometry Editors	547
11.9.1 clearTopoGeom	547
11.9.2 TopoGeom_addElement	547
11.9.3 TopoGeom_remElement	548
11.9.4 toTopoGeom	548
11.10TopoGeometry Accessors	549
11.10.1 GetTopoGeomElementArray	549
11.10.2 GetTopoGeomElements	549
11.11TopoGeometry Outputs	550
11.11.1 AsGML	550
11.11.2 AsTopoJSON	552
11.12Topology Spatial Relationships	553
11.12.1 Equals	553
11.12.2 Intersects	554

12	Addı	ress Standardizer	656
	12.1	How the Parser Works	656
	12.2	Address Standardizer Types	656
		12.2.1 stdaddr	656
	12.3	Address Standardizer Tables	657
		12.3.1 rules table	657
		12.3.2 lex table	660
		12.3.3 gaz table	660
	12.4	Address Standardizer Functions	661
		12.4.1 parse_address	661
		12.4.2 standardize_address	662
13	Post	GIS Extras	665
	13.1	Tiger Geocoder	665
		13.1.1 Drop_Indexes_Generate_Script	665
		13.1.2 Drop_Nation_Tables_Generate_Script	666
		13.1.3 Drop_State_Tables_Generate_Script	667
		13.1.4 Geocode	668
		13.1.5 Geocode_Intersection	670
		13.1.6 Get_Geocode_Setting	671
		13.1.7 Get_Tract	672
		13.1.8 Install_Missing_Indexes	672
		13.1.9 Loader_Generate_Census_Script	673
		13.1.10 Loader_Generate_Script	675
		13.1.11 Loader_Generate_Nation_Script	677
		13.1.12 Missing_Indexes_Generate_Script	677
		13.1.13 Normalize_Address	678
		13.1.14 Pagc_Normalize_Address	679
		13.1.15 Pprint_Addy	681
		13.1.16 Reverse_Geocode	682
		13.1.17 Topology_Load_Tiger	684
		13.1.18 Set_Geocode_Setting	686
14	Post	GIS Special Functions Index	687
	14.1	PostGIS Aggregate Functions	687
	14.2	PostGIS Window Functions	687
	14.3	PostGIS SQL-MM Compliant Functions	688
	14.4	PostGIS Geography Support Functions	693
	14.5	PostGIS Raster Support Functions	694

	14.6	PostGIS Geometry / Geography / Raster Dump Functions	9 9
	14.7	PostGIS Box Functions	9 9
	14.8	PostGIS Functions that support 3D	00
	14.9	PostGIS Curved Geometry Support Functions)5
	14.10	0PostGIS Polyhedral Surface Support Functions	98
	14.11	1 PostGIS Function Support Matrix	11
	14.12	2New, Enhanced or changed PostGIS Functions	20
		14.12.1 PostGIS Functions new or enhanced in 2.3	21
		14.12.2 PostGIS Functions new or enhanced in 2.2	22
		14.12.3 PostGIS functions breaking changes in 2.2	24
		14.12.4 PostGIS Functions new or enhanced in 2.1	25
		14.12.5 PostGIS functions breaking changes in 2.1	29
		14.12.6 PostGIS Functions new, behavior changed, or enhanced in 2.0	30
		14.12.7 PostGIS Functions changed behavior in 2.0	38
		14.12.8 PostGIS Functions new, behavior changed, or enhanced in 1.5	40
		14.12.9 PostGIS Functions new, behavior changed, or enhanced in 1.4	41
		14.12.1 P ostGIS Functions new in 1.3	42
15	Reno	orting Problems 74	43
10	_	Reporting Software Bugs	-
		Reporting Documentation Issues	
	10.2	The potential December 2000 and the second s	
A	Appo	endix 7.	44
	A.1	Release 2.3.9	
		A.1.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements	44
	A.2	Release 2.3.8	44
		A.2.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements	44
	A.3	Release 2.3.7	45
		A.3.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements	45
	A.4	Release 2.3.6	45
		A.4.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements	45
	A.5	Release 2.3.5	46
		A.5.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements	46
	A.6	Release 2.3.4	46
		A.6.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements	46
	A.7	Release 2.3.3	47
		A.7.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements	47
	A.8	Release 2.3.2	
		A.8.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements	47

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual xxii

A.9	Release 2.3.1	747
	A.9.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements	748
A.10	Release 2.3.0	748
	A.10.1 Important / Breaking Changes	748
	A.10.2 New Features	748
	A.10.3 Bug Fixes	749
	A.10.4 Performance Enhancements	749
A.11	Release 2.2.2	749
	A.11.1 New Features	749
A.12	Release 2.2.1	750
	A.12.1 New Features	750
A.13	Release 2.2.0	750
	A.13.1 New Features	751
	A.13.2 Enhancements	752
A.14	Release 2.1.8	752
	A.14.1 Bug Fixes	753
A.15	Release 2.1.7	753
	A.15.1 Bug Fixes	753
A.16	Release 2.1.6	753
	A.16.1 Enhancements	753
	A.16.2 Bug Fixes	753
A.17	Release 2.1.5	754
	A.17.1 Enhancements	754
	A.17.2 Bug Fixes	754
A.18	Release 2.1.4	754
	A.18.1 Enhancements	754
	A.18.2 Bug Fixes	755
A.19	Release 2.1.3	755
	A.19.1 Important changes	755
	A.19.2 Bug Fixes	756
A.20	Release 2.1.2	756
	A.20.1 Bug Fixes	756
	A.20.2 Enhancements	756
A.21	Release 2.1.1	757
	A.21.1 Important Changes	757
	A.21.2 Bug Fixes	757
	A.21.3 Enhancements	757
A.22	Release 2.1.0	757
	A.22.1 Important / Breaking Changes	757

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual xxiii

	A.22.2 New Features	158
	A.22.3 Enhancements	159
	A.22.4 Fixes	761
	A.22.5 Known Issues	162
A.23	Release 2.0.5	162
	A.23.1 Bug Fixes	162
	A.23.2 Important Changes	162
A.24	Release 2.0.4	162
	A.24.1 Bug Fixes	162
	A.24.2 Enhancements	163
	A.24.3 Known Issues	163
A.25	Release 2.0.3	163
	A.25.1 Bug Fixes	764
	A.25.2 Enhancements	⁷ 64
A.26	Release 2.0.2	⁷ 64
	A.26.1 Bug Fixes	⁷ 64
	A.26.2 Enhancements	165
A.27	Release 2.0.1	165
	A.27.1 Bug Fixes	166
	A.27.2 Enhancements	167
A.28	Release 2.0.0	167
	A.28.1 Testers - Our unsung heroes	167
	A.28.2 Important / Breaking Changes	167
	A.28.3 New Features	168
	A.28.4 Enhancements	168
	A.28.5 Bug Fixes	769
	A.28.6 Release specific credits	169
A.29	Release 1.5.4	169
	A.29.1 Bug Fixes	169
A.30	Release 1.5.3	70
	A.30.1 Bug Fixes	70
A.31	Release 1.5.2	70
	A.31.1 Bug Fixes	70
A.32	Release 1.5.1	771
	A.32.1 Bug Fixes	771
A.33	Release 1.5.0	771
	A.33.1 API Stability	72
	A.33.2 Compatibility	72
	A.33.3 New Features	172

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual xxiv

	A.33.4 Enhancements
	A.33.5 Bug fixes
A.34	Release 1.4.0
	A.34.1 API Stability
	A.34.2 Compatibility
	A.34.3 New Features
	A.34.4 Enhancements
	A.34.5 Bug fixes
A.35	Release 1.3.6
A.36	Release 1.3.5
A.37	Release 1.3.4
A.38	Release 1.3.3
A.39	Release 1.3.2
A.40	Release 1.3.1
A.41	Release 1.3.0
	A.41.1 Added Functionality
	A.41.2 Performance Enhancements
	A.41.3 Other Changes
A.42	Release 1.2.1
	A.42.1 Changes
A.43	Release 1.2.0
	A.43.1 Changes
A.44	Release 1.1.6
	A.44.1 Upgrading
	A.44.2 Bug fixes
	A.44.3 Other changes
A.45	Release 1.1.5
	A.45.1 Upgrading
	A.45.2 Bug fixes
	A.45.3 New Features
A.46	Release 1.1.4
	A.46.1 Upgrading
	A.46.2 Bug fixes
	A.46.3 Java changes
A.47	Release 1.1.3
	A.47.1 Upgrading
	A.47.2 Bug fixes / correctness
	A.47.3 New functionalities
	A.47.4 JDBC changes

A.47.5 Other changes
A.48 Release 1.1.2
A.48.1 Upgrading
A.48.2 Bug fixes
A.48.3 New functionalities
A.48.4 Other changes
A.49 Release 1.1.1
A.49.1 Upgrading
A.49.2 Bug fixes
A.49.3 New functionalities
A.50 Release 1.1.0
A.50.1 Credits
A.50.2 Upgrading
A.50.3 New functions
A.50.4 Bug fixes
A.50.5 Function semantic changes
A.50.6 Performance improvements
A.50.7 JDBC2 works
A.50.8 Other new things
A.50.9 Other changes
A.51 Release 1.0.6
A.51.1 Upgrading
A.51.2 Bug fixes
A.51.3 Improvements
A.52 Release 1.0.5
A.52.1 Upgrading
A.52.2 Library changes
A.52.3 Loader changes
A.52.4 Other changes
A.53 Release 1.0.4
A.53.1 Upgrading
A.53.2 Bug fixes
A.53.3 Improvements
A.54 Release 1.0.3
A.54.1 Upgrading
A.54.2 Bug fixes
A.54.3 Improvements
A.55 Release 1.0.2
A.55.1 Upgrading

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual xxvi

	A.55.2 Bug fixes	786
	A.55.3 Improvements	786
A.56	Release 1.0.1	786
	A.56.1 Upgrading	786
	A.56.2 Library changes	786
	A.56.3 Other changes/additions	786
A.57	Release 1.0.0	787
	A.57.1 Upgrading	787
	A.57.2 Library changes	787
	A.57.3 Other changes/additions	787
A.58	Release 1.0.0RC6	787
	A.58.1 Upgrading	787
	A.58.2 Library changes	787
	A.58.3 Scripts changes	787
	A.58.4 Other changes	788
A.59	Release 1.0.0RC5	788
	A.59.1 Upgrading	788
	A.59.2 Library changes	
	A.59.3 Other changes	788
	Release 1.0.0RC4	
	A.60.1 Upgrading	788
	A.60.2 Library changes	788
	A.60.3 Scripts changes	789
	A.60.4 Other changes	789
A.61	Release 1.0.0RC3	789
	A.61.1 Upgrading	789
	A.61.2 Library changes	789
	A.61.3 Scripts changes	789
	A.61.4 JDBC changes	790
	A.61.5 Other changes	
A.62	Release 1.0.0RC2	790
	A.62.1 Upgrading	790
	A.62.2 Library changes	790
	A.62.3 Scripts changes	790
	A.62.4 Other changes	791
A.63	Release 1.0.0RC1	791
	A.63.1 Upgrading	791
	A.63.2 Changes	791

Abstract

PostGIS is an extension to the PostgreSQL object-relational database system which allows GIS (Geographic Information Systems) objects to be stored in the database. PostGIS includes support for GiST-based R-Tree spatial indexes, and functions for analysis and processing of GIS objects.





This is the manual for version 2.3.9

This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 License. Feel free to use this material any way you like, but we ask that you attribute credit to the PostGIS Project and wherever possible, a link back to http://postgis.net.

Chapter 1

Introduction

PostGIS was developed by Refractions Research Inc, as a spatial database technology research project. Refractions is a GIS and database consulting company in Victoria, British Columbia, Canada, specializing in data integration and custom software development. We plan on supporting and developing PostGIS to support a range of important GIS functionality, including full OpenGIS support, advanced topological constructs (coverages, surfaces, networks), desktop user interface tools for viewing and editing GIS data, and web-based access tools.

PostGIS is an incubation project of the OSGeo Foundation. PostGIS is being continually improved and funded by many FOSS4G Developers as well as corporations all over the world that gain great benefit from its functionality and versatility.

1.1 Project Steering Committee

The PostGIS Project Steering Committee (PSC) coordinates the general direction, release cycles, documentation, and outreach efforts for the PostGIS project. In addition the PSC provides general user support, accepts and approves patches from the general PostGIS community and votes on miscellaneous issues involving PostGIS such as developer commit access, new PSC members or significant API changes.

- **Mark Cave-Ayland** Coordinates bug fixing and maintenance effort, alignment of PostGIS with PostgreSQL releases, spatial index selectivity and binding, loader/dumper, and Shapefile GUI Loader, integration of new and new function enhancements.
- **Regina Obe** Buildbot Maintenance, windows production and experimental builds, Documentation, general user support on PostGIS newsgroup, X3D support, Tiger Geocoder Support, management functions, and smoke testing new functionality or major code changes.
- **Bborie Park** Raster development, integration with GDAL, raster loader, user support, general bug fixing, testing on various OS (Slackware, Mac, Windows, and more)
- Paul Ramsey (Chair) Co-founder of PostGIS project. General bug fixing, geography support, geography and geometry index support (2D, 3D, nD index and anything spatial index), underlying geometry internal structures, PointCloud (in development), GEOS functionality integration and alignment with GEOS releases, loader/dumper, and Shapefile GUI loader.
- **Sandro Santilli** Bug fixes and maintenance and integration of new GEOS functionality and alignment with GEOS releases, Topology support, and Raster framework and low level api functions.

1.2 Core Contributors Present

Jorge Arévalo Raster development, GDAL driver support, loader

Nicklas Avén Distance function enhancements (including 3D distance and relationship functions) and additions, Tiny WKB output format (TWKB) (in development) and general user support

Dan Baston Geometry clustering function additions, other geometry algorithm enhancements, and general user support

Olivier Courtin Input output XML (KML,GML)/GeoJSON functions, 3D support and bug fixes.

Mateusz Loskot CMake support for PostGIS, built original raster loader in python and low level raster api functions

Pierre Racine Raster overall architecture, prototyping, programming support

David Zwarg Raster development (mostly map algebra analytic functions)

1.3 Core Contributors Past

Chris Hodgson Prior PSC Member. General development, site and buildbot maintenance, OSGeo incubation management

Kevin Neufeld Prior PSC Member. Documentation and documentation support tools, buildbot maintenance, advanced user support on PostGIS newsgroup, and PostGIS maintenance function enhancements.

Dave Blasby The original developer/Co-founder of PostGIS. Dave wrote the server side objects, index bindings, and many of the server side analytical functions.

Jeff Lounsbury Original development of the Shape file loader/dumper. Current PostGIS Project Owner representative.

Mark Leslie Ongoing maintenance and development of core functions. Enhanced curve support. Shapefile GUI loader.

1.4 Other Contributors

Individual Contributors In alphabetical order: Alex Bodnaru, Alex Mayrhofer, Andrea Peri, Andreas Forø Tollefsen, Andreas Neumann, Anne Ghisla, Barbara Phillipot, Ben Jubb, Bernhard Reiter, Brian Hamlin, Bruce Rindahl, Bruno Wolff III, Bryce L. Nordgren, Carl Anderson, Charlie Savage, Dane Springmeyer, David Skea, David Techer, Eduin Carrillo, Even Rouault, Frank Warmerdam, George Silva, Gerald Fenoy, Gino Lucrezi, Guillaume Lelarge, IIDA Tetsushi, Ingvild Nystuen, Jason Smith, Jeff Adams, Jose Carlos Martinez Llari, Julien Rouhaud, Kashif Rasul, Klaus Foerster, Kris Jurka, Leo Hsu, Loic Dachary, Luca S. Percich, Maria Arias de Reyna, Mark Sondheim, Markus Schaber, Maxime Guillaud, Maxime van Noppen, Michael Fuhr, Mike Toews, Nathan Wagner, Nathaniel Clay, Nikita Shulga, Norman Vine, Rafal Magda, Ralph Mason, Rémi Cura, Richard Greenwood, Silvio Grosso, Steffen Macke, Stephen Frost, Tom van Tilburg, Vincent Mora, Vincent Picavet

Corporate Sponsors These are corporate entities that have contributed developer time, hosting, or direct monetary funding to the PostGIS project

In alphabetical order: Arrival 3D, Associazione Italiana per l'Informazione Geografica Libera (GFOSS.it), AusVet, Avencia, Azavea, Cadcorp, CampToCamp, CartoDB, City of Boston (DND), Clever Elephant Solutions, Cooperativa Alveo, Deimos Space, Faunalia, Geographic Data BC, Hunter Systems Group, Lidwala Consulting Engineers, LisaSoft, Logical Tracking & Tracing International AG, Maponics, Michigan Tech Research Institute, Natural Resources Canada, Norwegian Forest and Landscape Institute, Boundless (former OpenGeo), OSGeo, Oslandia, Palantir Technologies, Paragon Corporation, R3 GIS, Refractions Research, Regione Toscana - SITA, Safe Software, Sirius Corporation plc, Stadt Uster, UC Davis Center for Vectorborne Diseases, University of Laval, U.S Department of State (HIU), Zonar Systems

Crowd Funding Campaigns Crowd funding campaigns are campaigns we run to get badly wanted features funded that can service a large number of people. Each campaign is specifically focused on a particular feature or set of features. Each sponsor chips in a small fraction of the needed funding and with enough people/organizations contributing, we have the funds to pay for the work that will help many. If you have an idea for a feature you think many others would be willing to co-fund, please post to the PostGIS newsgroup your thoughts and together we can make it happen.

PostGIS 2.0.0 was the first release we tried this strategy. We used PledgeBank and we got two successful campaigns out of it.

postgistopology - 10 plus sponsors each contributed \$250 USD to build toTopoGeometry function and beef up topology support in 2.0.0. It happened.

postgis64windows - 20 someodd sponsors each contributed \$100 USD to pay for the work needed to work out PostGIS 64-bit issues on windows. It happened. We now have a 64-bit release for PostGIS 2.0.1 available on PostgreSQL stack builder.

Important Support Libraries The GEOS geometry operations library, and the algorithmic work of Martin Davis in making it all work, ongoing maintenance and support of Mateusz Loskot, Sandro Santilli (strk), Paul Ramsey and others.

The GDAL Geospatial Data Abstraction Library, by Frank Warmerdam and others is used to power much of the raster functionality introduced in PostGIS 2.0.0. In kind, improvements needed in GDAL to support PostGIS are contributed back to the GDAL project.

The Proj4 cartographic projection library, and the work of Gerald Evenden and Frank Warmerdam in creating and maintaining it.

Last but not least, the PostgreSQL DBMS, The giant that PostGIS stands on. Much of the speed and flexibility of PostGIS would not be possible without the extensibility, great query planner, GIST index, and plethora of SQL features provided by PostgreSQL.

1.5 More Information

- The latest software, documentation and news items are available at the PostGIS web site, http://postgis.net.
- More information about the GEOS geometry operations library is available athttp://trac.osgeo.org/geos/.
- More information about the Proj4 reprojection library is available at http://trac.osgeo.org/proj/.
- More information about the PostgreSQL database server is available at the PostgreSQL main site http://www.postgresql.org.
- More information about GiST indexing is available at the PostgreSQL GiST development site, http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/postgres/gist/.
- More information about MapServer internet map server is available at http://mapserver.org.
- The "Simple Features for Specification for SQL" is available at the OpenGIS Consortium web site: http://www.opengeospatial.org/-

•

Chapter 2

PostGIS Installation

This chapter details the steps required to install PostGIS.

2.1 Short Version

To compile assuming you have all the dependencies in your search path:

```
tar xvfz postgis-2.3.9.tar.gz
cd postgis-2.3.9
./configure
make
make install
```

Once postgis is installed, it needs to be enabled in each individual database you want to use it in.



Note

The raster support is currently optional, but installed by default. For enabling using the PostgreSQL 9.1+ extensions model raster is required. Using the extension enable process is preferred and more user-friendly. To spatially enable your database:

```
psql -d yourdatabase -c "CREATE EXTENSION postgis;"
psql -d yourdatabase -c "CREATE EXTENSION postgis_topology;"
-- if you built with sfcgal support --
psql -d yourdatabase -c "CREATE EXTENSION postgis_sfcgal;"
-- if you want to install tiger geocoder --
psql -d yourdatabase -c "CREATE EXTENSION fuzzystrmatch"
psql -d yourdatabase -c "CREATE EXTENSION postgis_tiger_geocoder;"
-- if you installed with pcre
-- you should have address standardizer extension as well
psql -d yourdatabase -c "CREATE EXTENSION address_standardizer;"
```

Please refer to Section 2.4.3 for more details about querying installed/available extensions and upgrading extensions, or switching from a non-extension install to an extension install.

For those running who decided for some reason not to compile with raster support, or just are old-fashioned, here are longer more painful instructions for you:

All the .sql files once installed will be installed in share/contrib/postgis-2.2 folder of your PostgreSQL install

```
createdb yourdatabase
createlang plpgsql yourdatabase
psql -d yourdatabase -f postgis.sql
psql -d yourdatabase -f postgis_comments.sql
psql -d yourdatabase -f spatial_ref_sys.sql
psql -d yourdatabase -f topology.sql
psql -d yourdatabase -f topology_comments.sql

-- only if you compiled with raster (GDAL)
psql -d yourdatabase -f rtpostgis.sql
psql -d yourdatabase -f raster_comments.sql

--if you built with sfcgal support --
psql -d yourdatabase -f sfcgal.sql
psql -d yourdatabase -f sfcgal_comments.sql
```

The rest of this chapter goes into detail each of the above installation steps.

As of PostGIS 2.1.3, out-of-db rasters and all raster drivers are disabled by default. In order to re-enable these, you need to set the following environment variables POSTGIS_GDAL_ENABLED_DRIVERS and POSTGIS_ENABLE_OUTDB_RASTERS in the server environment. For PostGIS 2.2, you can use the more cross-platform approach of setting the corresponding Section 8.2.

If you want to enable offline raster:

```
POSTGIS_ENABLE_OUTDB_RASTERS=1
```

Any other setting or no setting at all will disable out of db rasters.

In order to enable all GDAL drivers available in your GDAL install, set this environment variable as follows

```
POSTGIS_GDAL_ENABLED_DRIVERS=ENABLE_ALL
```

If you want to only enable specific drivers, set your environment variable as follows:

```
POSTGIS_GDAL_ENABLED_DRIVERS="GTiff PNG JPEG GIF XYZ"
```



Note

If you are on windows, do not quote the driver list

Setting environment variables varies depending on OS. For PostgreSQL installed on Ubuntu or Debian via apt-postgresql, the preferred way is to edit /etc/postgresql/9.3/main/environment where 9.3 refers to version of PostgreSQL and main refers to the cluster.

On windows, if you are running as a service, you can set via System variables which for Windows 7 you can get to by right-clicking on Computer->Properties Advanced System Settings or in explorer navigating to Control Panel\All Control Panel\Items\System. Then clicking Advanced System Settings ->Advanced->Environment Variables and adding new system variables.

After you set the environment variables, you'll need to restart your PostgreSQL service for the changes to take effect.

2.2 Install Requirements

PostGIS has the following requirements for building and usage:

Required

• PostgreSQL 9.2 and <= PostgreSQL 9.6. A complete installation of PostgreSQL (including server headers) is required. PostgreSQL is available from http://www.postgresql.org .

- For a full PostgreSQL / PostGIS support matrix and PostGIS/GEOS support matrix refer to http://trac.osgeo.org/postgis/wiki/-usersWikiPostgreSQLPostGIS
- GNU C compiler (gcc). Some other ANSI C compilers can be used to compile PostGIS, but we find far fewer problems when compiling with gcc.
- GNU Make (gmake or make). For many systems, GNU make is the default version of make. Check the version by invoking make -v. Other versions of make may not process the PostGIS Makefile properly.
- Proj4 reprojection library, version 4.6.0 or greater. The Proj4 library is used to provide coordinate reprojection support within PostGIS. Proj4 is available for download from http://trac.osgeo.org/proj/.
- GEOS geometry library, version 3.3 or greater, but GEOS 3.5+ is recommended to take full advantage of all the new functions and features. Without GEOS 3.5, you will be missing some major enhancements such as ST_ClipByBox2D and ST_Subdivide. GEOS is available for download from http://trac.osgeo.org/geos/ and 3.4+ is backward-compatible with older versions so fairly safe to upgrade.
- LibXML2, version 2.5.x or higher. LibXML2 is currently used in some imports functions (ST_GeomFromGML and ST_GeomFromKl LibXML2 is available for download from http://xmlsoft.org/downloads.html.
- JSON-C, version 0.9 or higher. JSON-C is currently used to import GeoJSON via the function ST_GeomFromGeoJson. JSON-C is available for download from https://github.com/json-c/jso
- GDAL, version 1.8 or higher (1.9 or higher is strongly recommended since some things will not work well or behavior differently with lower versions). This is required for raster support and to be able to install with CREATE EXTENSION postgis so highly recommended for those running 9.1+. http://trac.osgeo.org/gdal/wiki/DownloadSource.

Optional

- GDAL (pseudo optional) only if you don't want raster and don't care about installing with CREATE EXTENSION postgis can you leave it out. Keep in mind other extensions may have a requires postgis extension which will prevent you from installing them unless you install postgis as an extension. So it is highly recommended you compile with GDAL support.

 Also make sure to enable the drivers you want to use as described in Section 2.1.
- GTK (requires GTK+2.0, 2.8+) to compile the shp2pgsql-gui shape file loader. http://www.gtk.org/.
- SFCGAL, version 1.1 (or higher) could be used to provide additional 2D and 3D advanced analysis functions to PostGIS cf Section 8.10. And also allow to use SFCGAL rather than GEOS for some 2D functions provided by both backends (like ST_Intersection or ST_Area, for instance). A PostgreSQL configuration variable postgis.backend allow end user to control which backend he want to use if SFCGAL is installed (GEOS by default). Nota: SFCGAL 1.2 require at least CGAL 4.3 and Boost 1.54 (cf: http://oslandia.github.io/SFCGAL/installation.html) https://github.com/Oslandia/SFCGAL.
- In order to build the Chapter 12 you will also need PCRE http://www.pcre.org (which generally is already installed on nix systems). Regex::Assemble perl CPAN package is only needed if you want to rebuild the data encoded in parseaddress-stcit. h. Chapter 12 will automatically be built if it detects a PCRE library, or you pass in a valid --with-pcre-dir=/path/to/pcre during configure.
- CUnit (CUnit). This is needed for regression testing. http://cunit.sourceforge.net/
- DocBook (xsltproc) is required for building the documentation. Docbook is available from http://www.docbook.org/.
- DBLatex (dblatex) is required for building the documentation in PDF format. DBLatex is available from http://dblatex.sourceforge.id
- ImageMagick (convert) is required to generate the images used in the documentation. ImageMagick is available from http://www.imagemagick.org/.

2.3 Getting the Source

Retrieve the PostGIS source archive from the downloads website http://download.osgeo.org/postgis/source/postgis-2.3.9.tar.gz

```
wget http://download.osgeo.org/postgis/source/postgis-2.3.9.tar.gz
tar -xvzf postgis-2.3.9.tar.gz
```

This will create a directory called postgis-2.3.9 in the current working directory.

Alternatively, checkout the source from the svn repository http://svn.osgeo.org/postgis/trunk/.

```
svn checkout http://svn.osgeo.org/postgis/trunk/ postgis-2.3.9
```

Change into the newly created postgis-2.3.9 directory to continue the installation.

2.4 Compiling and Install from Source: Detailed

Note

Many OS systems now include pre-built packages for PostgreSQL/PostGIS. In many cases compilation is only necessary if you want the most bleeding edge versions or you are a package maintainer.



This section includes general compilation instructions, if you are compiling for Windows etc or another OS, you may find additional more detailed help at PostGIS User contributed compile guides and PostGIS Dev Wiki.

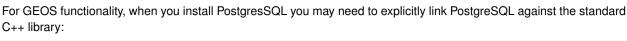
Pre-Built Packages for various OS are listed in PostGIS Pre-built Packages

If you are a windows user, you can get stable builds via Stackbuilder or PostGIS Windows download site We also have very bleeding-edge windows experimental builds that are built usually once or twice a week or whenever anything exciting happens. You can use these to experiment with the in progress releases of PostGIS

The PostGIS module is an extension to the PostgreSQL backend server. As such, PostGIS 2.3.9 requires full PostgreSQL server headers access in order to compile. It can be built against PostgreSQL versions 9.2 or higher. Earlier versions of PostgreSQL are not supported.

Refer to the PostgreSQL installation guides if you haven't already installed PostgreSQL. http://www.postgresql.org .

Note





LDFLAGS=-lstdc++ ./configure [YOUR OPTIONS HERE]

This is a workaround for bogus C++ exceptions interaction with older development tools. If you experience weird problems (backend unexpectedly closed or similar things) try this trick. This will require recompiling your PostgreSQL from scratch, of course.

The following steps outline the configuration and compilation of the PostGIS source. They are written for Linux users and will not work on Windows or Mac.

2.4.1 Configuration

As with most linux installations, the first step is to generate the Makefile that will be used to build the source code. This is done by running the shell script

./configure

With no additional parameters, this command will attempt to automatically locate the required components and libraries needed to build the PostGIS source code on your system. Although this is the most common usage of **/configure**, the script accepts several parameters for those who have the required libraries and programs in non-standard locations.

The following list shows only the most commonly used parameters. For a complete list, use the **--help** or **--help=short** parameters.

--prefix=PREFIX This is the location the PostGIS libraries and SQL scripts will be installed to. By default, this location is the same as the detected PostgreSQL installation.



Caution

This parameter is currently broken, as the package will only install into the PostgreSQL installation directory. Visit http://trac.osgeo.org/postgis/ticket/635 to track this bug.

- --with-pgconfig=FILE PostgreSQL provides a utility called pg_config to enable extensions like PostGIS to locate the PostgreSQL installation directory. Use this parameter (--with-pgconfig=/path/to/pg_config) to manually specify a particular PostgreSQL installation that PostGIS will build against.
- --with-gdalconfig=FILE GDAL, a required library, provides functionality needed for raster support gdal-config to enable software installations to locate the GDAL installation directory. Use this parameter (--with-gdalconfig=/path/to/gdal-config) to manually specify a particular GDAL installation that PostGIS will build against.
- --with-geosconfig=FILE GEOS, a required geometry library, provides a utility called geos-config to enable software installations to locate the GEOS installation directory. Use this parameter (--with-geosconfig=/path/to/geos-config) to manually specify a particular GEOS installation that PostGIS will build against.
- --with-xml2config=FILE LibXML is the library required for doing GeomFromKML/GML processes. It normally is found if you have libxml installed, but if not or you want a specific version used, you'll need to point PostGIS at a specific xml2-config confile to enable software installations to locate the LibXML installation directory. Use this parameter (>--with-xml2config=/path/to/xml2-config) to manually specify a particular LibXML installation that PostGIS will build against.
- --with-projdir=DIR Proj4 is a reprojection library required by PostGIS. Use this parameter (--with-projdir=/path/to/projdir) to manually specify a particular Proj4 installation directory that PostGIS will build against.
- --with-libiconv=DIR Directory where iconv is installed.
- --with-jsondir=DIR JSON-C is an MIT-licensed JSON library required by PostGIS ST_GeomFromJSON support. Use this parameter (--with-jsondir=/path/to/jsondir) to manually specify a particular JSON-C installation directory that PostGIS will build against.
- --with-pcredir=DIR PCRE is an BSD-licensed Perl Compatible Regular Expression library required by address_standardizer extension. Use this parameter (--with-pcredir=/path/to/pcredir) to manually specify a particular PCRE installation directory that PostGIS will build against.
- --with-gui Compile the data import GUI (requires GTK+2.0). This will create shp2pgsql-gui graphical interface to shp2pgsql.
- **--with-raster** Compile with raster support. This will build rtpostgis-2.3.9 library and rtpostgis.sql file. This may not be required in final release as plan is to build in raster support by default.
- **--with-topology** Compile with topology support. This will build the topology.sql file. There is no corresponding library as all logic needed for topology is in postgis-2.3.9 library.
- --with-gettext=no By default PostGIS will try to detect gettext support and compile with it, however if you run into incompatibility issues that cause breakage of loader, you can disable it entirely with this command. Refer to ticket http://trac.osgeo.org/postgis/ticket/748 for an example issue solved by configuring with this. NOTE: that you aren't missing much by turning this off. This is used for international help/label support for the GUI loader which is not yet documented and still experimental.

--with-sfcgal=PATH By default PostGIS will not install with sfcgal support without this switch. PATH is an optional argument that allows to specify an alternate PATH to sfcgal-config.

Note



If you obtained PostGIS from the SVN repository, the first step is really to run the script ./autogen.sh

This script will generate the configure script that in turn is used to customize the installation of PostGIS.

If you instead obtained PostGIS as a tarball, running ./autogen.sh is not necessary as configure has already been generated.

2.4.2 Building

Once the Makefile has been generated, building PostGIS is as simple as running

make

The last line of the output should be "PostGIS was built successfully. Ready to install."

As of PostGIS v1.4.0, all the functions have comments generated from the documentation. If you wish to install these comments into your spatial databases later, run the command which requires docbook. The postgis_comments.sql and other package comments files raster_comments.sql, topology_comments.sql are also packaged in the tar.gz distribution in the doc folder so no need to make comments if installing from the tar ball.

make comments

Introduced in PostGIS 2.0. This generates html cheat sheets suitable for quick reference or for student handouts. This requires xsltproc to build and will generate 4 files in doc folder topology_cheatsheet.html, tiger_geocoder_cheatsheet.html, raster_cheatsheet.html, postgis_cheatsheet.html

You can download some pre-built ones available in html and pdf from PostGIS / PostgreSQL Study Guides

make cheatsheets

2.4.3 Building PostGIS Extensions and Deploying them

The PostGIS extensions are built and installed automatically if you are using PostgreSQL 9.1+.

If you are building from source repository, you need to build the function descriptions first. These get built if you have docbook installed. You can also manually build with the statement:

make comments

Building the comments is not necessary if you are building from a release tar ball since these are packaged pre-built with the tar ball already.

If you are building against PostgreSQL 9.1, the extensions should automatically build as part of the make install process. You can if needed build from the extensions folders or copy files if you need them on a different server.

```
cd extensions
cd postgis
make clean
make
make install
cd ..
cd postgis_topology
make clean
make
make
make install
cd ..
cd postgis_topology
make clean
make
make install
cd ..
cd postgis_sfcgal
make clean
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 10 / 791

```
make
make install

cd ..
cd address_standardizer
make clean
make
make install
make installcheck

cd ..
cd postgis_tiger_geocoder
make clean
make
make install
make install
make install
make install
make install
make installcheck
```

The extension files will always be the same for the same version of PostGIS regardless of OS, so it is fine to copy over the extension files from one OS to another as long as you have the PostGIS binaries already installed on your servers.

If you want to install the extensions manually on a separate server different from your development, You need to copy the following files from the extensions folder into the PostgreSQL / share / extension folder of your PostgreSQL install as well as the needed binaries for regular PostGIS if you don't have them already on the server.

- These are the control files that denote information such as the version of the extension to install if not specified. postgis.control, postgis_topology.control.
- All the files in the /sql folder of each extension. Note that these need to be copied to the root of the PostgreSQL share/extension folder extensions/postgis/sql/*.sql, extensions/postgis_topology/sql/*.sql

Once you do that, you should see postgis, postgis_topology as available extensions in PgAdmin -> extensions.

If you are using psql, you can verify that the extensions are installed by running this query:

```
SELECT name, default_version,installed_version
FROM pg_available_extensions WHERE name LIKE 'postgis%' or name LIKE 'address%';
         name
                      | default_version | installed_version
    address_standardizer | 2.3.9 | 2.3.9
                                   | 2.3.9
address_standardizer_data_us | 2.3.9
             | 2.3.9
postgis
                                   1 2.3.9
postgis_sfcgal
                       | 2.3.9
postgis_tiger_geocoder
                                   | 2.3.9
                       | 2.3.9
postgis_topology
                       | 2.3.9
```

If you have the extension installed in the database you are querying, you'll see mention in the installed_version column. If you get no records back, it means you don't have postgis extensions installed on the server at all. PgAdmin III 1.14+ will also provide this information in the extensions section of the database browser tree and will even allow upgrade or uninstall by right-clicking.

If you have the extensions available, you can install postgis extension in your database of choice by either using pgAdmin extension interface or running these sql commands:

```
CREATE EXTENSION postgis;

CREATE EXTENSION postgis_sfcgal;

CREATE EXTENSION fuzzystrmatch; --needed for postgis_tiger_geocoder

--optional used by postgis_tiger_geocoder, or can be used standalone

CREATE EXTENSION address_standardizer;

CREATE EXTENSION address_standardizer_data_us;

CREATE EXTENSION postgis_tiger_geocoder;

CREATE EXTENSION postgis_topology;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 11 / 791

In psql you can use to see what versions you have installed and also what schema they are installed.

```
\connect mygisdb
\x
\dx postgis*
```

```
List of installed extensions
-[ RECORD 1 ]----
Name | postgis
Version | 2.3.9
Schema | public
Description \mid PostGIS geometry, geography, and raster spat..
-[ RECORD 2 ]-----
Name
         | postgis_tiger_geocoder
           | 2.3.9
Version
           | tiger
Description | PostGIS tiger geocoder and reverse geocoder
-[ RECORD 3 ]-----
          | postgis_topology
Name
Version
          1 2.3.9
Schema | topology
Description | PostGIS topology spatial types and functions
```

Warning



Extension tables <code>spatial_ref_sys</code>, <code>layer</code>, <code>topology</code> can not be explicitly backed up. They can only be backed up when the respective <code>postgis</code> or <code>postgis_topology</code> extension is backed up, which only seems to happen when you backup the whole database. As of PostGIS 2.0.1, only srid records not packaged with PostGIS are backed up when the database is backed up so don't go around changing srids we package and expect your changes to be there. Put in a ticket if you find an issue. The structures of extension tables are never backed up since they are created with <code>CREATE EXTENSION</code> and assumed to be the same for a given version of an extension. These behaviors are built into the current PostgreSQL extension model, so nothing we can do about it.

If you installed 2.3.9, without using our wonderful extension system, you can change it to be extension based by first upgrading to the latest micro version running the upgrade scripts: postgis_upgrade_22_minor.sql,raster_upgrade_22_minor.sql,topology_upgrade_22_minor.sql.

If you installed postgis without raster support, you'll need to install raster support first (using the full rtpostgis.sql

Then you can run the below commands to package the functions in their respective extension.

```
CREATE EXTENSION postgis FROM unpackaged;
CREATE EXTENSION postgis_topology FROM unpackaged;
CREATE EXTENSION postgis_tiger_geocoder FROM unpackaged;
```

2.4.4 Testing

If you wish to test the PostGIS build, run

make check

The above command will run through various checks and regression tests using the generated library against an actual Post-greSQL database.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 12 / 791



Note

If you configured PostGIS using non-standard PostgreSQL, GEOS, or Proj4 locations, you may need to add their library locations to the LD LIBRARY PATH environment variable.



Caution

Currently, the **make check** relies on the PATH and PGPORT environment variables when performing the checks - it does *not* use the PostgreSQL version that may have been specified using the configuration parameter **--with-pgconfig**. So make sure to modify your PATH to match the detected PostgreSQL installation during configuration or be prepared to deal with the impending headaches.

If successful, the output of the test should be similar to the following:

```
CUnit - A unit testing framework for C - Version 2.1-2
     http://cunit.sourceforge.net/
Suite: computational_geometry
  Test: test_lw_segment_side ...passed
 Test: test_lw_segment_intersects ...passed
 Test: test_lwline_crossing_short_lines ...passed
  Test: test_lwline_crossing_long_lines ...passed
 Test: test_lwline_crossing_bugs ...passed
 Test: test_lwpoint_set_ordinate ...passed
 Test: test_lwpoint_get_ordinate ...passed
 Test: test_point_interpolate ...passed
  Test: test_lwline_clip ...passed
 Test: test_lwline_clip_big ...passed
 Test: test_lwmline_clip ...passed
 Test: test_geohash_point ...passed
 Test: test_geohash_precision ...passed
 Test: test_geohash ...passed
  Test: test_geohash_point_as_int ...passed
 Test: test_isclosed ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_simplify ...passed
Suite: buildarea
  Test: buildareal ...passed
  Test: buildarea2 ...passed
  Test: buildarea3 ...passed
  Test: buildarea4 ...passed
  Test: buildarea4b ...passed
  Test: buildarea5 ...passed
 Test: buildarea6 ...passed
 Test: buildarea7 ...passed
Suite: geometry_clean
 Test: test_lwgeom_make_valid ...passed
Suite: clip_by_rectangle
 Test: test_lwgeom_clip_by_rect ...passed
Suite: force_sfs
 Test: test_sfs_11 ...passed
 Test: test_sfs_12 ...passed
 Test: test_sqlmm ...passed
Suite: geodetic
 Test: test_sphere_direction ...passed
 Test: test_sphere_project ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_area_sphere ...passed
 Test: test_signum ...passed
  Test: test_gbox_from_spherical_coordinates ...passed
 Test: test_gserialized_get_gbox_geocentric ...passed
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 13 / 791

```
Test: test_clairaut ...passed
 Test: test_edge_intersection ...passed
 Test: test_edge_intersects ...passed
 Test: test_edge_distance_to_point ...passed
 Test: test_edge_distance_to_edge ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_distance_sphere ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_check_geodetic ...passed
 Test: test_gserialized_from_lwgeom ...passed
 Test: test_spheroid_distance ...passed
 Test: test_spheroid_area ...passed
 Test: test_lwpoly_covers_point2d ...passed
 Test: test_gbox_utils ...passed
 Test: test_vector_angle ...passed
  Test: test_vector_rotate ...passed
  Test: test_lwgeom_segmentize_sphere ...passed
  Test: test_ptarray_contains_point_sphere ...passed
 Test: test_ptarray_contains_point_sphere_iowa ...passed
Suite: GEOS
 Test: test_geos_noop ...passed
 Test: test_geos_subdivide \dotspassed
 Test: test_geos_linemerge ...passed
Suite: Clustering
 Test: basic_test ...passed
 Test: nonsequential_test ...passed
 Test: basic_distance_test ...passed
 Test: single_input_test ...passed
 Test: empty_inputs_test ...passed
Suite: Clustering Union-Find
 Test: test_unionfind_create ...passed
 Test: test_unionfind_union ...passed
 Test: test_unionfind_ordered_by_cluster ...passed
Suite: homogenize
 Test: test_coll_point ...passed
  Test: test_coll_line ...passed
  Test: test_coll_poly ...passed
  Test: test_coll_coll ...passed
 Test: test_geom ...passed
 Test: test_coll_curve ...passed
Suite: encoded_polyline_input
 Test: in_encoded_polyline_test_geoms ...passed
 Test: in_encoded_polyline_test_precision ...passed
Suite: geojson_input
 Test: in_geojson_test_srid ...passed
 Test: in_geojson_test_bbox ...passed
 Test: in_geojson_test_geoms ...passed
Suite: twkb_input
 Test: test_twkb_in_point ...passed
 Test: test_twkb_in_linestring ...passed
 Test: test_twkb_in_polygon ...passed
 Test: test_twkb_in_multipoint ...passed
 Test: test_twkb_in_multilinestring ...passed
 Test: test_twkb_in_multipolygon ...passed
 Test: test_twkb_in_collection ...passed
 Test: test_twkb_in_precision ...passed
Suite: serialization/deserialization
  Test: test_typmod_macros ...passed
  Test: test_flags_macros ...passed
 Test: test_serialized_srid ...passed
 Test: test_gserialized_from_lwgeom_size ...passed
 Test: test_gbox_serialized_size ...passed
 {\tt Test: test\_lwgeom\_from\_gserialized} \ \dots {\tt passed}
 Test: test_lwgeom_count_vertices ...passed
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 14 / 791

```
Test: test_on_gser_lwgeom_count_vertices ...passed
 Test: test_geometry_type_from_string ...passed
 Test: test_lwcollection_extract ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_free ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_flip_coordinates ...passed
 Test: test_f2d ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_clone ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_force_clockwise ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_calculate_gbox ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_is_empty ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_same ...passed
 Test: test_lwline_from_lwmpoint ...passed
  Test: test_lwgeom_as_curve ...passed
  Test: test_lwgeom_scale ...passed
  Test: test_gserialized_is_empty ...passed
  Test: test_gbox_same_2d ...passed
Suite: measures
 Test: test_mindistance2d_tolerance ...passed
 Test: test_rect_tree_contains_point ...passed
 Test: test_rect_tree_intersects_tree ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_segmentize2d ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_locate_along ...passed
 Test: test_lw_dist2d_pt_arc ...passed
 Test: test_lw_dist2d_seg_arc ...passed
 Test: test_lw_dist2d_arc_arc ...passed
 Test: test_lw_arc_length ...passed
 Test: test_lw_dist2d_pt_ptarrayarc ...passed
 Test: test_lw_dist2d_ptarray_ptarrayarc ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_tcpa ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_is_trajectory ...passed
Suite: effectivearea
 Test: do_test_lwgeom_effectivearea_lines ...passed
 Test: do_test_lwgeom_effectivearea_polys ...passed
Suite: miscellaneous
  Test: test_misc_force_2d ...passed
  Test: test_misc_simplify ...passed
 Test: test_misc_count_vertices ...passed
 Test: test_misc_area ...passed
 Test: test_misc_wkb ...passed
 Test: test_grid ...passed
Suite: noding
 Test: test_lwgeom_node ...passed
Suite: encoded_polyline_output
 Test: out_encoded_polyline_test_geoms ...passed
 Test: out_encoded_polyline_test_srid ...passed
 Test: out_encoded_polyline_test_precision ...passed
Suite: geojson_output
 Test: out_geojson_test_precision ...passed
 Test: out_geojson_test_dims ...passed
 Test: out_geojson_test_srid ...passed
 Test: out_geojson_test_bbox ...passed
 Test: out_geojson_test_geoms ...passed
Suite: gml_output
 Test: out_gml_test_precision ...passed
  Test: out_gml_test_srid ...passed
  Test: out_gml_test_dims ...passed
  Test: out_gml_test_geodetic ...passed
 Test: out_gml_test_geoms ...passed
 Test: out_gml_test_geoms_prefix ...passed
 Test: out_gml_test_geoms_nodims ...passed
 Test: out_gml2_extent ...passed
 Test: out_gml3_extent ...passed
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 15 / 791

```
Suite: kml_output
 Test: out_kml_test_precision ...passed
 Test: out_kml_test_dims ...passed
 Test: out_kml_test_geoms ...passed
 Test: out_kml_test_prefix ...passed
Suite: svg_output
 Test: out_svg_test_precision ...passed
 Test: out_svg_test_dims ...passed
 Test: out_svg_test_relative ...passed
 Test: out_svg_test_geoms ...passed
 Test: out_svg_test_srid ...passed
Suite: x3d_output
  Test: out_x3d3_test_precision ...passed
  Test: out_x3d3_test_geoms ...passed
  Test: out_x3d3_test_option ...passed
Suite: ptarray
 Test: test_ptarray_append_point ...passed
 Test: test_ptarray_append_ptarray ...passed
 Test: test_ptarray_locate_point ...passed
 Test: test_ptarray_isccw ...passed
 Test: test_ptarray_signed_area ...passed
 Test: test_ptarray_unstroke ...passed
 Test: test_ptarray_insert_point ...passed
 Test: test_ptarray_contains_point ...passed
 Test: test_ptarrayarc_contains_point ...passed
 Test: test_ptarray_scale ...passed
Suite: printing
 Test: test_lwprint_default_format ...passed
 Test: test_lwprint_format_orders ...passed
 Test: test_lwprint_optional_format ...passed
 Test: test_lwprint_oddball_formats ...passed
 Test: test_lwprint_bad_formats ...passed
Suite: SFCGAL
 Test: test_sfcgal_noop ...passed
Suite: split
 Test: test_lwline_split_by_point_to ...passed
 Test: test_lwgeom_split ...passed
Suite: stringbuffer
 Test: test_stringbuffer_append ...passed
 Test: test_stringbuffer_aprintf ...passed
Suite: surface
 Test: triangle_parse ...passed
 Test: tin_parse ...passed
 Test: polyhedralsurface_parse ...passed
 Test: surface_dimension ...passed
Suite: Internal Spatial Trees
 Test: test_tree_circ_create ...passed
 Test: test_tree_circ_pip ...passed
 Test: test_tree_circ_pip2 ...passed
 Test: test_tree_circ_distance ...passed
 Test: test_tree_circ_distance_threshold ...passed
Suite: triangulate
 Test: test_lwgeom_delaunay_triangulation ...passed
Suite: twkb_output
  Test: test_twkb_out_point ...passed
  Test: test_twkb_out_linestring ...passed
  Test: test_twkb_out_polygon ...passed
 Test: test_twkb_out_multipoint ...passed
 Test: test_twkb_out_multilinestring ...passed
 Test: test_twkb_out_multipolygon ...passed
 Test: test_twkb_out_collection ...passed
 Test: test_twkb_out_idlist ...passed
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 16 / 791

```
Suite: varint
 Test: test_zigzag ...passed
 Test: test_varint ...passed
 Test: test_varint_roundtrip ...passed
Suite: wkb_input
 Test: test_wkb_in_point ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_in_linestring ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_in_polygon ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_in_multipoint ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_in_multilinestring ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_in_multipolygon ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_in_collection ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_in_circularstring ...passed
  Test: test_wkb_in_compoundcurve ...passed
  Test: test_wkb_in_curvpolygon ...passed
  Test: test_wkb_in_multicurve ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_in_multisurface ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_in_malformed ...passed
Suite: wkb_output
 Test: test_wkb_out_point ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_out_linestring ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_out_polygon ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_out_multipoint ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_out_multilinestring ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_out_multipolygon ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_out_collection ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_out_circularstring ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_out_compoundcurve ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_out_curvpolygon ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_out_multicurve ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_out_multisurface ...passed
 Test: test_wkb_out_polyhedralsurface ...passed
Suite: wkt_input
 Test: test_wkt_in_point ...passed
  Test: test_wkt_in_linestring ...passed
  Test: test_wkt_in_polygon ...passed
  Test: test_wkt_in_multipoint ...passed
  Test: test_wkt_in_multilinestring ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_in_multipolygon ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_in_collection ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_in_circularstring ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_in_compoundcurve ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_in_curvpolygon ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_in_multicurve ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_in_multisurface ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_in_tin ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_in_polyhedralsurface ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_in_errlocation ...passed
Suite: wkt_output
 Test: test_wkt_out_point ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_out_linestring ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_out_polygon ...passed
 Test: test_wkt_out_multipoint ...passed
  Test: test_wkt_out_multilinestring ...passed
  Test: test_wkt_out_multipolygon ...passed
  Test: test_wkt_out_collection ...passed
  Test: test_wkt_out_circularstring ...passed
  Test: test_wkt_out_compoundcurve ...passed
  Test: test_wkt_out_curvpolygon ...passed
  Test: test_wkt_out_multicurve ...passed
  Test: test_wkt_out_multisurface ...passed
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 17 / 791

```
Ran Passed Failed Inactive
Run Summary:
               Type Total
                              38
             suites
                       38
                                    n/a 0
                       251
                              251
                                     251
                                             0
                                                      0
              tests
                                             0
             asserts
                      2468
                             2468
                                    2468
                                                     n/a
Elapsed time =
                 0.298 seconds
Creating database 'postgis_reg'
Loading PostGIS into 'postgis_reg'
  /projects/postgis/branches/2.2/regress/00-regress-install/share/contrib/postgis/postgis. \leftarrow
  /projects/postgis/branches/2.2/regress/00-regress-install/share/contrib/postgis/ \leftrightarrow
     postgis_comments.sql
Loading SFCGAL into 'postgis_reg'
  /projects/postgis/branches/2.2/regress/00-regress-install/share/contrib/postgis/sfcgal. \leftarrow
  /projects/postgis/branches/2.2/regress/00-regress-install/share/contrib/postgis/ \leftrightarrow
     sfcgal_comments.sql
PostgreSQL 9.4.4, compiled by Visual C++ build 1800, 32-bit
 Postgis 2.2.0dev - r13980 - 2015-08-23 06:13:07
 scripts 2.2.0dev r13980
 GEOS: 3.5.0-CAPI-1.9.0 r4088
 PROJ: Rel. 4.9.1, 04 March 2015
 SFCGAL: 1.1.0
Running tests
 loader/Point ..... ok
 loader/PointM ..... ok
 {\tt loader/PointZ}~\dots.\dots~{\tt ok}
 loader/MultiPoint ..... ok
 loader/MultiPointM ..... ok
 loader/MultiPointZ ..... ok
 loader/Arc ..... ok
 loader/ArcM ..... ok
 loader/ArcZ ..... ok
 loader/Polygon ..... ok
 loader/PolygonM ..... ok
 loader/PolygonZ ..... ok
 loader/TSTPolygon ..... ok
 loader/TSIPolygon ..... ok
 {\tt loader/TSTIPolygon} \ \ldots \ldots \ {\tt ok}
 loader/PointWithSchema .... ok
 loader/NoTransPoint ..... ok
 loader/NotReallyMultiPoint ..... ok
 loader/MultiToSinglePoint ..... ok
 loader/ReprojectPts ..... ok
 loader/ReprojectPtsGeog ..... ok
 loader/Latin1 .... ok
 loader/Latin1-implicit .... ok
 loader/mfile \dots ok
 {\tt dumper/literalsrid} \ \ldots \ldots \ {\tt ok}
 dumper/realtable ..... ok
 affine .. ok
 bestsrid .. ok
 binary .. ok
 boundary .. ok
 cluster .. ok
 concave_hull .. ok
 ctors .. ok
 dump .. ok
 dumppoints .. ok
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 18 / 791

```
empty .. ok
forcecurve .. ok
geography .. ok
in_geohash .. ok
in_gml .. ok
in_kml .. ok
in_encodedpolyline .. ok
is collection \dots ok
legacy .. ok
long_xact .. ok
lwgeom_regress .. ok
measures .. ok
operators .. ok
out_geometry .. ok
out_geography .. ok
polygonize .. ok
polyhedralsurface .. ok
postgis_type_name .. ok
regress .. ok
regress_bdpoly .. ok
regress_index .. ok
regress_index_nulls .. ok
regress_management .. ok
regress_selectivity .. ok
regress_lrs .. ok
regress_ogc .. ok
regress_ogc_cover .. ok
regress_ogc_prep .. ok
regress_proj .. ok
relate .. ok
remove_repeated_points .. ok
removepoint .. ok
setpoint .. ok
simplify .. ok
simplifyvw .. ok
size .. ok
snaptogrid .. ok
split .. ok
sql-mm-serialize .. ok
sql-mm-circular string .. ok
sql-mm-compoundcurve .. ok
sql-mm-curvepoly .. ok
sql-mm-general .. ok
sql-mm-multicurve .. ok
sql-mm-multisurface .. ok
swapordinates .. ok
summary .. ok
temporal .. ok
tickets .. ok
twkb .. ok
typmod .. ok
wkb .. ok
wkt .. ok
wmsservers .. ok
knn .. ok
hausdorff .. ok
regress_buffer_params .. ok
offsetcurve .. ok
relatematch .. ok
isvaliddetail .. ok
sharedpaths .. ok
snap .. ok
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 19 / 791

```
node .. ok
 unaryunion .. ok
 clean .. ok
 relate_bnr .. ok
 delaunaytriangles .. ok
 clipbybox2d .. ok
 subdivide .. ok
 in_geojson .. ok
 regress_sfcgal .. ok
 sfcgal/empty .. ok
 sfcgal/geography .. ok
 sfcgal/legacy .. ok
 sfcgal/measures .. ok
 sfcgal/regress_ogc_prep .. ok
 sfcgal/regress_ogc .. ok
 sfcgal/regress .. ok
 sfcgal/tickets .. ok
 sfcgal/concave_hull .. ok
 sfcgal/wmsservers .. ok
 sfcgal/approximatemedialaxis .. ok
 uninstall . /projects/postgis/branches/2.2/regress/00-regress-install/share/contrib/ \leftarrow
    postgis/uninstall_sfcgal.sql
  /projects/postgis/branches/2.2/regress/00-regress-install/share/contrib/postgis/ \leftrightarrow
     uninstall_postgis.sql
. ok (4336)
Run tests: 118
Failed: 0
-- if you built --with-gui, you should see this too
     CUnit - A unit testing framework for C - Version 2.1-2
     http://cunit.sourceforge.net/
Suite: Shapefile Loader File shp2pgsql Test
 Test: test_ShpLoaderCreate() ...passed
  Test: test_ShpLoaderDestroy() ...passed
Suite: Shapefile Loader File pgsql2shp Test
  Test: test_ShpDumperCreate() ...passed
  Test: test_ShpDumperDestroy() ...passed
                Type Total
                               Ran Passed Failed Inactive
Run Summarv:
              suites
                        2
                                2
                                       n/a
                                                0
                                                         0
                          4
                                  4
                                        4
                                                0
                                                         0
               tests
                          4
                                  4
                                         4
             asserts
```

The postgis_tiger_geocoder and address_standardizer extensions, currenlty only support the standard PostgreSQL installcheck. To test these use the below. Note: the make install is not necessary if you already did make install at root of PostGIS code folder.

For address_standardizer:

```
cd extensions/address_standardizer
make install
make installcheck
```

Output should look like:

```
========== dropping database "contrib_regression" ========
DROP DATABASE
========= creating database "contrib_regression" ==========
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 20 / 791

For tiger geocoder, make sure you have postgis and fuzzystrmatch extensions available in your PostgreSQL instance. The address_standardizer tests will also kick in if you built postgis with address_standardizer support:

```
cd extensions/postgis_tiger_geocoder
make install
make installcheck
```

output should look like:

```
====== dropping database "contrib_regression" ==========
DROP DATABASE
====== creating database "contrib_regression" =========
CREATE DATABASE
ALTER DATABASE
======= installing fuzzystrmatch
                                         ______
CREATE EXTENSION
====== installing postgis
                                         _____
CREATE EXTENSION
======= installing postgis_tiger_geocoder
CREATE EXTENSION
========= installing address_standardizer
CREATE EXTENSION
_____
test test-normalize_address ... ok
test test-pagc_normalize_address ... ok
_____
All 2 tests passed.
______
```

2.4.5 Installation

To install PostGIS, type

make install

This will copy the PostGIS installation files into their appropriate subdirectory specified by the **--prefix** configuration parameter. In particular:

- The loader and dumper binaries are installed in [prefix]/bin.
- The SQL files, such as postgis.sql, are installed in [prefix]/share/contrib.
- The PostGIS libraries are installed in [prefix]/lib.

If you previously ran the **make comments** command to generate the <code>postgis_comments.sql</code>, <code>raster_comments.sql</code> file, install the sql file by running

make comments-install

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 21 / 791



Note

postgis_comments.sql, raster_comments.sql, topology_comments.sql was separated from the typical build and installation targets since with it comes the extra dependency of **xsltproc**.

2.5 Creating a spatial database using EXTENSIONS

If you are using PostgreSQL 9.1+ and have compiled and installed the extensions/ postgis modules, you can create a spatial database the new way.

createdb [yourdatabase]

The core postgis extension installs PostGIS geometry, geography, raster, spatial_ref_sys and all the functions and comments with a simple:

CREATE EXTENSION postgis;

command.

psql -d [yourdatabase] -c "CREATE EXTENSION postgis;"

Topology is packaged as a separate extension and installable with command:

psql -d [yourdatabase] -c "CREATE EXTENSION postgis_topology;"

If you plan to restore an old backup from prior versions in this new db, run:

psql -d [yourdatabase] -f legacy.sql

You can later run uninstall_legacy.sql to get rid of the deprecated functions after you are done with restoring and cleanup.

2.6 Create a spatially-enabled database without using extensions



Note

This is generally only needed if you built-PostGIS without raster support. Since raster functions are part of the postgis extension, extension support is not enabled if PostGIS is built without raster.

The first step in creating a PostGIS database is to create a simple PostgreSQL database.

createdb [yourdatabase]

Many of the PostGIS functions are written in the PL/pgSQL procedural language. As such, the next step to create a PostGIS database is to enable the PL/pgSQL language in your new database. This is accomplish by the command below command. For PostgreSQL 8.4+, this is generally already installed

createlang plpgsql [yourdatabase]

Now load the PostGIS object and function definitions into your database by loading the postgis.sql definitions file (located in [prefix]/share/contrib as specified during the configuration step).

psql -d [yourdatabase] -f postgis.sql

For a complete set of EPSG coordinate system definition identifiers, you can also load the $spatial_ref_sys.sql$ definitions file and populate the $spatial_ref_sys$ table. This will permit you to perform $ST_Transform()$ operations on geometries.

psql -d [yourdatabase] -f spatial_ref_sys.sql

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 22 / 791

If you wish to add comments to the PostGIS functions, the final step is to load the postgis_comments.sql into your spatial database. The comments can be viewed by simply typing \dd [function_name] from a psql terminal window.

psql -d [yourdatabase] -f postgis_comments.sql

Install raster support

psql -d [yourdatabase] -f rtpostgis.sql

Install raster support comments. This will provide quick help info for each raster function using psql or PgAdmin or any other PostgreSQL tool that can show function comments

psql -d [yourdatabase] -f raster_comments.sql

Install topology support

psql -d [yourdatabase] -f topology/topology.sql

Install topology support comments. This will provide quick help info for each topology function / type using psql or PgAdmin or any other PostgreSQL tool that can show function comments

psql -d [yourdatabase] -f topology/topology_comments.sql

If you plan to restore an old backup from prior versions in this new db, run:

psql -d [yourdatabase] -f legacy.sql



Note

There is an alternative <code>legacy_minimal.sql</code> you can run instead which will install barebones needed to recover tables and work with apps like MapServer and GeoServer. If you have views that use things like distance / length etc, you'll need the full blown <code>legacy.sql</code>

You can later run uninstall_legacy.sql to get rid of the deprecated functions after you are done with restoring and cleanup.

2.7 Installing and Using the address standardizer

The address_standardizer extension used to be a separate package that required separate download. From PostGIS 2.2 on, it is now bundled in. For more information about the address_standardize, what it does, and how to configure it for your needs, refer to Chapter 12.

This standardizer can be used in conjunction with the PostGIS packaged tiger geocoder extension as a replacement for the Normalize_Address discussed. To use as replacement refer to Section 2.8.3. You can also use it as a building block for your own geocoder or use it to standardize your addresses for easier compare of addresses.

The address standardizer relies on PCRE which is usually already installed on many Nix systems, but you can download the latest at: http://www.pcre.org. If during Section 2.4.1, PCRE is found, then the address standardizer extension will automatically be built. If you have a custom pcre install you want to use instead, pass to configure --with-pcredir=/path/to/pcre where /path/to/pcre is the root folder for your pcre include and lib directories.

For Windows users, the PostGIS 2.1+ bundle is packaged with the address_standardizer already so no need to compile and can move straight to CREATE EXTENSION step.

Once you have installed, you can connect to your database and run the SQL:

```
CREATE EXTENSION address_standardizer;
```

The following test requires no rules, gaz, or lex tables

```
SELECT num, street, city, state, zip
FROM parse_address('1 Devonshire Place, Boston, MA 02109');
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 23 / 791

Output should be

2.7.1 Installing Regex::Assemble

Perl Regex:Assemble is no longer needed for compiling address_standardizer extension since the files it generates are part of the source tree. However if you need to edit the usps-st-city-orig.txt or usps-st-city-orig.txt usps-st-city-address-stcities.h which does require Regex:Assemble.

```
cpan Regexp::Assemble
```

or if you are on Ubuntu / Debian you might need to do

```
sudo perl -MCPAN -e "install Regexp::Assemble"
```

2.8 Installing, Upgrading Tiger Geocoder and loading data

Extras like Tiger geocoder may not be packaged in your PostGIS distribution. If you are missing the tiger geocoder extension or want a newer version than what your install comes with, then use the share/extension/postgis_tiger_geocoder.* files from the packages in Windows Unreleased Versions section for your version of PostgreSQL. Although these packages are for windows, the postgis_tiger_geocoder extension files will work on any OS since the extension is an SQL/plpgsql only extension.

2.8.1 Tiger Geocoder Enabling your PostGIS database: Using Extension

If you are using PostgreSQL 9.1+ and PostGIS 2.1+, you can take advantage of the new extension model for installing tiger geocoder. To do so:

- 1. First get binaries for PostGIS 2.1+ or compile and install as usual. This should install the necessary extension files as well for tiger geocoder.
- 2. Connect to your database via psql or pgAdmin or some other tool and run the following SQL commands. Note that if you are installing in a database that already has postgis, you don't need to do the first step. If you have fuzzystrmatch extension already installed, you don't need to do the second step either.

```
CREATE EXTENSION postgis;

CREATE EXTENSION fuzzystrmatch;

--this one is optional if you want to use the rules based standardizer ( ← pagc_normalize_address)

CREATE EXTENSION address_standardizer;

CREATE EXTENSION postgis_tiger_geocoder;
```

If you already have postgis_tiger_geocoder extension installed, and just want to update to the latest run:

```
ALTER EXTENSION postgis UPDATE;
ALTER EXTENSION postgis_tiger_geocoder UPDATE;
```

If you made custom entries or changes to tiger.loader_platform and tiger.loader_variables you may need to update these.

3. To confirm your install is working correctly, run this sql in your database:

```
SELECT na.address, na.streetname, na.streettypeabbrev, na.zip FROM normalize_address('1 Devonshire Place, Boston, MA 02109') AS na;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 24 / 791

Which should output

4. Create a new record in tiger.loader_platform table with the paths of your executables and server.

So for example to create a profile called debbie that follows sh convention. You would do:

```
INSERT INTO tiger.loader_platform(os, declare_sect, pgbin, wget, unzip_command, psql,  
    path_sep,
    loader, environ_set_command, county_process_command)

SELECT 'debbie', declare_sect, pgbin, wget, unzip_command, psql, path_sep,
    loader, environ_set_command, county_process_command

FROM tiger.loader_platform
WHERE os = 'sh';
```

And then edit the paths in the *declare_sect* column to those that fit Debbie's pg, unzip,shp2pgsql, psql, etc path locations. If you don't edit this loader_platform table, it will just contain common case locations of items and you'll have to edit the generated script after the script is generated.

- 5. Create a folder called gisdata on root of server or your local pc if you have a fast network connection to the server. This folder is where the tiger files will be downloaded to and processed. If you are not happy with having the folder on the root of the server, or simply want to change to a different folder for staging, then edit the field staging_fold in the tiger.loader_variables table.
- 6. Create a folder called temp in the gisdata folder or whereever you designated the staging_fold to be. This will be the folder where the loader extracts the downloaded tiger data.
- 7. Then run the Loader_Generate_Nation_Script SQL function make sure to use the name of your custom profile and copy the script to a .sh or .bat file. So for example to build the nation load:

```
psql -c "SELECT Loader_Generate_Nation_Script('debbie')" -d geocoder -tA > /gisdata/ \leftarrow nation_script_load.sh
```

8. Run the generated nation load commandline scripts.

```
cd /gisdata
sh nation_script_load.sh
```

9. After you are done running the nation script, you should have three tables in your tiger_data schema and they should be filled with data. Confirm you do by doing the following queries from psql or pgAdmin

```
SELECT count(*) FROM tiger_data.county_all;

count
-----
3233
(1 row)

SELECT count(*) FROM tiger_data.state_all;

count
-----
56
(1 row)
```

10. By default the tables corresponding to bg, tract, tabblock are not loaded. These tables are not used by the geocoder but are used by folks for population statistics. If you wish to load them as part of your state loads, run the following statement to enable them.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 25 / 791

```
UPDATE tiger.loader_lookuptables SET load = true WHERE load = false AND lookup_name IN \leftarrow ('tract', 'bg', 'tabblock');
```

Alternatively you can load just these tables after loading state data using the Loader_Generate_Census_Script

11. For each state you want to load data for, generate a state script Loader_Generate_Script.



Warning

DO NOT Generate the state script until you have already loaded the nation data, because the state script utilizes county list loaded by nation script.

```
12. psql -c "SELECT Loader_Generate_Script(ARRAY['MA'], 'debbie')" -d geocoder -tA > / ↔ gisdata/ma_load.sh
```

13. Run the generated commandline scripts.

```
cd /gisdata
sh ma_load.sh
```

14. After you are done loading all data or at a stopping point, it's a good idea to analyze all the tiger tables to update the stats (include inherited stats)

```
SELECT install_missing_indexes();
vacuum analyze verbose tiger.addr;
vacuum analyze verbose tiger.edges;
vacuum analyze verbose tiger.faces;
vacuum analyze verbose tiger.featnames;
vacuum analyze verbose tiger.place;
vacuum analyze verbose tiger.cousub;
vacuum analyze verbose tiger.county;
vacuum analyze verbose tiger.state;
vacuum analyze verbose tiger.zip_lookup_base;
vacuum analyze verbose tiger.zip_state;
vacuum analyze verbose tiger.zip_state_loc;
```

2.8.1.1 Converting a Tiger Geocoder Regular Install to Extension Model

If you installed the tiger geocoder without using the extension model, you can convert to the extension model as follows:

- 1. Follow instructions in Section 2.8.5 for the non-extension model upgrade.
- 2. Connect to your database with psql or pgAdmin and run the following command:

```
CREATE EXTENSION postgis_tiger_geocoder FROM unpackaged;
```

2.8.2 Tiger Geocoder Enabling your PostGIS database: Not Using Extensions

First install PostGIS using the prior instructions.

If you don't have an extras folder, download http://download.osgeo.org/postgis/source/postgis-2.3.9.tar.gz

tar xvfz postgis-2.3.9.tar.gz

cd postgis-2.3.9/extras/tiger_geocoder

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 26 / 791

Edit the tiger_loader_2015.sql (or latest loader file you find, unless you want to load different year) to the paths of your executables server etc or alternatively you can update the loader_platform table once installed. If you don't edit this file or the loader_platform table, it will just contain common case locations of items and you'll have to edit the generated script after the fact when you run the Loader_Generate_Nation_Script and Loader_Generate_Script SQL functions.

If you are installing Tiger geocoder for the first time edit either the <code>create_geocode.bat</code> script If you are on windows or the <code>create_geocode.sh</code> if you are on Linux/Unix/Mac OSX with your PostgreSQL specific settings and run the corresponding script from the commandline.

Verify that you now have a tiger schema in your database and that it is part of your database search_path. If it is not, add it with a command something along the line of:

```
ALTER DATABASE geocoder SET search_path=public, tiger;
```

The normalizing address functionality works more or less without any data except for tricky addresses. Run this test and verify things look like this:

2.8.3 Using Address Standardizer Extension with Tiger geocoder

One of the many complaints of folks is the address normalizer function Normalize_Address function that normalizes an address for prepping before geocoding. The normalizer is far from perfect and trying to patch its imperfectness takes a vast amount of resources. As such we have integrated with another project that has a much better address standardizer engine. To use this new address_standardizer, you compile the extension as described in Section 2.7 and install as an extension in your database.

Once you install this extension in the same database as you have installed postgis_tiger_geocoder, then the Pagc_Normalize_Accan be used instead of Normalize_Address. This extension is tiger agnostic, so can be used with other data sources such as international addresses. The tiger geocoder extension does come packaged with its own custom versions of rules table (tiger.pagc_rules), gaz table (tiger.pagc_gaz), and lex table (tiger.pagc_lex). These you can add and update to improve your standardizing experience for your own needs.

2.8.4 Loading Tiger Data

The instructions for loading data are available in a more detailed form in the extras/tiger_geocoder/tiger_2011/ README. This just includes the general steps.

The load process downloads data from the census website for the respective nation files, states requested, extracts the files, and then loads each state into its own separate set of state tables. Each state table inherits from the tables defined in tiger schema so that its sufficient to just query those tables to access all the data and drop a set of state tables at any time using the Drop_State_Tables_Generate_Script if you need to reload a state or just don't need a state anymore.

In order to be able to load data you'll need the following tools:

- A tool to unzip the zip files from census website.
 For Unix like systems: unzip executable which is usually already installed on most Unix like platforms.
 For Windows, 7-zip which is a free compress/uncompress tool you can download from http://www.7-zip.org/
- shp2pgsql commandline which is installed by default when you install PostGIS.
- wget which is a web grabber tool usually installed on most Unix/Linux systems.
 If you are on windows, you can get pre-compiled binaries from http://gnuwin32.sourceforge.net/packages/wget.htm

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 27 / 791

If you are upgrading from tiger_2010, you'll need to first generate and run Drop_Nation_Tables_Generate_Script. Before you load any state data, you need to load the nation wide data which you do with Loader_Generate_Nation_Script. Which will generate a loader script for you. Loader_Generate_Nation_Script is a one-time step that should be done for upgrading (from 2010) and for new installs.

To load state data refer to Loader_Generate_Script to generate a data load script for your platform for the states you desire. Note that you can install these piecemeal. You don't have to load all the states you want all at once. You can load them as you need them.

After the states you desire have been loaded, make sure to run the:

```
SELECT install_missing_indexes();
```

as described in Install_Missing_Indexes.

To test that things are working as they should, try to run a geocode on an address in your state using Geocode

2.8.5 Upgrading your Tiger Geocoder Install

If you have Tiger Geocoder packaged with 2.0+ already installed, you can upgrade the functions at any time even from an interim tar ball if there are fixes you badly need. This will only work for Tiger geocoder not installed with extensions.

If you don't have an extras folder, download http://download.osgeo.org/postgis/source/postgis-2.3.9.tar.gz

tar xvfz postgis-2.3.9.tar.gz

cd postgis-2.3.9/extras/tiger_geocoder/tiger_2011

Locate the upgrade_geocoder.bat script If you are on windows or the upgrade_geocoder.sh if you are on Linux/U-nix/Mac OSX. Edit the file to have your postgis database credentials.

If you are upgrading from 2010 or 2011, make sure to unremark out the loader script line so you get the latest script for loading 2012 data.

Then run th corresponding script from the commandline.

Next drop all nation tables and load up the new ones. Generate a drop script with this SQL statement as detailed in Drop_Nation_Tables_0

```
SELECT drop_nation_tables_generate_script();
```

Run the generated drop SQL statements.

Generate a nation load script with this SELECT statement as detailed in Loader_Generate_Nation_Script

For windows

```
SELECT loader_generate_nation_script('windows');
```

For unix/linux

```
SELECT loader_generate_nation_script('sh');
```

Refer to Section 2.8.4 for instructions on how to run the generate script. This only needs to be done once.



Note

You can have a mix of 2010/2011 state tables and can upgrade each state separately. Before you upgrade a state to 2011, you first need to drop the 2010 tables for that state using Drop_State_Tables_Generate_Script.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 28 / 791

2.9 Create a spatially-enabled database from a template

Some packaged distributions of PostGIS (in particular the Win32 installers for PostGIS >= 1.1.5) load the PostGIS functions into a template database called template_postgis. If the template_postgis database exists in your PostgreSQL installation then it is possible for users and/or applications to create spatially-enabled databases using a single command. Note that in both cases, the database user must have been granted the privilege to create new databases.

From the shell:

```
# createdb -T template_postgis my_spatial_db
```

From SOL:

```
postgres=# CREATE DATABASE my_spatial_db TEMPLATE=template_postgis
```

2.10 Upgrading

Upgrading existing spatial databases can be tricky as it requires replacement or introduction of new PostGIS object definitions.

Unfortunately not all definitions can be easily replaced in a live database, so sometimes your best bet is a dump/reload process.

PostGIS provides a SOFT UPGRADE procedure for minor or bugfix releases, and a HARD UPGRADE procedure for major releases.

Before attempting to upgrade PostGIS, it is always worth to backup your data. If you use the -Fc flag to pg_dump you will always be able to restore the dump with a HARD UPGRADE.

2.10.1 Soft upgrade

If you installed your database using extensions, you'll need to upgrade using the extension model as well. If you installed using the old sql script way, then you should upgrade using the sql script way. Please refer to the appropriate.

2.10.1.1 Soft Upgrade Pre 9.1+ or without extensions

This section applies only to those who installed PostGIS not using extensions. If you have extensions and try to upgrade with this approach you'll get messages like:

```
can't drop ... because postgis extension depends on it
```

After compiling and installing (make install) you should find a postgis_upgrade.sql and rtpostgis_upgrade.sql in the installation folders. For example /usr/share/postgresql/9.3/contrib/postgis_upgrade.sql. Install the postgis_upgrade.sql. If you have raster functionality installed, you will also need to install the /usr/share/postgresql/9.3/contrib/postgis_upgrade.sql. If you are moving from PostGIS 1.* to PostGIS 2.* or from PostGIS 2.* prior to r7409, you need to do a HARD UPGRADE.

```
psql -f postgis_upgrade.sql -d your_spatial_database
```

The same procedure applies to raster and topology extensions, with upgrade files named rtpostgis_upgrade*.sql and topology_upgrade*.sql respectively. If you need them:

```
psql -f rtpostgis_upgrade.sql -d your_spatial_database
```

```
psql -f topology_upgrade.sql -d your_spatial_database
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 29 / 791



Note

If you can't find the postgis_upgrade*.sql specific for upgrading your version you are using a version too early for a soft upgrade and need to do a HARD UPGRADE.

The PostGIS_Full_Version function should inform you about the need to run this kind of upgrade using a "procs need upgrade" message.

2.10.1.2 Soft Upgrade 9.1+ using extensions

If you originally installed PostGIS with extensions, then you need to upgrade using extensions as well. Doing a minor upgrade with extensions, is fairly painless.

```
ALTER EXTENSION postgis UPDATE TO "2.3.9";
ALTER EXTENSION postgis_topology UPDATE TO "2.3.9";
```

If you get an error notice something like:

```
No migration path defined for ... to 2.3.9
```

Then you'll need to backup your database, create a fresh one as described in Section 2.5 and then restore your backup ontop of this new database.

If you get a notice message like:

```
Version "2.3.9" of extension "postgis" is already installed
```

Then everything is already up to date and you can safely ignore it. **UNLESS** you're attempting to upgrade from an SVN version to the next (which doesn't get a new version number); in that case you can append "next" to the version string, and next time you'll need to drop the "next" suffix again:

```
ALTER EXTENSION postgis UPDATE TO "2.3.9next";
ALTER EXTENSION postgis_topology UPDATE TO "2.3.9next";
```



Note

If you installed PostGIS originally without a version specified, you can often skip the reinstallation of postgis extension before restoring since the backup just has <code>CREATE EXTENSION postgis</code> and thus picks up the newest latest version during restore.

2.10.2 Hard upgrade

By HARD UPGRADE we mean full dump/reload of postgis-enabled databases. You need a HARD UPGRADE when PostGIS objects' internal storage changes or when SOFT UPGRADE is not possible. The Release Notes appendix reports for each version whether you need a dump/reload (HARD UPGRADE) to upgrade.

The dump/reload process is assisted by the postgis_restore.pl script which takes care of skipping from the dump all definitions which belong to PostGIS (including old ones), allowing you to restore your schemas and data into a database with PostGIS installed without getting duplicate symbol errors or bringing forward deprecated objects.

Supplementary instructions for windows users are available at Windows Hard upgrade.

The Procedure is as follows:

1. Create a "custom-format" dump of the database you want to upgrade (let's call it olddb) include binary blobs (-b) and verbose (-v) output. The user can be the owner of the db, need not be postgres super account.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 30 / 791

```
pg_dump -h localhost -p 5432 -U postgres -Fc -b -v -f "/somepath/olddb.backup" olddb
```

2. Do a fresh install of PostGIS in a new database -- we'll refer to this database as newdb. Please refer to Section 2.6 and Section 2.5 for instructions on how to do this.

The spatial_ref_sys entries found in your dump will be restored, but they will not override existing ones in spatial_ref_sys. This is to ensure that fixes in the official set will be properly propagated to restored databases. If for any reason you really want your own overrides of standard entries just don't load the spatial_ref_sys.sql file when creating the new db.

If your database is really old or you know you've been using long deprecated functions in your views and functions, you might need to load legacy.sql for all your functions and views etc. to properly come back. Only do this if _really_ needed. Consider upgrading your views and functions before dumping instead, if possible. The deprecated functions can be later removed by loading uninstall_legacy.sql.

3. Restore your backup into your fresh newdb database using postgis_restore.pl. Unexpected errors, if any, will be printed to the standard error stream by psql. Keep a log of those.

```
perl utils/postgis_restore.pl "/somepath/olddb.backup" | psql -h localhost -p 5432 -U \,\leftrightarrow\, postgres newdb 2> errors.txt
```

Errors may arise in the following cases:

- 1. Some of your views or functions make use of deprecated PostGIS objects. In order to fix this you may try loading legacy.sql script prior to restore or you'll have to restore to a version of PostGIS which still contains those objects and try a migration again after porting your code. If the legacy.sql way works for you, don't forget to fix your code to stop using deprecated functions and drop them loading uninstall_legacy.sql.
- 2. Some custom records of spatial_ref_sys in dump file have an invalid SRID value. Valid SRID values are bigger than 0 and smaller than 999000. Values in the 999000.999999 range are reserved for internal use while values > 999999 can't be used at all. All your custom records with invalid SRIDs will be retained, with those > 999999 moved into the reserved range, but the spatial_ref_sys table would lose a check constraint guarding for that invariant to hold and possibly also its primary key (when multiple invalid SRIDS get converted to the same reserved SRID value).

In order to fix this you should copy your custom SRS to a SRID with a valid value (maybe in the 910000..910999 range), convert all your tables to the new srid (see UpdateGeometrySRID), delete the invalid entry from spatial_ref_sys and reconstruct the check(s) with:

```
ALTER TABLE spatial_ref_sys ADD CONSTRAINT spatial_ref_sys_srid_check check (srid > 0 ↔
AND srid < 999000 );

ALTER TABLE spatial_ref_sys ADD PRIMARY KEY(srid));
```

2.11 Common Problems during installation

There are several things to check when your installation or upgrade doesn't go as you expected.

1. Check that you have installed PostgreSQL 9.2 or newer, and that you are compiling against the same version of the PostgreSQL source as the version of PostgreSQL that is running. Mix-ups can occur when your (Linux) distribution has already installed PostgreSQL, or you have otherwise installed PostgreSQL before and forgotten about it. PostGIS will only work with PostgreSQL 9.2 or newer, and strange, unexpected error messages will result if you use an older version. To check the version of PostgreSQL which is running, connect to the database using psql and run this query:

```
SELECT version();
```

If you are running an RPM based distribution, you can check for the existence of pre-installed packages using the **rpm** command as follows: **rpm -qa | grep postgresql**

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 31 / 791

2. If your upgrade fails, make sure you are restoring into a database that already has PostGIS installed.

```
SELECT postgis_full_version();
```

Also check that configure has correctly detected the location and version of PostgreSQL, the Proj4 library and the GEOS library.

1. The output from configure is used to generate the postgis_config.h file. Check that the POSTGIS_PGSQL_VERS ION, POSTGIS_PROJ_VERSION and POSTGIS_GEOS_VERSION variables have been set correctly.

2.12 Loader/Dumper

The data loader and dumper are built and installed automatically as part of the PostGIS build. To build and install them manually:

```
# cd postgis-2.3.9/loader
# make
# make install
```

The loader is called <code>shp2pgsq1</code> and converts ESRI Shape files into SQL suitable for loading in PostGIS/PostgreSQL. The dumper is called <code>pgsq12shp</code> and converts PostGIS tables (or queries) into ESRI Shape files. For more verbose documentation, see the online help, and the manual pages.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 32 / 791

Chapter 3

PostGIS Frequently Asked Questions

- 1. Where can I find tutorials, guides and workshops on working with PostGIS
 - OpenGeo has a step by step tutorial guide workshop Introduction to PostGIS. It includes packaged data as well as intro to working with OpenGeo Suite. It is probably the best tutorial on PostGIS.BostonGIS also has a PostGIS almost idiot's guide on getting started. That one is more focused on the windows user.
- 2. My applications and desktop tools worked with PostGIS 1.5,but they don't work with PostGIS 2.0. How do I fix this?
 - A lot of deprecated functions were removed from the PostGIS code base in PostGIS 2.0. This has affected applications in addition to third-party tools such as Geoserver, MapServer, QuantumGIS, and OpenJump to name a few. There are a couple of ways to resolve this. For the third-party apps, you can try to upgrade to the latest versions of these which have many of these issues fixed. For your own code, you can change your code to not use the functions removed. Most of these functions are non ST_ aliases of ST_Union, ST_Length etc. and as a last resort, install the whole of legacy.sql or just the portions of legacy.sql you need.The legacy.sql file is located in the same folder as postgis.sql. You can install this file after you have installed postgis.sql and spatial_ref_sys.sql to get back all the 200 some-odd old functions we removed.
- 3. When I load OpenStreetMap data with osm2pgsql, I'm getting an error failed: ERROR: operator class "gist_geometry_ops" does not exist for access method "gist" Error occurred. This worked fine in PostGIS 1.5.
 - In PostGIS 2, the default geometry operator class gist_geometry_ops was changed to gist_geometry_ops_2d and the gist_geometry_ops was completely removed. This was done because PostGIS 2 also introduced Nd spatial indexes for 3D support and the old name was deemed confusing and a misnomer. Some older applications that as part of the process create tables and indexes, explicitly referenced the operator class name. This was unnecessary if you want the default 2D index. So if you manage said good, change index creation from:BAD:

```
CREATE INDEX idx_my_table_geom ON my_table USING gist(geom gist_geometry_ops);
```

To GOOD:

```
CREATE INDEX idx_my_table_geom ON my_table USING gist(geom);
```

The only case where you WILL need to specify the operator class is if you want a 3D spatial index as follows:

```
CREATE INDEX idx_my_super3d_geom ON my_super3d USING gist(geom gist_geometry_ops_nd);
```

If you are unfortunate to be stuck with compiled code you can't change that has the old gist_geometry_ops hard-coded, then you can create the old class using the <code>legacy_gist.sql</code> packaged in PostGIS 2.0.2+. However if you use this fix, you are advised to at a later point drop the index and recreate it without the operator class. This will save you grief in the future when you need to upgrade again.

4. I'm running PostgreSQL 9.0 and I can no longer read/view geometries in OpenJump, Safe FME, and some other tools? In PostgreSQL 9.0+, the default encoding for bytea data has been changed to hex and older JDBC drivers still assume escape format. This has affected some applications such as Java applications using older JDBC drivers or .NET applications that use the older npgsql driver that expect the old behavior of ST_AsBinary. There are two approaches to

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 33 / 791

getting this to work again. You can upgrade your JDBC driver to the latest PostgreSQL 9.0 version which you can get from http://jdbc.postgresql.org/download.htmlIf you are running a .NET app, you can use Npgsql 2.0.11 or higher which you can download from http://pgfoundry.org/frs/?group_id=1000140 and as described on Francisco Figueiredo's NpgSQL 2.0.11 released blog entryIf upgrading your PostgreSQL driver is not an option, then you can set the default back to the old behavior with the following change:

```
ALTER DATABASE mypostgisdb SET bytea_output='escape';
```

5. I tried to use PgAdmin to view my geometry column and it is blank, what gives?

PgAdmin doesn't show anything for large geometries. The best ways to verify you do have data in your geometry columns are?

```
-- this should return no records if all your geom fields are filled in SELECT somefield FROM mytable WHERE geom IS NULL;
```

```
-- To tell just how large your geometry is do a query of the form
--which will tell you the most number of points you have in any of your geometry 
columns
SELECT MAX(ST_NPoints(geom)) FROM sometable;
```

6. What kind of geometric objects can I store?

You can store Point, LineString, Polygon, MultiPoint, MultiLineString, MultiPolygon, and GeometryCollection geometries. In PostGIS 2.0 and above you can also store TINS and Polyhedral Surfaces in the basic geometry type. These are specified in the Open GIS Well Known Text Format (with Z, M, and ZM extensions). There are three data types currently supported. The standard OGC geometry data type which uses a planar coordinate system for measurement, the geography data type which uses a geodetic coordinate system, with calculations on either a sphere or spheroid. The newest family member of the PostGIS spatial type family is raster for storing and analyzing raster data. Raster has its very own FAQ. Refer to Chapter 10 and Chapter 9 for more details.

7. I'm all confused. Which data store should I use geometry or geography?

Short Answer: geography is a newer data type that supports long range distances measurements, but most computations on it are slower than they are on geometry. If you use geography, you don't need to learn much about planar coordinate systems. Geography is generally best if all you care about is measuring distances and lengths and you have data from all over the world. Geometry data type is an older data type that has many more functions supporting it, enjoys greater support from third party tools, and operations on it are generally faster -- sometimes as much as 10 fold faster for larger geometries. Geometry is best if you are pretty comfortable with spatial reference systems or you are dealing with localized data where all your data fits in a single spatial reference system (SRID), or you need to do a lot of spatial processing. Note: It is fairly easy to do one-off conversions between the two types to gain the benefits of each. Refer to Section 14.11 to see what is currently supported and what is not. Long Answer: Refer to our more lengthy discussion in the Section 4.2.2 and function type matrix.

8. I have more intense questions about geography, such as how big of a geographic region can I stuff in a geography column and still get reasonable answers. Are there limitations such as poles, everything in the field must fit in a hemisphere (like SQL Server 2008 has), speed etc?

Your questions are too deep and complex to be adequately answered in this section. Please refer to our Section 4.2.3.

9. How do I insert a GIS object into the database?

First, you need to create a table with a column of type "geometry" or "geography" to hold your GIS data. Storing geography type data is a little different than storing geometry. Refer to Section 4.2.1 for details on storing geography. For geometry: Connect to your database with psql and try the following SQL:

```
CREATE TABLE gtest ( gid serial primary key, name varchar(20)
    , geom geometry(LINESTRING) );
```

If the geometry column definition fails, you probably have not loaded the PostGIS functions and objects into this database or are using a pre-2.0 version of PostGIS. See the Section 2.4. Then, you can insert a geometry into the table using a SQL insert statement. The GIS object itself is formatted using the OpenGIS Consortium "well-known text" format:

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 34 / 791

```
INSERT INTO gtest (ID, NAME, GEOM)
VALUES (
   1,
   'First Geometry',
   ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(2 3,4 5,6 5,7 8)')
);
```

For more information about other GIS objects, see the object reference. To view your GIS data in the table:

```
SELECT id, name, ST_AsText(geom) AS geom FROM gtest;
```

The return value should look something like this:

10. How do I construct a spatial query?

The same way you construct any other database query, as an SQL combination of return values, functions, and boolean tests. For spatial queries, there are two issues that are important to keep in mind while constructing your query: is there a spatial index you can make use of; and, are you doing expensive calculations on a large number of geometries. In general, you will want to use the "intersects operator" (&&) which tests whether the bounding boxes of features intersect. The reason the && operator is useful is because if a spatial index is available to speed up the test, the && operator will make use of this. This can make queries much much faster. You will also make use of spatial functions, such as Distance(), ST_Intersects(), ST_Contains() and ST_Within(), among others, to narrow down the results of your search. Most spatial queries include both an indexed test and a spatial function test. The index test serves to limit the number of return tuples to only tuples that *might* meet the condition of interest. The spatial functions are then use to test the condition exactly.

```
SELECT id, the_geom
FROM thetable
WHERE
ST_Contains(the_geom, 'POLYGON((0 0, 0 10, 10 10, 10 0, 0 0))');
```

11. How do I speed up spatial queries on large tables?

Fast queries on large tables is the *raison d'etre* of spatial databases (along with transaction support) so having a good index is important. To build a spatial index on a table with a geometry column, use the "CREATE INDEX" function as follows:

```
CREATE INDEX [indexname] ON [tablename] USING GIST ( [geometrycolumn] );
```

The "USING GIST" option tells the server to use a GiST (Generalized Search Tree) index.



Note

GiST indexes are assumed to be lossy. Lossy indexes uses a proxy object (in the spatial case, a bounding box) for building the index.

You should also ensure that the PostgreSQL query planner has enough information about your index to make rational decisions about when to use it. To do this, you have to "gather statistics" on your geometry tables. For PostgreSQL 8.0.x and greater, just run the VACUUM ANALYZE command. For PostgreSQL 7.4.x and below, run the SELECT UP-DATE_GEOMETRY_STATS() command.

12. Why aren't PostgreSQL R-Tree indexes supported?

Early versions of PostGIS used the PostgreSQL R-Tree indexes. However, PostgreSQL R-Trees have been completely discarded since version 0.6, and spatial indexing is provided with an R-Tree-over-GiST scheme. Our tests have shown search speed for native R-Tree and GiST to be comparable. Native PostgreSQL R-Trees have two limitations which make them undesirable for use with GIS features (note that these limitations are due to the current PostgreSQL native R-Tree implementation, not the R-Tree concept in general):

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 35 / 791

• R-Tree indexes in PostgreSQL cannot handle features which are larger than 8K in size. GiST indexes can, using the "lossy" trick of substituting the bounding box for the feature itself.

• R-Tree indexes in PostgreSQL are not "null safe", so building an index on a geometry column which contains null geometries will fail.

13. Why should I use the AddGeometryColumn () function and all the other OpenGIS stuff?

If you do not want to use the OpenGIS support functions, you do not have to. Simply create tables as in older versions, defining your geometry columns in the CREATE statement. All your geometries will have SRIDs of -1, and the OpenGIS meta-data tables will *not* be filled in properly. However, this will cause most applications based on PostGIS to fail, and it is generally suggested that you do use AddGeometryColumn() to create geometry tables.MapServer is one application which makes use of the geometry_columns meta-data. Specifically, MapServer can use the SRID of the geometry column to do on-the-fly reprojection of features into the correct map projection.

14. What is the best way to find all objects within a radius of another object?

To use the database most efficiently, it is best to do radius queries which combine the radius test with a bounding box test: the bounding box test uses the spatial index, giving fast access to a subset of data which the radius test is then applied to. The ST_DWithin(geometry, geometry, distance) function is a handy way of performing an indexed distance search. It works by creating a search rectangle large enough to enclose the distance radius, then performing an exact distance search on the indexed subset of results. For example, to find all objects with 100 meters of POINT(1000 1000) the following query would work well:

```
SELECT * FROM geotable
WHERE ST_DWithin(geocolumn, 'POINT(1000 1000)', 100.0);
```

15. How do I perform a coordinate reprojection as part of a query?

To perform a reprojection, both the source and destination coordinate systems must be defined in the SPATIAL_REF_SYS table, and the geometries being reprojected must already have an SRID set on them. Once that is done, a reprojection is as simple as referring to the desired destination SRID. The below projects a geometry to NAD 83 long lat. The below will only work if the srid of the geom is not -1 (not undefined spatial ref)

```
SELECT ST_Transform(the_geom, 4269) FROM geotable;
```

16. I did an ST_AsEWKT and ST_AsText on my rather large geometry and it returned blank field. What gives?

You are probably using PgAdmin or some other tool that doesn't output large text. If your geometry is big enough, it will appear blank in these tools. Use PSQL if you really need to see it or output it in WKT.

```
--To check number of geometries are really blank
SELECT count(gid) FROM geotable WHERE the_geom IS NULL;
```

17. When I do an ST_Intersects, it says my two geometries don't intersect when I KNOW THEY DO. What gives?

This generally happens in two common cases. Your geometry is invalid -- check ST_IsValid or you are assuming they intersect because ST_AsText truncates the numbers and you have lots of decimals after it is not showing you.

18. I am releasing software that uses PostGIS, does that mean my software has to be licensed using the GPL like PostGIS? Will I have to publish all my code if I use PostGIS?

Almost certainly not. As an example, consider Oracle database running on Linux. Linux is GPL, Oracle is not, does Oracle running on Linux have to be distributed using the GPL? No. So your software can use a PostgreSQL/PostGIS database as much as it wants and be under any license you like. The only exception would be if you made changes to the PostGIS source code, and distributed your changed version of PostGIS. In that case you would have to share the code of your changed PostGIS (but not the code of applications running on top of it). Even in this limited case, you would still only have to distribute source code to people you distributed binaries to. The GPL does not require that you *publish* your source code, only that you share it with people you give binaries to.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 36 / 791

Chapter 4

Using PostGIS: Data Management and Queries

4.1 GIS Objects

The GIS objects supported by PostGIS are a superset of the "Simple Features" defined by the OpenGIS Consortium (OGC). As of version 0.9, PostGIS supports all the objects and functions specified in the OGC "Simple Features for SQL" specification.

PostGIS extends the standard with support for 3DZ,3DM and 4D coordinates.

4.1.1 OpenGIS WKB and WKT

The OpenGIS specification defines two standard ways of expressing spatial objects: the Well-Known Text (WKT) form and the Well-Known Binary (WKB) form. Both WKT and WKB include information about the type of the object and the coordinates which form the object.

Examples of the text representations (WKT) of the spatial objects of the features are as follows:

- POINT(00)
- LINESTRING(0 0,1 1,1 2)
- POLYGON((0 0,4 0,4 4,0 4,0 0),(1 1, 2 1, 2 2, 1 2,1 1))
- MULTIPOINT((0 0),(1 2))
- MULTILINESTRING((0 0,1 1,1 2),(2 3,3 2,5 4))
- MULTIPOLYGON(((0 0,4 0,4 4,0 4,0 0),(1 1,2 1,2 2,1 2,1 1)), ((-1 -1,-1 -2,-2 -2,-2 -1,-1 -1)))
- GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(POINT(2 3),LINESTRING(2 3,3 4))

The OpenGIS specification also requires that the internal storage format of spatial objects include a spatial referencing system identifier (SRID). The SRID is required when creating spatial objects for insertion into the database.

Input/Output of these formats are available using the following interfaces:

```
bytea WKB = ST_AsBinary(geometry);
text WKT = ST_AsText(geometry);
geometry = ST_GeomFromWKB(bytea WKB, SRID);
geometry = ST_GeometryFromText(text WKT, SRID);
```

For example, a valid insert statement to create and insert an OGC spatial object would be:

```
INSERT INTO geotable ( the_geom, the_name )
  VALUES ( ST_GeomFromText('POINT(-126.4 45.32)', 312), 'A Place');
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 37 / 791

4.1.2 PostGIS EWKB, EWKT and Canonical Forms

OGC formats only support 2d geometries, and the associated SRID is *never* embedded in the input/output representations.

PostGIS extended formats are currently superset of OGC one (every valid WKB/WKT is a valid EWKB/EWKT) but this might vary in the future, specifically if OGC comes out with a new format conflicting with our extensions. Thus you SHOULD NOT rely on this feature!

PostGIS EWKB/EWKT add 3dm,3dz,4d coordinates support and embedded SRID information.

Examples of the text representations (EWKT) of the extended spatial objects of the features are as follows.

- POINT(0 0 0) -- XYZ
- SRID=32632;POINT(0 0) -- XY with SRID
- POINTM(0 0 0) -- XYM
- POINT(0 0 0 0) -- XYZM
- SRID=4326;MULTIPOINTM(0 0 0,1 2 1) -- XYM with SRID
- MULTILINESTRING((0 0 0,1 1 0,1 2 1),(2 3 1,3 2 1,5 4 1))
- POLYGON((0 0 0,4 0 0,4 4 0,0 4 0,0 0 0),(1 1 0,2 1 0,2 2 0,1 2 0,1 1 0))
- MULTIPOLYGON(((0 0 0,4 0 0,4 4 0,0 4 0,0 4 0,0 0 0),(1 1 0,2 1 0,2 2 0,1 2 0,1 1 0)),((-1 -1 0,-1 -2 0,-2 -2 0,-2 -1 0,-1 -1 0)))
- GEOMETRYCOLLECTIONM(POINTM(2 3 9), LINESTRINGM(2 3 4, 3 4 5))
- MULTICURVE((0 0, 5 5), CIRCULARSTRING(4 0, 4 4, 8 4))
- POLYHEDRALSURFACE(((0 0 0, 0 0 1, 0 1 1, 0 1 0, 0 0 0)), ((0 0 0, 0 1 0, 1 1 0, 1 0 0, 0 0 0)), ((0 0 0, 1 0 0, 1 0 1, 0 0 1, 0 0 0)), ((1 1 0, 1 1 1, 1 0 1, 1 0 0, 1 1 0)), ((0 1 0, 0 1 1, 1 1 1, 1 1 0, 0 1 0)), ((0 0 1, 1 0 1, 1 1, 0 1 1, 0 0 1)))
- TRIANGLE ((0 0, 0 9, 9 0, 0 0))
- TIN(((0 0 0, 0 0 1, 0 1 0, 0 0 0)), ((0 0 0, 0 1 0, 1 1 0, 0 0 0)))

Input/Output of these formats are available using the following interfaces:

```
bytea EWKB = ST_AsEWKB(geometry);
text EWKT = ST_AsEWKT(geometry);
geometry = ST_GeomFromEWKB(bytea EWKB);
geometry = ST_GeomFromEWKT(text EWKT);
```

For example, a valid insert statement to create and insert a PostGIS spatial object would be:

```
INSERT INTO geotable ( the_geom, the_name )
  VALUES ( ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=312;POINTM(-126.4 45.32 15)'), 'A Place' )
```

The "canonical forms" of a PostgreSQL type are the representations you get with a simple query (without any function call) and the one which is guaranteed to be accepted with a simple insert, update or copy. For the postgis 'geometry' type these are:

```
- Output
- binary: EWKB
ascii: HEXEWKB (EWKB in hex form)
- Input
- binary: EWKB
ascii: HEXEWKB|EWKT
```

For example this statement reads EWKT and returns HEXEWKB in the process of canonical ascii input/output:

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 38 / 791

4.1.3 SQL-MM Part 3

The SQL Multimedia Applications Spatial specification extends the simple features for SQL spec by defining a number of circularly interpolated curves.

The SQL-MM definitions include 3dm, 3dz and 4d coordinates, but do not allow the embedding of SRID information.

The well-known text extensions are not yet fully supported. Examples of some simple curved geometries are shown below:

• CIRCULARSTRING(0 0, 1 1, 1 0)

CIRCULARSTRING(0 0, 4 0, 4 4, 0 4, 0 0)

The CIRCULARSTRING is the basic curve type, similar to a LINESTRING in the linear world. A single segment required three points, the start and end points (first and third) and any other point on the arc. The exception to this is for a closed circle, where the start and end points are the same. In this case the second point MUST be the center of the arc, ie the opposite side of the circle. To chain arcs together, the last point of the previous arc becomes the first point of the next arc, just like in LINESTRING. This means that a valid circular string must have an odd number of points greated than 1.

• COMPOUNDCURVE(CIRCULARSTRING(0 0, 1 1, 1 0),(1 0, 0 1))

A compound curve is a single, continuous curve that has both curved (circular) segments and linear segments. That means that in addition to having well-formed components, the end point of every component (except the last) must be coincident with the start point of the following component.

• CURVEPOLYGON(CIRCULARSTRING(0 0, 4 0, 4 4, 0 4, 0 0),(1 1, 3 3, 3 1, 1 1))

Example compound curve in a curve polygon: CURVEPOLYGON(COMPOUNDCURVE(CIRCULARSTRING(0 0,2 0, 2 1, 2 3, 4 3),(4 3, 4 5, 1 4, 0 0)), CIRCULARSTRING(1.7 1, 1.4 0.4, 1.6 0.4, 1.6 0.5, 1.7 1))

A CURVEPOLYGON is just like a polygon, with an outer ring and zero or more inner rings. The difference is that a ring can take the form of a circular string, linear string or compound string.

As of PostGIS 1.4 PostGIS supports compound curves in a curve polygon.

• MULTICURVE((0 0, 5 5), CIRCULARSTRING(4 0, 4 4, 8 4))

The MULTICURVE is a collection of curves, which can include linear strings, circular strings or compound strings.

• MULTISURFACE(CURVEPOLYGON(CIRCULARSTRING(0 0, 4 0, 4 4, 0 4, 0 0),(1 1, 3 3, 3 1, 1 1)),((10 10, 14 12, 11 10, 10 10),(11 11, 11.5 11, 11 11.5, 11 11)))

This is a collection of surfaces, which can be (linear) polygons or curve polygons.



Note

PostGIS prior to 1.4 does not support compound curves in a curve polygon, but PostGIS 1.4 and above do support the use of Compound Curves in a Curve Polygon.



Note

All floating point comparisons within the SQL-MM implementation are performed to a specified tolerance, currently 1E-8.

4.2 PostGIS Geography Type

The geography type provides native support for spatial features represented on "geographic" coordinates (sometimes called "geodetic" coordinates, or "lat/lon", or "lon/lat"). Geographic coordinates are spherical coordinates expressed in angular units (degrees).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 39 / 791

The basis for the PostGIS geometry type is a plane. The shortest path between two points on the plane is a straight line. That means calculations on geometries (areas, distances, lengths, intersections, etc) can be calculated using cartesian mathematics and straight line vectors.

The basis for the PostGIS geographic type is a sphere. The shortest path between two points on the sphere is a great circle arc. That means that calculations on geographies (areas, distances, lengths, intersections, etc) must be calculated on the sphere, using more complicated mathematics. For more accurate measurements, the calculations must take the actual spheroidal shape of the world into account, and the mathematics becomes very complicated indeed.

Because the underlying mathematics is much more complicated, there are fewer functions defined for the geography type than for the geometry type. Over time, as new algorithms are added, the capabilities of the geography type will expand.

One restriction is that it only supports WGS 84 long lat (SRID:4326). It uses a new data type called geography. None of the GEOS functions support this new type. As a workaround one can convert back and forth between geometry and geography types.

The new geography type uses the PostgreSQL 8.3+ typmod definition format so that a table with a geography field can be added in a single step. All the standard OGC formats except for curves are supported.

4.2.1 Geography Basics

The geography type only supports the simplest of simple features. Standard geometry type data will autocast to geography if it is of SRID 4326. You can also use the EWKT and EWKB conventions to insert data.

• POINT: Creating a table with 2d point geometry:

```
CREATE TABLE testgeog(gid serial PRIMARY KEY, the_geog geography(POINT, 4326));

Creating a table with z coordinate point

CREATE TABLE testgeog(gid serial PRIMARY KEY, the_geog geography(POINTZ, 4326));
```

- LINESTRING
- POLYGON
- MULTIPOINT
- MULTILINESTRING
- MULTIPOLYGON
- GEOMETRYCOLLECTION

The new geography fields don't get registered in the geometry_columns. They get registered in a new view called geography_columns which is a view against the system catalogs so is always automatically kept up to date without need for an AddGeom... like function.

Now, check the "geography_columns" view and see that your table is listed.

You can create a new table with a GEOGRAPHY column using the CREATE TABLE syntax. Unlike GEOMETRY, there is no need to run a separate AddGeometryColumns() process to register the column in metadata.

```
CREATE TABLE global_points (
   id SERIAL PRIMARY KEY,
   name VARCHAR(64),
   location GEOGRAPHY(POINT, 4326)
);
```

Note that the location column has type GEOGRAPHY and that geography type supports two optional modifier: a type modifier that restricts the kind of shapes and dimensions allowed in the column; an SRID modifier that restricts the coordinate reference identifier to a particular number.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 40 / 791

Allowable values for the type modifier are: POINT, LINESTRING, POLYGON, MULTIPOINT, MULTILINESTRING, MULTIPOLYGON. The modifier also supports dimensionality restrictions through suffixes: Z, M and ZM. So, for example a modifier of 'LINESTRINGM' would only allow line strings with three dimensions in, and would treat the third dimension as a measure. Similarly, 'POINTZM' would expect four dimensional data.

The SRID modifier is currently of limited use: only 4326 (WGS84) is allowed as a value. If you do not specify an SRID, the a value 0 (undefined spheroid) will be used, and all calculations will proceed using WGS84 anyways.

In the future, alternate SRIDs will allow calculations on spheroids other than WGS84.

Once you have created your table, you can see it in the GEOGRAPHY_COLUMNS table:

```
-- See the contents of the metadata view SELECT * FROM geography_columns;
```

You can insert data into the table the same as you would if it was using a GEOMETRY column:

```
-- Add some data into the test table

INSERT INTO global_points (name, location) VALUES ('Town', ST_GeographyFromText('SRID=4326; 
POINT(-110 30)'));

INSERT INTO global_points (name, location) VALUES ('Forest', ST_GeographyFromText('SRID \( = 4326; POINT(-109 29)'));

INSERT INTO global_points (name, location) VALUES ('London', ST_GeographyFromText('SRID \( = 4326; POINT(0 49)'));
```

Creating an index works the same as GEOMETRY. PostGIS will note that the column type is GEOGRAPHY and create an appropriate sphere-based index instead of the usual planar index used for GEOMETRY.

```
-- Index the test table with a spherical index CREATE INDEX global_points_gix ON global_points USING GIST ( location );
```

Query and measurement functions use units of meters. So distance parameters should be expressed in meters, and return values should be expected in meters (or square meters for areas).

```
-- Show a distance query and note, London is outside the 1000km tolerance SELECT name FROM global_points WHERE ST_DWithin(location, ST_GeographyFromText('SRID \leftrightarrow =4326;POINT(-110 29)'), 1000000);
```

You can see the power of GEOGRAPHY in action by calculating the how close a plane flying from Seattle to London (LINESTRING(-122.33 47.606, 0.0 51.5)) comes to Reykjavik (POINT(-21.96 64.15)).

```
-- Distance calculation using GEOGRAPHY (122.2km)

SELECT ST_Distance('LINESTRING(-122.33 47.606, 0.0 51.5)'::geography, 'POINT(-21.96 ↔
64.15)':: geography);

-- Distance calculation using GEOMETRY (13.3 "degrees")

SELECT ST_Distance('LINESTRING(-122.33 47.606, 0.0 51.5)'::geometry, 'POINT(-21.96 64.15) ↔
':: geometry);
```

The GEOGRAPHY type calculates the true shortest distance over the sphere between Reykjavik and the great circle flight path between Seattle and London.

Great Circle mapper The GEOMETRY type calculates a meaningless cartesian distance between Reykjavik and the straight line path from Seattle to London plotted on a flat map of the world. The nominal units of the result might be called "degrees", but the result doesn't correspond to any true angular difference between the points, so even calling them "degrees" is inaccurate.

4.2.2 When to use Geography Data type over Geometry data type

The new GEOGRAPHY type allows you to store data in longitude/latitude coordinates, but at a cost: there are fewer functions defined on GEOGRAPHY than there are on GEOMETRY; those functions that are defined take more CPU time to execute.

The type you choose should be conditioned on the expected working area of the application you are building. Will your data span the globe or a large continental area, or is it local to a state, county or municipality?

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 41 / 791

• If your data is contained in a small area, you might find that choosing an appropriate projection and using GEOMETRY is the best solution, in terms of performance and functionality available.

- If your data is global or covers a continental region, you may find that GEOGRAPHY allows you to build a system without
 having to worry about projection details. You store your data in longitude/latitude, and use the functions that have been defined
 on GEOGRAPHY.
- If you don't understand projections, and you don't want to learn about them, and you're prepared to accept the limitations in functionality available in GEOGRAPHY, then it might be easier for you to use GEOGRAPHY than GEOMETRY. Simply load your data up as longitude/latitude and go from there.

Refer to Section 14.11 for compare between what is supported for Geography vs. Geometry. For a brief listing and description of Geography functions, refer to Section 14.4

4.2.3 Geography Advanced FAQ

1. Do you calculate on the sphere or the spheroid?

By default, all distance and area calculations are done on the spheroid. You should find that the results of calculations in local areas match up will with local planar results in good local projections. Over larger areas, the spheroidal calculations will be more accurate than any calculation done on a projected plane. All the geography functions have the option of using a sphere calculation, by setting a final boolean parameter to 'FALSE'. This will somewhat speed up calculations, particularly for cases where the geometries are very simple.

2. What about the date-line and the poles?

All the calculations have no conception of date-line or poles, the coordinates are spherical (longitude/latitude) so a shape that crosses the dateline is, from a calculation point of view, no different from any other shape.

3. What is the longest arc you can process?

We use great circle arcs as the "interpolation line" between two points. That means any two points are actually joined up two ways, depending on which direction you travel along the great circle. All our code assumes that the points are joined by the *shorter* of the two paths along the great circle. As a consequence, shapes that have arcs of more than 180 degrees will not be correctly modelled.

4. Why is it so slow to calculate the area of Europe / Russia / insert big geographic region here?

Because the polygon is so darned huge! Big areas are bad for two reasons: their bounds are huge, so the index tends to pull the feature no matter what query you run; the number of vertices is huge, and tests (distance, containment) have to traverse the vertex list at least once and sometimes N times (with N being the number of vertices in the other candidate feature). As with GEOMETRY, we recommend that when you have very large polygons, but are doing queries in small areas, you "denormalize" your geometric data into smaller chunks so that the index can effectively subquery parts of the object and so queries don't have to pull out the whole object every time. Just because you *can* store all of Europe in one polygon doesn't mean you *should*.

4.3 Using OpenGIS Standards

The OpenGIS "Simple Features Specification for SQL" defines standard GIS object types, the functions required to manipulate them, and a set of meta-data tables. In order to ensure that meta-data remain consistent, operations such as creating and removing a spatial column are carried out through special procedures defined by OpenGIS.

There are two OpenGIS meta-data tables: SPATIAL_REF_SYS and GEOMETRY_COLUMNS. The SPATIAL_REF_SYS table holds the numeric IDs and textual descriptions of coordinate systems used in the spatial database.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 42 / 791

4.3.1 The SPATIAL_REF_SYS Table and Spatial Reference Systems

The spatial_ref_sys table is a PostGIS included and OGC compliant database table that lists over 3000 known spatial reference systems and details needed to transform/reproject between them.

Although the PostGIS spatial_ref_sys table contains over 3000 of the more commonly used spatial reference system definitions that can be handled by the proj library, it does not contain all known to man and you can even define your own custom projection if you are familiar with proj4 constructs. Keep in mind that most spatial reference systems are regional and have no meaning when used outside of the bounds they were intended for.

An excellent resource for finding spatial reference systems not defined in the core set is http://spatialreference.org/

Some of the more commonly used spatial reference systems are: 4326 - WGS 84 Long Lat, 4269 - NAD 83 Long Lat, 3395 - WGS 84 World Mercator, 2163 - US National Atlas Equal Area, Spatial reference systems for each NAD 83, WGS 84 UTM zone - UTM zones are one of the most ideal for measurement, but only cover 6-degree regions.

Various US state plane spatial reference systems (meter or feet based) - usually one or 2 exists per US state. Most of the meter ones are in the core set, but many of the feet based ones or ESRI created ones you will need to pull from spatialreference.org.

For details on determining which UTM zone to use for your area of interest, check out the utmzone PostGIS plpgsql helper function.

The SPATIAL_REF_SYS table definition is as follows:

The SPATIAL_REF_SYS columns are as follows:

SRID An integer value that uniquely identifies the Spatial Referencing System (SRS) within the database.

AUTH_NAME The name of the standard or standards body that is being cited for this reference system. For example, "EPSG" would be a valid AUTH_NAME.

AUTH_SRID The ID of the Spatial Reference System as defined by the Authority cited in the AUTH_NAME. In the case of EPSG, this is where the EPSG projection code would go.

SRTEXT The Well-Known Text representation of the Spatial Reference System. An example of a WKT SRS representation is:

```
PROJCS["NAD83 / UTM Zone 10N",

GEOGCS["NAD83",

DATUM["North_American_Datum_1983",

SPHEROID["GRS 1980",6378137,298.257222101]
],

PRIMEM["Greenwich",0],

UNIT["degree",0.0174532925199433]
],

PROJECTION["Transverse_Mercator"],

PARAMETER["latitude_of_origin",0],

PARAMETER["central_meridian",-123],

PARAMETER["scale_factor",0.9996],

PARAMETER["false_easting",500000],

PARAMETER["false_northing",0],

UNIT["metre",1]
]
```

For a listing of EPSG projection codes and their corresponding WKT representations, see http://www.opengeospatial.org/. For a discussion of WKT in general, see the OpenGIS "Coordinate Transformation Services Implementation Specification" at http://www.opengeospatial.org/standards. For information on the European Petroleum Survey Group (EPSG) and their database of spatial reference systems, see http://www.epsg.org.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 43 / 791

PROJ4TEXT PostGIS uses the Proj4 library to provide coordinate transformation capabilities. The PROJ4TEXT column contains the Proj4 coordinate definition string for a particular SRID. For example:

```
+proj=utm +zone=10 +ellps=clrk66 +datum=NAD27 +units=m
```

For more information about, see the Proj4 web site at http://trac.osgeo.org/proj/. The spatial_ref_sys.sql file contains both SRTEXT and PROJ4TEXT definitions for all EPSG projections.

4.3.2 The GEOMETRY_COLUMNS VIEW

In versions of PostGIS prior to 2.0.0, geometry_columns was a table that could be directly edited, and sometimes got out of synch with the actual definition of the geometry columns. In PostGIS 2.0.0, GEOMETRY_COLUMNS became a view with the same front-facing structure as prior versions, but reading from database system catalogs Its structure is as follows:

\d geometry_columns

The column meanings have not changed from prior versions and are:

- **F_TABLE_CATALOG, F_TABLE_SCHEMA, F_TABLE_NAME** The fully qualified name of the feature table containing the geometry column. Note that the terms "catalog" and "schema" are Oracle-ish. There is not PostgreSQL analogue of "catalog" so that column is left blank -- for "schema" the PostgreSQL schema name is used (public is the default).
- F_GEOMETRY_COLUMN The name of the geometry column in the feature table.
- **COORD_DIMENSION** The spatial dimension (2, 3 or 4 dimensional) of the column.
- **SRID** The ID of the spatial reference system used for the coordinate geometry in this table. It is a foreign key reference to the SPATIAL_REF_SYS.
- **TYPE** The type of the spatial object. To restrict the spatial column to a single type, use one of: POINT, LINESTRING, POLYGON, MULTIPOINT, MULTILINESTRING, MULTIPOLYGON, GEOMETRYCOLLECTION or corresponding XYM versions POINTM, LINESTRINGM, POLYGONM, MULTIPOINTM, MULTILINESTRINGM, MULTIPOLYGONM, GEOMETRYCOLLECTIONM. For heterogeneous (mixed-type) collections, you can use "GEOMETRY" as the type.



Note

This attribute is (probably) not part of the OpenGIS specification, but is required for ensuring type homogeneity.

4.3.3 Creating a Spatial Table

Creating a table with spatial data, can be done in one step. As shown in the following example which creates a roads table with a 2D linestring geometry column in WGS84 long lat

```
CREATE TABLE ROADS ( ID int4 , ROAD_NAME varchar(25), geom geometry(LINESTRING, 4326) );
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 44 / 791

We can add additional columns using standard ALTER TABLE command as we do in this next example where we add a 3-D linestring.

```
ALTER TABLE roads ADD COLUMN geom2 geometry(LINESTRINGZ, 4326);
```

For backwards compability, you can still create a spatial table in two stages using the management functions.

• Create a normal non-spatial table.

```
For example: CREATE TABLE ROADS (ID int4, ROAD NAME varchar(25))
```

 Add a spatial column to the table using the OpenGIS "AddGeometryColumn" function. Refer to AddGeometryColumn for more details.

The syntax is:

Or, using current schema:

```
AddGeometryColumn(
    <table_name>,
        <column_name>,
        <srid>,
        <type>,
        <dimension>
)
```

Example1: SELECT AddGeometryColumn('public', 'roads', 'geom', 423, 'LINESTRING', 2)

Example2: SELECT AddGeometryColumn('roads', 'geom', 423, 'LINESTRING', 2)

Here is an example of SQL used to create a table and add a spatial column (assuming that an SRID of 128 exists already):

Here is another example, using the generic "geometry" type and the undefined SRID value of 0:

```
CREATE TABLE roads (
  road_id INTEGER,
  road_name VARCHAR
);
SELECT AddGeometryColumn( 'roads', 'roads_geom', 0, 'GEOMETRY', 3 );
```

4.3.4 Manually Registering Geometry Columns in geometry_columns

The AddGeometryColumn() approach creates a geometry column of specified type. This type and dimension are queryable from the geometry_columns view. Starting with PostGIS 2.0, geometry_columns is no longer editable and all geometry columns are autoregistered.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 45 / 791

If your geometry columns were created as generic in a table or view and no constraints applied, they will not have a dimension, type or srid in geometry_columns views, but will still be listed.

Two of the cases where this may happen, but you can't use AddGeometryColumn, is in the case of SQL Views and bulk inserts. For bulk insert case, you can correct the registration in the geometry_columns table by constraining the column or doing an alter table. For views, you could expose using a CAST operation. Note in PostGIS 2.0+ if your column is typmod based, the creation process would register it correctly, so no need to do anything. Also views that have no spatial function applied to the geometry will register the same as the underlying table geometry column.

```
--Lets say you have a view created like this
CREATE VIEW public.vwmytablemercator AS
  SELECT gid, ST_Transform(geom, 3395) As geom, f_name
 FROM public.mytable;
-- For it to register correctly in PostGIS 2.0+
-- You need to cast the geometry
DROP VIEW public.vwmytablemercator;
CREATE VIEW public.vwmytablemercator AS
  SELECT gid, ST_Transform(geom, 3395)::geometry(Geometry, 3395) As geom, f_name
  FROM public.mytable;
-- If you know the geometry type for sure is a 2D POLYGON then you could do
DROP VIEW public.vwmytablemercator;
CREATE VIEW public.vwmytablemercator AS
  SELECT gid, ST_Transform(geom, 3395)::geometry(Polygon, 3395) As geom, f_name
  FROM public.mytable;
--Lets say you created a derivative table by doing a bulk insert
```

```
SELECT poi.gid, poi.geom, citybounds.city_name
INTO myschema.my_special_pois
FROM poi INNER JOIN citybounds ON ST_Intersects(citybounds.geom, poi.geom);
--Create 2d index on new table
CREATE INDEX idx_myschema_myspecialpois_geom_gist
  ON myschema.my_special_pois USING gist(geom);
-- If your points are 3D points or 3M points,
-- then you might want to create an nd index instead of a 2d index
-- like so
CREATE INDEX my_special_pois_geom_gist_nd
 ON my_special_pois USING gist(geom gist_geometry_ops_nd);
--To manually register this new table's geometry column in geometry_columns
-- Note that this approach will work for both PostGIS 2.0+ and PostGIS 1.4+
-- For PostGIS 2.0 it will also change the underlying structure of the table to
-- to make the column typmod based.
-- For PostGIS prior to 2.0, this technique can also be used to register views
SELECT populate_geometry_columns('myschema.my_special_pois'::regclass);
--If you are using PostGIS 2.0 and for whatever reason, you
-- you need the old constraint based definition behavior
-- (such as case of inherited tables where all children do not have the same type and srid)
-- set new optional use_typmod argument to false
SELECT populate_geometry_columns('myschema.my_special_pois'::regclass, false);
```

Although the old-constraint based method is still supported, a constraint-based geometry column used directly in a view, will not register correctly in geometry_columns, as will a typmod one. In this example we define a column using typmod and another using constraints.

```
CREATE TABLE pois_ny(gid SERIAL PRIMARY KEY
, poi_name text, cat varchar(20)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 46 / 791

```
, geom geometry(POINT,4326) );
SELECT AddGeometryColumn('pois_ny', 'geom_2160', 2160, 'POINT', 2, false);
```

If we run in psql

```
\d pois_ny;
```

We observe they are defined differently -- one is typmod, one is constraint

```
Table "public.pois_ny"
 Column |
                 Type
                               ______
gid | integer
                              | not null default nextval('pois_ny_gid_seq'::regclass)
poi_name | text
cat | character varying(20) |
geom | geometry(Point, 4326) |
geom_2160 | geometry
Indexes:
   "pois_ny_pkey" PRIMARY KEY, btree (gid)
Check constraints:
   "enforce_dims_geom_2160" CHECK (st_ndims(geom_2160) = 2)
   "enforce_geotype_geom_2160" CHECK (geometrytype(geom_2160) = 'POINT'::text
      OR geom_2160 IS NULL)
   "enforce_srid_geom_2160" CHECK (st_srid(geom_2160) = 2160)
```

In geometry_columns, they both register correctly

```
SELECT f_table_name, f_geometry_column, srid, type
FROM geometry_columns
WHERE f_table_name = 'pois_ny';
```

However -- if we were to create a view like this

```
CREATE VIEW vw_pois_ny_parks AS
SELECT *
   FROM pois_ny
   WHERE cat='park';

SELECT f_table_name, f_geometry_column, srid, type
   FROM geometry_columns
   WHERE f_table_name = 'vw_pois_ny_parks';
```

The typmod based geom view column registers correctly, but the constraint based one does not.

This may change in future versions of PostGIS, but for now To force the constraint based view column to register correctly, we need to do this:

```
DROP VIEW vw_pois_ny_parks;
CREATE VIEW vw_pois_ny_parks AS
SELECT gid, poi_name, cat
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 47 / 791

```
, geom
, geom_2160::geometry(POINT,2160) As geom_2160
FROM pois_ny
WHERE cat='park';
SELECT f_table_name, f_geometry_column, srid, type
FROM geometry_columns
WHERE f_table_name = 'vw_pois_ny_parks';
```

4.3.5 Ensuring OpenGIS compliancy of geometries

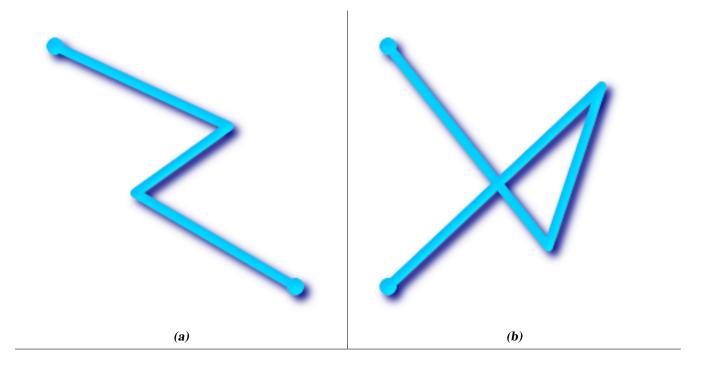
PostGIS is compliant with the Open Geospatial Consortium's (OGC) OpenGIS Specifications. As such, many PostGIS methods require, or more accurately, assume that geometries that are operated on are both simple and valid. For example, it does not make sense to calculate the area of a polygon that has a hole defined outside of the polygon, or to construct a polygon from a non-simple boundary line.

According to the OGC Specifications, a *simple* geometry is one that has no anomalous geometric points, such as self intersection or self tangency and primarily refers to 0 or 1-dimensional geometries (i.e. [MULTI]POINT, [MULTI]LINESTRING). Geometry validity, on the other hand, primarily refers to 2-dimensional geometries (i.e. [MULTI]POLYGON) and defines the set of assertions that characterizes a valid polygon. The description of each geometric class includes specific conditions that further detail geometric simplicity and validity.

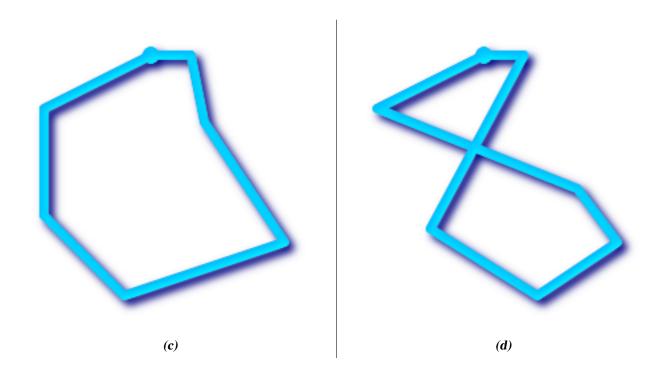
A POINT is inheritably *simple* as a 0-dimensional geometry object.

MULTIPOINTs are *simple* if no two coordinates (POINTs) are equal (have identical coordinate values).

A LINESTRING is *simple* if it does not pass through the same POINT twice (except for the endpoints, in which case it is referred to as a linear ring and additionally considered closed).

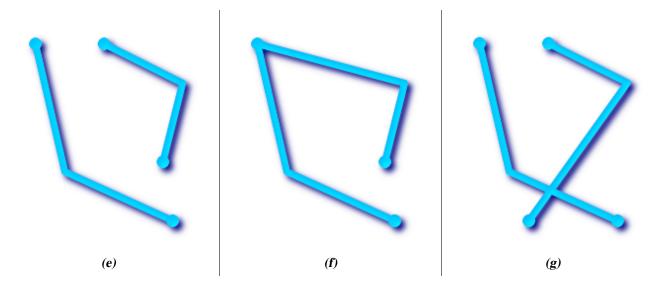


PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 48 / 791



(a) and (c) are simple LINESTRINGS, (b) and (d) are not.

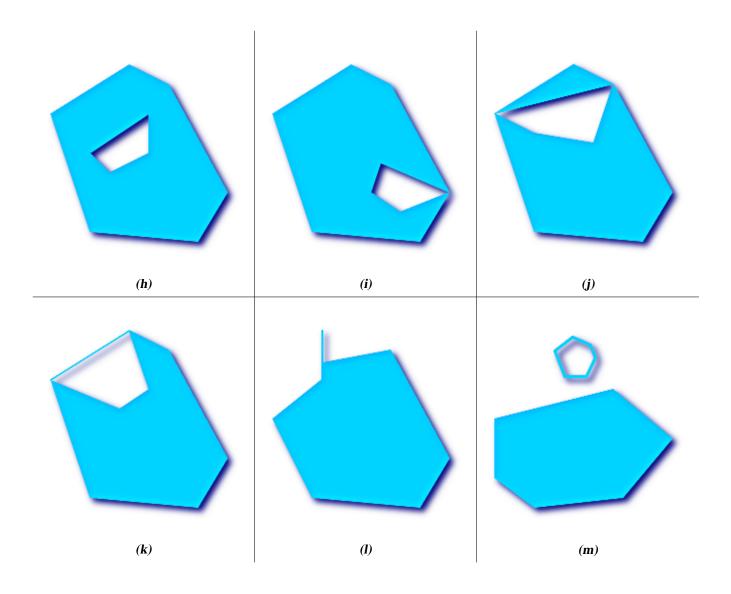
A MULTILINESTRING is *simple* only if all of its elements are simple and the only intersection between any two elements occurs at POINTs that are on the boundaries of both elements.



(e) and (f) are simple ${\tt MULTILINESTRINGS}$, (g) is not.

By definition, a POLYGON is always *simple*. It is *valid* if no two rings in the boundary (made up of an exterior ring and interior rings) cross. The boundary of a POLYGON may intersect at a POINT but only as a tangent (i.e. not on a line). A POLYGON may not have cut lines or spikes and the interior rings must be contained entirely within the exterior ring.

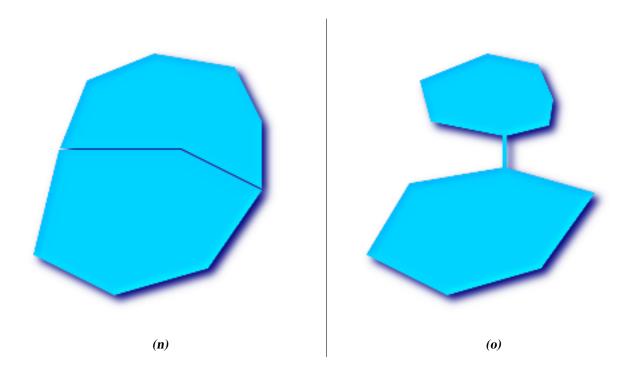
PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 49 / 791



(h) and (i) are valid POLYGONS, (j-m) cannot be represented as single POLYGONS, but (j) and (m) could be represented as a valid MULTIPOLYGON.

A MULTIPOLYGON is *valid* if and only if all of its elements are valid and the interiors of no two elements intersect. The boundaries of any two elements may touch, but only at a finite number of POINTs.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 50 / 791



(n) and (o) are not valid MULTIPOLYGONS. (p), however, is valid.

Most of the functions implemented by the GEOS library rely on the assumption that your geometries are valid as specified by the OpenGIS Simple Feature Specification. To check simplicity or validity of geometries you can use the ST_IsSimple() and ST_IsValid()

By default, PostGIS does not apply this validity check on geometry input, because testing for validity needs lots of CPU time for complex geometries, especially polygons. If you do not trust your data sources, you can manually enforce such a check to your tables by adding a check constraint:

```
ALTER TABLE mytable

ADD CONSTRAINT geometry_valid_check

CHECK (ST_IsValid(the_geom));
```

If you encounter any strange error messages such as "GEOS Intersection() threw an error!" or "JTS Intersection() threw an error!" when calling PostGIS functions with valid input geometries, you likely found an error in either PostGIS or one of the libraries it uses, and you should contact the PostGIS developers. The same is true if a PostGIS function returns an invalid geometry for valid input.



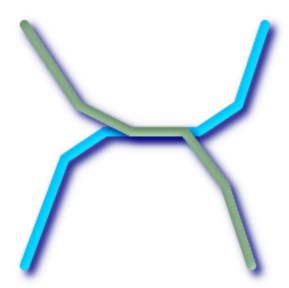
Note

Strictly compliant OGC geometries cannot have Z or M values. The ST_lsValid() function won't consider higher dimensioned geometries invalid! Invocations of AddGeometryColumn() will add a constraint checking geometry dimensions, so it is enough to specify 2 there.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 51 / 791

4.3.6 Dimensionally Extended 9 Intersection Model (DE-9IM)

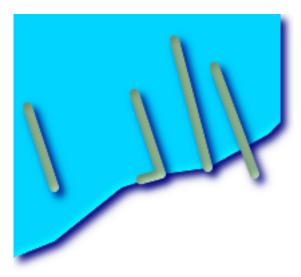
It is sometimes the case that the typical spatial predicates (ST_Contains, ST_Crosses, ST_Intersects, ST_Touches, ...) are insufficient in and of themselves to adequately provide that desired spatial filter.



For example, consider a linear dataset representing a road network. It may be the task of a GIS analyst to identify all road segments that cross each other, not at a point, but on a line, perhaps invalidating some business rule. In this case, ST_Crosses does not adequately provide the necessary spatial filter since, for linear features, it returns true only where they cross at a point.

One two-step solution might be to first perform the actual intersection (ST_Intersection) of pairs of road segments that spatially intersect (ST_Intersects), and then compare the intersection's ST_GeometryType with 'LINESTRING' (properly dealing with cases that return GEOMETRYCOLLECTIONS of [MULTI]POINTS, [MULTI]LINESTRINGS, etc.). A more elegant / faster solution may indeed be desirable.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 52 / 791



A second [theoretical] example may be that of a GIS analyst trying to locate all wharfs or docks that intersect a lake's boundary on a line and where only one end of the wharf is up on shore. In other words, where a wharf is within, but not completely within a lake, intersecting the boundary of a lake on a line, and where the wharf's endpoints are both completely within and on the boundary of the lake. The analyst may need to use a combination of spatial predicates to isolate the sought after features:

- ST_Contains(lake, wharf) = TRUE
- ST_ContainsProperly(lake, wharf) = FALSE
- ST_GeometryType(ST_Intersection(wharf, lake)) = 'LINESTRING'
- ST_NumGeometries(ST_Multi(ST_Intersection(ST_Boundary(wharf), ST_Boundary(lake)))) = 1
 - ... (needless to say, this could get quite complicated)

So enters the Dimensionally Extended 9 Intersection Model, or DE-9IM for short.

4.3.6.1 Theory

According to the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL, "the basic approach to comparing two geometries is to make pair-wise tests of the intersections between the Interiors, Boundaries and Exteriors of the two geometries and to classify the relationship between the two geometries based on the entries in the resulting 'intersection' matrix."

Boundary

The boundary of a geometry is the set of geometries of the next lower dimension. For POINTs, which have a dimension of 0, the boundary is the empty set. The boundary of a LINESTRING are the two endpoints. For POLYGONs, the boundary is the linework that make up the exterior and interior rings.

Interior

The interior of a geometry are those points of a geometry that are left when the boundary is removed. For POINTs, the interior is the POINT itself. The interior of a LINESTRING are the set of real points between the endpoints. For POLYGONS, the interior is the areal surface inside the polygon.

Exterior

The exterior of a geometry is the universe, an areal surface, not on the interior or boundary of the geometry.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 53 / 791

Given geometry a, where the I(a), B(a), and E(a) are the *Interior*, *Boundary*, and *Exterior* of a, the mathematical representation of the matrix is:

	Interior	Boundary	Exterior
Interior	$dim(I(a) \cap I(b))$	$dim(I(a) \cap B(b))$	$dim(I(a) \cap E(b))$
Boundary	$dim(B(a) \cap I(b))$	$dim(B(a) \cap B(b))$	$dim(B(a) \cap E(b))$
Exterior	$dim(E(a) \cap I(b))$	$dim(E(a) \cap B(b))$	$dim(E(a) \cap E(b))$

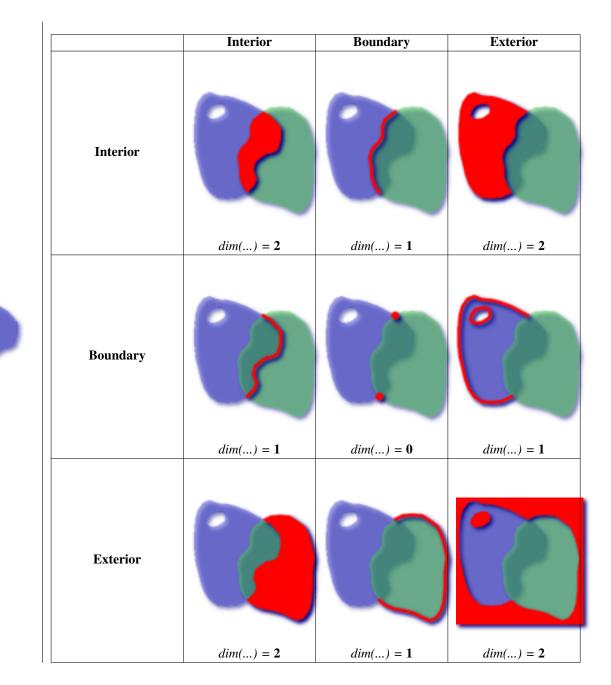
Where dim(a) is the dimension of a as specified by ST_Dimension but has the domain of $\{0, 1, 2, T, F, *\}$

- 0 => point
- 1 => line
- 2 => area
- T => {0,1,2}
- F => empty set
- * => don't care

Visually, for two overlapping polygonal geometries, this looks like:



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 54 / 791



Read from left to right and from top to bottom, the dimensional matrix is represented, '212101212'.

A relate matrix that would therefore represent our first example of two lines that intersect on a line would be: '1*1***1**'

```
-- Identify road segments that cross on a line
SELECT a.id
FROM roads a, roads b
WHERE a.id != b.id
AND a.geom && b.geom
AND ST_Relate(a.geom, b.geom, '1*1***1**');
```

A relate matrix that represents the second example of wharfs partly on the lake's shoreline would be '102101FF2'

```
-- Identify wharfs partly on a lake's shoreline

SELECT a.lake_id, b.wharf_id

FROM lakes a, wharfs b

WHERE a.geom && b.geom

AND ST_Relate(a.geom, b.geom, '102101FF2');
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 55 / 791

For more information or reading, see:

- OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL (version 1.1, section 2.1.13.2)
- Dimensionally Extended Nine-Intersection Model (DE-9IM)
- GeoTools: Point Set Theory and the DE-9IM Matrix
- · Encyclopedia of GIS By Hui Xiong

4.4 Loading GIS (Vector) Data

Once you have created a spatial table, you are ready to upload GIS data to the database. Currently, there are two ways to get data into a PostGIS/PostgreSQL database: using formatted SQL statements or using the Shape file loader/dumper.

4.4.1 Loading Data Using SQL

If you can convert your data to a text representation, then using formatted SQL might be the easiest way to get your data into PostGIS. As with Oracle and other SQL databases, data can be bulk loaded by piping a large text file full of SQL "INSERT" statements into the SQL terminal monitor.

A data upload file (roads.sql for example) might look like this:

```
BEGIN;
INSERT INTO roads (road_id, roads_geom, road_name)
    VALUES (1,ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(191232 243118,191108 243242)',-1),'Jeff Rd');
INSERT INTO roads (road_id, roads_geom, road_name)
    VALUES (2,ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(189141 244158,189265 244817)',-1),'Geordie Rd');
INSERT INTO roads (road_id, roads_geom, road_name)
    VALUES (3,ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(192783 228138,192612 229814)',-1),'Paul St');
INSERT INTO roads (road_id, roads_geom, road_name)
    VALUES (4,ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(189412 252431,189631 259122)',-1),'Graeme Ave');
INSERT INTO roads (road_id, roads_geom, road_name)
    VALUES (5,ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(190131 224148,190871 228134)',-1),'Phil Tce');
INSERT INTO roads (road_id, roads_geom, road_name)
    VALUES (6,ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(198231 263418,198213 268322)',-1),'Dave Cres');
COMMIT;
```

The data file can be piped into PostgreSQL very easily using the "psql" SQL terminal monitor:

```
psql -d [database] -f roads.sql
```

4.4.2 shp2pgsql: Using the ESRI Shapefile Loader

The shp2pgsql data loader converts ESRI Shape files into SQL suitable for insertion into a PostGIS/PostgreSQL database either in geometry or geography format. The loader has several operating modes distinguished by command line flags:

In addition to the shp2pgsql command-line loader, there is an shp2pgsql-gui graphical interface with most of the options as the command-line loader, but may be easier to use for one-off non-scripted loading or if you are new to PostGIS. It can also be configured as a plugin to PgAdminIII.

(c|a|d|p) These are mutually exclusive options:

- -c Creates a new table and populates it from the shapefile. This is the default mode.
- -a Appends data from the Shape file into the database table. Note that to use this option to load multiple files, the files must have the same attributes and same data types.
- -d Drops the database table before creating a new table with the data in the Shape file.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 56 / 791

-p Only produces the table creation SQL code, without adding any actual data. This can be used if you need to completely separate the table creation and data loading steps.

- -? Display help screen.
- **-D** Use the PostgreSQL "dump" format for the output data. This can be combined with -a, -c and -d. It is much faster to load than the default "insert" SQL format. Use this for very large data sets.
- -s [<FROM_SRID%gt;:]<SRID> Creates and populates the geometry tables with the specified SRID. Optionally specifies that the input shapefile uses the given FROM_SRID, in which case the geometries will be reprojected to the target SRID. FROM_SRID cannot be specified with -D.
- -k Keep identifiers' case (column, schema and attributes). Note that attributes in Shapefile are all UPPERCASE.
- -i Coerce all integers to standard 32-bit integers, do not create 64-bit bigints, even if the DBF header signature appears to warrant it.
- -I Create a GiST index on the geometry column.
- -m -m a_file_name Specify a file containing a set of mappings of (long) column names to 10 character DBF column names. The content of the file is one or more lines of two names separated by white space and no trailing or leading space. For example:

```
COLUMNNAME DBFFIELD1
AVERYLONGCOLUMNNAME DBFFIELD2
```

- **-S** Generate simple geometries instead of MULTI geometries. Will only succeed if all the geometries are actually single (I.E. a MULTIPOLYGON with a single shell, or or a MULTIPOINT with a single vertex).
- **-t <dimensionality>** Force the output geometry to have the specified dimensionality. Use the following strings to indicate the dimensionality: 2D, 3DZ, 3DM, 4D.
 - If the input has fewer dimensions that specified, the output will have those dimensions filled in with zeroes. If the input has more dimensions that specified, the unwanted dimensions will be stripped.
- -w Output WKT format, instead of WKB. Note that this can introduce coordinate drifts due to loss of precision.
- **-e** Execute each statement on its own, without using a transaction. This allows loading of the majority of good data when there are some bad geometries that generate errors. Note that this cannot be used with the -D flag as the "dump" format always uses a transaction.
- -W <encoding> Specify encoding of the input data (dbf file). When used, all attributes of the dbf are converted from the specified encoding to UTF8. The resulting SQL output will contain a SET CLIENT_ENCODING to UTF8 command, so that the backend will be able to reconvert from UTF8 to whatever encoding the database is configured to use internally.
- **-N <policy>** NULL geometries handling policy (insert*,skip,abort)
- -n Only import DBF file. If your data has no corresponding shapefile, it will automatically switch to this mode and load just the dbf. So setting this flag is only needed if you have a full shapefile set, and you only want the attribute data and no geometry.
- -G Use geography type instead of geometry (requires lon/lat data) in WGS84 long lat (SRID=4326)
- **-T <tablespace>** Specify the tablespace for the new table. Indexes will still use the default tablespace unless the -X parameter is also used. The PostgreSQL documentation has a good description on when to use custom tablespaces.
- -X <tablespace> Specify the tablespace for the new table's indexes. This applies to the primary key index, and the GIST spatial index if -I is also used.

An example session using the loader to create an input file and uploading it might look like this:

```
# shp2pgsql -c -D -s 4269 -i -I shaperoads.shp myschema.roadstable > roads.sql
# psql -d roadsdb -f roads.sql
```

A conversion and upload can be done all in one step using UNIX pipes:

```
# shp2pgsql shaperoads.shp myschema.roadstable | psql -d roadsdb
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 57 / 791

4.5 Retrieving GIS Data

Data can be extracted from the database using either SQL or the Shape file loader/dumper. In the section on SQL we will discuss some of the operators available to do comparisons and queries on spatial tables.

4.5.1 Using SQL to Retrieve Data

The most straightforward means of pulling data out of the database is to use a SQL select query to reduce the number of RECORDS and COLUMNS returned and dump the resulting columns into a parsable text file:

However, there will be times when some kind of restriction is necessary to cut down the number of fields returned. In the case of attribute-based restrictions, just use the same SQL syntax as normal with a non-spatial table. In the case of spatial restrictions, the following operators are available/useful:

- && This operator tells whether the bounding box of one geometry intersects the bounding box of another.
- **ST_OrderingEquals** This tests whether two geometries are geometrically identical. For example, if 'POLYGON((0 0,1 1,1 0,0 0))' is the same as 'POLYGON((0 0,1 1,1 0,0 0))' (it is).
- = This operator is a little more naive, it only tests whether the bounding boxes of two geometries are the same.

Next, you can use these operators in queries. Note that when specifying geometries and boxes on the SQL command line, you must explicitly turn the string representations into geometries by using the "ST_GeomFromText()" function. The 312 is a fictitious spatial reference system that matches our data. So, for example:

The above query would return the single record from the "ROADS_GEOM" table in which the geometry was equal to that value.

When using the "&&" operator, you can specify either a BOX3D as the comparison feature or a GEOMETRY. When you specify a GEOMETRY, however, its bounding box will be used for the comparison.

```
SELECT road_id, road_name
FROM roads
WHERE roads_geom && ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((...))',312);
```

The above query will use the bounding box of the polygon for comparison purposes.

The most common spatial query will probably be a "frame-based" query, used by client software, like data browsers and web mappers, to grab a "map frame" worth of data for display. Using a "BOX3D" object for the frame, such a query looks like this:

```
SELECT ST_AsText(roads_geom) AS geom
FROM roads
WHERE
roads_geom && ST_MakeEnvelope(191232, 243117,191232, 243119,312);
```

Note the use of the SRID 312, to specify the projection of the envelope.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 58 / 791

4.5.2 Using the Dumper

The pgsql2shp table dumper connects directly to the database and converts a table (possibly defined by a query) into a shape file. The basic syntax is:

```
pgsql2shp [<options>] <database> [<schema>.]
```

```
pgsql2shp [<options>] <database> <query>
```

The commandline options are:

- **-f <filename>** Write the output to a particular filename.
- **-h <host>** The database host to connect to.
- **-p <port>** The port to connect to on the database host.
- **-P <password>** The password to use when connecting to the database.
- **-u <user>** The username to use when connecting to the database.
- **-g <geometry column>** In the case of tables with multiple geometry columns, the geometry column to use when writing the shape file.
- **-b** Use a binary cursor. This will make the operation faster, but will not work if any NON-geometry attribute in the table lacks a cast to text.
- -r Raw mode. Do not drop the gid field, or escape column names.
- **-d** For backward compatibility: write a 3-dimensional shape file when dumping from old (pre-1.0.0) postgis databases (the default is to write a 2-dimensional shape file in that case). Starting from postgis-1.0.0+, dimensions are fully encoded.
- -m filename Remap identifiers to ten character names. The content of the file is lines of two symbols separated by a single white space and no trailing or leading space: VERYLONGSYMBOL SHORTONE ANOTHERVERYLONGSYMBOL SHORTER etc.

4.6 Building Indexes

Indexes are what make using a spatial database for large data sets possible. Without indexing, any search for a feature would require a "sequential scan" of every record in the database. Indexing speeds up searching by organizing the data into a search tree which can be quickly traversed to find a particular record. PostgreSQL supports three kinds of indexes by default: B-Tree indexes, R-Tree indexes, and GiST indexes.

- B-Trees are used for data which can be sorted along one axis; for example, numbers, letters, dates. GIS data cannot be rationally sorted along one axis (which is greater, (0,0) or (0,1) or (1,0)?) so B-Tree indexing is of no use for us.
- R-Trees break up data into rectangles, and sub-rectangles, and sub-sub rectangles, etc. R-Trees are used by some spatial databases to index GIS data, but the PostgreSQL R-Tree implementation is not as robust as the GiST implementation.
- GiST (Generalized Search Trees) indexes break up data into "things to one side", "things which overlap", "things which are
 inside" and can be used on a wide range of data-types, including GIS data. PostGIS uses an R-Tree index implemented on top
 of GiST to index GIS data.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 59 / 791

4.6.1 GiST Indexes

GiST stands for "Generalized Search Tree" and is a generic form of indexing. In addition to GIS indexing, GiST is used to speed up searches on all kinds of irregular data structures (integer arrays, spectral data, etc) which are not amenable to normal B-Tree indexing.

Once a GIS data table exceeds a few thousand rows, you will want to build an index to speed up spatial searches of the data (unless all your searches are based on attributes, in which case you'll want to build a normal index on the attribute fields).

The syntax for building a GiST index on a "geometry" column is as follows:

```
CREATE INDEX [indexname] ON [tablename] USING GIST ( [geometryfield] );
```

The above syntax will always build a 2D-index. To get the an n-dimensional index supported in PostGIS 2.0+ for the geometry type, you can create one using this syntax

```
CREATE INDEX [indexname] ON [tablename] USING GIST ([geometryfield] gist_geometry_ops_nd);
```

Building a spatial index is a computationally intensive exercise: on tables of around 1 million rows, on a 300MHz Solaris machine, we have found building a GiST index takes about 1 hour. After building an index, it is important to force PostgreSQL to collect table statistics, which are used to optimize query plans:

```
VACUUM ANALYZE [table_name] [(column_name)];
-- This is only needed for PostgreSQL 7.4 installations and below
SELECT UPDATE_GEOMETRY_STATS([table_name], [column_name]);
```

GiST indexes have two advantages over R-Tree indexes in PostgreSQL. Firstly, GiST indexes are "null safe", meaning they can index columns which include null values. Secondly, GiST indexes support the concept of "lossiness" which is important when dealing with GIS objects larger than the PostgreSQL 8K page size. Lossiness allows PostgreSQL to store only the "important" part of an object in an index -- in the case of GIS objects, just the bounding box. GIS objects larger than 8K will cause R-Tree indexes to fail in the process of being built.

4.6.2 BRIN Indexes

BRIN stands for "Block Range Index" and is a generic form of indexing that has been introduced in PostgreSQL 9.5. BRIN is a lossy kind of index, and its main usage is to provide a compromise for both read and write performance. Its primary goal is to handle very large tables for which some of the columns have some natural correlation with their physical location within the table. In addition to GIS indexing, BRIN is used to speed up searches on various kinds of regular or irregular data structures (integer, arrays etc).

Once a GIS data table exceeds a few thousand rows, you will want to build an index to speed up spatial searches of the data (unless all your searches are based on attributes, in which case you'll want to build a normal index on the attribute fields). GiST indexes are really performant as long as their size doesn't exceed the amount of RAM available for the database, and as long as you can afford the storage size, and the penalty in write workload. Otherwise, BRIN index can be considered as an alternative.

The idea of a BRIN index is to store only the bouding box englobing all the geometries contained in all the rows in a set of table blocks, called a range. Obviously, this indexing method will only be efficient if the data is physically ordered in a way where the resulting bouding boxes for block ranges will be mutually exclusive. The resulting index will be really small, but will be less efficient than a GiST index in many cases.

Building a BRIN index is way less intensive than building a GiST index. It's quite common to build a BRIN index in more than ten time less than a GiST index would have required. As a BRIN index only store one bouding box for one to many table blocks, it's pretty common to consume up to a thousand time less disk space for this kind of indexes.

You can choose the number of blocks to summarize in a range. If you decrease this number, the index will be bigger but will probably help to get better performance.

The syntax for building a BRIN index on a "geometry" column is as follows:

```
CREATE INDEX [indexname] ON [tablename] USING BRIN ( [geometryfield] );
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 60 / 791

The above syntax will always build a 2D-index. To get a 3d-dimensional index, you can create one using this syntax

```
CREATE INDEX [indexname] ON [tablename] USING BRIN ([geometryfield] \leftarrow brin_geometry_inclusion_ops_3d);
```

You can also get a 4d-dimensional index using the 4d operator class

```
CREATE INDEX [indexname] ON [tablename] USING BRIN ([geometryfield] \leftrightarrow brin_geometry_inclusion_ops_4d);
```

These above syntaxes will use the default number or block in a range, which is 128. To specify the number of blocks you want to summarise in a range, you can create one using this syntax

```
CREATE INDEX [indexname] ON [tablename] USING BRIN ( [geometryfield] ) WITH ( \hookleftarrow pages_per_range = [number]);
```

Also, keep in mind that a BRIN index will only store one index value for a large number of rows. If your table stores geometries with a mixed number of dimensions, it's likely that the resulting index will have poor performance. You can avoid this drop of performance by choosing the operator class whith the least number of dimensions of the stored geometries

Also the "geography" datatype is supported for BRIN indexing. The syntax for building a BRIN index on a "geography" column is as follows:

```
CREATE INDEX [indexname] ON [tablename] USING BRIN ( [geographyfield] );
```

The above syntax will always build a 2D-index for geospatial objects on the spheroid.

Currently, just the "inclusion support" is considered here, meaning that just &&, ~ and @ operators can be used for the 2D cases (both for "geometry" and for "geography"), and just the &&& operator can be used for the 3D geometries. There is no support for kNN searches at the moment.

```
VACUUM ANALYZE [table_name] [(column_name)];
-- This is only needed for PostgreSQL 7.4 installations and below
SELECT UPDATE_GEOMETRY_STATS([table_name], [column_name]);
```

4.6.3 Using Indexes

Ordinarily, indexes invisibly speed up data access: once the index is built, the query planner transparently decides when to use index information to speed up a query plan. Unfortunately, the PostgreSQL query planner does not optimize the use of GiST indexes well, so sometimes searches which should use a spatial index instead default to a sequence scan of the whole table.

If you find your spatial indexes are not being used (or your attribute indexes, for that matter) there are a couple things you can do:

- Firstly, make sure statistics are gathered about the number and distributions of values in a table, to provide the query planner with better information to make decisions around index usage. For PostgreSQL 7.4 installations and below this is done by running update_geometry_stats([table_name, column_name]) (compute distribution) and VACUUM ANALYZE [table_name] [column_name] (compute number of values). Starting with PostgreSQL 8.0 running VACUUM ANALYZE will do both operations. You should regularly vacuum your databases anyways -- many PostgreSQL DBAs have VACUUM run as an off-peak cron job on a regular basis.
- If vacuuming does not work, you can force the planner to use the index information by using the **SET ENABLE_SEQSCAN=OFF** command. You should only use this command sparingly, and only on spatially indexed queries: generally speaking, the planner knows better than you do about when to use normal B-Tree indexes. Once you have run your query, you should consider setting ENABLE_SEQSCAN back on, so that other queries will utilize the planner as normal.



Note

As of version 0.6, it should not be necessary to force the planner to use the index with ENABLE SEOSCAN.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 61 / 791

• If you find the planner wrong about the cost of sequential vs index scans try reducing the value of random_page_cost in postgresql.conf or using SET random_page_cost=#. Default value for the parameter is 4, try setting it to 1 or 2. Decrementing the value makes the planner more inclined of using Index scans.

4.7 Complex Queries

The raison d'etre of spatial database functionality is performing queries inside the database which would ordinarily require desktop GIS functionality. Using PostGIS effectively requires knowing what spatial functions are available, and ensuring that appropriate indexes are in place to provide good performance. The SRID of 312 used in these examples is purely for demonstration. You should be using a REAL SRID listed in the the spatial_ref_sys table and one that matches the projection of your data. If your data has no spatial reference system specified, you should be THINKING very thoughtfully why it doesn't and maybe it should. If your reason is because you are modeling something that doesn't have a geographic spatial reference system defined such as the internals of a molecule or a good location on Mars to transport the human race in the event of a nuclear holocaust, then simply leave out the SRID or make one up and insert it in the spatial_ref_sys table.

4.7.1 Taking Advantage of Indexes

When constructing a query it is important to remember that only the bounding-box-based operators such as && can take advantage of the GiST spatial index. Functions such as ST_Distance() cannot use the index to optimize their operation. For example, the following query would be quite slow on a large table:

```
SELECT the_geom
FROM geom_table
WHERE ST_Distance(the_geom, ST_GeomFromText('POINT(100000 200000)', 312)) < 100</pre>
```

This query is selecting all the geometries in geom_table which are within 100 units of the point (100000, 200000). It will be slow because it is calculating the distance between each point in the table and our specified point, ie. one ST_Distance() calculation for each row in the table. We can avoid this by using the && operator to reduce the number of distance calculations required:

```
SELECT the_geom

FROM geom_table

WHERE ST_DWithin(the_geom, ST_MakeEnvelope(90900, 190900, 100100, 200100, 312), 100)
```

This query selects the same geometries, but it does it in a more efficient way. Assuming there is a GiST index on the geom, the query planner will recognize that it can use the index to reduce the number of rows before calculating the result of the ST_distance() function. Notice that the ST_MakeEnvelope geometry which is used in the && operation is a 200 unit square box centered on the original point - this is our "query box". The && operator uses the index to quickly reduce the result set down to only those geometries which have bounding boxes that overlap the "query box". Assuming that our query box is much smaller than the extents of the entire geometry table, this will drastically reduce the number of distance calculations that need to be done.



Change in Behavior

As of PostGIS 1.3.0, most of the Geometry Relationship Functions, with the notable exceptions of ST_Disjoint and ST_Relate, include implicit bounding box overlap operators.

4.7.2 Examples of Spatial SQL

The examples in this section will make use of two tables, a table of linear roads, and a table of polygonal municipality boundaries. The table definitions for the bc_roads table is:

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 62 / 791

Column	Type	Description
gid name the_geom	integer character varying geometry	Unique ID Road Name Location Geometry (Linestring)

The table definition for the bc_municipality table is:

Column	Type	Description
gid	integer	Unique ID
code	integer	Unique ID
name	character varying	City / Town Name
the_geom	geometry	Location Geometry (Polygon)

1. What is the total length of all roads, expressed in kilometers?

You can answer this question with a very simple piece of SQL:

2. How large is the city of Prince George, in hectares?

This query combines an attribute condition (on the municipality name) with a spatial calculation (of the area):

3. What is the largest municipality in the province, by area?

This query brings a spatial measurement into the query condition. There are several ways of approaching this problem, but the most efficient is below:

Note that in order to answer this query we have to calculate the area of every polygon. If we were doing this a lot it would make sense to add an area column to the table that we could separately index for performance. By ordering the results in a descending direction, and them using the PostgreSQL "LIMIT" command we can easily pick off the largest value without using an aggregate function like max().

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 63 / 791

4. What is the length of roads fully contained within each municipality?

This is an example of a "spatial join", because we are bringing together data from two tables (doing a join) but using a spatial interaction condition ("contained") as the join condition rather than the usual relational approach of joining on a common key:

```
SELECT
  m.name,
  sum(ST\_Length(r.the\_geom))/1000 as roads_km
FROM
  bc_roads AS r,
  bc_municipality AS m
WHERE
 ST_Contains (m.the_geom, r.the_geom)
GROUP BY m.name
ORDER BY roads_km;
name
                          | roads_km
SURREY
                          | 1539.47553551242
VANCOUVER
                          | 1450.33093486576
LANGLEY DISTRICT
                          | 833.793392535662
BURNABY
                           | 773.769091404338
PRINCE GEORGE
                           | 694.37554369147
```

This query takes a while, because every road in the table is summarized into the final result (about 250K roads for our particular example table). For smaller overlays (several thousand records on several hundred) the response can be very fast.

5. Create a new table with all the roads within the city of Prince George.

This is an example of an "overlay", which takes in two tables and outputs a new table that consists of spatially clipped or cut resultants. Unlike the "spatial join" demonstrated above, this query actually creates new geometries. An overlay is like a turbo-charged spatial join, and is useful for more exact analysis work:

```
CREATE TABLE pg_roads as
SELECT
   ST_Intersection(r.the_geom, m.the_geom) AS intersection_geom,
   ST_Length(r.the_geom) AS rd_orig_length,
   r.*
FROM
   bc_roads AS r,
   bc_municipality AS m
WHERE m.name = 'PRINCE GEORGE' AND ST_Intersects(r.the_geom, m.the_geom);
```

6. What is the length in kilometers of "Douglas St" in Victoria?

7. What is the largest municipality polygon that has a hole?

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 64 / 791

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 65 / 791

Chapter 5

Raster Data Management, Queries, and Applications

5.1 Loading and Creating Rasters

For most use cases, you will create PostGIS rasters by loading existing raster files using the packaged raster2pgsql raster loader.

5.1.1 Using raster2pgsql to load rasters

The raster2pgsql is a raster loader executable that loads GDAL supported raster formats into sql suitable for loading into a PostGIS raster table. It is capable of loading folders of raster files as well as creating overviews of rasters.

Since the raster2pgsql is compiled as part of PostGIS most often (unless you compile your own GDAL library), the raster types supported by the executable will be the same as those compiled in the GDAL dependency library. To get a list of raster types your particular raster2pgsql supports use the -G switch. These should be the same as those provided by your PostGIS install documented here ST_GDALDrivers if you are using the same gdal library for both.



Note

The older version of this tool was a python script. The executable has replaced the python script. If you still find the need for the Python script Examples of the python one can be found at GDAL PostGIS Raster Driver Usage. Please note that the raster2pgsql python script may not work with future versions of PostGIS raster and is no longer supported.



Note

When creating overviews of a specific factor from a set of rasters that are aligned, it is possible for the overviews to not align. Visit http://trac.osgeo.org/postgis/ticket/1764 for an example where the overviews do not align.

EXAMPLE USAGE:

raster2pgsql raster_options_go_here raster_file someschema.sometable > out.sql

- -? Display help screen. Help will also display if you don't pass in any arguments.
- **-G** Print the supported raster formats.

(c|a|d|p) These are mutually exclusive options:

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 66 / 791

- -c Create new table and populate it with raster(s), this is the default mode
- -a Append raster(s) to an existing table.
- -d Drop table, create new one and populate it with raster(s)
- -p Prepare mode, only create the table.

Raster processing: Applying constraints for proper registering in raster catalogs

- -C Apply raster constraints -- srid, pixelsize etc. to ensure raster is properly registered in raster_columns view.
- -x Disable setting the max extent constraint. Only applied if -C flag is also used.
- -r Set the constraints (spatially unique and coverage tile) for regular blocking. Only applied if -C flag is also used.

Raster processing: Optional parameters used to manipulate input raster dataset

- -s <SRID> Assign output raster with specified SRID. If not provided or is zero, raster's metadata will be checked to determine an appropriate SRID.
- **-b BAND** Index (1-based) of band to extract from raster. For more than one band index, separate with comma (,). If unspecified, all bands of raster will be extracted.
- **-t TILE_SIZE** Cut raster into tiles to be inserted one per table row. TILE_SIZE is expressed as WIDTHxHEIGHT or set to the value "auto" to allow the loader to compute an appropriate tile size using the first raster and applied to all rasters.
- -P Pad right-most and bottom-most tiles to guarantee that all tiles have the same width and height.
- **-R**, **--register** Register the raster as a filesystem (out-db) raster.

 Only the metadata of the raster and path location to the raster is stored in the database (not the pixels).
- -l OVERVIEW_FACTOR Create overview of the raster. For more than one factor, separate with comma(,). Overview table name follows the pattern o_overview factor_table, where overview factor is a placeholder for numerical overview factor and table is replaced with the base table name. Created overview is stored in the database and is not affected by -R. Note that your generated sql file will contain both the main table and overview tables.
- -N NODATA NODATA value to use on bands without a NODATA value.

Optional parameters used to manipulate database objects

- -q Wrap PostgreSQL identifiers in quotes
- -f COLUMN Specify name of destination raster column, default is 'rast'
- -F Add a column with the name of the file
- -n COLUMN Specify the name of the filename column. Implies -F.
- -q Wrap PostgreSQL identifiers in quotes.
- -I Create a GiST index on the raster column.
- -M Vacuum analyze the raster table.
- -k Skip NODATA value checks for each raster band.
- **-T tablespace** Specify the tablespace for the new table. Note that indices (including the primary key) will still use the default tablespace unless the -X flag is also used.
- **-X tablespace** Specify the tablespace for the table's new index. This applies to the primary key and the spatial index if the -I flag is used.
- **-Y** Use copy statements instead of insert statements.
- **-e** Execute each statement individually, do not use a transaction.
- **-E ENDIAN** Control endianness of generated binary output of raster; specify 0 for XDR and 1 for NDR (default); only NDR output is supported now
- -V version Specify version of output format. Default is 0. Only 0 is supported at this time.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 67 / 791

An example session using the loader to create an input file and uploading it chunked in 100x100 tiles might look like this:



Note

You can leave the schema name out e.g demelevation instead of public. demelevation and the raster table will be created in the default schema of the database or user

```
raster2pgsql -s 4326 -I -C -M \star.tif -F -t 100x100 public.demelevation > elev.sql psql -d gisdb -f elev.sql
```

A conversion and upload can be done all in one step using UNIX pipes:

```
raster2pgsql -s 4326 -I -C -M *.tif -F -t 100x100 public.demelevation | psql -d gisdb
```

Load rasters Massachusetts state plane meters aerial tiles into a schema called aerial and create a full view, 2 and 4 level overview tables, use copy mode for inserting (no intermediary file just straight to db), and -e don't force everything in a transaction (good if you want to see data in tables right away without waiting). Break up the rasters into 128x128 pixel tiles and apply raster constraints. Use copy mode instead of table insert. (-F) Include a field called filename to hold the name of the file the tiles were cut from

```
raster2pgsql -I -C -e -Y -F -s 26986 -t 128x128 -l 2,4 bostonaerials2008/*.jpg aerials. \leftrightarrow boston | psql -U postgres -d gisdb -h localhost -p 5432
```

```
--get a list of raster types supported: raster2pgsql -G
```

The -G commands outputs a list something like

```
Available GDAL raster formats:
  Virtual Raster
  GeoTIFF
  National Imagery Transmission Format
  Raster Product Format TOC format
  ECRG TOC format
  Erdas Imagine Images (.img)
  CEOS SAR Image
  CEOS Image
  JAXA PALSAR Product Reader (Level 1.1/1.5)
  Ground-based SAR Applications Testbed File Format (.gff)
  Arc/Info Binary Grid
  Arc/Info ASCII Grid
  GRASS ASCII Grid
  SDTS Raster
  DTED Elevation Raster
  Portable Network Graphics
  JPEG JFIF
  In Memory Raster
  Japanese DEM (.mem)
  Graphics Interchange Format (.gif)
  Graphics Interchange Format (.gif)
  Envisat Image Format
  Maptech BSB Nautical Charts
  X11 PixMap Format
  MS Windows Device Independent Bitmap
  SPOT DIMAP
  AirSAR Polarimetric Image
  RadarSat 2 XML Product
  PCIDSK Database File
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 68 / 791

```
PCRaster Raster File
ILWIS Raster Map
SGI Image File Format 1.0
SRTMHGT File Format
Leveller heightfield
Terragen heightfield
USGS Astrogeology ISIS cube (Version 3)
USGS Astrogeology ISIS cube (Version 2)
NASA Planetary Data System
EarthWatch .TIL
ERMapper .ers Labelled
NOAA Polar Orbiter Level 1b Data Set
FIT Image
GRIdded Binary (.grb)
Raster Matrix Format
EUMETSAT Archive native (.nat)
Idrisi Raster A.1
Intergraph Raster
Golden Software ASCII Grid (.grd)
Golden Software Binary Grid (.grd)
Golden Software 7 Binary Grid (.grd)
COSAR Annotated Binary Matrix (TerraSAR-X)
TerraSAR-X Product
DRDC COASP SAR Processor Raster
R Object Data Store
Portable Pixmap Format (netpbm)
USGS DOQ (Old Style)
USGS DOQ (New Style)
ENVI .hdr Labelled
ESRI .hdr Labelled
Generic Binary (.hdr Labelled)
PCI .aux Labelled
Vexcel MFF Raster
Vexcel MFF2 (HKV) Raster
Fuji BAS Scanner Image
GSC Geogrid
EOSAT FAST Format
VTP .bt (Binary Terrain) 1.3 Format
Erdas .LAN/.GIS
Convair PolGASP
Image Data and Analysis
NLAPS Data Format
Erdas Imagine Raw
FARSITE v.4 Landscape File (.lcp)
NOAA Vertical Datum .GTX
NADCON .los/.las Datum Grid Shift
NTv2 Datum Grid Shift
ACE2
Snow Data Assimilation System
Swedish Grid RIK (.rik)
USGS Optional ASCII DEM (and CDED)
GeoSoft Grid Exchange Format
Northwood Numeric Grid Format .grd/.tab
Northwood Classified Grid Format .grc/.tab
ARC Digitized Raster Graphics
Standard Raster Product (ASRP/USRP)
Magellan topo (.blx)
SAGA GIS Binary Grid (.sdat)
Kml Super Overlay
ASCII Gridded XYZ
HF2/HFZ heightfield raster
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 69 / 791

```
OziExplorer Image File
USGS LULC Composite Theme Grid
Arc/Info Export E00 GRID
ZMap Plus Grid
NOAA NGS Geoid Height Grids
```

5.1.2 Creating rasters using PostGIS raster functions

On many occasions, you'll want to create rasters and raster tables right in the database. There are a plethora of functions to do that. The general steps to follow.

1. Create a table with a raster column to hold the new raster records which can be accomplished with:

```
CREATE TABLE myrasters(rid serial primary key, rast raster);
```

2. There are many functions to help with that goal. If you are creating rasters not as a derivative of other rasters, you will want to start with: ST_MakeEmptyRaster, followed by ST_AddBand

You can also create rasters from geometries. To achieve that you'll want to use ST_AsRaster perhaps accompanied with other functions such as ST_Union or ST_MapAlgebraFct or any of the family of other map algebra functions.

There are even many more options for creating new raster tables from existing tables. For example you can create a raster table in a different projection from an existing one using ST_Transform

3. Once you are done populating your table initially, you'll want to create a spatial index on the raster column with something like:

```
CREATE INDEX myrasters_rast_st_convexhull_idx ON myrasters USING gist( ST_ConvexHull( \leftrightarrow rast) );
```

Note the use of ST_ConvexHull since most raster operators are based on the convex hull of the rasters.



Note

Pre-2.0 versions of PostGIS raster were based on the envelop rather than the convex hull. For the spatial indexes to work properly you'll need to drop those and replace with convex hull based index.

4. Apply raster constraints using AddRasterConstraints

5.2 Raster Catalogs

There are two raster catalog views that come packaged with PostGIS. Both views utilize information embedded in the constraints of the raster tables. As a result the catalog views are always consistent with the raster data in the tables since the constraints are enforced.

- 1. raster_columns this view catalogs all the raster table columns in your database.
- 2. raster_overviews this view catalogs all the raster table columns in your database that serve as overviews for a finer grained table. Tables of this type are generated when you use the -1 switch during load.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 70 / 791

5.2.1 Raster Columns Catalog

The raster_columns is a catalog of all raster table columns in your database that are of type raster. It is a view utilizing the constraints on the tables so the information is always consistent even if you restore one raster table from a backup of another database. The following columns exist in the raster_columns catalog.

If you created your tables not with the loader or forgot to specify the -C flag during load, you can enforce the constraints after the fact using AddRasterConstraints so that the raster_columns catalog registers the common information about your raster tiles.

- r_table_catalog The database the table is in. This will always read the current database.
- r_table_schema The database schema the raster table belongs to.
- r_table_name raster table
- r_raster_column the column in the r_table_name table that is of type raster. There is nothing in PostGIS preventing you from having multiple raster columns per table so its possible to have a raster table listed multiple times with a different raster column for each.
- srid The spatial reference identifier of the raster. Should be an entry in the Section 4.3.1.
- scale_x The scaling between geometric spatial coordinates and pixel. This is only available if all tiles in the raster column have the same scale_x and this constraint is applied. Refer to ST_ScaleX for more details.
- scale_y The scaling between geometric spatial coordinates and pixel. This is only available if all tiles in the raster column have the same scale_y and the scale_y constraint is applied. Refer to ST_ScaleY for more details.
- blocksize_x The width (number of pixels across) of each raster tile. Refer to ST_Width for more details.
- blocksize_y The width (number of pixels down) of each raster tile. Refer to ST_Height for more details.
- same_alignment A boolean that is true if all the raster tiles have the same alignment. Refer to ST_SameAlignment for more details.
- regular_blocking If the raster column has the spatially unique and coverage tile constraints, the value with be TRUE. Otherwise, it will be FALSE.
- num_bands The number of bands in each tile of your raster set. This is the same information as what is provided by ST_NumBands
- pixel_types An array defining the pixel type for each band. You will have the same number of elements in this array as you have number of bands. The pixel_types are one of the following defined in ST_BandPixelType.
- nodata_values An array of double precision numbers denoting the nodata_value for each band. You will have the same number of elements in this array as you have number of bands. These numbers define the pixel value for each band that should be ignored for most operations. This is similar information provided by ST_BandNoDataValue.
- out_db An array of boolean flags indicating if the raster bands data is maintained outside the database. You will have the same number of elements in this array as you have number of bands.
- extent This is the extent of all the raster rows in your raster set. If you plan to load more data that will change the extent of the
 set, you'll want to run the DropRasterConstraints function before load and then reapply constraints with AddRasterConstraints
 after load.
- spatial_index A boolean that is true if raster column has a spatial index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 71 / 791

5.2.2 Raster Overviews

raster_overviews catalogs information about raster table columns used for overviews and additional information about them that is useful to know when utilizing overviews. Overview tables are cataloged in both raster_columns and raster _overviews because they are rasters in their own right but also serve an additional special purpose of being a lower resolution caricature of a higher resolution table. These are generated along-side the main raster table when you use the -l switch in raster loading or can be generated manually using AddOverviewConstraints.

Overview tables contain the same constraints as other raster tables as well as additional informational only constraints specific to overviews.



Note

The information in raster_overviews does not duplicate the information in raster_columns. If you need the information about an overview table present in raster_columns you can join the raster_overviews and raster columns together to get the full set of information you need.

Two main reasons for overviews are:

- 1. Low resolution representation of the core tables commonly used for fast mapping zoom-out.
- 2. Computations are generally faster to do on them than their higher resolution parents because there are fewer records and each pixel covers more territory. Though the computations are not as accurate as the high-res tables they support, they can be sufficient in many rule-of-thumb computations.

The raster_overviews catalog contains the following columns of information.

- o table catalog The database the overview table is in. This will always read the current database.
- o_table_schema The database schema the overview raster table belongs to.
- o_table_name raster overview table name
- o_raster_column the raster column in the overview table.
- r_table_catalog The database the raster table that this overview services is in. This will always read the current database.
- r table schema The database schema the raster table that this overview services belongs to.
- r_table_name raster table that this overview services.
- r raster column the raster column that this overview column services.
- overview_factor this is the pyramid level of the overview table. The higher the number the lower the resolution of the table. raster2pgsql if given a folder of images, will compute overview of each image file and load separately. Level 1 is assumed and always the original file. Level 2 is will have each tile represent 4 of the original. So for example if you have a folder of 5000x5000 pixel image files that you chose to chunk 125x125, for each image file your base table will have (5000*5000)/(125*125) records = 1600, your (l=2) o_2 table will have ceiling(1600/Power(2,2)) = 400 rows, your (l=3) o_3 will have ceiling(1600/Power(2,3)) = 200 rows. If your pixels aren't divisible by the size of your tiles, you'll get some scrap tiles (tiles not completely filled). Note that each overview tile generated by raster2pgsql has the same number of pixels as its parent, but is of a lower resolution where each pixel of it represents (Power(2,overview_factor) pixels of the original).

5.3 Building Custom Applications with PostGIS Raster

The fact that PostGIS raster provides you with SQL functions to render rasters in known image formats gives you a lot of optoins for rendering them. For example you can use OpenOffice / LibreOffice for rendering as demonstrated in Rendering PostGIS Raster graphics with LibreOffice Base Reports. In addition you can use a wide variety of languages as demonstrated in this section.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 72 / 791

5.3.1 PHP Example Outputting using ST_AsPNG in concert with other raster functions

In this section, we'll demonstrate how to use the PHP PostgreSQL driver and the ST_AsGDALRaster family of functions to output band 1,2,3 of a raster to a PHP request stream that can then be embedded in an img src html tag.

The sample query demonstrates how to combine a whole bunch of raster functions together to grab all tiles that intersect a particular wgs 84 bounding box and then unions with ST_Union the intersecting tiles together returning all bands, transforms to user specified projection using ST_Transform, and then outputs the results as a png using ST_AsPNG.

You would call the below using

```
http://mywebserver/test_raster.php?srid=2249
```

to get the raster image in Massachusetts state plane feet.

```
<?php
/** contents of test_raster.php **/
$conn_str = 'dbname=mydb host=localhost port=5432 user=myuser password=mypwd';
$dbconn = pg_connect($conn_str);
header('Content-Type: image/png');
/**If a particular projection was requested use it otherwise use mass state plane meters
if (!empty( $_REQUEST['srid'] ) && is_numeric( $_REQUEST['srid']) ){
    $input_srid = intval($_REQUEST['srid']);
else { $input_srid = 26986; }
/** The set bytea_output may be needed for PostgreSQL 9.0+, but not for 8.4 **/
$sql = "set bytea_output='escape';
SELECT ST_AsPNG(ST_Transform(
      ST_AddBand(ST_Union(rast,1), ARRAY[ST_Union(rast,2),ST_Union(rast,3)])
        ,$input_srid) ) As new_rast
 FROM aerials.boston
  WHERE
   ST_Intersects(rast, ST_Transform(ST_MakeEnvelope(-71.1217, 42.227, -71.1210, \leftrightarrow
      42.218,4326),26986) )";
$result = pg_query($sql);
$row = pg_fetch_row($result);
pg_free_result($result);
if ($row === false) return;
echo pg_unescape_bytea($row[0]);
?>
```

5.3.2 ASP.NET C# Example Outputting using ST_AsPNG in concert with other raster functions

In this section, we'll demonstrate how to use Npgsql PostgreSQL .NET driver and the ST_AsGDALRaster family of functions to output band 1,2,3 of a raster to a PHP request stream that can then be embedded in an img src html tag.

You will need the npgsql .NET PostgreSQL driver for this exercise which you can get the latest of from http://npgsql.projects.postgresql.org. Just download the latest and drop into your ASP.NET bin folder and you'll be good to go.

The sample query demonstrates how to combine a whole bunch of raster functions together to grab all tiles that intersect a particular wgs 84 bounding box and then unions with ST_Union the intersecting tiles together returning all bands, transforms to user specified projection using ST_Transform, and then outputs the results as a png using ST_AsPNG.

This is same example as Section 5.3.1 except implemented in C#.

You would call the below using

```
http://mywebserver/TestRaster.ashx?srid=2249
```

to get the raster image in Massachusetts state plane feet.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 73 / 791

```
// Code for TestRaster.ashx
<%@ WebHandler Language="C#" Class="TestRaster" %>
using System;
using System.Data;
using System. Web;
using Npgsql;
public class TestRaster : IHttpHandler
  public void ProcessRequest(HttpContext context)
    context.Response.ContentType = "image/png";
    context.Response.BinaryWrite(GetResults(context));
  }
  public bool IsReusable {
    get { return false; }
  public byte[] GetResults(HttpContext context)
    byte[] result = null;
    NpgsqlCommand command;
    string sql = null;
    int input_srid = 26986;
        using (NpgsqlConnection conn = new NpgsqlConnection(System.Configuration. \hookleftarrow
            ConfigurationManager.ConnectionStrings["DSN"].ConnectionString)) {
          conn.Open();
                if (context.Request["srid"] != null)
                    input_srid = Convert.ToInt32(context.Request["srid"]);
                sql = @"SELECT ST_AsPNG(
                            ST_Transform(
                       ST_AddBand(
                                 ST_Union(rast,1), ARRAY[ST_Union(rast,2),ST_Union(rast,3)])
                             ,:input_srid) ) As new_rast
                         FROM aerials.boston
                           WHERE
                               ST_Intersects(rast,
                                     ST_Transform(ST_MakeEnvelope(-71.1217, 42.227, \leftarrow
                                         -71.1210, 42.218,4326),26986) )";
          command = new NpgsqlCommand(sql, conn);
                command.Parameters.Add(new NpgsqlParameter("input_srid", input_srid));
          result = (byte[]) command.ExecuteScalar();
                conn.Close();
      }
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 74 / 791

```
catch (Exception ex)
{
    result = null;
    context.Response.Write(ex.Message.Trim());
}
return result;
}
```

5.3.3 Java console app that outputs raster query as Image file

This is a simple java console app that takes a query that returns one image and outputs to specified file.

You can download the latest PostgreSQL JDBC drivers from http://jdbc.postgresql.org/download.html

You can compile the following code using a command something like:

```
set env CLASSPATH .:..\postgresql-9.0-801.jdbc4.jar
javac SaveQueryImage.java
jar cfm SaveQueryImage.jar Manifest.txt *.class
```

And call it from the command-line with something like

```
java -jar SaveQueryImage.jar "SELECT ST_AsPNG(ST_AsRaster(ST_Buffer(ST_Point(1,5),10, ' ←
    quad_segs=2'),150, 150, '8BUI',100));" "test.png"
```

```
-- Manifest.txt -- Class-Path: postgresql-9.0-801.jdbc4.jar Main-Class: SaveQueryImage
```

```
// Code for SaveQueryImage.java
import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.SQLException;
import java.sql.PreparedStatement;
import java.sql.ResultSet;
import java.io.*;
public class SaveQueryImage {
  public static void main(String[] argv) {
       \begin{tabular}{ll} System.out.println("Checking if Driver is registered with DriverManager."); \\ \end{tabular} 
      try {
        //java.sql.DriverManager.registerDriver (new org.postgresql.Driver());
        Class.forName("org.postgresql.Driver");
      }
      catch (ClassNotFoundException cnfe) {
        System.out.println("Couldn't find the driver!");
        cnfe.printStackTrace();
        System.exit(1);
      Connection conn = null;
      try {
        conn = DriverManager.getConnection("jdbc:postgresql://localhost:5432/mydb","myuser ←
            ", "mypwd");
        conn.setAutoCommit(false);
        PreparedStatement sGetImg = conn.prepareStatement(argv[0]);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 75 / 791

```
ResultSet rs = sGetImg.executeQuery();
 FileOutputStream fout;
  try
   rs.next();
   /** Output to file name requested by user **/
   fout = new FileOutputStream(new File(argv[1]) );
   fout.write(rs.getBytes(1));
    fout.close();
  catch (Exception e)
   System.out.println("Can't create file");
    e.printStackTrace();
      rs.close();
  sGetImg.close();
     conn.close();
   catch (SQLException se) {
     System.out.println("Couldn't connect: print out a stack trace and exit.");
      se.printStackTrace();
      System.exit(1);
   }
}
```

5.3.4 Use PLPython to dump out images via SQL

This is a plpython stored function that creates a file in the server directory for each record. Requires you have plpython installed. Should work fine with both plpythonu and plpython3u.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION write_file (param_bytes bytea, param_filepath text)

RETURNS text

AS $$
f = open(param_filepath, 'wb+')
f.write(param_bytes)
return param_filepath
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 76 / 791

5.3.5 Outputting Rasters with PSQL

Sadly PSQL doesn't have easy to use built-in functionality for outputting binaries. This is a bit of a hack that piggy backs on PostgreSQL somewhat legacy large object support. To use first launch your psql commandline connected to your database.

Unlike the python approach, this approach creates the file on your local computer.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 77 / 791

Chapter 6

Using PostGIS Geometry: Building Applications

6.1 Using MapServer

The Minnesota MapServer is an internet web-mapping server which conforms to the OpenGIS Web Mapping Server specification.

- The MapServer homepage is at http://mapserver.org.
- The OpenGIS Web Map Specification is at http://www.opengeospatial.org/standards/wms.

6.1.1 Basic Usage

To use PostGIS with MapServer, you will need to know about how to configure MapServer, which is beyond the scope of this documentation. This section will cover specific PostGIS issues and configuration details.

To use PostGIS with MapServer, you will need:

- Version 0.6 or newer of PostGIS.
- Version 3.5 or newer of MapServer.

MapServer accesses PostGIS/PostgreSQL data like any other PostgreSQL client -- using the <code>libpq</code> interface. This means that MapServer can be installed on any machine with network access to the PostGIS server, and use PostGIS as a source of data. The faster the connection between the systems, the better.

- 1. Compile and install MapServer, with whatever options you desire, including the "--with-postgis" configuration option.
- 2. In your MapServer map file, add a PostGIS layer. For example:

```
LAYER

CONNECTIONTYPE postgis

NAME "widehighways"

# Connect to a remote spatial database

CONNECTION "user=dbuser dbname=gisdatabase host=bigserver"

PROCESSING "CLOSE_CONNECTION=DEFER"

# Get the lines from the 'geom' column of the 'roads' table

DATA "geom from roads using srid=4326 using unique gid"

STATUS ON

TYPE LINE

# Of the lines in the extents, only render the wide highways

FILTER "type = 'highway' and numlanes >= 4"

CLASS

# Make the superhighways brighter and 2 pixels wide
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 78 / 791

```
EXPRESSION ([numlanes] >= 6)

STYLE

COLOR 255 22 22

WIDTH 2

END

END

CLASS

# All the rest are darker and only 1 pixel wide

EXPRESSION ([numlanes] < 6)

STYLE

COLOR 205 92 82

END

END

END

END
```

In the example above, the PostGIS-specific directives are as follows:

CONNECTIONTYPE For PostGIS layers, this is always "postgis".

CONNECTION The database connection is governed by the a 'connection string' which is a standard set of keys and values like this (with the default values in <>):

user=<username> password=<password> dbname=<username> hostname=<server> port=<5432>

An empty connection string is still valid, and any of the key/value pairs can be omitted. At a minimum you will generally supply the database name and username to connect with.

DATA The form of this parameter is "<geocolumn> from <tablename> using srid=<srid> using unique <pri> where the column is the spatial column to be rendered to the map, the SRID is SRID used by the column and the primary key is the table primary key (or any other uniquely-valued column with an index).

You can omit the "using srid" and "using unique" clauses and MapServer will automatically determine the correct values if possible, but at the cost of running a few extra queries on the server for each map draw.

PROCESSING Putting in a CLOSE_CONNECTION=DEFER if you have multiple layers reuses existing connections instead of closing them. This improves speed. Refer to for MapServer PostGIS Performance Tips for a more detailed explanation.

FILTER The filter must be a valid SQL string corresponding to the logic normally following the "WHERE" keyword in a SQL query. So, for example, to render only roads with 6 or more lanes, use a filter of "num_lanes >= 6".

3. In your spatial database, ensure you have spatial (GiST) indexes built for any the layers you will be drawing.

```
CREATE INDEX [indexname] ON [tablename] USING GIST ( [geometrycolumn] );
```

4. If you will be querying your layers using MapServer you will also need to use the "using unique" clause in your DATA statement.

MapServer requires unique identifiers for each spatial record when doing queries, and the PostGIS module of MapServer uses the unique value you specify in order to provide these unique identifiers. Using the table primary key is the best practice.

6.1.2 Frequently Asked Questions

1. When I use an EXPRESSION in my map file, the condition never returns as true, even though I know the values exist in my table.

Unlike shape files, PostGIS field names have to be referenced in EXPRESSIONS using lower case.

```
EXPRESSION ([numlanes] >= 6)
```

2. The FILTER I use for my Shape files is not working for my PostGIS table of the same data.

Unlike shape files, filters for PostGIS layers use SQL syntax (they are appended to the SQL statement the PostGIS connector generates for drawing layers in MapServer).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 79 / 791

```
FILTER "type = 'highway' and numlanes >= 4"
```

3. My PostGIS layer draws much slower than my Shape file layer, is this normal?

In general, the more features you are drawing into a given map, the more likely it is that PostGIS will be slower than Shape files. For maps with relatively few features (100s), PostGIS will often be faster. For maps with high feature density (1000s), PostGIS will always be slower. If you are finding substantial draw performance problems, it is possible that you have not built a spatial index on your table.

```
postgis# CREATE INDEX geotable_gix ON geotable USING GIST ( geocolumn );
postgis# VACUUM ANALYZE;
```

4. My PostGIS layer draws fine, but queries are really slow. What is wrong?

For queries to be fast, you must have a unique key for your spatial table and you must have an index on that unique key. You can specify what unique key for mapserver to use with the USING UNIQUE clause in your DATA line:

```
DATA "geom FROM geotable USING UNIQUE gid"
```

5. Can I use "geography" columns (new in PostGIS 1.5) as a source for MapServer layers?

Yes! MapServer understands geography columns as being the same as geometry columns, but always using an SRID of 4326. Just make sure to include a "using srid=4326" clause in your DATA statement. Everything else works exactly the same as with geometry.

```
DATA "geog FROM geogtable USING SRID=4326 USING UNIQUE gid"
```

6.1.3 Advanced Usage

The USING pseudo-SQL clause is used to add some information to help mapserver understand the results of more complex queries. More specifically, when either a view or a subselect is used as the source table (the thing to the right of "FROM" in a DATA definition) it is more difficult for mapserver to automatically determine a unique identifier for each row and also the SRID for the table. The USING clause can provide mapserver with these two pieces of information as follows:

```
DATA "geom FROM (
SELECT
table1.geom AS geom,
table1.gid AS gid,
table2.data AS data
FROM table1
LEFT JOIN table2
ON table1.id = table2.id
) AS new_table USING UNIQUE gid USING SRID=4326"
```

USING UNIQUE <uniqueid> MapServer requires a unique id for each row in order to identify the row when doing map queries. Normally it identifies the primary key from the system tables. However, views and subselects don't automatically have an known unique column. If you want to use MapServer's query functionality, you need to ensure your view or subselect includes a uniquely valued column, and declare it with USING UNIQUE. For example, you could explicitly select nee of the table's primary key values for this purpose, or any other column which is guaranteed to be unique for the result set.



Note

"Querying a Map" is the action of clicking on a map to ask for information about the map features in that location. Don't confuse "map queries" with the SQL query in a DATA definition.

USING SRID=<srid> PostGIS needs to know which spatial referencing system is being used by the geometries in order to return the correct data back to MapServer. Normally it is possible to find this information in the "geometry_columns" table in the PostGIS database, however, this is not possible for tables which are created on the fly such as subselects and views. So the USING SRID= option allows the correct SRID to be specified in the DATA definition.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 80 / 791

6.1.4 Examples

Lets start with a simple example and work our way up. Consider the following MapServer layer definition:

```
LAYER

CONNECTIONTYPE postgis

NAME "roads"

CONNECTION "user=theuser password=thepass dbname=thedb host=theserver"

DATA "geom from roads"

STATUS ON

TYPE LINE

CLASS

STYLE

COLOR 0 0 0

END

END

END

END
```

This layer will display all the road geometries in the roads table as black lines.

Now lets say we want to show only the highways until we get zoomed in to at least a 1:100000 scale - the next two layers will achieve this effect:

```
LAYER
  CONNECTIONTYPE postgis
  \verb| CONNECTION "user=theuser password=thepass dbname=thedb host=theserver"| \\
 PROCESSING "CLOSE_CONNECTION=DEFER"
 DATA "geom from roads"
 MINSCALE 100000
  STATUS ON
  TYPE LINE
  FILTER "road_type = 'highway'"
  CLASS
    COLOR 0 0 0
 END
END
LAYER
  CONNECTIONTYPE postgis
  CONNECTION "user=theuser password=thepass dbname=thedb host=theserver"
  PROCESSING "CLOSE_CONNECTION=DEFER"
  DATA "geom from roads"
  MAXSCALE 100000
  STATUS ON
  TYPE LINE
  CLASSITEM road_type
  CLASS
    EXPRESSION "highway"
    STYLE
      WIDTH 2
      COLOR 255 0 0
    END
  END
  CLASS
   STYLE
     COLOR 0 0 0
    END
  END
END
```

The first layer is used when the scale is greater than 1:100000, and displays only the roads of type "highway" as black lines. The FILTER option causes only roads of type "highway" to be displayed.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 81 / 791

The second layer is used when the scale is less than 1:100000, and will display highways as double-thick red lines, and other roads as regular black lines.

So, we have done a couple of interesting things using only MapServer functionality, but our DATA SQL statement has remained simple. Suppose that the name of the road is stored in another table (for whatever reason) and we need to do a join to get it and label our roads.

```
LAYER
  CONNECTIONTYPE postgis
  CONNECTION "user=theuser password=thepass dbname=thedb host=theserver"
  DATA "geom FROM (SELECT roads.gid AS gid, roads.geom AS geom,
        road_names.name as name FROM roads LEFT JOIN road_names ON
        roads.road_name_id = road_names.road_name_id)
        AS named_roads USING UNIQUE gid USING SRID=4326"
  MAXSCALE 20000
  STATUS ON
  TYPE ANNOTATION
  LABELITEM name
  CLASS
    LABEL
      ANGLE auto
      SIZE 8
      COLOR 0 192 0
      TYPE truetype
      FONT arial
    END
  END
END
```

This annotation layer adds green labels to all the roads when the scale gets down to 1:20000 or less. It also demonstrates how to use an SQL join in a DATA definition.

6.2 Java Clients (JDBC)

Java clients can access PostGIS "geometry" objects in the PostgreSQL database either directly as text representations or using the JDBC extension objects bundled with PostGIS. In order to use the extension objects, the "postgis.jar" file must be in your CLASSPATH along with the "postgresql.jar" JDBC driver package.

```
import java.sql.*;
import java.util.*;
import java.lang.*;
import org.postgis.*;
public class JavaGIS {
public static void main(String[] args) {
  java.sql.Connection conn;
  try {
    /*
    * Load the JDBC driver and establish a connection.
    Class.forName("org.postgresql.Driver");
    String url = "jdbc:postgresql://localhost:5432/database";
    conn = DriverManager.getConnection(url, "postgres", "");
    * Add the geometry types to the connection. Note that you
    \star must cast the connection to the pgsql-specific connection
    * implementation before calling the addDataType() method.
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 82 / 791

```
PGgeometry"));
    ((org.postgresql.PGConnection)conn).addDataType("box3d",Class.forName("org.postgis. \leftrightarrow Class.forName("org.postgis.")
       PGbox3d"));
   * Create a statement and execute a select query.
   */
   Statement s = conn.createStatement();
   ResultSet r = s.executeQuery("select geom,id from geomtable");
   while( r.next() ) {
     /*
     * Retrieve the geometry as an object then cast it to the geometry type.
     * Print things out.
     PGgeometry geom = (PGgeometry)r.getObject(1);
     int id = r.getInt(2);
     System.out.println("Row " + id + ":");
     System.out.println(geom.toString());
   s.close();
   conn.close();
 }
catch (Exception e ) {
 e.printStackTrace();
 }
```

The "PGgeometry" object is a wrapper object which contains a specific topological geometry object (subclasses of the abstract class "Geometry") depending on the type: Point, LineString, Polygon, MultiPoint, MultiLineString, MultiPolygon.

```
PGgeometry geom = (PGgeometry)r.getObject(1);
if( geom.getType() == Geometry.POLYGON ) {
   Polygon pl = (Polygon)geom.getGeometry();
   for( int r = 0; r < pl.numRings(); r++) {
      LinearRing rng = pl.getRing(r);
      System.out.println("Ring: " + r);
      for( int p = 0; p < rng.numPoints(); p++ ) {
        Point pt = rng.getPoint(p);
        System.out.println("Point: " + p);
        System.out.println(pt.toString());
      }
   }
}</pre>
```

The JavaDoc for the extension objects provides a reference for the various data accessor functions in the geometric objects.

6.3 C Clients (libpq)

•••

6.3.1 Text Cursors

...

6.3.2 Binary Cursors

•••

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 83 / 791

Chapter 7

Performance tips

7.1 Small tables of large geometries

7.1.1 Problem description

Current PostgreSQL versions (including 9.6) suffer from a query optimizer weakness regarding TOAST tables. TOAST tables are a kind of "extension room" used to store large (in the sense of data size) values that do not fit into normal data pages (like long texts, images or complex geometries with lots of vertices), see the PostgreSQL Documentation for TOAST for more information).

The problem appears if you happen to have a table with rather large geometries, but not too manyrows of them (like a table containing the boundaries of all European countries in high resolution). Then the table itself is small, but it uses lots of TOAST space. In our example case, the table itself had about 80 rows and used only 3 data pages, but the TOAST table used 8225 pages.

Now issue a query where you use the geometry operator && to search for a bounding box that matches only very few of those rows. Now the query optimizer sees that the table has only 3 pages and 80 rows. It estimates that a sequential scan on such a small table is much faster than using an index. And so it decides to ignore the GIST index. Usually, this estimation is correct. But in our case, the && operator has to fetch every geometry from disk to compare the bounding boxes, thus reading all TOAST pages, too.

To see whether your suffer from this issue, use the "EXPLAIN ANALYZE" postgresql command. For more information and the technical details, you can read the thread on the postgres performance mailing list: http://archives.postgresql.org/pgsql-performance/2005-02/msg00030.php

and newer thread on PostGIS https://lists.osgeo.org/pipermail/postgis-devel/2017-June/026209.html

7.1.2 Workarounds

The PostgreSQL people are trying to solve this issue by making the query estimation TOAST-aware. For now, here are two workarounds:

The first workaround is to force the query planner to use the index. Send "SET enable_seqscan TO off;" to the server before issuing the query. This basically forces the query planner to avoid sequential scans whenever possible. So it uses the GIST index as usual. But this flag has to be set on every connection, and it causes the query planner to make misestimations in other cases, so you should "SET enable_seqscan TO on;" after the query.

The second workaround is to make the sequential scan as fast as the query planner thinks. This can be achieved by creating an additional column that "caches" the bbox, and matching against this. In our example, the commands are like:

```
SELECT AddGeometryColumn('myschema','mytable','bbox','4326','GEOMETRY','2');
UPDATE mytable SET bbox = ST_Envelope(ST_Force2D(the_geom));
```

Now change your query to use the && operator against bbox instead of geom_column, like:

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 84 / 791

```
SELECT geom_column
FROM mytable
WHERE bbox && ST_SetSRID('BOX3D(0 0,1 1)'::box3d,4326);
```

Of course, if you change or add rows to mytable, you have to keep the bbox "in sync". The most transparent way to do this would be triggers, but you also can modify your application to keep the bbox column current or run the UPDATE query above after every modification.

7.2 CLUSTERing on geometry indices

For tables that are mostly read-only, and where a single index is used for the majority of queries, PostgreSQL offers the CLUS-TER command. This command physically reorders all the data rows in the same order as the index criteria, yielding two performance advantages: First, for index range scans, the number of seeks on the data table is drastically reduced. Second, if your working set concentrates to some small intervals on the indices, you have a more efficient caching because the data rows are spread along fewer data pages. (Feel invited to read the CLUSTER command documentation from the PostgreSQL manual at this point.)

However, currently PostgreSQL does not allow clustering on PostGIS GIST indices because GIST indices simply ignores NULL values, you get an error message like:

```
lwgeom=# CLUSTER my_geom_index ON my_table;
ERROR: cannot cluster when index access method does not handle null values
HINT: You may be able to work around this by marking column "the_geom" NOT NULL.
```

As the HINT message tells you, one can work around this deficiency by adding a "not null" constraint to the table:

```
lwgeom=# ALTER TABLE my_table ALTER COLUMN the_geom SET not null;
ALTER TABLE
```

Of course, this will not work if you in fact need NULL values in your geometry column. Additionally, you must use the above method to add the constraint, using a CHECK constraint like "ALTER TABLE blubb ADD CHECK (geometry is not null);" will not work.

7.3 Avoiding dimension conversion

Sometimes, you happen to have 3D or 4D data in your table, but always access it using OpenGIS compliant ST_AsText() or ST_AsBinary() functions that only output 2D geometries. They do this by internally calling the ST_Force2D() function, which introduces a significant overhead for large geometries. To avoid this overhead, it may be feasible to pre-drop those additional dimensions once and forever:

```
UPDATE mytable SET the_geom = ST_Force2D(the_geom);
VACUUM FULL ANALYZE mytable;
```

Note that if you added your geometry column using AddGeometryColumn() there'll be a constraint on geometry dimension. To bypass it you will need to drop the constraint. Remember to update the entry in the geometry_columns table and recreate the constraint afterwards.

In case of large tables, it may be wise to divide this UPDATE into smaller portions by constraining the UPDATE to a part of the table via a WHERE clause and your primary key or another feasible criteria, and running a simple "VACUUM;" between your UPDATEs. This drastically reduces the need for temporary disk space. Additionally, if you have mixed dimension geometries, restricting the UPDATE by "WHERE dimension(the_geom)>2" skips re-writing of geometries that already are in 2D.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 85 / 791

7.4 Tuning your configuration

Tuning for PostGIS is much like tuning for any PostgreSQL workload. The only additional note to keep in mind is that geometries and rasters are heavy so memory related optimizations generally have more of an impact on PostGIS than other types of PostgreSQL queries.

For general details about optimizing PostgreSQL, refer to Tuning your PostgreSQL Server.

For PostgreSQL 9.4+ all these can be set at the server level without touching postgresql.conf or postgresql.auto.conf by using the $ALTER\ SYSTEM..$ command.

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET work_mem = '256MB';

-- this will force, non-startup configs to take effect for new connections

SELECT pg_reload_conf();

-- show current setting value

-- use SHOW ALL to see all settings

SHOW work_mem;
```

In addition to these settings, PostGIS also has some custom settings which you can find listed in Section 8.2.

7.4.1 Startup

These settings are configured in postgresql.conf:

constraint_exclusion

- Default: partition
- This is generally used for table partitioning. The default for this is set to "partition" which is ideal for PostgreSQL 8.4 and above since it will force the planner to only analyze tables for constraint consideration if they are in an inherited hierarchy and not pay the planner penalty otherwise.

shared_buffers

- Default: ~128MB in PostgreSQL 9.6
- Set to about 25% to 40% of available RAM. On windows you may not be able to set as high.

max_worker_processes This setting is only available for PostgreSQL 9.4+. For PostgreSQL 9.6+ this setting has additional importance in that it controls the max number of processes you can have for parallel queries.

- Default: 8
- Sets the maximum number of background processes that the system can support. This parameter can only be set at server start.

7.4.2 Runtime

work mem (the memory used for sort operations and complex queries)

- Default: 1-4MB
- Adjust up for large dbs, complex queries, lots of RAM
- Adjust down for many concurrent users or low RAM.
- If you have lots of RAM and few developers:

```
SET work_mem TO '256MB';
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 86 / 791

maintenance_work_mem (used for VACUUM, CREATE INDEX, etc.)

- Default: 16-64MB
- Generally too low ties up I/O, locks objects while swapping memory
- Recommend 32MB to 1GB on production servers w/lots of RAM, but depends on the # of concurrent users. If you have lots of RAM and few developers:

```
SET maintenance_work_mem TO '1GB';
```

max_parallel_workers_per_gather This setting is only available for PostgreSQL 9.6+ and will only affect PostGIS 2.3+, since only PostGIS 2.3+ supports parallel queries. If set to higher than 0, then some queries such as those involving relation functions like ST_Intersects can use multiple processes and can run more than twice as fast when doing so. If you have a lot of processors to spare, you should change the value of this to as many processors as you have. Also make sure to bump up max worker processes to at least as high as this number.

- Default: 0
- Sets the maximum number of workers that can be started by a single Gather node. Parallel workers are taken from the pool of processes established by max_worker_processes. Note that the requested number of workers may not actually be available at run time. If this occurs, the plan will run with fewer workers than expected, which may be inefficient. Setting this value to 0, which is the default, disables parallel query execution.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 87 / 791

Chapter 8

PostGIS Reference

The functions given below are the ones which a user of PostGIS is likely to need. There are other functions which are required support functions to the PostGIS objects which are not of use to a general user.

Note



PostGIS has begun a transition from the existing naming convention to an SQL-MM-centric convention. As a result, most of the functions that you know and love have been renamed using the standard spatial type (ST) prefix. Previous functions are still available, though are not listed in this document where updated functions are equivalent. The non ST_ functions not listed in this documentation are deprecated and will be removed in a future release so STOP USING THEM.

8.1 PostgreSQL PostGIS Geometry/Geography/Box Types

8.1.1 box2d

box2d — A box composed of x min, ymin, xmax, ymax. Often used to return the 2d enclosing box of a geometry.

Description

box2d is a spatial data type used to represent the enclosing box of a geometry or set of geometries. ST_Extent in earlier versions prior to PostGIS 1.4 would return a box2d.

8.1.2 box3d

box3d — A box composed of x min, ymin, zmin, xmax, ymax, zmax. Often used to return the 3d extent of a geometry or collection of geometries.

Description

box3d is a postgis spatial data type used to represent the enclosing box of a geometry or set of geometries. ST_3DExtent returns a box3d object.

Casting Behavior

This section lists the automatic as well as explicit casts allowed for this data type

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 88 / 791

Cast To	Behavior
box	automatic
box2d	automatic
geometry	automatic

8.1.3 geometry

geometry — Planar spatial data type.

Description

geometry is a fundamental postgis spatial data type used to represent a feature in the Euclidean coordinate system.

Casting Behavior

This section lists the automatic as well as explicit casts allowed for this data type

Cast To	Behavior
box	automatic
box2d	automatic
box3d	automatic
bytea	automatic
geography	automatic
text	automatic

See Also

Section 4.1

8.1.4 geometry_dump

geometry_dump — A spatial datatype with two fields - geom (holding a geometry object) and path[] (a 1-d array holding the position of the geometry within the dumped object.)

Description

geometry_dump is a compound data type consisting of a geometry object referenced by the .geom field and path[] a 1-dimensional integer array (starting at 1 e.g. path[1] to get first element) array that defines the navigation path within the dumped geometry to find this element. It is used by the ST_Dump* family of functions as an output type to explode a more complex geometry into its constituent parts and location of parts.

See Also

Section 14.6

8.1.5 geography

geography — Ellipsoidal spatial data type.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 89 / 791

Description

geography is a spatial data type used to represent a feature in the round-earth coordinate system.

Casting Behavior

This section lists the automatic as well as explicit casts allowed for this data type

Cast To	Behavior
geometry	explicit

See Also

Section 14.4, Section 4.2

8.2 PostGIS Grand Unified Custom Variables (GUCs)

8.2.1 postgis.backend

postgis.backend — The backend to service a function where GEOS and SFCGAL overlap. Options: geos or sfcgal. Defaults to geos.

Description

This GUC is only relevant if you compiled PostGIS with sfcgal support. By default geos backend is used for functions where both GEOS and SFCGAL have the same named function. This variable allows you to override and make sfcgal the backend to service the request.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

Sets backend just for life of connection

```
set postgis.backend = sfcgal;
```

Sets backend for new connections to database

```
ALTER DATABASE mygisdb SET postgis.backend = sfcgal;
```

See Also

Section 8.10

8.2.2 postgis.gdal datapath

postgis.gdal_datapath — A configuration option to assign the value of GDAL's GDAL_DATA option. If not set, the environmentally set GDAL_DATA variable is used.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 90 / 791

Description

A PostgreSQL GUC variable for setting the value of GDAL's GDAL_DATA option. The postgis.gdal_datapath value should be the complete physical path to GDAL's data files.

This configuration option is of most use for Windows platforms where GDAL's data files path is not hard-coded. This option should also be set when GDAL's data files are not located in GDAL's expected path.



Note

This option can be set in PostgreSQL's configuration file postgresql.conf. It can also be set by connection or transaction.

Availability: 2.2.0



Note

Additional information about GDAL_DATA is available at GDAL's Configuration Options.

Examples

Set and reset postgis.gdal_datapath

```
SET postgis.gdal_datapath TO '/usr/local/share/gdal.hidden';
SET postgis.gdal_datapath TO default;
```

Setting on windows for a particular database

```
ALTER DATABASE gisdb
SET postgis.gdal_datapath = 'C:/Program Files/PostgreSQL/9.3/gdal-data';
```

See Also

PostGIS_GDAL_Version, ST_Transform

8.2.3 postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers

postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers — A configuration option to set the enabled GDAL drivers in the PostGIS environment. Affects the GDAL configuration variable GDAL_SKIP.

Description

A configuration option to set the enabled GDAL drivers in the PostGIS environment. Affects the GDAL configuration variable GDAL_SKIP. This option can be set in PostgreSQL's configuration file: postgresql.conf. It can also be set by connection or transaction.

The initial value of postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers may also be set by passing the environment variable POSTGIS_G DAL_ENABLED_DRIVERS with the list of enabled drivers to the process starting PostgreSQL.

Enabled GDAL specified drivers can be specified by the driver's short-name or code. Driver short-names or codes can be found at GDAL Raster Formats. Multiple drivers can be specified by putting a space between each driver.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 91 / 791

Note

There are three special codes available for postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers. The codes are case-sensitive.

• DISABLE_ALL disables all GDAL drivers. If present, DISABLE_ALL overrides all other values in postgis. gdal_enabled_drivers.



- ENABLE_ALL enables all GDAL drivers.
- VSICURL enables GDAL's /vsicurl/ virtual file system.

When postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers is set to DISABLE_ALL, attempts to use out-db rasters, ST_FromGDALRaster(), ST_AsGDALRaster(), ST_AsTIFF(), ST_AsJPEG() and ST_AsPNG() will result in error messages.



Note

In the standard PostGIS installation, postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers is set to DISABLE_ALL.



Note

Additional information about GDAL_SKIP is available at GDAL's Configuration Options.

Availability: 2.2.0

Examples

Set and reset postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers

Sets backend for all new connections to database

```
ALTER DATABASE mygisdb SET postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers TO 'GTiff PNG JPEG';
```

Sets default enabled drivers for all new connections to server. Requires super user access and PostgreSQL 9.4+. Also not that database, session, and user settings override this.

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers TO 'GTiff PNG JPEG'; SELECT pg_reload_conf();
```

```
SET postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers TO 'GTiff PNG JPEG';
SET postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers = default;
```

Enable all GDAL Drivers

```
SET postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers = 'ENABLE_ALL';
```

Disable all GDAL Drivers

```
SET postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers = 'DISABLE_ALL';
```

See Also

ST_FromGDALRaster, ST_AsGDALRaster, ST_AsTIFF, ST_AsPNG, ST_AsJPEG, postgis.enable_outdb_rasters

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 92 / 791

8.2.4 postgis.enable_outdb_rasters

postgis.enable_outdb_rasters — A boolean configuration option to enable access to out-db raster bands.

Description

A boolean configuration option to enable access to out-db raster bands. This option can be set in PostgreSQL's configuration file: postgresql.conf. It can also be set by connection or transaction.

The initial value of postgis.enable_outdb_rasters may also be set by passing the environment variable POSTGIS_E NABLE_OUTDB_RASTERS with a non-zero value to the process starting PostgreSQL.



Note

Even if postgis.enable_outdb_rasters is True, the GUC postgis.enable_outdb_rasters determines the accessible raster formats.



Note

In the standard PostGIS installation, postgis.enable_outdb_rasters is set to False.

Availability: 2.2.0

Examples

 $\textbf{Set and reset} \; \texttt{postgis.enable_outdb_rasters}$

```
SET postgis.enable_outdb_rasters TO True;
SET postgis.enable_outdb_rasters = default;
SET postgis.enable_outdb_rasters = True;
SET postgis.enable_outdb_rasters = False;
```

See Also

postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers

8.3 Management Functions

8.3.1 AddGeometryColumn

AddGeometryColumn — Adds a geometry column to an existing table of attributes. By default uses type modifier to define rather than constraints. Pass in false for use_typmod to get old check constraint based behavior

Synopsis

text **AddGeometryColumn**(varchar table_name, varchar column_name, integer srid, varchar type, integer dimension, boolean use_typmod=true);

text **AddGeometryColumn**(varchar schema_name, varchar table_name, varchar column_name, integer srid, varchar type, integer dimension, boolean use_typmod=true);

text **AddGeometryColumn**(varchar catalog_name, varchar schema_name, varchar table_name, varchar column_name, integer srid, varchar type, integer dimension, boolean use_typmod=true);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 93 / 791

Description

Adds a geometry column to an existing table of attributes. The schema_name is the name of the table schema. The srid must be an integer value reference to an entry in the SPATIAL_REF_SYS table. The type must be a string corresponding to the geometry type, eg, 'POLYGON' or 'MULTILINESTRING'. An error is thrown if the schemaname doesn't exist (or not visible in the current search_path) or the specified SRID, geometry type, or dimension is invalid.

Note



Changed: 2.0.0 This function no longer updates geometry_columns since geometry_columns is a view that reads from system catalogs. It by default also does not create constraints, but instead uses the built in type modifier behavior of PostgreSQL. So for example building a wgs84 POINT column with this function is now equivalent to: ALTER TABLE some_table ADD COLUMN geom geometry (Point, 4326);

Changed: 2.0.0 If you require the old behavior of constraints use the default use_typmod, but set it to false.

Note



Changed: 2.0.0 Views can no longer be manually registered in geometry_columns, however views built against geometry typmod tables geometries and used without wrapper functions will register themselves correctly because they inherit the typmod behavior of their parent table column. Views that use geometry functions that output other geometries will need to be cast to typmod geometries for these view geometry columns to be registered correctly in geometry_columns. Refer to Section 4.3.4.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Enhanced: 2.0.0 use_typmod argument introduced. Defaults to creating typmod geometry column instead of constraint-based.

Examples

```
-- Create schema to hold data
CREATE SCHEMA my_schema;
 - Create a new simple PostgreSQL table
CREATE TABLE my_schema.my_spatial_table (id serial);
-- Describing the table shows a simple table with a single "id" column.
postgis=# \d my_schema.my_spatial_table
               Table "my_schema.my_spatial_table"
 Column | Type
                                                    Modifiers
 id
        | integer | not null default nextval('my_schema.my_spatial_table_id_seq'::regclass)
-- Add a spatial column to the table
SELECT AddGeometryColumn ('my_schema', 'my_spatial_table', 'geom', 4326, 'POINT', 2);
-- Add a point using the old constraint based behavior
SELECT AddGeometryColumn ('my_schema', 'my_spatial_table', 'geom_c', 4326, 'POINT', 2, false);
--Add a curvepolygon using old constraint behavior
SELECT AddGeometryColumn ('my_schema','my_spatial_table','geomcp_c',4326,'CURVEPOLYGON',2,
    false);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 94 / 791

```
-- Describe the table again reveals the addition of a new geometry columns.
\d my_schema.my_spatial_table
                           addgeometrycolumn
my_schema.my_spatial_table.geomcp_c SRID:4326 TYPE:CURVEPOLYGON DIMS:2
(1 row)
                                   Table "my_schema.my_spatial_table"
 Column | Type
                                                           Modifiers
id | integer
                               | not null default nextval('my_schema. ←
    my_spatial_table_id_seq'::regclass)
geom | geometry(Point, 4326) |
geom_c | geometry |
geomcp_c | geometry
Check constraints:
    "enforce_dims_geom_c" CHECK (st_ndims(geom_c) = 2)
    "enforce_dims_geomcp_c" CHECK (st_ndims(geomcp_c) = 2)
    "enforce_geotype_geom_c" CHECK (geometrytype(geom_c) = 'POINT'::text OR geom_c IS NULL)
    "enforce_geotype_geomcp_c" CHECK (geometrytype(geomcp_c) = 'CURVEPOLYGON'::text OR ←
      geomcp_c IS NULL)
    "enforce_srid_geom_c" CHECK (st_srid(geom_c) = 4326)
    "enforce_srid_geomcp_c" CHECK (st_srid(geomcp_c) = 4326)
-- geometry_columns view also registers the new columns --
SELECT f_geometry_column As col_name, type, srid, coord_dimension As ndims
   FROM geometry_columns
   WHERE f_table_name = 'my_spatial_table' AND f_table_schema = 'my_schema';
col_name | type | srid | ndims
geom | Point | 4326 | 2
geom_c | Point | 4326 | 2
geomcp_c | CurvePolygon | 4326 | 2
```

See Also

DropGeometryColumn, DropGeometryTable, Section 4.3.2, Section 4.3.4

8.3.2 DropGeometryColumn

DropGeometryColumn — Removes a geometry column from a spatial table.

Synopsis

```
text DropGeometryColumn(varchar table_name, varchar column_name); text DropGeometryColumn(varchar schema_name, varchar table_name, varchar column_name); text DropGeometryColumn(varchar catalog_name, varchar schema_name, varchar table_name, varchar column_name);
```

Description

Removes a geometry column from a spatial table. Note that schema_name will need to match the f_table_schema field of the table's row in the geometry_columns table.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 95 / 791



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



Note

Changed: 2.0.0 This function is provided for backward compatibility. Now that since geometry_columns is now a view against the system catalogs, you can drop a geometry column like any other table column using ALTER TABLE

Examples

See Also

AddGeometryColumn, DropGeometryTable, Section 4.3.2

8.3.3 DropGeometryTable

DropGeometryTable — Drops a table and all its references in geometry_columns.

Synopsis

boolean **DropGeometryTable**(varchar table_name); boolean **DropGeometryTable**(varchar schema_name, varchar table_name);

boolean **DropGeometryTable**(varchar catalog_name, varchar schema_name, varchar table_name);

Description

Drops a table and all its references in geometry_columns. Note: uses current_schema() on schema-aware pgsql installations if schema is not provided.



Note

Changed: 2.0.0 This function is provided for backward compatibility. Now that since geometry_columns is now a view against the system catalogs, you can drop a table with geometry columns like any other table using DROP TABLE

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 96 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT DropGeometryTable ('my_schema', 'my_spatial_table');
----RESULT output ---
my_schema.my_spatial_table dropped.

-- The above is now equivalent to --
DROP TABLE my_schema.my_spatial_table;
```

See Also

AddGeometryColumn, DropGeometryColumn, Section 4.3.2

8.3.4 PostGIS_Full_Version

PostGIS_Full_Version — Reports full postgis version and build configuration infos.

Synopsis

text PostGIS_Full_Version();

Description

Reports full postgis version and build configuration infos. Also informs about synchronization between libraries and scripts suggesting upgrades as needed.

Examples

See Also

Section 2.10, PostGIS_GEOS_Version, PostGIS_Lib_Version, PostGIS_LibXML_Version, PostGIS_PROJ_Version, PostGIS_Version

8.3.5 PostGIS_GEOS_Version

PostGIS_GEOS_Version — Returns the version number of the GEOS library.

Synopsis

text PostGIS_GEOS_Version();

Description

Returns the version number of the GEOS library, or NULL if GEOS support is not enabled.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 97 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT PostGIS_GEOS_Version();
postgis_geos_version
------
3.1.0-CAPI-1.5.0
(1 row)
```

See Also

PostGIS_Full_Version, PostGIS_Lib_Version, PostGIS_LibXML_Version, PostGIS_PROJ_Version, PostGIS_Version

8.3.6 PostGIS_LibXML_Version

PostGIS_LibXML_Version — Returns the version number of the libxml2 library.

Synopsis

```
text PostGIS_LibXML_Version();
```

Description

Returns the version number of the LibXML2 library.

Availability: 1.5

Examples

See Also

PostGIS_Full_Version, PostGIS_Lib_Version, PostGIS_PROJ_Version, PostGIS_GEOS_Version, PostGIS_Version

8.3.7 PostGIS_Lib_Build_Date

PostGIS_Lib_Build_Date — Returns build date of the PostGIS library.

Synopsis

```
text PostGIS_Lib_Build_Date();
```

Description

Returns build date of the PostGIS library.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 98 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT PostGIS_Lib_Build_Date();
postgis_lib_build_date
------
2008-06-21 17:53:21
(1 row)
```

8.3.8 PostGIS_Lib_Version

PostGIS_Lib_Version — Returns the version number of the PostGIS library.

Synopsis

```
text PostGIS_Lib_Version();
```

Description

Returns the version number of the PostGIS library.

Examples

See Also

PostGIS_Full_Version, PostGIS_GEOS_Version, PostGIS_LibXML_Version, PostGIS_PROJ_Version, PostGIS_Version

8.3.9 PostGIS_PROJ_Version

PostGIS_PROJ_Version — Returns the version number of the PROJ4 library.

Synopsis

```
text\ \boldsymbol{PostGIS\_PROJ\_Version}();
```

Description

Returns the version number of the PROJ4 library, or NULL if PROJ4 support is not enabled.

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 99 / 791

See Also

PostGIS_Full_Version, PostGIS_GEOS_Version, PostGIS_Lib_Version, PostGIS_LibXML_Version, PostGIS_Version

8.3.10 PostGIS_Scripts_Build_Date

PostGIS_Scripts_Build_Date — Returns build date of the PostGIS scripts.

Synopsis

text PostGIS_Scripts_Build_Date();

Description

Returns build date of the PostGIS scripts.

Availability: 1.0.0RC1

Examples

```
SELECT PostGIS_Scripts_Build_Date();
postgis_scripts_build_date
------
2007-08-18 09:09:26
(1 row)
```

See Also

PostGIS_Full_Version, PostGIS_GEOS_Version, PostGIS_Lib_Version, PostGIS_LibXML_Version, PostGIS_Version

8.3.11 PostGIS_Scripts_Installed

PostGIS_Scripts_Installed — Returns version of the postgis scripts installed in this database.

Synopsis

text PostGIS_Scripts_Installed();

Description

Returns version of the postgis scripts installed in this database.



Note

If the output of this function doesn't match the output of PostGIS_Scripts_Released you probably missed to properly upgrade an existing database. See the Upgrading section for more info.

Availability: 0.9.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 100 / 791

Examples

See Also

PostGIS_Full_Version, PostGIS_Scripts_Released, PostGIS_Version

8.3.12 PostGIS_Scripts_Released

PostGIS_Scripts_Released — Returns the version number of the postgis.sql script released with the installed postgis lib.

Synopsis

text PostGIS_Scripts_Released();

Description

Returns the version number of the postgis.sql script released with the installed postgis lib.



Note

Starting with version 1.1.0 this function returns the same value of PostGIS_Lib_Version. Kept for backward compatibility.

Availability: 0.9.0

Examples

```
SELECT PostGIS_Scripts_Released();
  postgis_scripts_released
------
1.3.4SVN
(1 row)
```

See Also

PostGIS_Full_Version, PostGIS_Scripts_Installed, PostGIS_Lib_Version

8.3.13 PostGIS_Version

PostGIS_Version — Returns PostGIS version number and compile-time options.

Synopsis

text PostGIS_Version();

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 101 / 791

Description

Returns PostGIS version number and compile-time options.

Examples

```
SELECT PostGIS_Version();

postgis_version

1.3 USE_GEOS=1 USE_PROJ=1 USE_STATS=1
(1 row)
```

See Also

PostGIS_Full_Version, PostGIS_GEOS_Version, PostGIS_Lib_Version, PostGIS_LibXML_Version, PostGIS_PROJ_Version

8.3.14 Populate_Geometry_Columns

Populate_Geometry_Columns — Ensures geometry columns are defined with type modifiers or have appropriate spatial constraints This ensures they will be registered correctly in geometry_columns view. By default will convert all geometry columns with no type modifier to ones with type modifiers. To get old behavior set use_typmod=false

Synopsis

```
text Populate_Geometry_Columns(boolean use_typmod=true); int Populate_Geometry_Columns(oid relation_oid, boolean use_typmod=true);
```

Description

Ensures geometry columns have appropriate type modifiers or spatial constraints to ensure they are registered correctly in geom etry_columns table.

For backwards compatibility and for spatial needs such as table inheritance where each child table may have different geometry type, the old check constraint behavior is still supported. If you need the old behavior, you need to pass in the new optional argument as false use_typmod=false. When this is done geometry columns will be created with no type modifiers but will have 3 constraints defined. In particular, this means that every geometry column belonging to a table has at least three constraints:

- enforce_dims_the_geom ensures every geometry has the same dimension (see ST_NDims)
- enforce_geotype_the_geom ensures every geometry is of the same type (see Geometry Type)
- enforce_srid_the_geom ensures every geometry is in the same projection (see ST_SRID)

If a table oid is provided, this function tries to determine the srid, dimension, and geometry type of all geometry columns in the table, adding constraints as necessary. If successful, an appropriate row is inserted into the geometry_columns table, otherwise, the exception is caught and an error notice is raised describing the problem.

If the oid of a view is provided, as with a table oid, this function tries to determine the srid, dimension, and type of all the geometries in the view, inserting appropriate entries into the geometry_columns table, but nothing is done to enforce constraints.

The parameterless variant is a simple wrapper for the parameterized variant that first truncates and repopulates the geometry_columns table for every spatial table and view in the database, adding spatial constraints to tables where appropriate. It returns a summary of the number of geometry columns detected in the database and the number that were inserted into the geom

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 102 / 791

etry_columns table. The parameterized version simply returns the number of rows inserted into the geometry_columns table.

Availability: 1.4.0

Changed: 2.0.0 By default, now uses type modifiers instead of check constraints to constraint geometry types. You can still use check constraint behavior instead by using the new use_typmod and setting it to false.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 use_typmod optional argument was introduced that allows controlling if columns are created with typmodifiers or with check constraints.

Examples

```
CREATE TABLE public.myspatial_table(gid serial, geom geometry);
INSERT INTO myspatial_table(geom) VALUES(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4)',4326) );
-- This will now use typ modifiers. For this to work, there must exist data
SELECT Populate_Geometry_Columns('public.myspatial_table'::regclass);
populate_geometry_columns
\d myspatial_table
                                   Table "public.myspatial_table"
Column |
                                                              Modifiers
                                    gid | integer
                                    | not null default nextval('myspatial_table_gid_seq':: ←
   regclass)
 geom | geometry(LineString, 4326) |
-- This will change the geometry columns to use constraints if they are not typmod or have \ \leftrightarrow
   constraints already.
--For this to work, there must exist data
CREATE TABLE public.myspatial_table_cs(gid serial, geom geometry);
INSERT INTO myspatial_table_cs(geom) VALUES(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4)',4326) );
SELECT Populate_Geometry_Columns('public.myspatial_table_cs'::regclass, false);
populate_geometry_columns
\d myspatial_table_cs
                          Table "public.myspatial_table_cs"
Column |
                                              Modifiers
           Type |
```

8.3.15 UpdateGeometrySRID

"enforce_dims_geom" CHECK (st_ndims(geom) = 2)

"enforce_srid_geom" CHECK (st_srid(geom) = 4326)

geom | geometry |
Check constraints:

UpdateGeometrySRID — Updates the SRID of all features in a geometry column, geometry_columns metadata and srid. If it was enforced with constraints, the constraints will be updated with new srid constraint. If the old was enforced by type definition, the type definition will be changed.

| integer | not null default nextval('myspatial_table_cs_gid_seq'::regclass)

"enforce_geotype_geom" CHECK (geometrytype(geom) = 'LINESTRING'::text OR geom IS NULL)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 103 / 791

Synopsis

 $text \ \textbf{UpdateGeometrySRID}(varchar\ table_name,\ varchar\ column_name,\ integer\ srid);$

text UpdateGeometrySRID(varchar schema_name, varchar table_name, varchar column_name, integer srid);

text **UpdateGeometrySRID**(varchar catalog_name, varchar schema_name, varchar table_name, varchar column_name, integer srid);

Description

Updates the SRID of all features in a geometry column, updating constraints and reference in geometry_columns. Note: uses current_schema() on schema-aware pgsql installations if schema is not provided.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

This will change the srid of the roads table to 4326 from whatever it was before

```
SELECT UpdateGeometrySRID('roads', 'geom', 4326);
```

The prior example is equivalent to this DDL statement

```
ALTER TABLE roads
ALTER COLUMN geom TYPE geometry (MULTILINESTRING, 4326)
USING ST_SetSRID(geom, 4326);
```

If you got the projection wrong (or brought it in as unknown) in load and you wanted to transform to web mercator all in one shot You can do this with DDL but there is no equivalent PostGIS management function to do so in one go.

```
ALTER TABLE roads
ALTER COLUMN geom TYPE geometry(MULTILINESTRING, 3857) USING ST_Transform(ST_SetSRID(geom ← ,4326),3857) ;
```

See Also

UpdateRasterSRID, ST_SetSRID, ST_Transform

8.4 Geometry Constructors

8.4.1 ST_BdPolyFromText

ST_BdPolyFromText — Construct a Polygon given an arbitrary collection of closed linestrings as a MultiLineString Well-Known text representation.

Synopsis

geometry ST_BdPolyFromText(text WKT, integer srid);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 104 / 791

Description

Construct a Polygon given an arbitrary collection of closed linestrings as a MultiLineString Well-Known text representation.



Note

Throws an error if WKT is not a MULTILINESTRING. Throws an error if output is a MULTIPOLYGON; use ST BdMPolyFromText in that case, or see ST BuildArea() for a postgis-specific approach.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.6.2

Availability: 1.1.0 - requires GEOS >= 2.1.0.

Examples

Forthcoming

See Also

ST_BuildArea, ST_BdMPolyFromText

8.4.2 ST_BdMPolyFromText

ST_BdMPolyFromText — Construct a MultiPolygon given an arbitrary collection of closed linestrings as a MultiLineString text representation Well-Known text representation.

Synopsis

geometry ST_BdMPolyFromText(text WKT, integer srid);

Description

Construct a Polygon given an arbitrary collection of closed linestrings, polygons, MultiLineStrings as Well-Known text representation.



Note

Throws an error if WKT is not a MULTILINESTRING. Forces MULTIPOLYGON output even when result is really only composed by a single POLYGON; use ST_BdPolyFromText if you're sure a single POLYGON will result from operation, or see ST_BuildArea() for a postgis-specific approach.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.6.2

Availability: 1.1.0 - requires GEOS >= 2.1.0.

Examples

Forthcoming

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 105 / 791

See Also

ST_BuildArea, ST_BdPolyFromText

8.4.3 ST_Box2dFromGeoHash

ST_Box2dFromGeoHash — Return a BOX2D from a GeoHash string.

Synopsis

box2d **ST_Box2dFromGeoHash**(text geohash, integer precision=full_precision_of_geohash);

Description

Return a BOX2D from a GeoHash string.

If no precision is specificified ST_Box2dFromGeoHash returns a BOX2D based on full precision of the input GeoHash string.

If precision is specified ST_Box2dFromGeoHash will use that many characters from the GeoHash to create the BOX2D. Lower precision values results in larger BOX2Ds and larger values increase the precision.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

```
SELECT ST_Box2dFromGeoHash('9qqj7nmxncgyy4d0dbxqz0');

st_geomfromgeohash

BOX(-115.172816 36.114646,-115.172816 36.114646)

SELECT ST_Box2dFromGeoHash('9qqj7nmxncgyy4d0dbxqz0', 0);

st_box2dfromgeohash

BOX(-180 -90,180 90)

SELECT ST_Box2dFromGeoHash('9qqj7nmxncgyy4d0dbxqz0', 10);

st_box2dfromgeohash

BOX(-115.17282128334 36.1146408319473,-115.172810554504 36.1146461963654)
```

See Also

ST_GeoHash, ST_GeomFromGeoHash, ST_PointFromGeoHash

8.4.4 ST_GeogFromText

ST_GeogFromText — Return a specified geography value from Well-Known Text representation or extended (WKT).

Synopsis

geography ST_GeogFromText(text EWKT);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 106 / 791

Description

Returns a geography object from the well-known text or extended well-known representation. SRID 4326 is assumed if unspecified. This is an alias for ST_GeographyFromText. Points are always expressed in long lat form.

Examples

```
--- converting lon lat coords to geography
ALTER TABLE sometable ADD COLUMN geog geography(POINT, 4326);
UPDATE sometable SET geog = ST_GeogFromText('SRID=4326;POINT(' || lon || ' ' || lat || ')') 
;
--- specify a geography point using EPSG:4267, NAD27
SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_GeogFromText('SRID=4267;POINT(-77.0092 38.889588)'));
```

See Also

ST_AsText, ST_GeographyFromText

8.4.5 ST GeographyFromText

ST_GeographyFromText — Return a specified geography value from Well-Known Text representation or extended (WKT).

Synopsis

geography ST_GeographyFromText(text EWKT);

Description

Returns a geography object from the well-known text representation. SRID 4326 is assumed if unspecified.

See Also

ST_GeogFromText, ST_AsText

8.4.6 ST_GeogFromWKB

ST_GeogFromWKB — Creates a geography instance from a Well-Known Binary geometry representation (WKB) or extended Well Known Binary (EWKB).

Synopsis

geography ST_GeogFromWKB(bytea wkb);

Description

The ST_GeogFromWKB function, takes a well-known binary representation (WKB) of a geometry or PostGIS Extended WKB and creates an instance of the appropriate geography type. This function plays the role of the Geometry Factory in SQL.

If SRID is not specified, it defaults to 4326 (WGS 84 long lat).



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 107 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_GeogFromText, ST_AsBinary

8.4.7 ST_GeomFromTWKB

ST_GeomFromTWKB — Creates a geometry instance from a TWKB ("Tiny Well-Known Binary") geometry representation.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_GeomFromTWKB**(bytea twkb);

Description

The ST_GeomFromTWKB function, takes a a TWKB ("Tiny Well-Known Binary") geometry representation (WKB) and creates an instance of the appropriate geometry type.

Examples

See Also

ST_AsTWKB

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 108 / 791

8.4.8 ST_GeomCollFromText

ST_GeomCollFromText — Makes a collection Geometry from collection WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_GeomCollFromText**(text WKT, integer srid); geometry **ST_GeomCollFromText**(text WKT);

Description

Makes a collection Geometry from the Well-Known-Text (WKT) representation with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0.

OGC SPEC 3.2.6.2 - option SRID is from the conformance suite

Returns null if the WKT is not a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION



Note

If you are absolutely sure all your WKT geometries are collections, don't use this function. It is slower than ST GeomFromText since it adds an additional validation step.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.6.2



This method implements the SQL/MM specification.

Examples

SELECT ST_GeomCollFromText('GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(POINT(1 2), LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4))');

See Also

ST_GeomFromText, ST_SRID

8.4.9 ST_GeomFromEWKB

ST_GeomFromEWKB — Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Extended Well-Known Binary representation (EWKB).

Synopsis

geometry **ST_GeomFromEWKB**(bytea EWKB);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 109 / 791

Description

Constructs a PostGIS ST_Geometry object from the OGC Extended Well-Known binary (EWKT) representation.



Note

The EWKB format is not an OGC standard, but a PostGIS specific format that includes the spatial reference system (SRID) identifier

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces and TIN was introduced.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

line string binary rep 0f LINESTRING(-71.160281 42.258729,-71.160837 42.259113,-71.161144 42.25932) in NAD 83 long lat (4269).



Note

NOTE: Even though byte arrays are delimited with \ and may have ', we need to escape both out with \ and " if standard_conforming_strings is off. So it does not look exactly like its AsEWKB representation.



Note

In PostgreSQL 9.1+ - standard_conforming_strings is set to on by default, where as in past versions it was set to off. You can change defaults as needed for a single query or at the database or server level. Below is how you would do it with standard_conforming_strings = on. In this case we escape the 'with standard ansi', but slashes are not escaped

```
set standard_conforming_strings = on;
SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKB('\001\002\000\000 \255\020\000\000\000\000\000\000\344J=\012\013B
\312Q\300n\303(\010\036!E@''\277E''K\012\312Q\300\366{b\235*!E@\225|\354.P\312Q\012\300 ↔
p\231\323e1')
```

See Also

ST_AsBinary, ST_AsEWKB, ST_GeomFromWKB

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 110 / 791

8.4.10 ST GeomFromEWKT

ST_GeomFromEWKT — Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Extended Well-Known Text representation (EWKT).

Synopsis

geometry ST_GeomFromEWKT(text EWKT);

Description

Constructs a PostGIS ST_Geometry object from the OGC Extended Well-Known text (EWKT) representation.



Note

The EWKT format is not an OGC standard, but an PostGIS specific format that includes the spatial reference system (SRID) identifier

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces and TIN was introduced.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

```
SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4269;LINESTRING(-71.160281 42.258729,-71.160837 \leftrightarrow
   42.259113, -71.161144 42.25932)');
SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4269; MULTILINESTRING((-71.160281 42.258729, -71.160837
   42.259113,-71.161144 42.25932))');
SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4269; POINT(-71.064544 42.28787)');
SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4269;POLYGON((-71.1776585052917 \leftrightarrow
    42.3902909739571,-71.1776820268866 42.3903701743239,
-71.1776063012595 42.3903825660754,-71.1775826583081 42.3903033653531,-71.1776585052917
   42.3902909739571))');
SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4269; MULTIPOLYGON(((-71.1031880899493 42.3152774590236,
-71.1031627617667 42.3152960829043,-71.102923838298 42.3149156848307,
-71.1023097974109 42.3151969047397,-71.1019285062273 42.3147384934248,
-71.102505233663 42.3144722937587,-71.10277487471 42.3141658254797,
-71.103113945163 42.3142739188902,-71.10324876416 42.31402489987,
-71.1033002961013 42.3140393340215, -71.1033488797549 42.3139495090772,
-71.103396240451 \ 42.3138632439557, -71.1041521907712 \ 42.3141153348029,
-71.1041411411543 \ 42.3141545014533, -71.1041287795912 \ 42.3142114839058,
-71.1041188134329 \ 42.3142693656241, -71.1041112482575 \ 42.3143272556118,
-71.1041072845732 42.3143851580048,-71.1041057218871 42.3144430686681,
-71.1041065602059 \ 42.3145009876017, -71.1041097995362 \ 42.3145589148055,
-71.1041166403905 \ 42.3146168544148, -71.1041258822717 \ 42.3146748022936,
-71.1041375307579 42.3147318674446, -71.1041492906949 42.3147711126569,
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 111 / 791

```
-71.1041598612795 42.314808571739,-71.1042515013869 42.3151287620809,
-71.1041173835118 42.3150739481917,-71.1040809891419 42.3151344119048,
-71.1040438678912 42.3151191367447,-71.1040194562988 42.3151832057859,
-71.1038734225584 42.3151140942995,-71.1038446938243 42.3151006300338,
-71.1038315271889 42.315094347535,-71.1037393329282 42.315054824985,
-71.1035447555574 42.3152608696313,-71.1033436658644 42.3151648370544,
-71.1032580383161 42.3152269126061,-71.103223066939 42.3152517403219,
-71.1031880899493 42.3152774590236)),
((-71.1043632495873 42.315113108546,-71.1043583974082 42.3151211109857,
-71.1043443253471 42.3150676015829,-71.1043850704575 42.3150793250568,-71.1043632495873 ↔
42.315113108546)))');
```

```
--3d circular string
SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('CIRCULARSTRING(220268 150415 1,220227 150505 2,220227 150406 3)');
```

```
--Polyhedral Surface example

SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYHEDRALSURFACE(
    ((0 0 0, 0 0 1, 0 1 1, 0 1 0, 0 0 0)),
    ((0 0 0, 0 1 0, 1 1 0, 1 0 0, 0 0 0)),
    ((0 0 0, 1 0 0, 1 0 1, 0 0 1, 0 0 0)),
    ((1 1 0, 1 1 1, 1 0 1, 1 0 0, 1 1 0)),
    ((0 1 0, 0 1 1, 1 1, 1 1, 0 1, 0 0 1)),
    ((0 0 1, 1 0 1, 1 1 1, 0 1 1, 0 0 1))
)');
```

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_GeomFromText, ST_GeomFromEWKT

8.4.11 ST GeometryFromText

ST_GeometryFromText — Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Well-Known Text representation (WKT). This is an alias name for ST_GeomFromText

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_GeometryFromText(text WKT);
geometry ST_GeometryFromText(text WKT, integer srid);
```

Description



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.40

See Also

ST_GeomFromText

8.4.12 ST GeomFromGeoHash

ST_GeomFromGeoHash — Return a geometry from a GeoHash string.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 112 / 791

Synopsis

geometry **ST_GeomFromGeoHash**(text geohash, integer precision=full_precision_of_geohash);

Description

Return a geometry from a GeoHash string. The geometry will be a polygon representing the GeoHash bounds.

If no precision is specified ST_GeomFromGeoHash returns a polygon based on full precision of the input GeoHash string.

If precision is specified ST_GeomFromGeoHash will use that many characters from the GeoHash to create the polygon.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

See Also

ST_GeoHash,ST_Box2dFromGeoHash,ST_PointFromGeoHash

8.4.13 ST_GeomFromGML

ST_GeomFromGML — Takes as input GML representation of geometry and outputs a PostGIS geometry object

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_GeomFromGML(text geomgml); geometry ST_GeomFromGML(text geomgml, integer srid);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 113 / 791

Description

Constructs a PostGIS ST_Geometry object from the OGC GML representation.

ST_GeomFromGML works only for GML Geometry fragments. It throws an error if you try to use it on a whole GML document. OGC GML versions supported:

- GML 3.2.1 Namespace
- GML 3.1.1 Simple Features profile SF-2 (with GML 3.1.0 and 3.0.0 backward compatibility)
- GML 2.1.2

OGC GML standards, cf: http://www.opengeospatial.org/standards/gml:

Availability: 1.5, requires libxml2 1.6+

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces and TIN was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 default srid optional parameter added.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

GML allow mixed dimensions (2D and 3D inside the same MultiGeometry for instance). As PostGIS geometries don't, ST_GeomFromGML convert the whole geometry to 2D if a missing Z dimension is found once.

GML support mixed SRS inside the same MultiGeometry. As PostGIS geometries don't, ST_GeomFromGML, in this case, reproject all subgeometries to the SRS root node. If no srsName attribute available for the GML root node, the function throw an error.

ST_GeomFromGML function is not pedantic about an explicit GML namespace. You could avoid to mention it explicitly for common usages. But you need it if you want to use XLink feature inside GML.



Note

ST_GeomFromGML function not support SQL/MM curves geometries.

Examples - A single geometry with srsName

Examples - XLink usage

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 114 / 791

Examples - Polyhedral Surface

```
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_GeomFromGML('
<qml:PolyhedralSurface>
<gml:polygonPatches>
  <gml:PolygonPatch>
   <qml:exterior>
     posList></gml:LinearRing>
   </gml:exterior>
  </gml:PolygonPatch>
  <qml:PolygonPatch>
   <qml:exterior>
  <qml:LinearRing><qml:posList srsDimension="3">>0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 0/qml:posList \leftrightarrow
     ></gml:LinearRing>
   </gml:exterior>
  </gml:PolygonPatch>
  <gml:PolygonPatch>
   <gml:exterior>
  ></gml:LinearRing>
   </gml:exterior>
  </gml:PolygonPatch>
  <qml:PolygonPatch>
   <qml:exterior>
  <gml:LinearRing><gml:posList srsDimension="3">1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 0/gml:posList \leftrightarrow
     ></gml:LinearRing>
   </gml:exterior>
  </gml:PolygonPatch>
  <gml:PolygonPatch>
   <gml:exterior>
  <gml:LinearRing><gml:posList srsDimension="3">0 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 0/pml:posList ←
     ></gml:LinearRing>
   </gml:exterior>
  </gml:PolygonPatch>
  <qml:PolygonPatch>
   <aml:exterior>
  <qml:LinearRing><qml:posList srsDimension="3">0 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 0 0 1/posList \leftrightarrow
    ></gml:LinearRing>
   </gml:exterior>
  </gml:PolygonPatch>
</gml:polygonPatches>
</gml:PolyhedralSurface>'));
 - result -
POLYHEDRALSURFACE(((0 0 0,0 0 1,0 1 1,0 1 0,0 0 0)),
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 115 / 791

```
((0 0 0,0 1 0,1 1 0,1 0 0,0 0 0)),

((0 0 0,1 0 0,1 0 1,0 0 1,0 0 0)),

((1 1 0,1 1 1,1 0 1,1 0 0,1 1 0)),

((0 1 0,0 1 1,1 1 1,1 1 0,0 1 0)),

((0 0 1,1 0 1,1 1 1,0 0 1),0)
```

See Also

Section 2.4.1, ST_AsGML, ST_GMLToSQL

8.4.14 ST_GeomFromGeoJSON

ST_GeomFromGeoJSON — Takes as input a geojson representation of a geometry and outputs a PostGIS geometry object

Synopsis

geometry ST_GeomFromGeoJSON(text geomjson);

Description

Constructs a PostGIS geometry object from the GeoJSON representation.

ST_GeomFromGeoJSON works only for JSON Geometry fragments. It throws an error if you try to use it on a whole JSON document.

Availability: 2.0.0 requires - JSON-C >= 0.9



Note

If you do not have JSON-C enabled, support you will get an error notice instead of seeing an output. To enable JSON-C, run configure --with-jsondir=/path/to/json-c. See Section 2.4.1 for details.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 116 / 791

See Also

ST_AsText, ST_AsGeoJSON, Section 2.4.1

8.4.15 ST_GeomFromKML

ST_GeomFromKML — Takes as input KML representation of geometry and outputs a PostGIS geometry object

Synopsis

geometry ST_GeomFromKML(text geomkml);

Description

Constructs a PostGIS ST_Geometry object from the OGC KML representation.

ST_GeomFromKML works only for KML Geometry fragments. It throws an error if you try to use it on a whole KML document. OGC KML versions supported:

• KML 2.2.0 Namespace

OGC KML standards, cf: http://www.opengeospatial.org/standards/kml:

Availability: 1.5,libxml2 2.6+



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



Note

ST_GeomFromKML function not support SQL/MM curves geometries.

Examples - A single geometry with srsName

See Also

Section 2.4.1, ST_AsKML

8.4.16 ST_GMLToSQL

ST_GMLToSQL — Return a specified ST_Geometry value from GML representation. This is an alias name for ST_GeomFromGML

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_GMLToSQL(text geomgml); geometry ST_GMLToSQL(text geomgml, integer srid);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 117 / 791

Description



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.50 (except for curves support).

Availability: 1.5, requires libxml2 1.6+

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces and TIN was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 default srid optional parameter added.

See Also

Section 2.4.1, ST_GeomFromGML, ST_AsGML

8.4.17 ST GeomFromText

ST_GeomFromText — Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Well-Known Text representation (WKT).

Synopsis

geometry ST_GeomFromText(text WKT);
geometry ST_GeomFromText(text WKT, integer srid);

Description

Constructs a PostGIS ST_Geometry object from the OGC Well-Known text representation.



Note

There are two variants of ST_GeomFromText function. The first takes no SRID and returns a geometry with no defined spatial reference system (SRID=0). The second takes a SRID as the second argument and returns a geometry that includes this SRID as part of its metadata.

This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.6.2 - option SRID is from the conformance suite.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.40



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



Warning

Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions of PostGIS ST_GeomFromText('GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(EMPTY)') was allowed. This is now illegal in PostGIS 2.0.0 to better conform with SQL/MM standards. This should now be written as ST_GeomFromText('GEOMETRYCOLLECTION EMPTY')

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 118 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(-71.160281 42.258729,-71.160837 42.259113,-71.161144
    42.25932)');
SELECT ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(-71.160281 42.258729,-71.160837 42.259113,-71.161144 \leftrightarrow
   42.25932)',4269);
SELECT ST_GeomFromText('MULTILINESTRING((-71.160281 42.258729,-71.160837 ↔
   42.259113, -71.161144 42.25932))');
SELECT ST_GeomFromText('POINT(-71.064544 42.28787)');
SELECT ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((-71.1776585052917 42.3902909739571,-71.1776820268866 \leftrightarrow
   42.3903701743239,
-71.1776063012595 \ 42.3903825660754, -71.1775826583081 \ 42.3903033653531, -71.1776585052917 \ \ \hookleftarrow
   42.3902909739571))');
SELECT ST_GeomFromText('MULTIPOLYGON(((-71.1031880899493 42.3152774590236,
-71.1031627617667 42.3152960829043,-71.102923838298 42.3149156848307,
-71.1023097974109 \ 42.3151969047397, -71.1019285062273 \ 42.3147384934248,
-71.102505233663 42.3144722937587,-71.10277487471 42.3141658254797,
-71.103113945163 42.3142739188902,-71.10324876416 42.31402489987,
-71.1033002961013 42.3140393340215, -71.1033488797549 42.3139495090772,
-71.103396240451 42.3138632439557,-71.1041521907712 42.3141153348029,
-71.1041411411543 \ 42.3141545014533, -71.1041287795912 \ 42.3142114839058,
-71.1041188134329 42.3142693656241,-71.1041112482575 42.3143272556118,
-71.1041072845732\ 42.3143851580048, -71.1041057218871\ 42.3144430686681,
-71.1041065602059 \ 42.3145009876017, -71.1041097995362 \ 42.3145589148055,
-71.1041166403905 42.3146168544148,-71.1041258822717 42.3146748022936,
-71.1041375307579 42.3147318674446, -71.1041492906949 42.3147711126569,
-71.1041598612795 42.314808571739, -71.1042515013869 42.3151287620809,
-71.1041173835118 42.3150739481917,-71.1040809891419 42.3151344119048,
-71.1040438678912 42.3151191367447,-71.1040194562988 42.3151832057859,
-71.1038734225584 42.3151140942995,-71.1038446938243 42.3151006300338,
-71.1038315271889 42.315094347535,-71.1037393329282 42.315054824985,
-71.1035447555574 42.3152608696313,-71.1033436658644 42.3151648370544,
-71.1032580383161 42.3152269126061, -71.103223066939 42.3152517403219,
-71.1031880899493 42.3152774590236)),
((-71.1043632495873 42.315113108546,-71.1043583974082 42.3151211109857,
-71.1043443253471 \quad 42.3150676015829, -71.1043850704575 \quad 42.3150793250568, -71.1043632495873
    42.315113108546)))',4326);
SELECT ST_GeomFromText('CIRCULARSTRING(220268 150415,220227 150505,220227 150406)');
```

See Also

ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_GeomFromWKB, ST_SRID

8.4.18 ST_GeomFromWKB

ST_GeomFromWKB — Creates a geometry instance from a Well-Known Binary geometry representation (WKB) and optional SRID.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_GeomFromWKB(bytea geom); geometry ST_GeomFromWKB(bytea geom, integer srid);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 119 / 791

Description

The ST_GeomFromWKB function, takes a well-known binary representation of a geometry and a Spatial Reference System ID (SRID) and creates an instance of the appropriate geometry type. This function plays the role of the Geometry Factory in SQL. This is an alternate name for ST_WKBToSQL.

If SRID is not specified, it defaults to 0 (Unknown).

This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.7.2 - the optional SRID is from the conformance suite



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.41



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

```
--Although bytea rep contains single \setminus, these need to be escaped when inserting into a \leftrightarrow
   table
   -- unless standard_conforming_strings is set to on.
SELECT ST_AsEWKT (
\\270~\\\\\300\\323Mb\\020X\\231C@\\020X9\\264\\310~\\\\\300)\\\\\217\\302\\365\\230 ↔
   C@',4326)
);
          st_asewkt
SRID=4326; LINESTRING (-113.98 39.198, -113.981 39.195)
(1 row)
SELECT
 ST_AsText (
 ST_GeomFromWKB(
   ST_AsEWKB('POINT(2 5)'::geometry)
 )
 );
st_astext
POINT(2 5)
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_WKBToSQL, ST_AsBinary, ST_GeomFromEWKB

8.4.19 ST_LineFromEncodedPolyline

ST_LineFromEncodedPolyline — Creates a LineString from an Encoded Polyline.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_LineFromEncodedPolyline**(text polyline, integer precision=5);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 120 / 791

Description

Creates a LineString from an Encoded Polyline string.

See http://developers.google.com/maps/documentation/utilities/polylinealgorithm

Availability: 2.2.0

Examples

```
--Create a line string from a polyline SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_LineFromEncodedPolyline('_p~iF~ps|U_ulLnnqC_mqNvxq`@')); --result--
LINESTRING(-120.2 38.5,-120.95 40.7,-126.453 43.252)
```

See Also

ST_AsEncodedPolyline

8.4.20 ST LineFromMultiPoint

ST_LineFromMultiPoint — Creates a LineString from a MultiPoint geometry.

Synopsis

 $geometry \ \textbf{ST_LineFromMultiPoint} (geometry \ aMultiPoint);$

Description

Creates a LineString from a MultiPoint geometry.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
--Create a 3d line string from a 3d multipoint

SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_LineFromMultiPoint(ST_GeomFromEWKT('MULTIPOINT(1 2 3, 4 5 6, 7 8 9)'))) 

;
--result--

LINESTRING(1 2 3, 4 5 6, 7 8 9)
```

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_Collect, ST_MakeLine

8.4.21 ST_LineFromText

ST_LineFromText — Makes a Geometry from WKT representation with the given SRID. If SRID is not given, it defaults to 0.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 121 / 791

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_LineFromText(text WKT);
geometry ST_LineFromText(text WKT, integer srid);
```

Description

Makes a Geometry from WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0. If WKT passed in is not a LINESTRING, then null is returned.



Note

OGC SPEC 3.2.6.2 - option SRID is from the conformance suite.



Note

If you know all your geometries are LINESTRINGS, its more efficient to just use ST_GeomFromText. This just calls ST_GeomFromText and adds additional validation that it returns a linestring.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.6.2



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.2.8

Examples

See Also

ST_GeomFromText

8.4.22 ST_LineFromWKB

ST_LineFromWKB — Makes a LINESTRING from WKB with the given SRID

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_LineFromWKB(bytea WKB); geometry ST_LineFromWKB(bytea WKB, integer srid);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 122 / 791

Description

The ST_LineFromWKB function, takes a well-known binary representation of geometry and a Spatial Reference System ID (SRID) and creates an instance of the appropriate geometry type - in this case, a LINESTRING geometry. This function plays the role of the Geometry Factory in SQL.

If an SRID is not specified, it defaults to 0. NULL is returned if the input bytea does not represent a LINESTRING.



Note

OGC SPEC 3.2.6.2 - option SRID is from the conformance suite.



Note

If you know all your geometries are LINESTRINGs, its more efficient to just use ST_GeomFromWKB. This function just calls ST_GeomFromWKB and adds additional validation that it returns a linestring.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.6.2



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.2.9

Examples

See Also

 $ST_GeomFromWKB, ST_LinestringFromWKB$

8.4.23 ST_LinestringFromWKB

ST_LinestringFromWKB — Makes a geometry from WKB with the given SRID.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_LinestringFromWKB(bytea WKB); geometry ST_LinestringFromWKB(bytea WKB, integer srid);
```

Description

The ST_LinestringFromWKB function, takes a well-known binary representation of geometry and a Spatial Reference System ID (SRID) and creates an instance of the appropriate geometry type - in this case, a LINESTRING geometry. This function plays the role of the Geometry Factory in SQL.

If an SRID is not specified, it defaults to 0. NULL is returned if the input bytea does not represent a LINESTRING geometry. This an alias for ST_LineFromWKB.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 123 / 791



Note

OGC SPEC 3.2.6.2 - optional SRID is from the conformance suite.



Note

If you know all your geometries are LINESTRINGs, it's more efficient to just use ST_GeomFromWKB. This function just calls ST_GeomFromWKB and adds additional validation that it returns a LINESTRING.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.6.2



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.2.9

Examples

See Also

ST_GeomFromWKB, ST_LineFromWKB

8.4.24 ST MakeBox2D

ST_MakeBox2D — Creates a BOX2D defined by the given point geometries.

Synopsis

box2d **ST_MakeBox2D**(geometry pointLowLeft, geometry pointUpRight);

Description

Creates a BOX2D defined by the given point geometries. This is useful for doing range queries

Examples

```
--Return all features that fall reside or partly reside in a US national atlas coordinate 
bounding box
--It is assumed here that the geometries are stored with SRID = 2163 (US National atlas 
equal area)
SELECT feature_id, feature_name, the_geom
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 124 / 791

```
FROM features
WHERE the_geom && ST_SetSRID(ST_MakeBox2D(ST_Point(-989502.1875, 528439.5625),
ST_Point(-987121.375 ,529933.1875)),2163)
```

See Also

ST_MakePoint, ST_Point, ST_SetSRID, ST_SRID

8.4.25 ST_3DMakeBox

ST_3DMakeBox — Creates a BOX3D defined by the given 3d point geometries.

Synopsis

box3d **ST_3DMakeBox**(geometry point3DLowLeftBottom, geometry point3DUpRightTop);

Description

Creates a BOX3D defined by the given 2 3D point geometries.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_MakeBox3D

Examples

```
SELECT ST_3DMakeBox(ST_MakePoint(-989502.1875, 528439.5625, 10),
    ST_MakePoint(-987121.375 ,529933.1875, 10)) As abb3d

--bb3d--
-----
BOX3D(-989502.1875 528439.5625 10,-987121.375 529933.1875 10)
```

See Also

ST_MakePoint, ST_SetSRID, ST_SRID

8.4.26 ST_MakeLine

ST_MakeLine — Creates a Linestring from point, multipoint, or line geometries.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_MakeLine(geometry set geoms);
geometry ST_MakeLine(geometry geom1, geometry geom2);
geometry ST_MakeLine(geometry[] geoms_array);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 125 / 791

Description

ST_MakeLine comes in 3 forms: a spatial aggregate that takes rows of point, multipoint, or line geometries and returns a line string, a function that takes an array of point, multipoint, or line, and a regular function that takes two point, multipoint, or line geometries. You might want to use a subselect to order points before feeding them to the aggregate version of this function.

Inputs other than point, multipoint, or lines are ignored.

When adding line components common nodes at the beginning of lines are removed from the output. Common nodes in point and multipoint inputs are not removed.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Availability: 2.3.0 - Support for multipoint input elements was introduced

Availability: 2.0.0 - Support for linestring input elements was introduced

Availability: 1.4.0 - ST_MakeLine(geomarray) was introduced. ST_MakeLine aggregate functions was enhanced to handle more points faster.

Examples: Spatial Aggregate version

This example takes a sequence of GPS points and creates one record for each gps travel where the geometry field is a line string composed of the gps points in the order of the travel.

```
-- For pre-PostgreSQL 9.0 - this usually works,
-- but the planner may on occasion choose not to respect the order of the subquery
SELECT gps.gps_track, ST_MakeLine(gps.the_geom) As newgeom
FROM (SELECT gps_track,gps_time, the_geom
FROM gps_points ORDER BY gps_track, gps_time) As gps
GROUP BY gps.gps_track;
```

```
-- If you are using PostgreSQL 9.0+
-- (you can use the new ORDER BY support for aggregates)
-- this is a guaranteed way to get a correctly ordered linestring
-- Your order by part can order by more than one column if needed
SELECT gps.gps_track, ST_MakeLine(gps.the_geom ORDER BY gps_time) As newgeom
FROM gps_points As gps
GROUP BY gps.gps_track;
```

Examples: Non-Spatial Aggregate version

First example is a simple one off line string composed of 2 points. The second formulates line strings from 2 points a user draws. The third is a one-off that joins 2 3d points to create a line in 3d space.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 126 / 791

Examples: Using Array version

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_AsText, ST_GeomFromText, ST_MakePoint

8.4.27 ST_MakeEnvelope

ST_MakeEnvelope — Creates a rectangular Polygon formed from the given minimums and maximums. Input values must be in SRS specified by the SRID.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_MakeEnvelope**(double precision xmin, double precision ymin, double precision xmax, double precision ymax, integer srid=unknown);

Description

Creates a rectangular Polygon formed from the minima and maxima. by the given shell. Input values must be in SRS specified by the SRID. If no SRID is specified the unknown spatial reference system is assumed

Availability: 1.5

Enhanced: 2.0: Ability to specify an envelope without specifying an SRID was introduced.

Example: Building a bounding box polygon

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_MakeEnvelope(10, 10, 11, 11, 4326));

st_asewkt
-----
POLYGON((10 10, 10 11, 11 11, 11 10, 10 10))
```

See Also

ST_MakePoint, ST_MakeLine, ST_MakePolygon

8.4.28 ST MakePolygon

ST_MakePolygon — Creates a Polygon formed by the given shell. Input geometries must be closed LINESTRINGS.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 127 / 791

Synopsis

geometry ST_MakePolygon(geometry linestring);

geometry **ST_MakePolygon**(geometry outerlinestring, geometry[] interiorlinestrings);

Description

Creates a Polygon formed by the given shell. Input geometries must be closed LINESTRINGS. Comes in 2 variants.

Variant 1: Takes one closed linestring.

Variant 2: Creates a Polygon formed by the given shell and array of holes. You can construct a geometry array using ST_Accum or the PostgreSQL ARRAY[] and ARRAY() constructs. Input geometries must be closed LINESTRINGS.



Note

This function will not accept a MULTILINESTRING. Use ST_LineMerge or ST_Dump to generate line strings.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples: Single closed LINESTRING

```
--2d line
SELECT ST_MakePolygon(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(75.15 29.53,77 29,77.6 29.5, 75.15 29.53) \leftarrow
    '));
--If linestring is not closed
--you can add the start point to close it
SELECT ST_MakePolygon(ST_AddPoint(foo.open_line, ST_StartPoint(foo.open_line)))
FROM (
SELECT ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(75.15 29.53,77 29,77.6 29.5)') As open_line) As foo;
--3d closed line
SELECT ST_MakePolygon(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(75.15 29.53 1,77 29 1,77.6 29.5 1, 75.15 \leftrightarrow
   29.53 1)'));
st asewkt
POLYGON((75.15 29.53 1,77 29 1,77.6 29.5 1,75.15 29.53 1))
--measured line --
SELECT ST_MakePolygon(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRINGM(75.15 29.53 1,77 29 1,77.6 29.5 2, 75.15 \leftrightarrow
     29.53 2)'));
st_asewkt
POLYGONM((75.15 29.53 1,77 29 1,77.6 29.5 2,75.15 29.53 2))
```

Examples: Outer shell with inner shells

Build a donut with an ant hole

```
SELECT ST_MakePolygon(
   ST_ExteriorRing(ST_Buffer(foo.line,10)),
ARRAY[ST_Translate(foo.line,1,1),
   ST_ExteriorRing(ST_Buffer(ST_MakePoint(20,20),1))]
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 128 / 791

```
FROM
  (SELECT ST_ExteriorRing(ST_Buffer(ST_MakePoint(10,10),10,10))
  As line )
  As foo;
```

Build province boundaries with holes representing lakes in the province from a set of province polygons/multipolygons and water linestrings. This is an example of using PostGIS ST_Accum.



Note

The CASE construct is used because feeding a null array into ST_MakePolygon results in NULL.



Note

A left join is used to guarantee we get all provinces back even if they have no lakes.

```
SELECT p.gid, p.province_name,
 CASE WHEN
   ST_Accum(w.the_geom) IS NULL THEN p.the_geom
 ELSE ST_MakePolygon(ST_LineMerge(ST_Boundary(p.the_geom)), ST_Accum(w.the_geom)) END
 provinces p LEFT JOIN waterlines w
   ON (ST_Within(w.the_geom, p.the_geom) AND ST_IsClosed(w.the_geom))
GROUP BY p.gid, p.province_name, p.the_geom;
--Same example above but utilizing a correlated subquery
--and PostgreSQL built-in ARRAY() function that converts a row set to an array
SELECT p.gid, p.province_name, CASE WHEN
 EXISTS(SELECT w.the_geom
   FROM waterlines w
   WHERE ST_Within(w.the_geom, p.the_geom)
   AND ST_IsClosed(w.the_geom))
 ST_MakePolygon(ST_LineMerge(ST_Boundary(p.the_geom)),
   ARRAY (SELECT w.the_geom
     FROM waterlines w
     WHERE ST_Within (w.the_geom, p.the_geom)
     AND ST_IsClosed(w.the_geom)))
 ELSE p.the_geom END As the_geom
FROM
 provinces p;
```

See Also

ST_Boundary, ST_Accum, ST_AddPoint, ST_GeometryType, ST_IsClosed, ST_LineMerge, ST_BuildArea

8.4.29 ST_MakePoint

ST_MakePoint — Creates a 2D,3DZ or 4D point geometry.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 129 / 791

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_MakePoint(double precision x, double precision y);
geometry ST_MakePoint(double precision x, double precision y, double precision z);
geometry ST_MakePoint(double precision x, double precision y, double precision z, double precision m);
```

Description

Creates a 2D,3DZ or 4D point geometry (geometry with measure). ST_MakePoint while not being OGC compliant is generally faster and more precise than ST_GeomFromText and ST_PointFromText. It is also easier to use if you have raw coordinates rather than WKT.



Note

Note x is longitude and y is latitude



Note

Use ST_MakePointM if you need to make a point with x,y,m.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
--Return point with unknown SRID

SELECT ST_MakePoint(-71.1043443253471, 42.3150676015829);

--Return point marked as WGS 84 long lat

SELECT ST_SetSRID(ST_MakePoint(-71.1043443253471, 42.3150676015829),4326);

--Return a 3D point (e.g. has altitude)

SELECT ST_MakePoint(1, 2,1.5);

--Get z of point

SELECT ST_Z(ST_MakePoint(1, 2,1.5));

result
------

1.5
```

See Also

ST_GeomFromText, ST_PointFromText, ST_SetSRID, ST_MakePointM

8.4.30 ST_MakePointM

ST_MakePointM — Creates a point geometry with an x y and m coordinate.

Synopsis

geometry ST_MakePointM(float x, float y, float m);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 130 / 791

Description

Creates a point with x, y and measure coordinates.



Note

Note x is longitude and y is latitude.

Examples

We use ST_AsEWKT in these examples to show the text representation instead of ST_AsText because ST_AsText does not support returning M.

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_MakePoint, ST_SetSRID

8.4.31 ST_MLineFromText

 $ST_MLineFromText --- Return\ a\ specified\ ST_MultiLineString\ value\ from\ WKT\ representation.$

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_MLineFromText(text WKT, integer srid); geometry ST_MLineFromText(text WKT);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 131 / 791

Description

Makes a Geometry from Well-Known-Text (WKT) with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0.

OGC SPEC 3.2.6.2 - option SRID is from the conformance suite

Returns null if the WKT is not a MULTILINESTRING



Note

If you are absolutely sure all your WKT geometries are points, don't use this function. It is slower than ST_GeomFromText since it adds an additional validation step.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.6.2



This method implements the SQL/MM specification.SQL-MM 3: 9.4.4

Examples

```
SELECT ST_MLineFromText('MULTILINESTRING((1 2, 3 4), (4 5, 6 7))');
```

See Also

ST_GeomFromText

8.4.32 ST MPointFromText

ST_MPointFromText — Makes a Geometry from WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_MPointFromText**(text WKT, integer srid); geometry **ST_MPointFromText**(text WKT);

Description

Makes a Geometry from WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0.

OGC SPEC 3.2.6.2 - option SRID is from the conformance suite

Returns null if the WKT is not a MULTIPOINT



Note

If you are absolutely sure all your WKT geometries are points, don't use this function. It is slower than ST_GeomFromText since it adds an additional validation step.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. 3.2.6.2



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 9.2.4

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 132 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_MPointFromText('MULTIPOINT(1 2, 3 4)');
SELECT ST_MPointFromText('MULTIPOINT(-70.9590 42.1180, -70.9611 42.1223)', 4326);
```

See Also

ST_GeomFromText

8.4.33 ST_MPolyFromText

ST_MPolyFromText — Makes a MultiPolygon Geometry from WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_MPolyFromText(text WKT, integer srid); geometry ST_MPolyFromText(text WKT);
```

Description

Makes a MultiPolygon from WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0.

OGC SPEC 3.2.6.2 - option SRID is from the conformance suite

Throws an error if the WKT is not a MULTIPOLYGON



Note

If you are absolutely sure all your WKT geometries are multipolygons, don't use this function. It is slower than ST_GeomFromText since it adds an additional validation step.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.6.2



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 9.6.4

Examples

```
SELECT ST_MPolyFromText('MULTIPOLYGON(((0 0 1,20 0 1,20 20 1,0 20 1,0 0 1),(5 5 3,5 7 3,7 7 \
3,7 5 3,5 5 3)))');

SELECT ST_MPolyFromText('MULTIPOLYGON(((-70.916 42.1002,-70.9468 42.0946,-70.9765 \
42.0872,-70.9754 42.0875,-70.9749 42.0879,-70.9752 42.0881,-70.9754 42.0891,-70.9758 \
42.0894,-70.9759 42.0897,-70.9759 42.0899,-70.9754 42.0902,-70.9756 42.0906,-70.9753 \
42.0907,-70.9753 42.0917,-70.9757 42.0924,-70.9755 42.0928,-70.9755 42.0942,-70.9751 \
42.0948,-70.9755 42.0953,-70.9751 42.0958,-70.9751 42.0962,-70.9759 42.0983,-70.9767 \
42.0987,-70.9768 42.0991,-70.9771 42.0997,-70.9771 42.1003,-70.9768 42.1005,-70.977  \
42.1011,-70.9766 42.1019,-70.9768 42.1026,-70.9769 42.1033,-70.9768 42.1042,-70.9773 \
42.1043,-70.9776 42.1043,-70.9778 42.1048,-70.9773 42.1058,-70.9774 42.1061,-70.9779 \
42.1093,-70.9806 42.1099,-70.9809 42.1109,-70.9808 42.1112,-70.9798 42.1116,-70.9792 \
42.1127,-70.979 42.1129,-70.9787 42.1134,-70.979 42.1139,-70.9791 42.1141,-70.9987 \
42.1116,-71.0022 42.1273,
-70.9408 42.1513,-70.9315 42.1165,-70.916 42.1002)))',4326);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 133 / 791

See Also

ST_GeomFromText, ST_SRID

8.4.34 ST_Point

ST_Point — Returns an ST_Point with the given coordinate values. OGC alias for ST_MakePoint.

Synopsis

geometry ST_Point(float x_lon, float y_lat);

Description

Returns an ST_Point with the given coordinate values. MM compliant alias for ST_MakePoint that takes just an x and y.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 6.1.2

Examples: Geometry

```
SELECT ST_SetSRID(ST_Point(-71.1043443253471, 42.3150676015829),4326)
```

Examples: Geography

```
SELECT CAST(ST_SetSRID(ST_Point(-71.1043443253471, 42.3150676015829),4326) As geography);
```

```
-- the :: is PostgreSQL short-hand for casting.
SELECT ST_SetSRID(ST_Point(-71.1043443253471, 42.3150676015829),4326)::geography;
```

```
--If your point coordinates are in a different spatial reference from WGS-84 long lat, then \hookleftarrow you need to transform before casting
```

-- This example we convert a point in Pennsylvania State Plane feet to WGS 84 and then ← geography
SELECT ST_Transform(ST_SetSRID(ST_Point(3637510, 3014852),2273),4326)::geography;

See Also

Section 4.2.1, ST_MakePoint, ST_SetSRID, ST_Transform

8.4.35 ST PointFromGeoHash

ST_PointFromGeoHash — Return a point from a GeoHash string.

Synopsis

point ST_PointFromGeoHash(text geohash, integer precision=full_precision_of_geohash);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 134 / 791

Description

Return a point from a GeoHash string. The point represents the center point of the GeoHash.

If no precision is specified ST_PointFromGeoHash returns a point based on full precision of the input GeoHash string.

If precision is specified ST_PointFromGeoHash will use that many characters from the GeoHash to create the point.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

See Also

ST_GeoHash, ST_Box2dFromGeoHash, ST_GeomFromGeoHash

8.4.36 ST_PointFromText

ST_PointFromText — Makes a point Geometry from WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not given, it defaults to unknown.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_PointFromText(text WKT);
geometry ST_PointFromText(text WKT, integer srid);
```

Description

Constructs a PostGIS ST_Geometry point object from the OGC Well-Known text representation. If SRID is not give, it defaults to unknown (currently 0). If geometry is not a WKT point representation, returns null. If completely invalid WKT, then throws an error.



Note

There are 2 variants of ST_PointFromText function, the first takes no SRID and returns a geometry with no defined spatial reference system. The second takes a spatial reference id as the second argument and returns an ST_Geometry that includes this srid as part of its meta-data. The srid must be defined in the spatial_ref_sys table.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 135 / 791



Note

If you are absolutely sure all your WKT geometries are points, don't use this function. It is slower than ST_GeomFromText since it adds an additional validation step. If you are building points from long lat coordinates and care more about performance and accuracy than OGC compliance, use ST_MakePoint or OGC compliant alias ST_Point.

This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.6.2 - option SRID is from the conformance suite.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 6.1.8

Examples

```
SELECT ST_PointFromText('POINT(-71.064544 42.28787)');
SELECT ST_PointFromText('POINT(-71.064544 42.28787)', 4326);
```

See Also

ST_GeomFromText, ST_MakePoint, ST_Point, ST_SRID

8.4.37 ST_PointFromWKB

ST_PointFromWKB — Makes a geometry from WKB with the given SRID

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_GeomFromWKB(bytea geom); geometry ST_GeomFromWKB(bytea geom, integer srid);
```

Description

The ST_PointFromWKB function, takes a well-known binary representation of geometry and a Spatial Reference System ID (SRID) and creates an instance of the appropriate geometry type - in this case, a POINT geometry. This function plays the role of the Geometry Factory in SQL.

If an SRID is not specified, it defaults to 0. NULL is returned if the input bytea does not represent a POINT geometry.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.7.2



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 6.1.9



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 136 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_GeomFromWKB, ST_LineFromWKB

8.4.38 ST_Polygon

ST_Polygon — Returns a polygon built from the specified linestring and SRID.

Synopsis

geometry ST_Polygon(geometry aLineString, integer srid);

Description

Returns a polygon built from the specified linestring and SRID.



Note

ST_Polygon is similar to first version oST_MakePolygon except it also sets the spatial ref sys (SRID) of the polygon. Will not work with MULTILINESTRINGS so use LineMerge to merge multilines. Also does not create polygons with holes. Use ST_MakePolygon for that.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.3.2



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 137 / 791

Examples

```
--a 2d polygon
SELECT ST_Polygon(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(75.15 29.53,77 29,77.6 29.5, 75.15 29.53)'), 
4326);

--result--
POLYGON((75.15 29.53,77 29,77.6 29.5,75.15 29.53))
--a 3d polygon
SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_Polygon(ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(75.15 29.53 1,77 29 1,77.6 29.5 1, 
75.15 29.53 1)'), 4326));

result
-----
SRID=4326; POLYGON((75.15 29.53 1,77 29 1,77.6 29.5 1,75.15 29.53 1))
```

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_AsText, ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_GeomFromText, ST_LineMerge, ST_MakePolygon

8.4.39 ST_PolygonFromText

ST_PolygonFromText — Makes a Geometry from WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_PolygonFromText(text WKT);
geometry ST_PolygonFromText(text WKT, integer srid);
```

Description

Makes a Geometry from WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0. Returns null if WKT is not a polygon. OGC SPEC 3.2.6.2 - option SRID is from the conformance suite



Note

If you are absolutely sure all your WKT geometries are polygons, don't use this function. It is slower than ST_GeomFromText since it adds an additional validation step.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.6.2



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.3.6

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 138 / 791

```
O103000000100000050000006...

SELECT ST_PolygonFromText('POINT(1 2)') IS NULL as point_is_notpoly;

point_is_not_poly
------
t
```

See Also

 $ST_GeomFromText$

8.4.40 ST_WKBToSQL

 $ST_WKBToSQL$ — Return a specified $ST_Geometry$ value from Well-Known Binary representation (WKB). This is an alias name for $ST_GeomFromWKB$ that takes no srid

Synopsis

geometry **ST_WKBToSQL**(bytea WKB);

Description



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.36

See Also

 $ST_GeomFromWKB$

8.4.41 ST_WKTToSQL

 $ST_WKTToSQL -- Return\ a\ specified\ ST_Geometry\ value\ from\ Well-Known\ Text\ representation\ (WKT).\ This\ is\ an\ alias\ name\ for\ ST_GeomFromText$

Synopsis

geometry **ST_WKTToSQL**(text WKT);

Description



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.34

See Also

ST_GeomFromText

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 139 / 791

8.5 Geometry Accessors

8.5.1 GeometryType

GeometryType — Returns the type of the geometry as a string. Eg: 'LINESTRING', 'POLYGON', 'MULTIPOINT', etc.

Synopsis

text GeometryType(geometry geomA);

Description

Returns the type of the geometry as a string. Eg: 'LINESTRING', 'POLYGON', 'MULTIPOINT', etc.

OGC SPEC s2.1.1.1 - Returns the name of the instantiable subtype of Geometry of which this Geometry instance is a member. The name of the instantiable subtype of Geometry is returned as a string.



Note

This function also indicates if the geometry is measured, by returning a string of the form 'POINTM'.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

```
SELECT ST_GeometryType(ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYHEDRALSURFACE( ((0 0 0, 0 0 1, 0 1 1, 0 1 0, 0 ↔ 0 0)), ((0 0 0, 0 1 0, 1 1 0, 1 0 0, 0 0 0)), ((0 0 0, 1 0 1, 0 0 1, 0 0 1, 0 0 0)), ((1 1 0, 1 1 1, 1 0 1, 1 0 0, 1 1 0)), ((0 1 0, 0 1 1, 1 1 1, 1 1 0, 0 1 0)), ((0 0 1, 1 0 1, 1 1, 0 1 1, 0 0 1)))')); --result POLYHEDRALSURFACE
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 140 / 791

```
SELECT GeometryType(geom) as result
  FROM
    (SELECT
       ST_GeomFromEWKT('TIN (((
                 0 0 0,
                 0 0 1,
                 0 1 0,
                 0 0 0
            )), ((
                 0 0 0,
                 0 1 0,
                 1 1 0,
                 0 0 0
            ))
            )')
                 AS geom
    ) AS g;
 result
 TIN
```

See Also

ST_GeometryType

8.5.2 ST_Boundary

ST_Boundary — Returns the closure of the combinatorial boundary of this Geometry.

Synopsis

geometry ST_Boundary(geometry geomA);

Description

Returns the closure of the combinatorial boundary of this Geometry. The combinatorial boundary is defined as described in section 3.12.3.2 of the OGC SPEC. Because the result of this function is a closure, and hence topologically closed, the resulting boundary can be represented using representational geometry primitives as discussed in the OGC SPEC, section 3.12.2.

Performed by the GEOS module



Note

Prior to 2.0.0, this function throws an exception if used with GEOMETRYCOLLECTION. From 2.0.0 up it will return NULL instead (unsupported input).



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. OGC SPEC s2.1.1.1



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.14



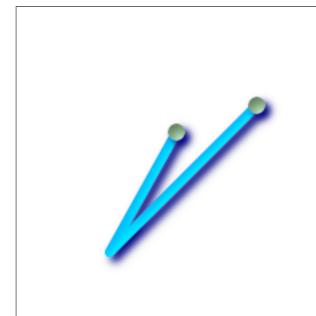
This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Enhanced: 2.1.0 support for Triangle was introduced

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 141 / 791

Examples			

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 142 / 791



Linestring with boundary points overlaid

SELECT ST_Boundary(geom)

FROM (SELECT 'LINESTRING(100 150,50 60, ←
70 80, 160 170)'::geometry As geom) As f;

-- ST_AsText output

MULTIPOINT(100 150,160 170)



polygon holes with boundary multilinestring

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 143 / 791

See Also

ST_AsText, ST_ExteriorRing, ST_MakePolygon

8.5.3 ST_CoordDim

ST_CoordDim — Return the coordinate dimension of the ST_Geometry value.

Synopsis

integer ST_CoordDim(geometry geomA);

Description

Return the coordinate dimension of the ST_Geometry value.

This is the MM compliant alias name for ST_NDims



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.3



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

```
SELECT ST_CoordDim('CIRCULARSTRING(1 2 3, 1 3 4, 5 6 7, 8 9 10, 11 12 13)');
---result--
3

SELECT ST_CoordDim(ST_Point(1,2));
--result--
2
```

See Also

ST_NDims

8.5.4 ST Dimension

ST_Dimension — The inherent dimension of this Geometry object, which must be less than or equal to the coordinate dimension.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 144 / 791

Synopsis

integer ST_Dimension(geometry g);

Description

The inherent dimension of this Geometry object, which must be less than or equal to the coordinate dimension. OGC SPEC s2.1.1.1 - returns 0 for POINT, 1 for LINESTRING, 2 for POLYGON, and the largest dimension of the components of a GEOME TRYCOLLECTION. If unknown (empty geometry) null is returned.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.2

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces and TINs was introduced. No longer throws an exception if given empty geometry.



Note

Prior to 2.0.0, this function throws an exception if used with empty geometry.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

See Also

ST_NDims

8.5.5 ST EndPoint

ST_EndPoint — Returns the last point of a LINESTRING or CIRCULARLINESTRING geometry as a POINT.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_EndPoint**(geometry g);

Description

Returns the last point of a LINESTRING geometry as a POINT or NULL if the input parameter is not a LINESTRING.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.1.4



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 145 / 791



Note

Changed: 2.0.0 no longer works with single geometry multilinestrings. In older versions of PostGIS -- a single line multilinestring would work happily with this function and return the start point. In 2.0.0 it just returns NULL like any other multilinestring. The older behavior was an undocumented feature, but people who assumed they had their data stored as LINESTRING may experience these returning NULL in 2.0 now.

Examples

See Also

ST_PointN, ST_StartPoint

8.5.6 ST_Envelope

ST_Envelope — Returns a geometry representing the double precision (float8) bounding box of the supplied geometry.

Synopsis

geometry ST_Envelope(geometry g1);

Description

Returns the float8 minimum bounding box for the supplied geometry, as a geometry. The polygon is defined by the corner points of the bounding box ((MINX, MINY), (MINX, MAXY), (MAXX, MAXY), (MAXX, MINY), (MINX, MINY)). (PostGIS will add a ZMIN/ZMAX coordinate as well).

Degenerate cases (vertical lines, points) will return a geometry of lower dimension than POLYGON, ie. POINT or LINESTRING.

Availability: 1.5.0 behavior changed to output double precision instead of float4



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.1



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.15

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 146 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Envelope('POINT(1 3)'::geometry));
st astext
POINT(1 3)
(1 row)
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Envelope('LINESTRING(0 0, 1 3)'::geometry));
      st_astext
POLYGON((0 0,0 3,1 3,1 0,0 0))
(1 row)
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Envelope('POLYGON((0 0, 0 1, 1.0000001 1, 1.0000001 0, 0 0))'::geometry \leftarrow
   ));
              st astext
POLYGON((0 0,0 1,1.00000011920929 1,1.00000011920929 0,0 0))
(1 row)
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Envelope('POLYGON((0 0, 0 1, 1.0000000001 1, 1.0000000001 0, 0 0))':: \leftarrow
   geometry));
              st astext
POLYGON((0 0,0 1,1.00000011920929 1,1.00000011920929 0,0 0))
(1 row)
SELECT Box3D(geom), Box2D(geom), ST_AsText(ST_Envelope(geom)) As envelopewkt
 FROM (SELECT 'POLYGON((0 0, 0 10000123333334.34545678, 1.00000001 1, 1.0000001 0, 0 0))':: ←
     geometry As geom) As foo;
```

See Also

Box2D, Box3D

8.5.7 ST BoundingDiagonal

ST_BoundingDiagonal — Returns the diagonal of the supplied geometry's bounding box.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_BoundingDiagonal**(geometry geom, boolean fits=false);

Description

Returns the diagonal of the supplied geometry's bounding box as linestring. If the input geometry is empty, the diagonal line is also empty, otherwise it is a 2-points linestring with minimum values of each dimension in its start point and maximum values in its end point.

The returned linestring geometry always retains SRID and dimensionality (Z and M presence) of the input geometry.

The fits parameter specifies if the best fit is needed. If false, the diagonal of a somewhat larger bounding box can be accepted (is faster to obtain for geometries with a lot of vertices). In any case the bounding box of the returned diagonal line always covers the input geometry.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 147 / 791



Note

In degenerate cases (a single vertex in input) the returned linestring will be topologically invalid (no interior). This does not make the return semantically invalid.

Availability: 2.2.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports M coordinates.

Examples

```
-- Get the minimum X in a buffer around a point
SELECT ST_X(ST_StartPoint(ST_BoundingDiagonal(
    ST_Buffer(ST_MakePoint(0,0),10)
)));
st_x
-----
-10
```

See Also

ST_StartPoint, ST_EndPoint, ST_X, ST_Y, ST_Z, ST_M, &&&

8.5.8 ST_ExteriorRing

 $ST_ExteriorRing$ — Returns a line string representing the exterior ring of the POLYGON geometry. Return NULL if the geometry is not a polygon. Will not work with MULTIPOLYGON

Synopsis

geometry ST_ExteriorRing(geometry a_polygon);

Description

Returns a line string representing the exterior ring of the POLYGON geometry. Return NULL if the geometry is not a polygon.



Note

Only works with POLYGON geometry types



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. 2.1.5.1



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.2.3, 8.3.3



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 148 / 791

Examples

```
--If you have a table of polygons
SELECT gid, ST_ExteriorRing(the_geom) AS ering
FROM sometable;
--If you have a table of MULTIPOLYGONs
--and want to return a MULTILINESTRING composed of the exterior rings of each polygon
SELECT gid, ST_Collect(ST_ExteriorRing(the_geom)) AS erings
  FROM (SELECT gid, (ST_Dump(the_geom)).geom As the_geom
     FROM sometable) As foo
GROUP BY gid;
--3d Example
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(
 ST_ExteriorRing(
  ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYGON((0 0 1, 1 1 1, 1 2 1, 1 1 1, 0 0 1))')
  )
);
st_asewkt
LINESTRING(0 0 1,1 1 1,1 2 1,1 1 1,0 0 1)
```

See Also

ST_InteriorRingN, ST_Boundary, ST_NumInteriorRings

8.5.9 ST_GeometryN

ST_GeometryN — Return the 1-based Nth geometry if the geometry is a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION, (MULTI)POINT, (MULTI)LINE MULTICURVE or (MULTI)POLYGON, POLYHEDRALSURFACE Otherwise, return NULL.

Synopsis

geometry ST_GeometryN(geometry geomA, integer n);

Description

Return the 1-based Nth geometry if the geometry is a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION, (MULTI)POINT, (MULTI)LINESTRING, MULTICURVE or (MULTI)POLYGON, POLYHEDRALSURFACE Otherwise, return NULL



Note

Index is 1-based as for OGC specs since version 0.8.0. Previous versions implemented this as 0-based instead.



Note

If you want to extract all geometries, of a geometry, ST_Dump is more efficient and will also work for singular geoms.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 149 / 791

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.

Changed: 2.0.0 Prior versions would return NULL for singular geometries. This was changed to return the geometry for ST_GeometryN(..,1) case.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 9.1.5



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Standard Examples

```
--Extracting a subset of points from a 3d multipoint
SELECT n, ST_AsEWKT(ST_GeometryN(the_geom, n)) As geomewkt
VALUES (ST_GeomFromEWKT('MULTIPOINT(1 2 7, 3 4 7, 5 6 7, 8 9 10)') ),
( ST_GeomFromEWKT('MULTICURVE(CIRCULARSTRING(2.5 2.5, 4.5 2.5, 3.5 3.5), (10 11, 12 11))') )
  )As foo(the_geom)
 CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,100) n
WHERE n <= ST_NumGeometries(the_geom);</pre>
 n |
                   geomewkt
---+-
 1 | POINT(1 2 7)
 2 | POINT(3 4 7)
 3 | POINT(5 6 7)
 4 | POINT(8 9 10)
 1 | CIRCULARSTRING(2.5 2.5, 4.5 2.5, 3.5 3.5)
 2 | LINESTRING(10 11,12 11)
--Extracting all geometries (useful when you want to assign an id)
SELECT gid, n, ST_GeometryN(the_geom, n)
FROM sometable CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,100) n
WHERE n <= ST_NumGeometries(the_geom);</pre>
```

Polyhedral Surfaces, TIN and Triangle Examples

```
-- Polyhedral surface example
-- Break a Polyhedral surface into its faces

SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_GeometryN(p_geom,3)) As geom_ewkt
FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYHEDRALSURFACE(
((0 0 0, 0 0 1, 0 1 1, 0 1 0, 0 0 0)),
((0 0 0, 0 1 0, 1 1 0, 1 0 0, 0 0 0)),
((0 0 0, 1 0 0, 1 0 1, 0 0 1, 0 0 0)),
((0 1 0, 1 1 1, 1 0 1, 1 0 0, 1 1 0)),
((0 1 0, 0 1 1, 1 1 1, 1 1, 0 1, 1 0 0 1))
((0 0 1, 1 0 1, 1 1 1, 0 1 1, 0 0 1))
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 150 / 791

```
geom_ewkt
------
POLYGON((0 0 0,1 0 0,1 0 1,0 0 0))
```

```
-- TIN --
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_GeometryN(geom, 2)) as wkt
  FROM
    (SELECT
       ST_GeomFromEWKT('TIN (((
                0 0 0,
                0 0 1,
                0 1 0,
                0 0 0
            )), ((
                0 0 0,
                0 1 0,
                1 1 0,
                0 0 0
            ))
            )') AS geom
    ) AS g;
-- result --
                 wkt
 TRIANGLE((0 0 0,0 1 0,1 1 0,0 0 0))
```

See Also

ST_Dump, ST_NumGeometries

8.5.10 ST_GeometryType

ST_GeometryType — Return the geometry type of the ST_Geometry value.

Synopsis

text ST_GeometryType(geometry g1);

Description

Returns the type of the geometry as a string. EG: 'ST_Linestring', 'ST_Polygon', 'ST_MultiPolygon' etc. This function differs from GeometryType(geometry) in the case of the string and ST in front that is returned, as well as the fact that it will not indicate whether the geometry is measured.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.4



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 151 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_GeometryType(ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYHEDRALSURFACE( ((0 0 0, 0 0 1, 0 1 1, 0 1 0, 0 \leftrightarrow 0 0)), ((0 0 0, 0 1 0, 1 1 0, 1 0 0, 0 0 0)), ((0 0 0, 1 0 0, 1 0 1, 0 0 1, 0 0 0)), ((1 1 0, 1 1 1, 1 0 1, 1 0 0, 1 1 0)), ((0 1 0, 0 1 1, 1 1 1, 1 1 0, 0 1 0)), ((0 0 1, 1 0 1, 1 1 1, 0 1 1, 0 0 1)))')); --result ST_PolyhedralSurface
```

```
SELECT ST_GeometryType(geom) as result
  FROM
    (SELECT
       ST_GeomFromEWKT('TIN (((
                0 0 0,
                0 0 1,
                0 1 0,
                0 0 0
            )), ((
                0 0 0,
                0 1 0,
                1 1 0,
                0 0 0
            ))
            )') AS geom
   ) AS g;
 result
 ST_Tin
```

See Also

GeometryType

8.5.11 ST InteriorRingN

ST_InteriorRingN — Return the Nth interior linestring ring of the polygon geometry. Return NULL if the geometry is not a polygon or the given N is out of range.

Synopsis

geometry ST_InteriorRingN(geometry a_polygon, integer n);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 152 / 791

Description

Return the Nth interior linestring ring of the polygon geometry. Return NULL if the geometry is not a polygon or the given N is out of range. index starts at 1.



Note

This will not work for MULTIPOLYGONs. Use in conjunction with ST Dump for MULTIPOLYGONS



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.2.6, 8.3.5



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_InteriorRingN(the_geom, 1)) As the_geom
FROM (SELECT ST_BuildArea(
    ST_Collect(ST_Buffer(ST_Point(1,2), 20,3),
        ST_Buffer(ST_Point(1, 2), 10,3))) As the_geom
    ) as foo
```

See Also

ST_ExteriorRing ST_BuildArea, ST_Collect, ST_Dump, ST_NumInteriorRing, ST_NumInteriorRings

8.5.12 ST_IsClosed

ST_IsClosed — Returns TRUE if the LINESTRING's start and end points are coincident. For Polyhedral surface is closed (volumetric).

Synopsis

boolean **ST_IsClosed**(geometry g);

Description

Returns TRUE if the LINESTRING's start and end points are coincident. For Polyhedral Surfaces, it tells you if the surface is areal (open) or volumetric (closed).



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.1.5, 9.3.3



Note

SQL-MM defines the result of ST Isclosed (NULL) to be 0, while PostGIS returns NULL.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 153 / 791



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Line String and Point Examples

```
postgis=# SELECT ST_IsClosed('LINESTRING(0 0, 1 1)'::geometry);
st_isclosed
f
(1 row)
postgis=# SELECT ST_IsClosed('LINESTRING(0 0, 0 1, 1 1, 0 0)'::geometry);
st_isclosed
t
(1 row)
postgis=# SELECT ST_IsClosed('MULTILINESTRING((0 0, 0 1, 1 1, 0 0),(0 0, 1 1))'::geometry);
st_isclosed
f
(1 row)
postgis=# SELECT ST_IsClosed('POINT(0 0)'::geometry);
st_isclosed
(1 row)
postgis=# SELECT ST_IsClosed('MULTIPOINT((0 0), (1 1))'::geometry);
st_isclosed
t
(1 row)
```

Polyhedral Surface Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 154 / 791

See Also

ST_IsRing

8.5.13 ST_IsCollection

ST_IsCollection — Returns TRUE if the argument is a collection (MULTI*, GEOMETRYCOLLECTION, ...)

Synopsis

boolean **ST_IsCollection**(geometry g);

Description

Returns TRUE if the geometry type of the argument is either:

- GEOMETRYCOLLECTION
- MULTI{POINT,POLYGON,LINESTRING,CURVE,SURFACE}
- COMPOUNDCURVE



Note

This function analyzes the type of the geometry. This means that it will return TRUE on collections that are empty or that contain a single element.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 155 / 791

See Also

ST_NumGeometries

8.5.14 ST_IsEmpty

ST_IsEmpty — Returns true if this Geometry is an empty geometrycollection, polygon, point etc.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_IsEmpty**(geometry geomA);

Description

Returns true if this Geometry is an empty geometry. If true, then this Geometry represents an empty geometry collection, polygon, point etc.



Note

SQL-MM defines the result of ST_IsEmpty(NULL) to be 0, while PostGIS returns NULL.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.1



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.7



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



Warning

Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions of PostGIS ST_GeomFromText('GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(EMPTY)') was allowed. This is now illegal in PostGIS 2.0.0 to better conform with SQL/MM standards

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 156 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_IsEmpty(ST_GeomFromText('GEOMETRYCOLLECTION EMPTY'));
 st_isempty
t
(1 row)
 SELECT ST_IsEmpty(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON EMPTY'));
 t
(1 row)
SELECT ST_IsEmpty(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((1 2, 3 4, 5 6, 1 2))'));
 st_isempty
 f
(1 row)
 SELECT ST_IsEmpty(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((1 2, 3 4, 5 6, 1 2))')) = false;
 ?column?
 t
(1 row)
 SELECT ST_IsEmpty(ST_GeomFromText('CIRCULARSTRING EMPTY'));
 st_isempty
 t
(1 row)
```

8.5.15 ST_IsRing

ST_IsRing — Returns TRUE if this LINESTRING is both closed and simple.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_IsRing**(geometry g);

Description

Returns TRUE if this LINESTRING is both ST_IsClosed (ST_StartPoint ((g)) ~= ST_Endpoint ((g))) and ST_IsSimple (does not self intersect).



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. 2.1.5.1



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.1.6



Note

SQL-MM defines the result of ST_IsRing (NULL) to be 0, while PostGIS returns NULL.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 157 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_IsClosed, ST_IsSimple, ST_StartPoint, ST_EndPoint

8.5.16 ST_IsSimple

ST_IsSimple — Returns (TRUE) if this Geometry has no anomalous geometric points, such as self intersection or self tangency.

Synopsis

boolean ST_IsSimple(geometry geomA);

Description

Returns true if this Geometry has no anomalous geometric points, such as self intersection or self tangency. For more information on the OGC's definition of geometry simplicity and validity, refer to "Ensuring OpenGIS compliancy of geometries"



Note

SQL-MM defines the result of ST_IsSimple(NULL) to be 0, while PostGIS returns NULL.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.1



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.8



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

```
SELECT ST_IsSimple(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((1 2, 3 4, 5 6, 1 2))'));
st_issimple
-----
t
(1 row)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 158 / 791

```
SELECT ST_IsSimple(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 1,2 2,2 3.5,1 3,1 2,2 1)'));
st_issimple
------
f
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_IsValid

8.5.17 ST_IsValid

ST IsValid — Returns true if the ST Geometry is well formed.

Synopsis

```
boolean ST_IsValid(geometry g);
boolean ST_IsValid(geometry g, integer flags);
```

Description

Test if an ST_Geometry value is well formed. For geometries that are invalid, the PostgreSQL NOTICE will provide details of why it is not valid. For more information on the OGC's definition of geometry simplicity and validity, refer to "Ensuring OpenGIS compliancy of geometries"



Note

SQL-MM defines the result of ST_IsValid(NULL) to be 0, while PostGIS returns NULL.

The version accepting flags is available starting with 2.0.0 and requires GEOS >= 3.3.0. Such version does not print a NOTICE explaining the invalidity. Allowed flags are documented in ST_IsValidDetail.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.9



Note

Neither OGC-SFS nor SQL-MM specifications include a flag argument for ST_IsValid. The flag is a PostGIS extension.

```
SELECT ST_IsValid(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(0 0, 1 1)')) As good_line,
   ST_IsValid(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((0 0, 1 1, 1 2, 1 1, 0 0))')) As bad_poly
--results
NOTICE: Self-intersection at or near point 0 0
good_line | bad_poly
-----t | f
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 159 / 791

See Also

ST_IsSimple, ST_IsValidReason, ST_IsValidDetail, ST_Summary

8.5.18 ST_IsValidReason

ST_IsValidReason — Returns text stating if a geometry is valid or not and if not valid, a reason why.

Synopsis

```
text ST_IsValidReason(geometry geomA);
text ST_IsValidReason(geometry geomA, integer flags);
```

Description

Returns text stating if a geometry is valid or not an if not valid, a reason why.

Useful in combination with ST_IsValid to generate a detailed report of invalid geometries and reasons.

Allowed flags are documented in ST_IsValidDetail.

Availability: 1.4 - requires GEOS >= 3.1.0.

Availability: 2.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.3.0 for the version taking flags.

```
--First 3 Rejects from a successful quintuplet experiment
SELECT gid, ST_IsValidReason(the_geom) as validity_info
(SELECT ST_MakePolygon(ST_ExteriorRing(e.buff), ST_Accum(f.line)) As the_geom, gid
FROM (SELECT ST_Buffer(ST_MakePoint(x1*10,y1), z1) As buff, x1*10 + y1*100 + z1*1000 As gid
 FROM generate_series(-4,6) x1
  CROSS JOIN generate_series(2,5) y1
  CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,8) z1
  WHERE x1 > y1*0.5 AND z1 < x1*y1) As e
  INNER JOIN (SELECT ST_Translate(ST_ExteriorRing(ST_Buffer(ST_MakePoint(x1*10,y1), z1)),y1 \leftrightarrow
     *1, z1*2) As line
  FROM generate_series(-3,6) x1
  CROSS JOIN generate_series(2,5) y1
  CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,10) z1
 WHERE x1 > y1*0.75 AND z1 < x1*y1) As f
ON (ST_Area(e.buff) > 78 AND ST_Contains(e.buff, f.line))
GROUP BY gid, e.buff) As quintuplet_experiment
WHERE ST_IsValid(the\_geom) = false
ORDER BY gid
LIMIT 3;
 gid |
            validity_info
 5330 | Self-intersection [32 5]
 5340 | Self-intersection [42 5]
 5350 | Self-intersection [52 5]
 --simple example
SELECT ST_IsValidReason('LINESTRING(220227 150406,2220227 150407,222020 150410)');
 st_isvalidreason
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 160 / 791

```
Valid Geometry
```

See Also

ST_IsValid, ST_Summary

8.5.19 ST_IsValidDetail

ST_IsValidDetail — Returns a valid_detail (valid,reason,location) row stating if a geometry is valid or not and if not valid, a reason why and a location where.

Synopsis

```
valid_detail ST_IsValidDetail(geometry geom); valid_detail ST_IsValidDetail(geometry geom, integer flags);
```

Description

Returns a valid_detail row, formed by a boolean (valid) stating if a geometry is valid, a varchar (reason) stating a reason why it is invalid and a geometry (location) pointing out where it is invalid.

Useful to substitute and improve the combination of ST_IsValid and ST_IsValidReason to generate a detailed report of invalid geometries.

The 'flags' argument is a bitfield. It can have the following values:

• 1: Consider self-intersecting rings forming holes as valid. This is also know as "the ESRI flag". Note that this is against the OGC model.

Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.3.0.

```
--First 3 Rejects from a successful quintuplet experiment
SELECT gid, reason(ST_IsValidDetail(the_geom)), ST_AsText(location(ST_IsValidDetail(\leftarrow
   the_geom))) as location
FROM
(SELECT ST_MakePolygon(ST_ExteriorRing(e.buff), ST_Accum(f.line)) As the_geom, gid
FROM (SELECT ST_Buffer(ST_MakePoint(x1*10,y1), z1) As buff, x1*10 + y1*100 + z1*1000 As gid
  FROM generate_series(-4,6) x1
  CROSS JOIN generate_series(2,5) y1
  CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,8) z1
  WHERE x1 > y1*0.5 AND z1 < x1*y1) As e
  INNER JOIN (SELECT ST_Translate(ST_ExteriorRing(ST_Buffer(ST_MakePoint(x1*10,y1), z1)),y1 \leftrightarrow
      *1, z1*2) As line
  FROM generate_series(-3,6) x1
  CROSS JOIN generate_series(2,5) y1
  CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,10) z1
 WHERE x1 > y1*0.75 AND z1 < x1*y1) As f
ON (ST_Area(e.buff) > 78 AND ST_Contains(e.buff, f.line))
GROUP BY gid, e.buff) As quintuplet_experiment
WHERE ST_IsValid(the_geom) = false
ORDER BY gid
LIMIT 3;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 161 / 791

See Also

ST_IsValid, ST_IsValidReason

8.5.20 ST M

ST_M — Return the M coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point.

Synopsis

float **ST_M**(geometry a_point);

Description

Return the M coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point.



Note

This is not (yet) part of the OGC spec, but is listed here to complete the point coordinate extractor function list.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

```
SELECT ST_M(ST_GeomFromEWKT('POINT(1 2 3 4)'));
st_m
----
4
(1 row)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 162 / 791

See Also

ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_X, ST_Y, ST_Z

8.5.21 ST_NDims

ST_NDims — Returns coordinate dimension of the geometry as a small int. Values are: 2,3 or 4.

Synopsis

integer ST_NDims(geometry g1);

Description

Returns the coordinate dimension of the geometry. PostGIS supports 2 - (x,y), 3 - (x,y,z) or 2D with measure - x,y,m, and 4 - 3D with measure space x,y,z,m



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

See Also

ST_CoordDim, ST_Dimension, ST_GeomFromEWKT

8.5.22 ST_NPoints

ST_NPoints — Return the number of points (vertexes) in a geometry.

Synopsis

integer ST_NPoints(geometry g1);

Description

Return the number of points in a geometry. Works for all geometries.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.



Note

Prior to 1.3.4, this function crashes if used with geometries that contain CURVES. This is fixed in 1.3.4+

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 163 / 791



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

See Also

ST_NumPoints

8.5.23 ST_NRings

ST_NRings — If the geometry is a polygon or multi-polygon returns the number of rings.

Synopsis

integer ST_NRings(geometry geomA);

Description

If the geometry is a polygon or multi-polygon returns the number of rings. Unlike NumInteriorRings, it counts the outer rings as well.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 164 / 791

See Also

ST_NumInteriorRings

8.5.24 ST_NumGeometries

ST_NumGeometries — If geometry is a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION (or MULTI*) return the number of geometries, for single geometries will return 1, otherwise return NULL.

Synopsis

integer ST_NumGeometries(geometry geom);

Description

Returns the number of Geometries. If geometry is a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION (or MULTI*) return the number of geometries, for single geometries will return 1, otherwise return NULL.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.

Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions this would return NULL if the geometry was not a collection/MULTI type. 2.0.0+ now returns 1 for single geometries e.g POLYGON, LINESTRING, POINT.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 9.1.4



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

```
--Prior versions would have returned NULL for this -- in 2.0.0 this returns 1

SELECT ST_NumGeometries(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(77.29 29.07,77.42 29.26,77.27 ←
29.31,77.29 29.07)'));

--result

1

--Geometry Collection Example - multis count as one geom in a collection

SELECT ST_NumGeometries(ST_GeomFromEWKT('GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(MULTIPOINT(-2 3 , -2 2),
LINESTRING(5 5 ,10 10),

POLYGON((-7 4.2,-7.1 5,-7.1 4.3,-7 4.2)))'));

--result
3
```

See Also

ST_GeometryN, ST_Multi

8.5.25 ST NumInteriorRings

ST_NumInteriorRings — Return the number of interior rings of a polygon geometry.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 165 / 791

Synopsis

integer ST_NumInteriorRings(geometry a_polygon);

Description

Return the number of interior rings of a polygon geometry. Return NULL if the geometry is not a polygon.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.2.5

Changed: 2.0.0 - in prior versions it would allow passing a MULTIPOLYGON, returning the number of interior rings of first POLYGON.

Examples

```
--If you have a regular polygon
SELECT gid, field1, field2, ST_NumInteriorRings(the_geom) AS numholes
FROM sometable;
--If you have multipolygons
--And you want to know the total number of interior rings in the MULTIPOLYGON
SELECT gid, field1, field2, SUM(ST_NumInteriorRings(the_geom)) AS numholes
FROM (SELECT gid, field1, field2, (ST_Dump(the_geom)).geom As the_geom
 FROM sometable) As foo
GROUP BY gid, field1, field2;
```

See Also

ST_NumInteriorRing

8.5.26 ST NumInteriorRing

ST_NumInteriorRing — Return the number of interior rings of a polygon in the geometry. Synonym for ST_NumInteriorRings.

Synopsis

integer ST_NumInteriorRing(geometry a_polygon);

See Also

ST_NumInteriorRings

8.5.27 ST_NumPatches

ST_NumPatches — Return the number of faces on a Polyhedral Surface. Will return null for non-polyhedral geometries.

Synopsis

integer ST_NumPatches(geometry g1);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 166 / 791

Description

Return the number of faces on a Polyhedral Surface. Will return null for non-polyhedral geometries. This is an alias for ST_NumGeometries to support MM naming. Faster to use ST_NumGeometries if you don't care about MM convention.

Availability: 2.0.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: ?



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

See Also

ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_NumGeometries

8.5.28 ST NumPoints

ST_NumPoints — Return the number of points in an ST_LineString or ST_CircularString value.

Synopsis

integer ST_NumPoints(geometry g1);

Description

Return the number of points in an ST_LineString or ST_CircularString value. Prior to 1.4 only works with Linestrings as the specs state. From 1.4 forward this is an alias for ST_NPoints which returns number of vertexes for not just line strings. Consider using ST_NPoints instead which is multi-purpose and works with many geometry types.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.2.4

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 167 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_NPoints

8.5.29 ST_PatchN

ST_PatchN — Return the 1-based Nth geometry (face) if the geometry is a POLYHEDRALSURFACE, POLYHEDRALSURFACEM. Otherwise, return NULL.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_PatchN**(geometry geomA, integer n);

Description

>Return the 1-based Nth geometry (face) if the geometry is a POLYHEDRALSURFACE, POLYHEDRALSURFACEM. Otherwise, return NULL. This returns the same answer as ST_GeometryN for Polyhedral Surfaces. Using ST_GemoetryN is faster.



Note

Index is 1-based.



Note

If you want to extract all geometries, of a geometry, ST_Dump is more efficient.

Availability: 2.0.0



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: ?



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 168 / 791

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_Dump, ST_GeometryN, ST_NumGeometries

8.5.30 ST_PointN

ST_PointN — Return the Nth point in the first LineString or circular LineString in the geometry. Negative values are counted backwards from the end of the LineString. Returns NULL if there is no linestring in the geometry.

Synopsis

geometry ST_PointN(geometry a_linestring, integer n);

Description

Return the Nth point in a single linestring or circular linestring in the geometry. Negative values are counted backwards from the end of the LineString, so that -1 is the last point. Returns NULL if there is no linestring in the geometry.



Note

Index is 1-based as for OGC specs since version 0.8.0. Backward indexing (negative index) is not in OGC Previous versions implemented this as 0-based instead.



Note

If you want to get the nth point of each line string in a multilinestring, use in conjunction with ST_Dump



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.2.5, 7.3.5



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 169 / 791



Note

Changed: 2.0.0 no longer works with single geometry multilinestrings. In older versions of PostGIS -- a single line multilinestring would work happily with this function and return the start point. In 2.0.0 it just returns NULL like any other multilinestring.

Changed: 2.3.0: negative indexing available (-1 is last point)

Examples

```
-- Extract all POINTs from a LINESTRING
SELECT ST_AsText(
  ST_PointN(
   column1,
   generate_series(1, ST_NPoints(column1))
  ))
FROM ( VALUES ('LINESTRING(0 0, 1 1, 2 2)'::geometry) ) AS foo;
 st_astext
 POINT(0 0)
 POINT (1 1)
POINT(2 2)
(3 rows)
--Example circular string
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_PointN(ST_GeomFromText('CIRCULARSTRING(1 2, 3 2, 1 2)'),2));
st_astext
POINT(3 2)
SELECT st_astext(f)
FROM ST_GeometryFromtext('LINESTRING(0 0 0, 1 1 1, 2 2 2)') as g
  ,ST_{pointN(g, -2)} AS f -- 1 based index
st_astext
"POINT Z (1 1 1)"
```

See Also

ST NPoints

8.5.31 ST_Points

ST_Points — Returns a MultiPoint containing all of the coordinates of a geometry.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_Points( geometry geom );
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 170 / 791

Description

Returns a MultiPoint containing all of the coordinates of a geometry. Does not remove points that are duplicated in the input geometry, including start and end points of ring geometries. (If this behavior is undesired, duplicates may be removed using ST_RemoveRepeatedPoints).

M and Z ordinates will be preserved if present.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Availability: 2.3.0

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Points('POLYGON Z ((30 10 4,10 30 5,40 40 6, 30 10))'));
--result
MULTIPOINT Z (30 10 4,10 30 5,40 40 6, 30 10 4)
```

See Also

ST_RemoveRepeatedPoints

8.5.32 ST_SRID

ST_SRID — Returns the spatial reference identifier for the ST_Geometry as defined in spatial_ref_sys table.

Synopsis

integer **ST_SRID**(geometry g1);

Description

Returns the spatial reference identifier for the ST_Geometry as defined in spatial_ref_sys table. Section 4.3.1



Note

spatial_ref_sys table is a table that catalogs all spatial reference systems known to PostGIS and is used for transformations from one spatial reference system to another. So verifying you have the right spatial reference system identifier is important if you plan to ever transform your geometries.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.1



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.5



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 171 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_SRID(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(-71.1043 42.315)',4326));
    --result
    4326
```

See Also

Section 4.3.1, ST_GeomFromText, ST_SetSRID, ST_Transform

8.5.33 ST_StartPoint

ST_StartPoint — Returns the first point of a LINESTRING geometry as a POINT.

Synopsis

geometry ST_StartPoint(geometry geomA);

Description

Returns the first point of a LINESTRING or CIRCULARLINESTRING geometry as a POINT or NULL if the input parameter is not a LINESTRING or CIRCULARLINESTRING.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.1.3



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



Note

Changed: 2.0.0 no longer works with single geometry multilinestrings. In older versions of PostGIS -- a single line multilinestring would work happily with this function and return the start point. In 2.0.0 it just returns NULL like any other multilinestring. The older behavior was an undocumented feature, but people who assumed they had their data stored as LINESTRING may experience these returning NULL in 2.0 now.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 172 / 791

See Also

ST_EndPoint, ST_PointN

8.5.34 ST_Summary

ST_Summary — Returns a text summary of the contents of the geometry.

Synopsis

```
text ST_Summary(geometry g);
text ST_Summary(geography g);
```

Description

Returns a text summary of the contents of the geometry.

Flags shown square brackets after the geometry type have the following meaning:

- M: has M ordinate
- Z: has Z ordinate
- B: has a cached bounding box
- G: is geodetic (geography)
- S: has spatial reference system



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Availability: 1.2.2

Enhanced: 2.0.0 added support for geography

Enhanced: 2.1.0 S flag to denote if has a known spatial reference system

Enhanced: 2.2.0 Added support for TIN and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 173 / 791

Examples

See Also

PostGIS_DropBBox, PostGIS_AddBBox, ST_Force3DM, ST_Force3DZ, ST_Force2D, geography ST_IsValid, ST_IsValid, ST_IsValidReason, ST_IsValidDetail

8.5.35 ST_X

ST_X — Return the X coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point.

Synopsis

float **ST_X**(geometry a_point);

Description

Return the X coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point.



Note

If you want to get the max min x values of any geometry look at ST_XMin, ST_XMax functions.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 6.1.3



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 174 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_X(ST_GeomFromEWKT('POINT(1 2 3 4)'));
st_x
-----
1
(1 row)

SELECT ST_Y(ST_Centroid(ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 3 4, 1 1 1 1)')));
st_y
-----
1.5
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_Centroid, ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_M, ST_XMax, ST_XMin, ST_Y, ST_Z

8.5.36 ST_XMax

ST_XMax — Returns X maxima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.

Synopsis

float ST_XMax(box3d aGeomorBox2DorBox3D);

Description

Returns X maxima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.



Note

Although this function is only defined for box3d, it will work for box2d and geometry because of the auto-casting behavior defined for geometries and box2d. However you can not feed it a geometry or box2d text representation, since that will not auto-cast.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 175 / 791

```
SELECT ST_XMax(CAST('BOX(-3 2, 3 4)' As box2d));
st_xmax
------
3
--Observe THIS DOES NOT WORK because it will try to autocast the string representation to a ← BOX3D
SELECT ST_XMax('LINESTRING(1 3, 5 6)');
--ERROR: BOX3D parser - doesn't start with BOX3D(

SELECT ST_XMax(ST_GeomFromEWKT('CIRCULARSTRING(220268 150415 1,220227 150505 2,220227 ← 150406 3)'));
st_xmax
-------
220288.248780547
```

See Also

ST_XMin, ST_YMax, ST_YMin, ST_ZMax, ST_ZMin

8.5.37 ST_XMin

ST_XMin — Returns X minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.

Synopsis

float ST_XMin(box3d aGeomorBox2DorBox3D);

Description

Returns X minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.



Note

Although this function is only defined for box3d, it will work for box2d and geometry because of the auto-casting behavior defined for geometries and box2d. However you can not feed it a geometry or box2d text representation, since that will not auto-cast.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

```
SELECT ST_XMin('BOX3D(1 2 3, 4 5 6)');
st_xmin
-----
1
SELECT ST_XMin(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 3 4, 5 6 7)'));
st_xmin
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 176 / 791

```
The second seco
```

See Also

ST_XMax, ST_YMax, ST_YMin, ST_ZMax, ST_ZMin

8.5.38 ST_Y

ST_Y — Return the Y coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point.

Synopsis

float ST_Y(geometry a_point);

Description

Return the Y coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 6.1.4



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

```
SELECT ST_Y(ST_GeomFromEWKT('POINT(1 2 3 4)'));
st_y
-----
2 (1 row)

SELECT ST_Y(ST_Centroid(ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 3 4, 1 1 1 1)')));
st_y
-----
1.5
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 177 / 791

```
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_Centroid, ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_M, ST_X, ST_YMax, ST_YMin, ST_Z

8.5.39 ST_YMax

ST_YMax — Returns Y maxima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.

Synopsis

float ST_YMax(box3d aGeomorBox2DorBox3D);

Description

Returns Y maxima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.



Note

Although this function is only defined for box3d, it will work for box2d and geometry because of the auto-casting behavior defined for geometries and box2d. However you can not feed it a geometry or box2d text representation, since that will not auto-cast.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

```
SELECT ST_YMax('BOX3D(1 2 3, 4 5 6)');

st_ymax
-----
5

SELECT ST_YMax(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 3 4, 5 6 7)'));

st_ymax
------
6

SELECT ST_YMax(CAST('BOX(-3 2, 3 4)' As box2d));

st_ymax
------
4
--Observe THIS DOES NOT WORK because it will try to autocast the string representation to a \( \to \)

BOX3D

SELECT ST_YMax('LINESTRING(1 3, 5 6)');

--ERROR: BOX3D parser - doesn't start with BOX3D(
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 178 / 791

```
SELECT ST_YMax(ST_GeomFromEWKT('CIRCULARSTRING(220268 150415 1,220227 150505 2,220227 

150406 3)'));
st_ymax
-----
150506.126829327
```

See Also

ST_XMin, ST_XMax, ST_YMin, ST_ZMax, ST_ZMin

8.5.40 ST_YMin

ST_YMin — Returns Y minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.

Synopsis

float ST_YMin(box3d aGeomorBox2DorBox3D);

Description

Returns Y minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.



Note

Although this function is only defined for box3d, it will work for box2d and geometry because of the auto-casting behavior defined for geometries and box2d. However you can not feed it a geometry or box2d text representation, since that will not auto-cast.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

```
SELECT ST_YMin('BOX3D(1 2 3, 4 5 6)');
st_ymin
------
2

SELECT ST_YMin(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 3 4, 5 6 7)'));
st_ymin
------
3

SELECT ST_YMin(CAST('BOX(-3 2, 3 4)' As box2d));
st_ymin
------
2
--Observe THIS DOES NOT WORK because it will try to autocast the string representation to a ← BOX3D

SELECT ST_YMin('LINESTRING(1 3, 5 6)');
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 179 / 791

```
--ERROR: BOX3D parser - doesn't start with BOX3D(

SELECT ST_YMin(ST_GeomFromEWKT('CIRCULARSTRING(220268 150415 1,220227 150505 2,220227 ↔ 150406 3)'));

st_ymin
------
150406
```

See Also

ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_XMin, ST_XMax, ST_YMax, ST_ZMax, ST_ZMin

8.5.41 ST_Z

ST_Z — Return the Z coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point.

Synopsis

float **ST_Z**(geometry a_point);

Description

Return the Z coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_Z(ST_GeomFromEWKT('POINT(1 2 3 4)'));
st_z
-----
3
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_M, ST_X, ST_Y, ST_ZMax, ST_ZMin

8.5.42 ST_ZMax

ST_ZMax — Returns Z minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.

Synopsis

float ST_ZMax(box3d aGeomorBox2DorBox3D);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 180 / 791

Description

Returns Z maxima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.



Note

Although this function is only defined for box3d, it will work for box2d and geometry because of the auto-casting behavior defined for geometries and box2d. However you can not feed it a geometry or box2d text representation, since that will not auto-cast.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

See Also

 $ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_XMin, ST_XMax, ST_YMax, ST_YMin, ST_ZMax$

8.5.43 ST_Zmflag

ST_Zmflag — Returns ZM (dimension semantic) flag of the geometries as a small int. Values are: 0=2d, 1=3dm, 2=3dz, 3=4d.

Synopsis

smallint **ST_Zmflag**(geometry geomA);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 181 / 791

Description

Returns ZM (dimension semantic) flag of the geometries as a small int. Values are: 0=2d, 1=3dm, 2=3dz, 3=4d.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

See Also

ST_CoordDim, ST_NDims, ST_Dimension

8.5.44 ST_ZMin

ST_ZMin — Returns Z minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.

Synopsis

float ST_ZMin(box3d aGeomorBox2DorBox3D);

Description

Returns Z minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.



Note

Although this function is only defined for box3d, it will work for box2d and geometry because of the auto-casting behavior defined for geometries and box2d. However you can not feed it a geometry or box2d text representation, since that will not auto-cast.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 182 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_ZMin('BOX3D(1 2 3, 4 5 6)');
st_zmin
3
SELECT ST_ZMin(ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 3 4, 5 6 7)'));
st_zmin
SELECT ST_ZMin('BOX3D(-3 2 1, 3 4 1)');
st_zmin
1
--Observe THIS DOES NOT WORK because it will try to autocast the string representation to a \hookleftarrow
    BOX3D
SELECT ST_ZMin('LINESTRING(1 3 4, 5 6 7)');
--ERROR: BOX3D parser - doesn't start with BOX3D(
SELECT ST_ZMin(ST_GeomFromEWKT('CIRCULARSTRING(220268 150415 1,220227 150505 2,220227 \leftrightarrow
   150406 3)'));
st_zmin
1
```

See Also

ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_GeomFromText, ST_XMin, ST_XMax, ST_YMax, ST_YMin, ST_ZMax

8.6 Geometry Editors

8.6.1 ST_AddPoint

ST_AddPoint — Add a point to a LineString.

Synopsis

geometry ST_AddPoint(geometry linestring, geometry point);
geometry ST_AddPoint(geometry linestring, geometry point, integer position);

Description

Adds a point to a LineString before point <position> (0-based index). Third parameter can be omitted or set to -1 for appending. Availability: 1.1.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 183 / 791

Examples

```
--guarantee all linestrings in a table are closed
--by adding the start point of each linestring to the end of the line string
--only for those that are not closed
UPDATE sometable
SET the_geom = ST_AddPoint(the_geom, ST_StartPoint(the_geom))
FROM sometable
WHERE ST_IsClosed(the_geom) = false;

--Adding point to a 3-d line
SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_AddPoint(ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(0 0 1, 1 1 1)'), ST_MakePoint ↔
(1, 2, 3)));

--result
st_asewkt
------
LINESTRING(0 0 1,1 1 1,1 2 3)
```

See Also

ST_RemovePoint, ST_SetPoint

8.6.2 ST_Affine

ST_Affine — Apply a 3d affine transformation to a geometry.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_Affine**(geometry geomA, float a, float b, float c, float d, float e, float f, float g, float h, float i, float xoff, float yoff, float zoff);

geometry **ST_Affine**(geometry geomA, float a, float b, float d, float e, float xoff, float yoff);

Description

Applies a 3d affine transformation to the geometry to do things like translate, rotate, scale in one step.

Version 1: The call

```
ST_Affine(geom, a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, xoff, yoff, zoff)
```

represents the transformation matrix

```
/ a b c xoff \
| d e f yoff |
| g h i zoff |
\ 0 0 0 1 /
```

and the vertices are transformed as follows:

```
x' = a*x + b*y + c*z + xoff

y' = d*x + e*y + f*z + yoff

z' = g*x + h*y + i*z + zoff
```

All of the translate / scale functions below are expressed via such an affine transformation.

Version 2: Applies a 2d affine transformation to the geometry. The call

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 184 / 791

```
ST_Affine(geom, a, b, d, e, xoff, yoff)
```

represents the transformation matrix

and the vertices are transformed as follows:

```
x' = a*x + b*y + xoff

y' = d*x + e*y + yoff

z' = z
```

This method is a subcase of the 3D method above.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.

Availability: 1.1.2. Name changed from Affine to ST_Affine in 1.2.2



Note

Prior to 1.3.4, this function crashes if used with geometries that contain CURVES. This is fixed in 1.3.4+



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

```
--Rotate a 3d line 180 degrees about the z axis. Note this is long-hand for doing \,\,\,\,\,\,\,
   ST_Rotate();
 SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_Affine(the_geom, cos(pi()), -sin(pi()), 0, sin(pi()), cos(pi()), 0, \leftrightarrow
     0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0)) As using_affine,
  ST_AsEWKT(ST_Rotate(the_geom, pi())) As using_rotate
 FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 3, 1 4 3)') As the_geom) As foo;
       using_affine
                           using_rotate
LINESTRING (-1 -2 3, -1 -4 3) | LINESTRING (-1 -2 3, -1 -4 3)
(1 row)
--Rotate a 3d line 180 degrees in both the \boldsymbol{x} and \boldsymbol{z} axis
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_Affine(the_geom, cos(pi()), -sin(pi()), 0, sin(pi()), cos(pi()), -sin(\leftrightarrow cos(pi()))
   pi()), 0, sin(pi()), cos(pi()), 0, 0, 0))
 FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 3, 1 4 3)') As the_geom) As foo;
           st_asewkt
LINESTRING (-1 -2 -3, -1 -4 -3)
(1 row)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 185 / 791

See Also

ST_Rotate, ST_Scale, ST_Translate, ST_TransScale

8.6.3 ST_Force2D

ST_Force2D — Force the geometries into a "2-dimensional mode".

Synopsis

geometry ST_Force2D(geometry geomA);

Description

Forces the geometries into a "2-dimensional mode" so that all output representations will only have the X and Y coordinates. This is useful for force OGC-compliant output (since OGC only specifies 2-D geometries).

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.

Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Force_2D.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

See Also

ST_Force3D

8.6.4 ST_Force3D

ST_Force3D — Force the geometries into XYZ mode. This is an alias for ST_Force3DZ.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 186 / 791

Synopsis

geometry ST_Force3D(geometry geomA);

Description

Forces the geometries into XYZ mode. This is an alias for ST_Force_3DZ. If a geometry has no Z component, then a 0 Z coordinate is tacked on.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.

Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Force_3D.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_Force2D, ST_Force3DM, ST_Force3DZ

8.6.5 ST_Force3DZ

ST_Force3DZ — Force the geometries into XYZ mode.

Synopsis

geometry ST_Force3DZ(geometry geomA);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 187 / 791

Description

Forces the geometries into XYZ mode. This is a synonym for ST_Force3DZ. If a geometry has no Z component, then a 0 Z coordinate is tacked on.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.

Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Force_3DZ.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_Force2D, ST_Force3DM, ST_Force3D

8.6.6 ST_Force3DM

ST_Force3DM — Force the geometries into XYM mode.

Synopsis

geometry ST_Force3DM(geometry geomA);

Description

Forces the geometries into XYM mode. If a geometry has no M component, then a $0\,\mathrm{M}$ coordinate is tacked on. If it has a Z component, then Z is removed

Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Force_3DM.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 188 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_Force2D, ST_Force3DM, ST_Force3D, ST_GeomFromEWKT

8.6.7 ST_Force4D

ST_Force4D — Force the geometries into XYZM mode.

Synopsis

geometry ST_Force4D(geometry geomA);

Description

Forces the geometries into XYZM mode. 0 is tacked on for missing Z and M dimensions.

Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Force_4D.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 189 / 791

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_Force2D, ST_Force3DM, ST_Force3D

8.6.8 ST_ForceCollection

ST_ForceCollection — Convert the geometry into a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION.

Synopsis

geometry ST_ForceCollection(geometry geomA);

Description

Converts the geometry into a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION. This is useful for simplifying the WKB representation.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.

Availability: 1.2.2, prior to 1.3.4 this function will crash with Curves. This is fixed in 1.3.4+

Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Force_Collection.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

```
SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_ForceCollection('POLYGON((0 0 1,0 5 1,5 0 1,0 0 1),(1 1 1,3 1 1,1 3 ↔ 1,1 1 1))'));

st_asewkt

GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(POLYGON((0 0 1,0 5 1,5 0 1,0 0 1),(1 1 1,3 1 1,1 3 1,1 1 1)))

SELECT ST_ASText(ST_ForceCollection('CIRCULARSTRING(220227 150406,2220227 150407,220227 ↔ 150406)'));

st_astext

GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(CIRCULARSTRING(220227 150406,2220227 150406))
(1 row)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 190 / 791

```
-- POLYHEDRAL example --
SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_ForceCollection('POLYHEDRALSURFACE(((0 0 0,0 0 1,0 1 1,0 1 0,0 0 0)),
 ((0\ 0\ 0,0\ 1\ 0,1\ 1\ 0,1\ 0\ 0,0\ 0\ 0)),
 ((0\ 0\ 0,1\ 0\ 0,1\ 0\ 1,0\ 0\ 1,0\ 0\ 0)),
 ((1 \ 1 \ 0, 1 \ 1 \ 1, 1 \ 0 \ 1, 1 \ 0 \ 0, 1 \ 1 \ 0)),
 ((0 \ 1 \ 0, 0 \ 1 \ 1, 1 \ 1 \ 1, 1 \ 1 \ 0, 0 \ 1 \ 0)),
 ((0 0 1,1 0 1,1 1 1,0 1 1,0 0 1)))'))
                     st_asewkt
GEOMETRYCOLLECTION (
  POLYGON((0 0 0,0 0 1,0 1 1,0 1 0,0 0 0)),
  POLYGON((0 0 0,0 1 0,1 1 0,1 0 0,0 0 0)),
  POLYGON((0 0 0,1 0 0,1 0 1,0 0 1,0 0 0)),
  POLYGON((1 1 0,1 1 1,1 0 1,1 0 0,1 1 0)),
  POLYGON((0 1 0,0 1 1,1 1 1,1 1 0,0 1 0)),
  POLYGON((0 0 1,1 0 1,1 1 1,0 1 1,0 0 1))
```

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_Force2D, ST_Force3DM, ST_Force3D, ST_GeomFromEWKT

8.6.9 ST ForceSFS

ST_ForceSFS — Force the geometries to use SFS 1.1 geometry types only.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_ForceSFS(geometry geomA);
geometry ST_ForceSFS(geometry geomA, text version);
```

Description



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

8.6.10 ST_ForceRHR

ST_ForceRHR — Force the orientation of the vertices in a polygon to follow the Right-Hand-Rule.

Synopsis

geometry ST_ForceRHR(geometry g);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 191 / 791

Description

Forces the orientation of the vertices in a polygon to follow the Right-Hand-Rule. In GIS terminology, this means that the area that is bounded by the polygon is to the right of the boundary. In particular, the exterior ring is orientated in a clockwise direction and the interior rings in a counter-clockwise direction.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

See Also

ST_BuildArea, ST_Polygonize, ST_Reverse

8.6.11 ST_ForceCurve

ST_ForceCurve — Upcast a geometry into its curved type, if applicable.

Synopsis

geometry ST_ForceCurve(geometry g);

Description

Turns a geometry into its curved representation, if applicable: lines become compoundcurves, multilines become multicurves polygons become curvepolygons multipolygons become multisurfaces. If the geometry input is already a curved representation returns back same as input.

Availability: 2.2.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 192 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_LineToCurve

8.6.12 ST_LineMerge

ST_LineMerge — Return a (set of) LineString(s) formed by sewing together a MULTILINESTRING.

Synopsis

geometry ST_LineMerge(geometry amultilinestring);

Description

Returns a (set of) LineString(s) formed by sewing together the constituent line work of a MULTILINESTRING.



Note

Only use with MULTILINESTRING/LINESTRINGs. If you feed a polygon or geometry collection into this function, it will return an empty GEOMETRYCOLLECTION

Availability: 1.1.0



Note

requires GEOS >= 2.1.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 193 / 791

```
--If can't be merged - original MULTILINESTRING is returned

SELECT ST_AsText(ST_LineMerge(
ST_GeomFromText('MULTILINESTRING((-29 -27, -30 -29.7, -36 -31, -45 -33), (-45.2 -33.2, -46 -32)) 
')
);
st_astext
------
MULTILINESTRING((-45.2 -33.2, -46 -32), (-29 -27, -30 -29.7, -36 -31, -45 -33))
```

See Also

ST_Segmentize, ST_LineSubstring

8.6.13 ST_CollectionExtract

ST_CollectionExtract — Given a (multi)geometry, return a (multi)geometry consisting only of elements of the specified type.

Synopsis

geometry ST_CollectionExtract(geometry collection, integer type);

Description

Given a (multi)geometry, returns a (multi)geometry consisting only of elements of the specified type. Sub-geometries that are not the specified type are ignored. If there are no sub-geometries of the right type, an EMPTY geometry will be returned. Only points, lines and polygons are supported. Type numbers are 1 == POINT, 2 == LINESTRING, 3 == POLYGON.

Availability: 1.5.0



Note

Prior to 1.5.3 this function returned non-collection inputs untouched, no matter type. In 1.5.3 non-matching single geometries result in a NULL return. In of 2.0.0 every case of missing match results in a typed EMPTY return.



Warning

When specifying 3 == POLYGON a multipolygon is returned even when the edges are shared. This results in an invalid multipolygon for many cases such as applying this function on an ST Split result.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 194 / 791

See Also

ST_Multi, ST_Dump, ST_CollectionHomogenize

8.6.14 ST_CollectionHomogenize

ST_CollectionHomogenize — Given a geometry collection, return the "simplest" representation of the contents.

Synopsis

geometry ST_CollectionHomogenize(geometry collection);

Description

Given a geometry collection, returns the "simplest" representation of the contents. Singletons will be returned as singletons. Collections that are homogeneous will be returned as the appropriate multi-type.



Warning

When specifying 3 == POLYGON a multipolygon is returned even when the edges are shared. This results in an invalid multipolygon for many cases such as applying this function on an ST_Split result.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_CollectionHomogenize('GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(POINT(0 0))'));

st_astext

POINT(0 0)
(1 row)

SELECT ST_AsText(ST_CollectionHomogenize('GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(POINT(0 0), POINT(1 1))'));

st_astext

MULTIPOINT(0 0,1 1)
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_Multi, ST_CollectionExtract

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 195 / 791

8.6.15 ST_Multi

ST_Multi — Return the geometry as a MULTI* geometry.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_Multi(geometry g1);
```

Description

Returns the geometry as a MULTI* geometry. If the geometry is already a MULTI*, it is returned unchanged.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Multi(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((743238 2967416,743238 2967450, 743265 2967450,743265.625 2967416,743238 2967416))')));
st_astext

MULTIPOLYGON(((743238 2967416,743238 2967450,743265 2967450,743265.625 2967416, 743238 2967416)))
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST AsText

8.6.16 ST_Normalize

ST_Normalize — Return the geometry in its canonical form.

Synopsis

geometry ST_Normalize(geometry geom);

Description

Returns the geometry in its normalized/canonical form. May reorder vertices in polygon rings, rings in a polygon, elements in a multi-geometry complex.

Mostly only useful for testing purposes (comparing expected and obtained results).

```
SELECT ST_ASText(ST_Normalize(ST_GeomFromText(
    'GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(
    POINT(2 3),
    MULTILINESTRING((0 0, 1 1),(2 2, 3 3)),
    POLYGON(
        (0 10,0 0,10 0,10 10,0 10),
         (4 2,2 2,2 4,4 4,4 2),
        (6 8,8 8,8 6,6 6,6 8)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 196 / 791

```
)
)'
)));

st_astext

GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(POLYGON((0 0,0 10,10 10,10 0,0 0),(6 6,8 6,8 8,6 8,6 6),(2 2,4 2,4 4,2 \leftarrow 4,2 2)),MULTILINESTRING((2 2,3 3),(0 0,1 1)),POINT(2 3))
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_Equals,

8.6.17 ST_RemovePoint

ST_RemovePoint — Remove point from a linestring.

Synopsis

geometry ST_RemovePoint(geometry linestring, integer offset);

Description

Remove a point from a linestring, given its 0-based index. Useful for turning a closed ring into an open line string Availability: 1.1.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
--guarantee no LINESTRINGS are closed
--by removing the end point. The below assumes the geom is of type LINESTRING
UPDATE sometable
SET the geom = ST_RemovePoint(the geom, ST_NPoints(the geom) - 1)
FROM sometable
WHERE ST_IsClosed(the geom) = true;
```

See Also

ST_AddPoint, ST_NPoints, ST_NumPoints

8.6.18 ST_Reverse

ST_Reverse — Return the geometry with vertex order reversed.

Synopsis

 $geometry \ \textbf{ST_Reverse} (geometry \ g1);$

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 197 / 791

Description

Can be used on any geometry and reverses the order of the vertexes.

Examples

8.6.19 ST_Rotate

ST_Rotate — Rotate a geometry rotRadians counter-clockwise about an origin.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_Rotate(geometry geomA, float rotRadians);
geometry ST_Rotate(geometry geomA, float rotRadians, float x0, float y0);
geometry ST_Rotate(geometry geomA, float rotRadians, geometry pointOrigin);
```

Description

Rotates geometry rotRadians counter-clockwise about the origin. The rotation origin can be specified either as a POINT geometry, or as x and y coordinates. If the origin is not specified, the geometry is rotated about POINT(0 0).

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 additional parameters for specifying the origin of rotation were added.

Availability: 1.1.2. Name changed from Rotate to ST Rotate in 1.2.2



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 198 / 791

See Also

ST_Affine, ST_RotateX, ST_RotateY, ST_RotateZ

8.6.20 ST RotateX

ST_RotateX — Rotate a geometry rotRadians about the X axis.

Synopsis

geometry ST_RotateX(geometry geomA, float rotRadians);

Description

Rotate a geometry geomA - rotRadians about the X axis.



Note

 $ST_RotateX(geomA, rotRadians)$ is short-hand for $ST_Affine(geomA, 1, 0, 0, 0, cos(rotRadians), -sin(rotRadians), 0, sin(rotRadians), cos(rotRadians), 0, 0, 0).$

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.

Availability: 1.1.2. Name changed from RotateX to ST_RotateX in 1.2.2



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 199 / 791

See Also

ST_Affine, ST_RotateY, ST_RotateZ

8.6.21 ST_RotateY

ST_RotateY — Rotate a geometry rotRadians about the Y axis.

Synopsis

geometry ST_RotateY(geometry geomA, float rotRadians);

Description

Rotate a geometry geomA - rotRadians about the y axis.



Note

ST_RotateY(geomA, rotRadians) is short-hand for ST_Affine(geomA, cos(rotRadians), 0, sin(rotRadians), 0, 1, 0, -sin(rotRadians), 0, cos(rotRadians), 0, 0, 0).

Availability: 1.1.2. Name changed from RotateY to ST_RotateY in 1.2.2

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

```
--Rotate a line 90 degrees along y-axis

SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_RotateY(ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 3, 1 1 1)'), pi()/2));

st_asewkt
------LINESTRING(3 2 -1,1 1 -1)
```

See Also

ST_Affine, ST_RotateX, ST_RotateZ

8.6.22 ST_RotateZ

ST_RotateZ — Rotate a geometry rotRadians about the Z axis.

Synopsis

geometry ST_RotateZ(geometry geomA, float rotRadians);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 200 / 791

Description

Rotate a geometry geomA - rotRadians about the Z axis.



Note

This is a synonym for ST_Rotate



Note

```
ST_RotateZ(geomA, rotRadians) is short-hand for SELECT ST_Affine(geomA, cos(rotRadians), -sin(rotRadians), 0, sin(rotRadians), cos(rotRadians), 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0).
```

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.

Availability: 1.1.2. Name changed from RotateZ to ST_RotateZ in 1.2.2



Note

Prior to 1.3.4, this function crashes if used with geometries that contain CURVES. This is fixed in 1.3.4+



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 201 / 791

See Also

ST_Affine, ST_RotateX, ST_RotateY

8.6.23 ST_Scale

ST_Scale — Scale a geometry by given factors.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_Scale(geometry geomA, float XFactor, float YFactor, float ZFactor); geometry ST_Scale(geometry geomA, float XFactor, float YFactor); geometry ST_Scale(geometry geom, geometry factor);
```

Description

Scales the geometry to a new size by multiplying the ordinates with the corresponding factor parameters.

The version taking a geometry as the factor parameter allows passing a 2d, 3dm, 3dz or 4d point to set scaling factor for all supported dimensions. Missing dimensions in the factor point are equivalent to no scaling the corresponding dimension.



Note

Prior to 1.3.4, this function crashes if used with geometries that contain CURVES. This is fixed in 1.3.4+

Availability: 1.1.0.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.2.0 support for scaling all dimension (geometry parameter) was introduced.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).



This function supports M coordinates.

```
--Version 1: scale X, Y, Z

SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_Scale(ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 3, 1 1 1)'), 0.5, 0.75, 0.8));

st_asewkt
-------
LINESTRING(0.5 1.5 2.4,0.5 0.75 0.8)

--Version 2: Scale X Y

SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_Scale(ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 3, 1 1 1)'), 0.5, 0.75));
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 202 / 791

See Also

ST_Affine, ST_TransScale

8.6.24 ST_Segmentize

ST_Segmentize — Return a modified geometry/geography having no segment longer than the given distance.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_Segmentize**(geometry geom, float max_segment_length); geography **ST_Segmentize**(geography geog, float max_segment_length);

Description

Returns a modified geometry having no segment longer than the given max_segment_length. Distance computation is performed in 2d only. For geometry, length units are in units of spatial reference. For geography, units are in meters.

Availability: 1.2.2

Enhanced: 2.3.0 Segmentize geography now uses equal length segments

Enhanced: 2.1.0 support for geography was introduced.

Changed: 2.1.0 As a result of the introduction of geography support: The construct SELECT ST_Segmentize('LINEST RING(1 2, 3 4)',0.5); will result in ambiguous function error. You need to have properly typed object e.g. a geometry/geography column, use ST_GeomFromText, ST_GeogFromText or SELECT ST_Segmentize('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4)'::geometry,0.5);



Note

This will only increase segments. It will not lengthen segments shorter than max length

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 203 / 791

See Also

ST_LineSubstring

8.6.25 ST_SetPoint

ST_SetPoint — Replace point of a linestring with a given point.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_SetPoint**(geometry linestring, integer zerobasedposition, geometry point);

Description

Replace point N of linestring with given point. Index is 0-based. Negative index are counted backwards, so that -1 is last point. This is especially useful in triggers when trying to maintain relationship of joints when one vertex moves.

Availability: 1.1.0

Updated 2.3.0: negative indexing



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 204 / 791

See Also

ST AddPoint, ST NPoints, ST NumPoints, ST PointN, ST RemovePoint

8.6.26 ST_SetSRID

ST_SetSRID — Set the SRID on a geometry to a particular integer value.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_SetSRID**(geometry geom, integer srid);

Description

Sets the SRID on a geometry to a particular integer value. Useful in constructing bounding boxes for queries.



Note

This function does not transform the geometry coordinates in any way - it simply sets the meta data defining the spatial reference system the geometry is assumed to be in. Use ST_Transform if you want to transform the geometry into a new projection.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

-- Mark a point as WGS 84 long lat --

```
SELECT ST_SetSRID(ST_Point(-123.365556, 48.428611),4326) As wgs84long_lat;
-- the ewkt representation (wrap with ST_AsEWKT) -
SRID=4326;POINT(-123.365556 48.428611)
```

-- Mark a point as WGS 84 long lat and then transform to web mercator (Spherical Mercator) --

```
SELECT ST_Transform(ST_SetSRID(ST_Point(-123.365556, 48.428611), 4326), 3785) As spere_merc;
-- the ewkt representation (wrap with ST_AsEWKT) -
SRID=3785; POINT(-13732990.8753491 6178458.96425423)
```

See Also

Section 4.3.1, ST_AsEWKT, ST_Point, ST_SRID, ST_Transform, UpdateGeometrySRID

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 205 / 791

8.6.27 ST_SnapToGrid

ST_SnapToGrid — Snap all points of the input geometry to a regular grid.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_SnapToGrid(geometry geomA, float originX, float originY, float sizeX, float sizeY); geometry ST_SnapToGrid(geometry geomA, float sizeX, float sizeY); geometry ST_SnapToGrid(geometry geomA, float size); geometry ST_SnapToGrid(geometry geomA, geometry pointOrigin, float sizeX, float sizeY, float sizeZ, float sizeM);
```

Description

Variant 1,2,3: Snap all points of the input geometry to the grid defined by its origin and cell size. Remove consecutive points falling on the same cell, eventually returning NULL if output points are not enough to define a geometry of the given type. Collapsed geometries in a collection are stripped from it. Useful for reducing precision.

Variant 4: Introduced 1.1.0 - Snap all points of the input geometry to the grid defined by its origin (the second argument, must be a point) and cell sizes. Specify 0 as size for any dimension you don't want to snap to a grid.



Note

The returned geometry might lose its simplicity (see ST_lsSimple).



Note

Before release 1.1.0 this function always returned a 2d geometry. Starting at 1.1.0 the returned geometry will have same dimensionality as the input one with higher dimension values untouched. Use the version taking a second geometry argument to define all grid dimensions.

Availability: 1.0.0RC1

Availability: 1.1.0 - Z and M support



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 206 / 791

See Also

ST_Snap, ST_AsEWKT, ST_AsText, ST_GeomFromText, ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_Simplify

8.6.28 ST_Snap

ST_Snap — Snap segments and vertices of input geometry to vertices of a reference geometry.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_Snap**(geometry input, geometry reference, float tolerance);

Description

Snaps the vertices and segments of a geometry another Geometry's vertices. A snap distance tolerance is used to control where snapping is performed. The result geometry is the input geometry with the vertices snapped. If no snapping occurs then the input geometry is returned unchanged.

Snapping one geometry to another can improve robustness for overlay operations by eliminating nearly-coincident edges (which cause problems during noding and intersection calculation).

Too much snapping can result in invalid topology being created, so the number and location of snapped vertices is decided using heuristics to determine when it is safe to snap. This can result in some potential snaps being omitted, however.

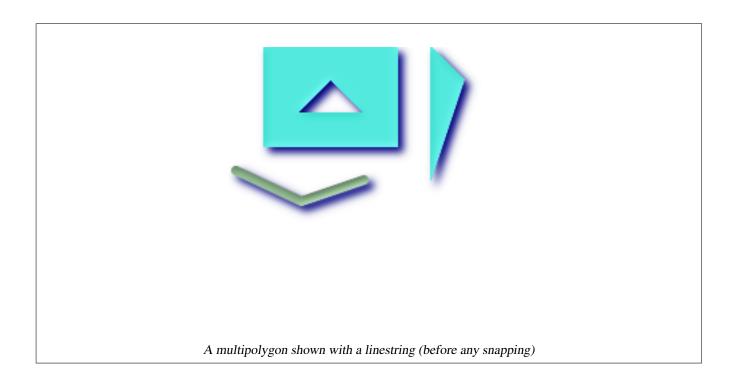


Note

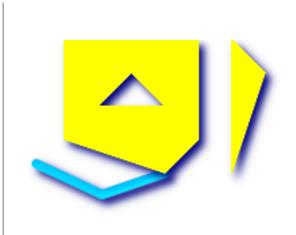
The returned geometry might lose its simplicity (see ST_IsSimple) and validity (see ST_IsValid).

Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 207 / 791



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 208 / 791



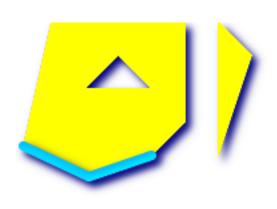
A multipolygon snapped to linestring to tolerance: 1.01 of distance. The new multipolygon is shown with reference linestring

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Snap(poly,line, ←
    ST_Distance(poly,line)*1.01)) AS polysnapped
FROM (SELECT

ST_GeomFromText('MULTIPOLYGON(
        ((26 125, 26 200, 126 200, 126 125, ←
        26 125 ),
        ( 51 150, 101 150, 76 175, 51 150 ) ←
        ),
        (( 151 100, 151 200, 176 175, 151 ←
        100 )))') As poly,
        ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING (5 ←
        107, 54 84, 101 100)') As line
        ) As foo;
```

polysnapped

MULTIPOLYGON(((26 125,26 200,126 200,126 ↔ 125,101 100,26 125),
(51 150,101 150,76 175,51 150)),((151 ↔ 100,151 200,176 175,151 100)))



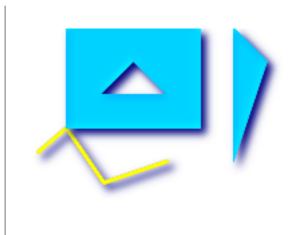
A multipolygon snapped to linestring to tolerance: 1.25 of distance. The new multipolygon is shown with reference linestring

```
SELECT ST_AsText(
    ST_Snap(poly,line, ST_Distance(poly, ↔ ped line)*1.25)
) AS polysnapped
FROM (SELECT
    ST_GeomFromText('MULTIPOLYGON(
        (( 26 125, 26 200, 126 200, 126 125, ↔ 26 125 ),
            ( 51 150, 101 150, 76 175, 51 150 ) ↔ ),
            (( 151 100, 151 200, 176 175, 151 ↔ 100 )))') As poly,
            ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING (5 ↔ 107, 54 84, 101 100)') As line
            ) As foo;
```

MULTIPOLYGON(((5 107,26 200,126 200,126 ↔ 125,101 100,54 84,5 107), ((151 150,101 150,76 175,51 150)),((151 ↔ 100,151 200,176 175,151 100)))

→ polysnapped

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 209 / 791

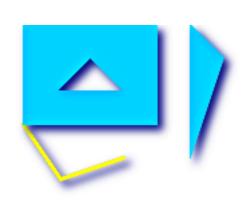


The linestring snapped to the original multipolygon at tolerance 1.01 of distance. The new linestring is shown with reference multipolygon

```
SELECT ST_AsText(
   ST_Snap(line, poly, ST_Distance(poly, ←
        line)*1.01)
) AS linesnapped
FROM (SELECT
   ST_GeomFromText('MULTIPOLYGON(
        ((26 125, 26 200, 126 200, 126 125, ←
        26 125),
        (51 150, 101 150, 76 175, 51 150 )) ←
        ((151 100, 151 200, 176 175, 151 ←
        100)))') As poly,
        ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING (5 ←
        107, 54 84, 101 100)') As line
        ) As foo;
```

linesnapped

LINESTRING(5 107,26 125,54 84,101 100)



The linestring snapped to the original multipolygon at tolerance 1.25 of distance. The new linestring is shown with reference multipolygon

```
SELECT ST_AsText(
 ST_Snap(line, poly, ST_Distance(poly, \leftarrow
     line) *1.25)
  ) AS linesnapped
FROM (SELECT
  ST_GeomFromText('MULTIPOLYGON(
      (( 26 125, 26 200, 126 200, 126 125, \leftarrow
      26 125 ),
       (51 150, 101 150, 76 175, 51 150 )) \leftrightarrow
      ((151 100, 151 200, 176 175, 151 \leftrightarrow
     100 )))') As poly,
       ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING (5 \leftrightarrow
     107, 54 84, 101 100)') As line
         ) As foo;
                linesnapped
LINESTRING(26 125,54 84,101 100)
```

See Also

ST_SnapToGrid

8.6.29 ST Transform

ST_Transform — Return a new geometry with its coordinates transformed to a different spatial reference.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_Transform(geometry g1, integer srid); geometry ST_Transform(geometry geom, text to_proj);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 210 / 791

geometry **ST_Transform**(geometry geom, text from_proj, text to_proj); geometry **ST_Transform**(geometry geom, text from_proj, integer to_srid);

Description

Returns a new geometry with its coordinates transformed to a different spatial reference system. The destination spatial reference to_srid may be identified by a valid SRID integer parameter (i.e. it must exist in the spatial_ref_sys table). Alternatively, a spatial reference defined as a PROJ.4 string can be used for to_proj and/or from_proj, however these methods are not optimized. If the destination spatial reference system is expressed with a PROJ.4 string instead of an SRID, the SRID of the output geometry will be set to zero. With the exception of functions with from_proj, input geometries must have a defined SRID.

ST_Transform is often confused with ST_SetSRID(). ST_Transform actually changes the coordinates of a geometry from one spatial reference system to another, while ST_SetSRID() simply changes the SRID identifier of the geometry.



Note

Requires PostGIS be compiled with Proj support. Use PostGIS_Full_Version to confirm you have proj support compiled in.



Note

If using more than one transformation, it is useful to have a functional index on the commonly used transformations to take advantage of index usage.



Note

Prior to 1.3.4, this function crashes if used with geometries that contain CURVES. This is fixed in 1.3.4+

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.3.0 support for direct PROJ.4 text was introduced.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.6



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

Change Massachusetts state plane US feet geometry to WGS 84 long lat

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((743238 2967416,743238 2967450, 743265 2967450,743265.625 2967416,743238 2967416))',2249),4326)) As wgs_geom;

wgs_geom

POLYGON((-71.1776848522251 42.3902896512902,-71.1776843766326 42.3903829478009, -71.1775844305465 42.3903826677917,-71.1775825927231 42.3902893647987,-71.177684 8522251 42.3902896512902));
(1 row)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 211 / 791

```
--3D Circular String example

SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=2249;CIRCULARSTRING(743238 2967416 ↔
1,743238 2967450 2,743265 2967450 3,743265.625 2967416 3,743238 2967416 4)'),4326));

st_asewkt

SRID=4326;CIRCULARSTRING(-71.1776848522251 42.3902896512902 1,-71.1776843766326 ↔
42.3903829478009 2,
-71.1775844305465 42.3903826677917 3,
-71.1775825927231 42.3902893647987 3,-71.1776848522251 42.3902896512902 4)
```

Example of creating a partial functional index. For tables where you are not sure all the geometries will be filled in, its best to use a partial index that leaves out null geometries which will both conserve space and make your index smaller and more efficient.

```
CREATE INDEX idx_the_geom_26986_parcels
ON parcels
USING gist
(ST_Transform(the_geom, 26986))
WHERE the_geom IS NOT NULL;
```

Examples of using PROJ.4 text to transform with custom spatial references.

Configuring transformation behaviour

Sometimes coordinate transformation involving a grid-shift can fail, for example if PROJ.4 has not been built with grid-shift files or the coordinate does not lie within the range for which the grid shift is defined. By default, PostGIS will throw an error if a grid shift file is not present, but this behaviour can be configured on a per-SRID basis either by testing different to_proj values of PROJ.4 text, or altering the proj4text value within the spatial_ref_sys table.

For example, the proj4text parameter +datum=NAD87 is a shorthand form for the following +nadgrids parameter:

```
+nadgrids=@conus,@alaska,@ntv2_0.gsb,@ntv1_can.dat
```

The @ prefix means no error is reported if the files are not present, but if the end of the list is reached with no file having been appropriate (ie. found and overlapping) then an error is issued.

If, conversely, you wanted to ensure that at least the standard files were present, but that if all files were scanned without a hit a null transformation is applied you could use:

```
+nadgrids=@conus,@alaska,@ntv2_0.gsb,@ntv1_can.dat,null
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 212 / 791

The null grid shift file is a valid grid shift file covering the whole world and applying no shift. So for a complete example, if you wanted to alter PostGIS so that transformations to SRID 4267 that didn't lie within the correct range did not throw an ERROR, you would use the following:

```
UPDATE spatial_ref_sys SET proj4text = '+proj=longlat +ellps=clrk66 +nadgrids=@conus, ← @alaska,@ntv2_0.gsb,@ntv1_can.dat,null +no_defs' WHERE srid = 4267;
```

See Also

PostGIS_Full_Version, ST_AsText, ST_SetSRID, UpdateGeometrySRID

8.6.30 ST_Translate

ST_Translate — Translate a geometry by given offsets.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_Translate(geometry g1, float deltax, float deltay); geometry ST_Translate(geometry g1, float deltax, float deltay, float deltaz);
```

Description

Returns a new geometry whose coordinates are translated delta x,delta y,delta z units. Units are based on the units defined in spatial reference (SRID) for this geometry.



Note

Prior to 1.3.4, this function crashes if used with geometries that contain CURVES. This is fixed in 1.3.4+

Availability: 1.2.2



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

Move a point 1 degree longitude

Move a linestring 1 degree longitude and 1/2 degree latitude

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 213 / 791

Move a 3d point

```
SELECT ST_AseWKT(ST_Translate(CAST('POINT(0 0 0)' As geometry), 5, 12,3));
st_asewkt
-----
POINT(5 12 3)
```

Move a curve and a point

See Also

ST_Affine, ST_AsText, ST_GeomFromText

8.6.31 ST TransScale

ST_TransScale — Translate a geometry by given factors and offsets.

Synopsis

geometry ST_TransScale(geometry geomA, float deltaX, float deltaY, float XFactor, float YFactor);

Description

Translates the geometry using the deltaX and deltaY args, then scales it using the XFactor, YFactor args, working in 2D only.



Note

ST_TransScale(geomA, deltaX, deltaY, XFactor, YFactor) is short-hand for ST_Affine(geomA, XFactor, 0, 0, 0, YFactor, 0, 0, 1, deltaX*XFactor, deltaY*YFactor, 0).



Note

Prior to 1.3.4, this function crashes if used with geometries that contain CURVES. This is fixed in 1.3.4+

Availability: 1.1.0.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 214 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_Affine, ST_Translate

8.7 Geometry Outputs

8.7.1 ST_AsBinary

ST_AsBinary — Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the geometry/geography without SRID meta data.

Synopsis

```
bytea ST_AsBinary(geometry g1);
bytea ST_AsBinary(geometry g1, text NDR_or_XDR);
bytea ST_AsBinary(geography g1);
bytea ST_AsBinary(geography g1, text NDR_or_XDR);
```

Description

Returns the Well-Known Binary representation of the geometry. There are 2 variants of the function. The first variant takes no endian encoding parameter and defaults to server machine endian. The second variant takes a second argument denoting the encoding - using little-endian ('NDR') or big-endian ('XDR') encoding.

This is useful in binary cursors to pull data out of the database without converting it to a string representation.



Note

The WKB spec does not include the SRID. To get the WKB with SRID format use ST_AsEWKB



Note

ST_AsBinary is the reverse of ST_GeomFromWKB for geometry. Use ST_GeomFromWKB to convert to a postgis geometry from ST_AsBinary representation.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 215 / 791



Note

The default behavior in PostgreSQL 9.0 has been changed to output bytea in hex encoding. ST_AsBinary is the reverse of ST_GeomFromWKB for geometry. If your GUI tools require the old behavior, then SET bytea_output='escape' in your database.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for higher coordinate dimensions was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for specifying endian with geography was introduced.

Availability: 1.5.0 geography support was introduced.

Changed: 2.0.0 Inputs to this function can not be unknown -- must be geometry. Constructs such as ST_AsBinary ('POINT (12)') are no longer valid and you will get an nst_asbinary (unknown) is not unique error. Code like that needs to be changed to ST_AsBinary ('POINT (12)'::geometry); If that is not possible, then install legacy.sql.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.1



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.37



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 216 / 791

See Also

ST_GeomFromWKB, ST_AsEWKB, ST_AsTWKB, ST_AsText,

8.7.2 ST_AsEncodedPolyline

ST_AsEncodedPolyline — Returns an Encoded Polyline from a LineString geometry.

Synopsis

text **ST_AsEncodedPolyline**(geometry geom, integer precision=5);

Description

Returns the geometry as an Encoded Polyline. This is a format very useful if you are using google maps Availability: 2.2.0

Examples

Basic

```
SELECT ST_AsEncodedPolyline(GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4326;LINESTRING(-120.2 38.5,-120.95 ↔ 40.7,-126.453 43.252)'));
--result--
|_p~iF~ps|U_ulLnnqC_mqNvxq`@
```

Use in conjunction with geography linestring and geography segmentize, and put on google maps

```
-- the SQL for Boston to San Francisco, segments every 100 KM

SELECT ST_AsEncodedPolyline(

ST_Segmentize(

ST_GeogFromText('LINESTRING(-71.0519 42.4935,-122.4483 37.64)'),

100000)::geometry) As encodedFlightPath;
```

javascript will look something like this where \$ variable you replace with query result

```
<script type="text/javascript" src="http://maps.googleapis.com/maps/api/js?libraries= \( \to \)
    geometry"></script>
<script type="text/javascript">
    flightPath = new google.maps.Polyline({
        path: google.maps.geometry.encoding.decodePath("$encodedFlightPath"),
        map: map,
        strokeColor: '#0000CC',
        strokeOpacity: 1.0,
        strokeWeight: 4
    });
</script>
```

See Also

ST_LineFromEncodedPolyline, ST_Segmentize

8.7.3 ST_AsEWKB

ST_AsEWKB — Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the geometry with SRID meta data.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 217 / 791

Synopsis

bytea **ST_AsEWKB**(geometry g1); bytea **ST_AsEWKB**(geometry g1, text NDR_or_XDR);

Description

Returns the Well-Known Binary representation of the geometry with SRID metadata. There are 2 variants of the function. The first variant takes no endian encoding parameter and defaults to little endian. The second variant takes a second argument denoting the encoding - using little-endian ('NDR') or big-endian ('XDR') encoding.

This is useful in binary cursors to pull data out of the database without converting it to a string representation.



Note

The WKB spec does not include the SRID. To get the OGC WKB format use ST AsBinary



Note

ST AsEWKB is the reverse of ST GeomFromEWKB. Use ST GeomFromEWKB to convert to a postgis geometry from ST AsEWKB representation.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

```
SELECT ST_AseWKB(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((0 0,0 1,1 1,1 0,0 0))',4326));
      st_asewkb
\001\003\000\000 \346\020\000\000\001\000
\000\000\005\000\000\000
\000\000\000\000\000\000\000
\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000
\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000
\000\000\360?\000\000\000\000\000\000\360?
\000\000\000\000\000\360?\000\000\000\000
\000\360?\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000
\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000
(1 row)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 218 / 791

```
SELECT ST_AseWKB(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((0 0,0 1,1 1,1 0,0 0))',4326), 'XDR');
000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000
\360\000\000\000\000\000\000?\360\000\000\000\000?\360\000\000
\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000
```

See Also

ST_AsBinary, ST_AsEWKT, ST_AsText, ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_SRID

8.7.4 ST ASEWKT

ST_AsEWKT — Return the Well-Known Text (WKT) representation of the geometry with SRID meta data.

Synopsis

```
text ST_AsEWKT(geometry g1);
text ST_AsEWKT(geography g1);
```

Description

Returns the Well-Known Text representation of the geometry prefixed with the SRID.



Note

The WKT spec does not include the SRID. To get the OGC WKT format use ST_AsText

WKT format does not maintain precision so to prevent floating truncation, use ST AsBinary or ST AsEWKB format for transport.



Note

ST AsEWKT is the reverse of ST GeomFromEWKT. Use ST GeomFromEWKT to convert to a postgis geometry from ST AsEWKT representation.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Geography, Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 219 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_AsBinary, ST_AsEWKB, ST_AsText, ST_GeomFromEWKT

8.7.5 ST_AsGeoJSON

ST_AsGeoJSON — Return the geometry as a GeoJSON element.

Synopsis

```
text ST_AsGeoJSON(geometry geom, integer maxdecimaldigits=15, integer options=0); text ST_AsGeoJSON(geography geog, integer maxdecimaldigits=15, integer options=0); text ST_AsGeoJSON(integer gj_version, geometry geom, integer maxdecimaldigits=15, integer options=0); text ST_AsGeoJSON(integer gj_version, geography geog, integer maxdecimaldigits=15, integer options=0);
```

Description

Return the geometry as a Geometry Javascript Object Notation (GeoJSON) element. (Cf GeoJSON specifications 1.0). 2D and 3D Geometries are both supported. GeoJSON only support SFS 1.1 geometry type (no curve support for example).

The gj_version parameter is the major version of the GeoJSON spec. If specified, must be 1. This represents the spec version of GeoJSON.

The third argument may be used to reduce the maximum number of decimal places used in output (defaults to 15).

The last 'options' argument could be used to add Bbox or Crs in GeoJSON output:

- 0: means no option (default value)
- 1: GeoJSON Bbox
- 2: GeoJSON Short CRS (e.g EPSG:4326)
- 4: GeoJSON Long CRS (e.g urn:ogc:def:crs:EPSG::4326)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 220 / 791

Version 1: ST_AsGeoJSON(geom) / precision=15 version=1 options=0

Version 2: ST_AsGeoJSON(geom, precision) / version=1 options=0

Version 3: ST_AsGeoJSON(geom, precision, options) / version=1

Version 4: ST_AsGeoJSON(gj_version, geom) / precision=15 options=0

Version 5: ST_AsGeoJSON(gj_version, geom, precision) /options=0

Version 6: ST_AsGeoJSON(gj_version, geom, precision, options)

Availability: 1.3.4

Availability: 1.5.0 geography support was introduced. Changed: 2.0.0 support default args and named args.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

GeoJSON format is generally more efficient than other formats for use in ajax mapping. One popular javascript client that supports this is Open Layers. Example of its use is OpenLayers GeoJSON Example

8.7.6 ST_AsGML

ST_AsGML — Return the geometry as a GML version 2 or 3 element.

Synopsis

```
text ST_AsGML(geometry geom, integer maxdecimaldigits=15, integer options=0); text ST_AsGML(geography geog, integer maxdecimaldigits=15, integer options=0); text ST_AsGML(integer version, geometry geom, integer maxdecimaldigits=15, integer options=0, text nprefix=null, text id=null); text ST_AsGML(integer version, geography geog, integer maxdecimaldigits=15, integer options=0, text nprefix=null, text
```

Description

id=null);

Return the geometry as a Geography Markup Language (GML) element. The version parameter, if specified, may be either 2 or 3. If no version parameter is specified then the default is assumed to be 2. The precision argument may be used to reduce the maximum number of decimal places (maxdecimaldigits) used in output (defaults to 15).

GML 2 refer to 2.1.2 version, GML 3 to 3.1.1 version

The 'options' argument is a bitfield. It could be used to define CRS output type in GML output, and to declare data as lat/lon:

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 221 / 791

- 0: GML Short CRS (e.g EPSG:4326), default value
- 1: GML Long CRS (e.g urn:ogc:def:crs:EPSG::4326)
- 2: For GML 3 only, remove srsDimension attribute from output.
- 4: For GML 3 only, use <LineString> rather than <Curve> tag for lines.
- 16: Declare that datas are lat/lon (e.g srid=4326). Default is to assume that data are planars. This option is useful for GML 3.1.1 output only, related to axis order. So if you set it, it will swap the coordinates so order is lat lon instead of database lon lat.
- 32: Output the box of the geometry (envelope).

The 'namespace prefix' argument may be used to specify a custom namespace prefix or no prefix (if empty). If null or omitted 'gml' prefix is used

Availability: 1.3.2

Availability: 1.5.0 geography support was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 prefix support was introduced. Option 4 for GML3 was introduced to allow using LineString instead of Curve tag for lines. GML3 Support for Polyhedral surfaces and TINS was introduced. Option 32 was introduced to output the box.

Changed: 2.0.0 use default named args

Enhanced: 2.1.0 id support was introduced, for GML 3.



Note

Only version 3+ of ST_AsGML supports Polyhedral Surfaces and TINS.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples: Version 2

```
SELECT ST_AsGML(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((0 0,0 1,1 1,1 0,0 0))',4326));
st_asgml
------
<gml:Polygon srsName="EPSG:4326"><gml:outerBoundaryIs><gml:LinearRing><gml:coordinates ←
>0,0 0,1 1,1 1,0 0,0</gml:coordinates></gml:LinearRing></gml:outerBoundaryIs></gml: ←
Polygon>
```

Examples: Version 3

```
-- Flip coordinates and output extended EPSG (16 | 1)--

SELECT ST_AsGML(3, ST_GeomFromText('POINT(5.234234233242 6.34534534534)',4326), 5, 17);

st_asgml
------

<gml:Point srsName="urn:ogc:def:crs:EPSG::4326"><gml:pos>6.34535 5.23423</gml:pos></gml ↔
:Point>
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 222 / 791

```
-- Output the envelope (32) --
SELECT ST_AsGML(3, ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4, 10 20)',4326), 5, 32);
   st_asgml
 <gml:Envelope srsName="EPSG:4326">
   <qml:lowerCorner>1 2
    <gml:upperCorner>10 20/gml:upperCorner>
  </gml:Envelope>
-- Output the envelope (32) , reverse (lat lon instead of lon lat) (16), long srs (1)= 32 \mid \leftrightarrow
    16 | 1 = 49 --
SELECT ST_AsGML(3, ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4, 10 20)',4326), 5, 49);
 st_asgml
<gml:Envelope srsName="urn:ogc:def:crs:EPSG::4326">
 <gml:lowerCorner>2 1/gml:lowerCorner>
 <gml:upperCorner>20 10/gml:upperCorner>
</qml:Envelope>
-- Polyhedral Example --
SELECT ST_ASGML(3, ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYHEDRALSURFACE( ((0 0 0, 0 0 1, 0 1 1, 0 1 0, 0 0 0) \leftrightarrow
((0 0 0, 0 1 0, 1 1 0, 1 0 0, 0 0 0)), ((0 0 0, 1 0 0, 1 0 1, 0 0 1, 0 0 0)),
((1 1 0, 1 1 1, 1 0 1, 1 0 0, 1 1 0)),
((0 1 0, 0 1 1, 1 1 1, 1 1 0, 0 1 0)), ((0 0 1, 1 0 1, 1 1 1, 0 1 1, 0 0 1)) )'));
 st_asgml
<qml:PolyhedralSurface>
<qml:polygonPatches>
  <gml:PolygonPatch>
   <gml:exterior>
        <gml:LinearRing>
           <gml:posList srsDimension="3">0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 0 0/gml:posList>
        </gml:LinearRing>
   </gml:exterior>
  </gml:PolygonPatch>
  <gml:PolygonPatch>
   <qml:exterior>
        <qml:LinearRing>
           <gml:posList srsDimension="3">0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 0/gml:posList>
        </gml:LinearRing>
   </gml:exterior>
   </gml:PolygonPatch>
   <gml:PolygonPatch>
   <gml:exterior>
        <gml:LinearRing>
           <gml:posList srsDimension="3">>0 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0/gml:posList>
        </gml:LinearRing>
   </gml:exterior>
   </gml:PolygonPatch>
   <gml:PolygonPatch>
   <gml:exterior>
        <gml:LinearRing>
           <gml:posList srsDimension="3">1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 0/gml:posList>
        </gml:LinearRing>
   </gml:exterior>
  </gml:PolygonPatch>
   <gml:PolygonPatch>
    <aml:exterior>
        <qml:LinearRing>
           <gml:posList srsDimension="3">0 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 0/gml:posList>
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 223 / 791

See Also

ST_GeomFromGML

8.7.7 ST_AsHEXEWKB

ST_AsHEXEWKB — Returns a Geometry in HEXEWKB format (as text) using either little-endian (NDR) or big-endian (XDR) encoding.

Synopsis

```
text ST_AsHEXEWKB(geometry g1, text NDRorXDR); text ST_AsHEXEWKB(geometry g1);
```

Description

Returns a Geometry in HEXEWKB format (as text) using either little-endian (NDR) or big-endian (XDR) encoding. If no encoding is specified, then NDR is used.



Note

Availability: 1.2.2



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 224 / 791

8.7.8 ST_AsKML

ST_AsKML — Return the geometry as a KML element. Several variants. Default version=2, default precision=15

Synopsis

text **ST_AsKML**(geometry geom, integer maxdecimaldigits=15);

text **ST_AsKML**(geography geog, integer maxdecimaldigits=15);

text ST_AsKML(integer version, geometry geom, integer maxdecimaldigits=15, text nprefix=NULL);

text **ST_AsKML**(integer version, geography geog, integer maxdecimaldigits=15, text nprefix=NULL);

Description

Return the geometry as a Keyhole Markup Language (KML) element. There are several variants of this function. maximum number of decimal places used in output (defaults to 15), version default to 2 and default namespace is no prefix.

Version 1: ST_AsKML(geom_or_geog, maxdecimaldigits) / version=2 / maxdecimaldigits=15

Version 2: ST_AsKML(version, geom_or_geog, maxdecimaldigits, nprefix) maxdecimaldigits=15 / nprefix=NULL



Note

Requires PostGIS be compiled with Proj support. Use PostGIS_Full_Version to confirm you have proj support compiled in.



Note

Availability: 1.2.2 - later variants that include version param came in 1.3.2



Note

Enhanced: 2.0.0 - Add prefix namespace. Default is no prefix



Note

Changed: 2.0.0 - uses default args and supports named args



Note

AsKML output will not work with geometries that do not have an SRID



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 225 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AskML(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((0 0,0 1,1 1,1 0,0 0))',4326));

st_askml
------
<Polygon><outerBoundaryIs><LinearRing><coordinates>0,0 0,1 1,1 1,0 0,0</coordinates></ 
LinearRing></outerBoundaryIs></Polygon>

--3d linestring
SELECT ST_AskML('SRID=4326;LINESTRING(1 2 3, 4 5 6)');
<LineString><coordinates>1,2,3 4,5,6</coordinates></LineString>
```

See Also

ST_AsSVG, ST_AsGML

8.7.9 ST_AsLatLonText

ST_AsLatLonText — Return the Degrees, Minutes, Seconds representation of the given point.

Synopsis

text ST_AsLatLonText(geometry pt, text format=");

Description

Returns the Degrees, Minutes, Seconds representation of the point.



Note

It is assumed the point is in a lat/lon projection. The X (lon) and Y (lat) coordinates are normalized in the output to the "normal" range (-180 to +180 for lon, -90 to +90 for lat).

The text parameter is a format string containing the format for the resulting text, similar to a date format string. Valid tokens are "D" for degrees, "M" for minutes, "S" for seconds, and "C" for cardinal direction (NSEW). DMS tokens may be repeated to indicate desired width and precision ("SSS.SSSS" means " 1.0023").

"M", "S", and "C" are optional. If "C" is omitted, degrees are shown with a "-" sign if south or west. If "S" is omitted, minutes will be shown as decimal with as many digits of precision as you specify. If "M" is also omitted, degrees are shown as decimal with as many digits precision as you specify.

If the format string is omitted (or zero-length) a default format will be used.

Availability: 2.0

Examples

Default format.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 226 / 791

Providing a format (same as the default).

```
SELECT (ST_AsLatLonText('POINT (-3.2342342 -2.32498)', 'D\textdegree{}M''S.SSS"C'));
    st_aslatlontext
------
2\textdegree{}19'29.928"S 3\textdegree{}14'3.243"W
```

Characters other than D, M, S, C and . are just passed through.

```
SELECT (ST_AsLatLonText('POINT (-3.2342342 -2.32498)', 'D degrees, M minutes, S seconds to ← the C'));

st_aslatlontext

2 degrees, 19 minutes, 30 seconds to the S 3 degrees, 14 minutes, 3 seconds to the W
```

Signed degrees instead of cardinal directions.

Decimal degrees.

Excessively large values are normalized.

8.7.10 ST_AsSVG

ST_AsSVG — Returns a Geometry in SVG path data given a geometry or geography object.

Synopsis

```
text ST_AsSVG(geometry geom, integer rel=0, integer maxdecimaldigits=15); text ST_AsSVG(geography geog, integer rel=0, integer maxdecimaldigits=15);
```

Description

Return the geometry as Scalar Vector Graphics (SVG) path data. Use 1 as second argument to have the path data implemented in terms of relative moves, the default (or 0) uses absolute moves. Third argument may be used to reduce the maximum number of decimal digits used in output (defaults to 15). Point geometries will be rendered as cx/cy when 'rel' arg is 0, x/y when 'rel' is 1. Multipoint geometries are delimited by commas (","), GeometryCollection geometries are delimited by semicolons (";").



Note

Availability: 1.2.2. Availability: 1.4.0 Changed in PostGIS 1.4.0 to include L command in absolute path to conform to http://www.w3.org/TR/SVG/paths.html#PathDataBNF

Changed: 2.0.0 to use default args and support named args

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 227 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AssVG(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((0 0,0 1,1 1,1 0,0 0))',4326));

st_assvg
-----
M 0 0 L 0 -1 1 -1 1 0 Z
```

8.7.11 ST_AsText

ST_AsText — Return the Well-Known Text (WKT) representation of the geometry/geography without SRID metadata.

Synopsis

```
text ST_AsText(geometry g1);
text ST_AsText(geography g1);
```

Description

Returns the Well-Known Text representation of the geometry/geography.



Note

The WKT spec does not include the SRID. To get the SRID as part of the data, use the non-standard PostGIS ST ASEWKT

WKT format does not maintain precision so to prevent floating truncation, use ST_AsBinary or ST_AsEWKB format for transport.



Note

ST_AsText is the reverse of ST_GeomFromText. Use ST_GeomFromText to convert to a postgis geometry from ST_AsText representation.

Availability: 1.5 - support for geography was introduced.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.1



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.25



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 228 / 791

```
st_astext
------
POLYGON((0 0,0 1,1 1,1 0,0 0))
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_AsBinary, ST_AsEWKB, ST_AsEWKT, ST_GeomFromText

8.7.12 ST AsTWKB

ST_AsTWKB — Returns the geometry as TWKB, aka "Tiny Well-Known Binary"

Synopsis

bytea **ST_AsTWKB**(geometry g1, integer decimaldigits_xy=0, integer decimaldigits_z=0, integer decimaldigits_m=0, boolean include_sizes=false, boolean include_bounding boxes=false);

bytea **ST_AsTWKB**(geometry[] geometries, bigint[] unique_ids, integer decimaldigits_xy=0, integer decimaldigits_z=0, integer decimaldigits_m=0, boolean include_sizes=false, boolean include_bounding_boxes=false);

Description

Returns the geometry in TWKB (Tiny Well-Known Binary) format. TWKB is a compressed binary format with a focus on minimizing the size of the output.

The decimal digits parameters control how much precision is stored in the output. By default, values are rounded to the nearest unit before encoding. If you want to transfer more precision, increase the number. For example, a value of 1 implies that the first digit to the right of the decimal point will be preserved.

The sizes and bounding boxes parameters control whether optional information about the encoded length of the object and the bounds of the object are included in the output. By default they are not. Do not turn them on unless your client software has a use for them, as they just use up space (and saving space is the point of TWKB).

The array-input form of the function is used to convert a collection of geometries and unique identifiers into a TWKB collection that preserves the identifiers. This is useful for clients that expect to unpack a collection and then access further information about the objects inside. You can create the arrays using the array_agg function. The other parameters operate the same as for the simple form of the function.



Note

The format specification is available online at https://github.com/TWKB/Specification, and code for building a JavaScript client can be found at https://github.com/TWKB/twkb.js.

Availability: 2.2.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 229 / 791

To create an aggregate TWKB object including identifiers aggregate the desired geometries and objects first, using "array_agg()", then call the appropriate TWKB function.

See Also

ST_AsBinary, ST_AsEWKB, ST_AsEWKT, ST_GeomFromText

8.7.13 ST_AsX3D

ST_AsX3D — Returns a Geometry in X3D xml node element format: ISO-IEC-19776-1.2-X3DEncodings-XML

Synopsis

text **ST_AsX3D**(geometry g1, integer maxdecimaldigits=15, integer options=0);

Description

Returns a geometry as an X3D xml formatted node element http://www.web3d.org/standards/number/19776-1. If maxdecima ldigits (precision) is not specified then defaults to 15.

Note



There are various options for translating PostGIS geometries to X3D since X3D geometry types don't map directly to PostGIS geometry types and some newer X3D types that might be better mappings we have avoided since most rendering tools don't currently support them. These are the mappings we have settled on. Feel free to post a bug ticket if you have thoughts on the idea or ways we can allow people to denote their preferred mappings.

Below is how we currently map PostGIS 2D/3D types to X3D types

The 'options' argument is a bitfield. For PostGIS 2.2+, this is used to denote whether to represent coordinates with X3D GeoCoordinates Geospatial node and also whether to flip the x/y axis. By default, ST_AsX3D outputs in database form (long,lat or X,Y), but X3D default of lat/lon, y/x may be preferred.

- 0: X/Y in database order (e.g. long/lat = X,Y is standard database order), default value, and non-spatial coordinates (just regular old Coordinate tag).
- 1: Flip X and Y. If used in conjunction with the GeoCoordinate option switch, then output will be default "latitude_first" and coordinates will be flipped as well.
- 2: Output coordinates in GeoSpatial GeoCoordinates. This option will throw an error if geometries are not in WGS 84 long lat (srid: 4326). This is currently the only GeoCoordinate type supported. Refer to X3D specs specifying a spatial reference system. Default output will be GeoCoordinate geoSystem='"GD" "WE" "longitude_first"'. If you prefer the X3D default of GeoCoordinate geoSystem='"GD" "WE" "latitude_first"' use (2 + 1) = 3

PostGIS Type	2D X3D Type	3D X3D Type
LINESTRING	not yet implemented - will be PolyLine2D	LineSet
MULTILINESTRING	not yet implemented - will be PolyLine2D	IndexedLineSet
MULTIPOINT	Polypoint2D	PointSet

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 230 / 791

PostGIS Type	2D X3D Type	3D X3D Type
POINT	outputs the space delimited	outputs the space delimited
	coordinates	coordinates
(MULTI) POLYGON,	Invalid X3D markup	IndexedFaceSet (inner rings currently
POLYHEDRALSURFACE		output as another faceset)
TIN	TriangleSet2D (Not Yet Implemented)	IndexedTriangleSet



Note

2D geometry support not yet complete. Inner rings currently just drawn as separate polygons. We are working on these

Lots of advancements happening in 3D space particularly with X3D Integration with HTML5

There is also a nice open source X3D viewer you can use to view rendered geometries. Free Wrl http://freewrl.sourceforge.net/ binaries available for Mac, Linux, and Windows. Use the FreeWRL_Launcher packaged to view the geometries.

Also check out PostGIS minimalist X3D viewer that utilizes this function and x3dDom html/js open source toolkit.

Availability: 2.0.0: ISO-IEC-19776-1.2-X3DEncodings-XML

Enhanced: 2.2.0: Support for GeoCoordinates and axis (x/y, long/lat) flipping. Look at options for details.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Example: Create a fully functional X3D document - This will generate a cube that is viewable in FreeWrl and other X3D viewers.

```
SELECT '<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE X3D PUBLIC "ISO//Web3D//DTD X3D 3.0//EN" "http://www.web3d.org/specifications/x3d \leftarrow
    -3.0.dtd">
<X3D>
  <Scene>
    <Transform>
      <Shape>
       <Appearance>
             <Material emissiveColor=''0 0 1''/>
       </Appearance> ' ||
       ST_AsX3D( ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYHEDRALSURFACE( ((0 0 0, 0 0 1, 0 1 1, 0 1 0, 0 0 0)),
((0 0 0, 0 1 0, 1 1 0, 1 0 0, 0 0 0)), ((0 0 0, 1 0 0, 1 0 1, 0 0 1, 0 0 0)),
((1 \ 1 \ 0, \ 1 \ 1 \ 1, \ 1 \ 0 \ 1, \ 1 \ 0 \ 0, \ 1 \ 1 \ 0)),
((0 1 0, 0 1 1, 1 1 1, 1 1 0, 0 1 0)), ((0 0 1, 1 0 1, 1 1 1, 0 1 1, 0 0 1)) )')) ||
      '</Shape>
    </Transform>
  </Scene>
</X3D>' As x3ddoc;
    x3ddoc
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE X3D PUBLIC "ISO//Web3D//DTD X3D 3.0//EN" "http://www.web3d.org/specifications/x3d \leftrightarrow
    -3.0.dtd">
<X3D>
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 231 / 791

Example: An Octagon elevated 3 Units and decimal precision of 6

Example: TIN

Example: Closed multilinestring (the boundary of a polygon with holes)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 232 / 791

```
SELECT ST_AsX3D(

ST_GeomFromEWKT('MULTILINESTRING((20 0 10,16 -12 10,0 -16 10,-12 -12 10,-20 0 ↔

10,-12 16 10,0 24 10,16 16 10,20 0 10),

(12 0 10,8 8 10,0 12 10,-8 8 10,-8 0 10,-8 -4 10,0 -8 10,8 -4 10,12 0 10))')

As x3dfrag;

x3dfrag

------

<IndexedLineSet coordIndex='0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 0 -1 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 8'>

<Coordinate point='20 0 10 16 -12 10 0 -16 10 -12 -12 10 -20 0 10 -12 16 10 0 24 10 16 ↔

16 10 12 0 10 8 8 10 0 12 10 -8 8 10 -8 0 10 -8 -4 10 0 -8 10 8 -4 10 '/>

</IndexedLineSet>
```

8.7.14 ST_GeoHash

ST_GeoHash — Return a GeoHash representation of the geometry.

Synopsis

text **ST_GeoHash**(geometry geom, integer maxchars=full_precision_of_point);

Description

Return a GeoHash representation (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geohash) of the geometry. A GeoHash encodes a point into a text form that is sortable and searchable based on prefixing. A shorter GeoHash is a less precise representation of a point. It can also be thought of as a box, that contains the actual point.

If no maxchars is specified ST_GeoHash returns a GeoHash based on full precision of the input geometry type. Points return a GeoHash with 20 characters of precision (about enough to hold the full double precision of the input). Other types return a GeoHash with a variable amount of precision, based on the size of the feature. Larger features are represented with less precision, smaller features with more precision. The idea is that the box implied by the GeoHash will always contain the input feature.

If maxchars is specified ST_GeoHash returns a GeoHash with at most that many characters so a possibly lower precision representation of the input geometry. For non-points, the starting point of the calculation is the center of the bounding box of the geometry.

Availability: 1.4.0



Note

ST_GeoHash will not work with geometries that are not in geographic (lon/lat) coordinates.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 233 / 791

```
st_geohash
-----c0w3h
```

See Also

ST_GeomFromGeoHash

8.8 Operators

8.8.1 &&

&& — Returns TRUE if A's 2D bounding box intersects B's 2D bounding box.

Synopsis

```
boolean &&( geometry A , geometry B );
boolean &&( geography A , geography B );
```

Description

The && operator returns TRUE if the 2D bounding box of geometry A intersects the 2D bounding box of geometry B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.

Availability: 1.5.0 support for geography was introduced.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 234 / 791

See Also

```
|&>, &>, &<|, &<, ~, @
```

8.8.2 &&(geometry,box2df)

&&(geometry,box2df) — Returns TRUE if a geometry's (cached) 2D bounding box intersects a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).

Synopsis

boolean &&(geometry A, box2df B);

Description

The && operator returns TRUE if the cached 2D bounding box of geometry A intersects the 2D bounding box B, using float precision. This means that if B is a (double precision) box2d, it will be internally converted to a float precision 2D bounding box (BOX2DF)



Note

This operand is intended to be used internally by BRIN indexes, more than by users.

Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_MakePoint(1,1) && ST_MakeBox2D(ST_MakePoint(0,0), ST_MakePoint(2,2)) AS overlaps;

overlaps

t
(1 row)
```

See Also

&&(box2df,geometry), &&(box2df,box2df), \sim (geometry,box2df), \sim (box2df,geometry), \sim (box2df,box2df), @(geometry,box2df), @(geometry,box2df), \sim (box2df,geometry), \sim (box2df,box2df)

8.8.3 &&(box2df,geometry)

&&(box2df,geometry) — Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) intersects a geometry's (cached) 2D bounding box.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 235 / 791

Synopsis

boolean &&(box2df A, geometry B);

Description

The && operator returns TRUE if the 2D bounding box A intersects the cached 2D bounding box of geometry B, using float precision. This means that if A is a (double precision) box2d, it will be internally converted to a float precision 2D bounding box (BOX2DF)



Note

This operand is intended to be used internally by BRIN indexes, more than by users.

Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_MakeBox2D(ST_MakePoint(0,0), ST_MakePoint(2,2)) && ST_MakePoint(1,1) AS overlaps;

overlaps

t
(1 row)
```

See Also

&&(geometry,box2df), &&(box2df,box2df), ~(geometry,box2df), ~(box2df,geometry), ~(box2df,box2df), @(geometry,box2df), @(box2df,geometry), @(box2df,box2df)

8.8.4 &&(box2df,box2df)

&&(box2df,box2df) — Returns TRUE if two 2D float precision bounding boxes (BOX2DF) intersect each other.

Synopsis

boolean &&(box2df A, box2df B);

Description

The && operator returns TRUE if two 2D bounding boxes A and B intersect each other, using float precision. This means that if A (or B) is a (double precision) box2d, it will be internally converted to a float precision 2D bounding box (BOX2DF)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 236 / 791



Note

This operator is intended to be used internally by BRIN indexes, more than by users.

Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_MakeBox2D(ST_MakePoint(0,0), ST_MakePoint(2,2)) && ST_MakeBox2D(ST_MakePoint(1,1) ←
    , ST_MakePoint(3,3)) AS overlaps;

overlaps
-----
t
(1 row)
```

See Also

&&(geometry,box2df), &&(box2df,geometry), \sim (geometry,box2df), \sim (box2df,geometry), \sim (box2df,box2df), @(geometry,box2df), @(geometry,box2df), \sim (box2df,geometry), \sim (box

8.8.5 &&&

&&& — Returns TRUE if A's n-D bounding box intersects B's n-D bounding box.

Synopsis

boolean &&&(geometry A, geometry B);

Description

The &&& operator returns TRUE if the n-D bounding box of geometry A intersects the n-D bounding box of geometry B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

Availability: 2.0.0



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 237 / 791

Examples: 3D LineStrings

Examples: 3M LineStrings

See Also

&&

8.8.6 &&&(geometry,gidx)

&&&(geometry,gidx) — Returns TRUE if a geometry's (cached) n-D bounding box intersects a n-D float precision bounding box (GIDX).

Synopsis

boolean &&&(geometry A, gidx B);

Description

The &&& operator returns TRUE if the cached n-D bounding box of geometry A intersects the n-D bounding box B, using float precision. This means that if B is a (double precision) box3d, it will be internally converted to a float precision 3D bounding box (GIDX)



Note

This operator is intended to be used internally by BRIN indexes, more than by users.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 238 / 791

Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_MakePoint(1,1,1) &&& ST_3DMakeBox(ST_MakePoint(0,0,0), ST_MakePoint(2,2,2)) AS ← overlaps;

overlaps
-----
t
(1 row)
```

See Also

&&&(gidx,geometry), &&&(gidx,gidx)

8.8.7 &&&(gidx,geometry)

&&&(gidx,geometry) — Returns TRUE if a n-D float precision bounding box (GIDX) intersects a geometry's (cached) n-D bounding box.

Synopsis

boolean &&&(gidx A, geometry B);

Description

The &&& operator returns TRUE if the n-D bounding box A intersects the cached n-D bounding box of geometry B, using float precision. This means that if A is a (double precision) box3d, it will be internally converted to a float precision 3D bounding box (GIDX)



Note

This operator is intended to be used internally by BRIN indexes, more than by users.

Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 239 / 791



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_3DMakeBox(ST_MakePoint(0,0,0), ST_MakePoint(2,2,2)) &&& ST_MakePoint(1,1,1) AS ← overlaps;

overlaps
-----
t
(1 row)
```

See Also

&&&(geometry,gidx), &&&(gidx,gidx)

8.8.8 &&&(gidx,gidx)

&&&(gidx,gidx) — Returns TRUE if two n-D float precision bounding boxes (GIDX) intersect each other.

Synopsis

boolean &&&(gidx A, gidx B);

Description

The &&& operator returns TRUE if two n-D bounding boxes A and B intersect each other, using float precision. This means that if A (or B) is a (double precision) box3d, it will be internally converted to a float precision 3D bounding box (GIDX)



Note

This operator is intended to be used internally by BRIN indexes, more than by users.

Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 240 / 791

Examples

See Also

&&&(geometry,gidx), &&&(gidx,geometry)

8.8.9 &<

&< — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box overlaps or is to the left of B's.

Synopsis

boolean &<(geometry A , geometry B);

Description

The &< operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of geometry A overlaps or is to the left of the bounding box of geometry B, or more accurately, overlaps or is NOT to the right of the bounding box of geometry B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

Examples

See Also

&&, I&>, &>, &<|

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 241 / 791

8.8.10 &<

&< | — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box overlaps or is below B's.

Synopsis

boolean &<I(geometry A , geometry B);

Description

The &<| operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of geometry A overlaps or is below of the bounding box of geometry B, or more accurately, overlaps or is NOT above the bounding box of geometry B.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

Examples

```
SELECT tbl1.column1, tbl2.column1, tbl1.column2 &<| tbl2.column2 AS overbelow
FROM
  ( VALUES
  (1, 'LINESTRING(6 0, 6 4)'::geometry)) AS tbl1,
  ( VALUES
  (2, 'LINESTRING(0 0, 3 3)'::geometry),
  (3, 'LINESTRING(0 1, 0 5)'::geometry),
  (4, 'LINESTRING(1 2, 4 6)'::geometry)) AS tbl2;
column1 | column1 | overbelow
    1 |
            2 | f
              3 | t
    1 |
    1 |
               4 | t
(3 rows)
```

See Also

&&, |&>, &>, &<

8.8.11 &>

&> — Returns TRUE if A' bounding box overlaps or is to the right of B's.

Synopsis

boolean &>(geometry A , geometry B);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 242 / 791

Description

The &> operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of geometry A overlaps or is to the right of the bounding box of geometry B, or more accurately, overlaps or is NOT to the left of the bounding box of geometry B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

Examples

See Also

&&, |&>, &<|, &<

8.8.12 <<

<< — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is strictly to the left of B's.

Synopsis

boolean <<(geometry A , geometry B);</pre>

Description

The << operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of geometry A is strictly to the left of the bounding box of geometry B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 243 / 791

Examples

See Also

```
>>, |>>, <<|
```

8.8.13 <<

<< | — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is strictly below B's.

Synopsis

boolean << I (geometry A, geometry B);

Description

The << | operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of geometry A is strictly below the bounding box of geometry B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 244 / 791

See Also

<<, >>, l>>

8.8.14 =

= — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is the same as B's. Uses double precision bounding box.

Synopsis

```
boolean = ( geometry A , geometry B );
boolean = ( geography A , geography B );
```

Description

The = operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of geometry/geography A is the same as the bounding box of geometry/geography B. PostgreSQL uses the =, <, and > operators defined for geometries to perform internal orderings and comparison of geometries (ie. in a GROUP BY or ORDER BY clause).



Warning

This is cause for a lot of confusion. When you compare geometryA = geometryB it will return true even when the geometries are clearly different IF their bounding boxes are the same. To check for true equality use ST_OrderingEquals or ST_Equals



Caution

This operand will NOT make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Changed: 2.0.0, the bounding box of geometries was changed to use double precision instead of float4 precision of prior. The side effect of this is that in particular points in prior versions that were a little different may have returned true in prior versions and false in 2.0+ since their float4 boxes would be the same but there float8 (double precision), would be different.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 245 / 791

```
LINESTRING(0 0,1 1)
LINESTRING(1 1,0 0)
(2 rows)
-- Note: the GROUP BY uses the "=" to compare for geometry equivalency.
SELECT ST_AsText(column1)
FROM ( VALUES
  ('LINESTRING(0 0, 1 1)'::geometry),
  ('LINESTRING(1 1, 0 0)'::geometry)) AS foo
GROUP BY column1;
   st_astext
LINESTRING(0 0,1 1)
(1 row)
-- In versions prior to 2.0, this used to return true --
SELECT ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1707296.37 4820536.77)') =
 ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1707296.27 4820536.87)') As pt_intersect;
--pt_intersect --
f
```

See Also

ST_Equals, ST_OrderingEquals

8.8.15 >>

>> — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is strictly to the right of B's.

Synopsis

boolean >>(geometry A , geometry B);

Description

The >> operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of geometry A is strictly to the right of the bounding box of geometry B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

```
SELECT tbl1.column1, tbl2.column1, tbl1.column2 >> tbl2.column2 AS right
FROM
  ( VALUES
    (1, 'LINESTRING (2 3, 5 6)'::geometry)) AS tbl1,
    ( VALUES
    (2, 'LINESTRING (1 4, 1 7)'::geometry),
    (3, 'LINESTRING (6 1, 6 5)'::geometry),
    (4, 'LINESTRING (0 0, 4 3)'::geometry)) AS tbl2;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 246 / 791

See Also

<<, |>>, <<|

8.8.16 @

@ — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is contained by B's.

Synopsis

boolean @(geometry A , geometry B);

Description

The @ operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of geometry A is completely contained by the bounding box of geometry B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

Examples

See Also

~, &&

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 247 / 791

8.8.17 @(geometry,box2df)

@(geometry,box2df) — Returns TRUE if a geometry's 2D bounding box is contained into a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).

Synopsis

boolean @(geometry A , box2df B);

Description

The @ operator returns TRUE if the A geometry's 2D bounding box is contained the 2D bounding box B, using float precision. This means that if B is a (double precision) box2d, it will be internally converted to a float precision 2D bounding box (BOX2DF)



Note

This operand is intended to be used internally by BRIN indexes, more than by users.

Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

See Also

&&(geometry,box2df), &&(box2df,geometry), &&(box2df,box2df), ~(geometry,box2df), ~(box2df,geometry), ~(box2df,box2df), @(box2df,geometry), @(box2df,box2df)

8.8.18 @(box2df,geometry)

@(box2df,geometry) — Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) is contained into a geometry's 2D bounding box.

Synopsis

boolean @(box2df A, geometry B);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 248 / 791

Description

The @ operator returns TRUE if the 2D bounding box A is contained into the B geometry's 2D bounding box, using float precision. This means that if B is a (double precision) box2d, it will be internally converted to a float precision 2D bounding box (BOX2DF)



Note

This operand is intended to be used internally by BRIN indexes, more than by users.

Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_MakeBox2D(ST_MakePoint(2,2), ST_MakePoint(3,3)) @ ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText(' ←
        POINT(1 1)'), 10) AS is_contained;

is_contained
-----
t
(1 row)
```

See Also

&&(geometry,box2df), &&(box2df,geometry), &&(box2df,box2df), ~(geometry,box2df), ~(box2df,geometry), ~(box2df,box2df), @(geometry,box2df), @(box2df,box2df)

8.8.19 @(box2df,box2df)

@(box2df,box2df) — Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) is contained into another 2D float precision bounding box.

Synopsis

boolean @(box2df A, box2df B);

Description

The @ operator returns TRUE if the 2D bounding box A is contained into the 2D bounding box B, using float precision. This means that if A (or B) is a (double precision) box2d, it will be internally converted to a float precision 2D bounding box (BOX2DF)



Note

This operand is intended to be used internally by BRIN indexes, more than by users.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 249 / 791

Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

See Also

&&(geometry,box2df), &&(box2df,geometry), &&(box2df,box2df), \sim (geometry,box2df), \sim (box2df,geometry), \sim (box2df,box2df), \sim (geometry,box2df), \sim (box2df,geometry)

8.8.20 |&>

1&> — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box overlaps or is above B's.

Synopsis

boolean **|&>**(geometry A , geometry B);

Description

The |&> operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of geometry A overlaps or is above the bounding box of geometry B, or more accurately, overlaps or is NOT below the bounding box of geometry B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

```
SELECT tbl1.column1, tbl2.column1, tbl1.column2 |&> tbl2.column2 AS overabove
FROM
   ( VALUES
        (1, 'LINESTRING(6 0, 6 4)'::geometry)) AS tbl1,
        ( VALUES
        (2, 'LINESTRING(0 0, 3 3)'::geometry),
        (3, 'LINESTRING(0 1, 0 5)'::geometry),
        (4, 'LINESTRING(1 2, 4 6)'::geometry)) AS tbl2;
column1 | column1 | overabove
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 250 / 791

```
1 | 2 | t

1 | 3 | f

1 | 4 | f

(3 rows)
```

See Also

```
&&, &>, &<|, &<
```

8.8.21 |>>

>> — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is strictly above B's.

Synopsis

boolean **|>>**(geometry A , geometry B);

Description

The |>> operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of geometry A is strictly to the right of the bounding box of geometry B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

Examples

See Also



8.8.22 ~

~ — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box contains B's.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 251 / 791

Synopsis

boolean ~(geometry A , geometry B);

Description

The ~ operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of geometry A completely contains the bounding box of geometry B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

Examples

```
SELECT tbl1.column1, tbl2.column1, tbl1.column2 ~ tbl2.column2 AS contains
FROM
  ( VALUES
  (1, 'LINESTRING (0 0, 3 3)'::geometry)) AS tbl1,
  ( VALUES
  (2, 'LINESTRING (0 0, 4 4)'::geometry),
  (3, 'LINESTRING (1 1, 2 2)'::geometry),
  (4, 'LINESTRING (0 0, 3 3)'::geometry)) AS tbl2;
column1 | column1 | contains
    1 |
             2 | f
             3 | t
    1 |
    1 |
             4 | t
(3 rows)
```

See Also

@, &&

8.8.23 ~(geometry,box2df)

~(geometry,box2df) — Returns TRUE if a geometry's 2D bonding box contains a 2D float precision bounding box (GIDX).

Synopsis

boolean ~(geometry A, box2df B);

Description

The \sim operator returns TRUE if the 2D bounding box of a geometry A contains the 2D bounding box B, using float precision. This means that if B is a (double precision) box2d, it will be internally converted to a float precision 2D bounding box (BOX2DF)



Note

This operand is intended to be used internally by BRIN indexes, more than by users.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 252 / 791

Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

See Also

&&(geometry,box2df), &&(box2df,geometry), &&(box2df,box2df), \sim (box2df,geometry), \sim (box2df,box2df), @(geometry,box2df), @(geometry,box2df), @(box2df,geometry), @(

8.8.24 ~(box2df,geometry)

~(box2df,geometry) — Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) contains a geometry's 2D bonding box.

Synopsis

boolean ~(box2df A, geometry B);

Description

The ~ operator returns TRUE if the 2D bounding box A contains the B geometry's bounding box, using float precision. This means that if A is a (double precision) box2d, it will be internally converted to a float precision 2D bounding box (BOX2DF)



Note

This operand is intended to be used internally by BRIN indexes, more than by users.

Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 253 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_MakeBox2D(ST_MakePoint(0,0), ST_MakePoint(5,5)) ~ ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText(' ←
        POINT(2 2)'), 1) AS contains;
contains
-----
t
(1 row)
```

See Also

&&(geometry,box2df), &&(box2df,geometry), &&(box2df,box2df), ~(geometry,box2df), ~(box2df,box2df), @(geometry,box2df), @(geometry,box2df), &&(box2df,geometry), @(box2df,geometry), @(box2df,geometry), @(box2df,geometry), &&(box2df,geometry), &(geometry,geometry), &(geometry,geometry,geometry), &(geometry,geometry,geometry), &(geometry,geometry,geometry), &(geometry,geometry,geometry), &(geometry,geometry,geometry), &(geometry,geometry,geometry,geometry), &(geometry,geometry,geometry,geometry), &(geometry,geometry,geometry,geometry,geometry,geom

8.8.25 ~(box2df,box2df)

 \sim (box2df,box2df) — Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) contains another 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).

Synopsis

boolean \sim (box2df A , box2df B);

Description

The \sim operator returns TRUE if the 2D bounding box A contains the 2D bounding box B, using float precision. This means that if A is a (double precision) box2d, it will be internally converted to a float precision 2D bounding box (BOX2DF)



Note

This operand is intended to be used internally by BRIN indexes, more than by users.

Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 254 / 791

See Also

&&(geometry,box2df), &&(box2df,geometry), &&(box2df,box2df), \sim (geometry,box2df), \sim (box2df,geometry), @(geometry,box2df), \sim (geometry,box2df), \sim (box2df,geometry), @(box2df,box2df)

8.8.26 ~=

~= — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is the same as B's.

Synopsis

boolean ~=(geometry A , geometry B);

Description

The \sim = operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of geometry/geography A is the same as the bounding box of geometry/geography B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

Availability: 1.5.0 changed behavior



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



Warning

This operator has changed behavior in PostGIS 1.5 from testing for actual geometric equality to only checking for bounding box equality. To complicate things it also depends on if you have done a hard or soft upgrade which behavior your database has. To find out which behavior your database has you can run the query below. To check for true equality use ST_OrderingEquals or ST_Equals and to check for bounding box equality =; operator is a safer option.

Examples

```
select 'LINESTRING(0 0, 1 1)'::geometry ~= 'LINESTRING(0 1, 1 0)'::geometry as equality;
equality |
-----t
t |
```

The above can be used to test if you have the new or old behavior of ~= operator.

See Also

ST_Equals, ST_OrderingEquals, =

8.8.27 <->

<-> — Returns the 2D distance between A and B.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 255 / 791

Synopsis

```
double precision <->( geometry A , geometry B );
double precision <->( geography A , geography B );
```

Description

The <-> operator returns the 2D distance between two geometries. Used in the "ORDER BY" clause provides index-assisted nearest-neighbor result sets. For PostgreSQL below 9.5 only gives centroid distance of bounding boxes and for PostgreSQL 9.5+, does true KNN distance search giving true distance between geometries, and distance sphere for geographies.



Note

This operand will make use of 2D GiST indexes that may be available on the geometries. It is different from other operators that use spatial indexes in that the spatial index is only used when the operator is in the ORDER BY clause.



Note

Index only kicks in if one of the geometries is a constant (not in a subquery/cte). e.g. 'SRID=3005;POINT(1011102 450541)'::geometry instead of a.geom

Refer to OpenGeo workshop: Nearest-Neighbour Searching for real live example.

Enhanced: 2.2.0 -- True KNN ("K nearest neighbor") behavior for geometry and geography for PostgreSQL 9.5+. Note for geography KNN is based on sphere rather than spheroid. For PostgreSQL 9.4 and below, geography support is new but only supports centroid box.

Changed: 2.2.0 -- For PostgreSQL 9.5 users, old Hybrid syntax may be slower, so you'll want to get rid of that hack if you are running your code only on PostGIS 2.2+ 9.5+. See examples below.

Availability: 2.0.0 -- Weak KNN provides nearest neighbors based on geometry centroid distances instead of true distances. Exact results for points, inexact for all other types. Available for PostgreSQL 9.1+

Examples

```
SELECT ST_Distance(geom, 'SRID=3005; POINT(1011102 450541)'::geometry) as d,edabbr, vaabbr
FROM va2005
ORDER BY d limit 10;
                | edabbr | vaabbr
                --+-----
               0 | ALQ | 128
 5541.57712511724 | ALQ
                       | 129A
 5579.67450712005 | ALQ
                        | 001
                        | 131
  6083.4207708641 | ALQ
 7691.2205404848 | ALQ
                          | 003
 7900.75451037313 | ALQ
                          1 122
 8694.20710669982 | ALQ
                          | 129B
 9564.24289057111 | ALQ
                          | 130
 12089.665931705 | ALQ
                          | 127
 18472.5531479404 | ALQ
                          | 002
(10 rows)
```

Then the KNN raw answer:

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 256 / 791

```
SELECT st_distance(geom, 'SRID=3005; POINT(1011102 450541)'::geometry) as d,edabbr, vaabbr
FROM va2005
ORDER BY geom <-> 'SRID=3005; POINT (1011102 450541) ':: geometry limit 10;
                | edabbr | vaabbr
              0 | ALQ | 128
 5541.57712511724 | ALO | 129A
 5579.67450712005 | ALQ
                       | 001
 6083.4207708641 | ALQ
                       | 131
                       | 003
 7691.2205404848 | ALQ
 7900.75451037313 | ALQ
                       | 122
 8694.20710669982 | ALQ | 129B
 9564.24289057111 | ALQ | 130
 12089.665931705 | ALQ | 127
18472.5531479404 | ALQ
                       | 002
(10 rows)
```

If you run "EXPLAIN ANALYZE" on the two queries you would see a performance improvement for the second.

For users running with PostgreSQL < 9.5, use a hybrid query to find the true nearest neighbors. First a CTE query using the index-assisted KNN, then an exact query to get correct ordering:

```
WITH index_query AS (
  SELECT ST_Distance(geom, 'SRID=3005; POINT(1011102 450541)'::geometry) as d,edabbr, vaabbr
 FROM va2005
 ORDER BY geom <-> 'SRID=3005; POINT (1011102 450541) ':: geometry LIMIT 100)
 SELECT *
 FROM index_query
 ORDER BY d limit 10;
                | edabbr | vaabbr
               0 | ALQ | 128
 5541.57712511724 | ALQ
                          | 129A
 5579.67450712005 | ALQ
                          | 001
  6083.4207708641 | ALQ
                          | 131
 7691.2205404848 | ALQ
                          | 003
                          | 122
 7900.75451037313 | ALQ
                          | 129B
 8694.20710669982 | ALQ
                          | 130
 9564.24289057111 | ALQ
 12089.665931705 | ALQ
                         | 127
18472.5531479404 | ALQ
                        | 002
(10 rows)
```

See Also

```
ST_DWithin, ST_Distance, <#>
```

8.8.28 |=|

I=I — Returns the distance between A and B trajectories at their closest point of approach.

Synopsis

double precision I=I(geometry A , geometry B);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 257 / 791

Description

The |=| operator returns the 3D distance between two trajectories (See ST_IsValidTrajectory). This is the same as ST_DistanceCPA but as an operator it can be used for doing nearest neighbor searches using an N-dimensional index (requires PostgreSQL 9.5.0 or higher).



Note

This operand will make use of ND GiST indexes that may be available on the geometries. It is different from other operators that use spatial indexes in that the spatial index is only used when the operator is in the ORDER BY clause.



Note

Index only kicks in if one of the geometries is a constant (not in a subquery/cte). e.g. 'SRID=3005;LINESTRINGM(0 0 0,0 0 1)'::geometry instead of a.geom

Availability: 2.2.0. Index-supported only available for PostgreSQL 9.5+

Examples

```
-- Save a literal query trajectory in a psql variable...
\set qt \sT_AddMeasure(ST_MakeLine(ST_MakePointM(-350,300,0),ST_MakePointM(-410,490,0)) \leftarrow
   ,10,20)'
-- Run the query !
SELECT track_id, dist FROM (
  SELECT track_id, ST_DistanceCPA(tr,:qt) dist
  FROM trajectories
  ORDER BY tr |=| :qt
  LIMIT 5
) foo;
 track_id
                 dist
      395 | 0.576496831518066
      380 | 5.06797130410151
      390 | 7.72262293958322
      385 |
             9.8004461358071
      405 | 10.9534397988433
(5 rows)
```

See Also

ST_DistanceCPA, ST_ClosestPointOfApproach, ST_IsValidTrajectory

8.8.29 <#>

<#>— Returns the 2D distance between A and B bounding boxes.

Synopsis

double precision <#>(geometry A , geometry B);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 258 / 791

Description

The <#> operator returns distance between two floating point bounding boxes, possibly reading them from a spatial index (PostgreSQL 9.1+ required). Useful for doing nearest neighbor **approximate** distance ordering.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries. It is different from other operators that use spatial indexes in that the spatial index is only used when the operator is in the ORDER BY clause.



Note

Index only kicks in if one of the geometries is a constant e.g. ORDER BY (ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1 2)') <#> geom) instead of g1.geom <#>.

Availability: 2.0.0 -- KNN only available for PostgreSQL 9.1+

Examples

```
SELECT *
FROM (
SELECT b.tlid, b.mtfcc,
 b.geom <#> ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(746149 2948672,745954 2948576,
   745787 2948499,745740 2948468,745712 2948438,
   745690 2948384,745677 2948319)',2249) As b_dist,
   ST_Distance(b.geom, ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(746149 2948672,745954 2948576,
   745787 2948499,745740 2948468,745712 2948438,
   745690 2948384,745677 2948319)',2249)) As act_dist
   FROM bos_roads As b
   ORDER BY b_dist, b.tlid
   LIMIT 100) As foo
   ORDER BY act_dist, tlid LIMIT 10;
                                  tlid | mtfcc |
                       b_dist
                                        act_dist
     ----+----
 85732027 | S1400 |
                                0 |
                                                    0
 85732029 | S1400 |
                                 0 |
                                                    0
 85732031 | S1400 |
                                 0 |
                                  0 |
 85734335 | S1400 |
 85736037 | S1400 |
                                  0 |
 624683742 | S1400 |
                                  0 | 128.528874268666
 85719343 | $1400 | 260.839270432962 | 260.839270432962
 85741826 | S1400 | 164.759294123275 | 260.839270432962
 85732032 | S1400 | 277.75 | 311.830282365264
 85735592 | S1400 |
                             222.25 | 311.830282365264
(10 rows)
```

See Also

ST_DWithin, ST_Distance, <->

8.8.30 <<->>

<>->> — Returns the n-D distance between the centroids of A and B bounding boxes.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 259 / 791

Synopsis

double precision <<->>(geometry A , geometry B);

Description

The <<->> operator returns the n-D (euclidean) distance between the centroids of the bounding boxes of two geometries. Useful for doing nearest neighbor **approximate** distance ordering.



Note

This operand will make use of n-D GiST indexes that may be available on the geometries. It is different from other operators that use spatial indexes in that the spatial index is only used when the operator is in the ORDER BY clause.



Note

Index only kicks in if one of the geometries is a constant (not in a subquery/cte). e.g. 'SRID=3005;POINT(1011102 450541)'::geometry instead of a.geom

Availability: 2.2.0 -- KNN only available for PostgreSQL 9.1+

See Also

<<#>>, <->

8.8.31 <<#>>

<==>> — Returns the n-D distance between A and B bounding boxes.

Synopsis

double precision <<#>>(geometry A , geometry B);

Description

The <<#>>> operator returns distance between two floating point bounding boxes, possibly reading them from a spatial index (PostgreSQL 9.1+ required). Useful for doing nearest neighbor **approximate** distance ordering.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries. It is different from other operators that use spatial indexes in that the spatial index is only used when the operator is in the ORDER BY clause.



Note

Index only kicks in if one of the geometries is a constant e.g. ORDER BY (ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1 2)') <<#>>> geom) instead of g1.geom <<#>>>.

Availability: 2.2.0 -- KNN only available for PostgreSQL 9.1+

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 260 / 791

See Also



8.9 Spatial Relationships and Measurements

8.9.1 ST_3DClosestPoint

ST_3DClosestPoint — Returns the 3-dimensional point on g1 that is closest to g2. This is the first point of the 3D shortest line.

Synopsis

geometry ST_3DClosestPoint(geometry g1, geometry g2);

Description

Returns the 3-dimensional point on g1 that is closest to g2. This is the first point of the 3D shortest line. The 3D length of the 3D shortest line is the 3D distance.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Availability: 2.0.0

Changed: 2.2.0 - if 2 2D geometries are input, a 2D point is returned (instead of old behavior assuming 0 for missing Z). In case of 2D and 3D, Z is no longer assumed to be 0 for missing Z.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 261 / 791

```
linestring and multipoint -- both 3d and 2d closest point
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_3DClosestPoint(line,pt)) AS cp3d_line_pt,
                ST_AsEWKT(ST_ClosestPoint(line,pt)) As cp2d_line_pt
        FROM (SELECT 'MULTIPOINT(100 100 30, 50 74 1000)'::geometry As pt,
                         'LINESTRING (20 80 20, 98 190 1, 110 180 3, 50 75 900)':: ←
    geometry As line
                ) As foo;
                        cp3d_line_pt
                                                              | cp2d_line_pt
 POINT (54.6993798867619 128.935022917228 11.5475869506606) | POINT (50 75)
Multilinestring and polygon both 3d and 2d closest point
SELECT ST_AseWKT(ST_3DClosestPoint(poly, mline)) As cp3d,
    ST_AsEWKT(ST_ClosestPoint(poly, mline)) As cp2d
        FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYGON((175 150 5, 20 40 5, 35 45 5, 50 60 5, \leftrightarrow
   100 100 5, 175 150 5))') As poly,
                 ST_GeomFromEWKT('MULTILINESTRING((175 155 2, 20 40 20, 50 60 -2, 125 \leftrightarrow
   100 1, 175 155 1),
                 (1 10 2, 5 20 1))') As mline ) As foo;
                  cp3d
                                            POINT (39.993580415989 54.1889925532825 5) | POINT (20 40)
```

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_ClosestPoint, ST_3DDistance, ST_3DShortestLine

8.9.2 ST_3DDistance

ST_3DDistance — For geometry type Returns the 3-dimensional cartesian minimum distance (based on spatial ref) between two geometries in projected units.

Synopsis

float **ST_3DDistance**(geometry g1, geometry g2);

Description

For geometry type returns the 3-dimensional minimum cartesian distance between two geometries in projected units (spatial ref units).



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM?



This method is also provided by SFCGAL backend.

Availability: 2.0.0

Changed: 2.2.0 - In case of 2D and 3D, Z is no longer assumed to be 0 for missing Z.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 262 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_Distance, ST_3DClosestPoint, ST_3DDWithin, ST_3DMaxDistance, ST_3DShortestLine, ST_Transform

8.9.3 ST_3DDWithin

ST_3DDWithin — For 3d (z) geometry type Returns true if two geometries 3d distance is within number of units.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_3DDWithin**(geometry g1, geometry g2, double precision distance_of_srid);

Description

For geometry type returns true if the 3d distance between two objects is within distance_of_srid specified projected units (spatial ref units).



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 263 / 791



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM?

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
-- Geometry example - units in meters (SRID: 2163 US National Atlas Equal area) (3D point
   and line compared 2D point and line)
-- Note: currently no vertical datum support so Z is not transformed and assumed to be same \hookleftarrow
    units as final.
SELECT ST_3DDWithin(
      ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4326;POINT(-72.1235 42.3521 4)'),2163),
      ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4326;LINESTRING(-72.1260 42.45 15, -72.123 42.1546 \leftrightarrow
           20)'),2163),
      126.8
    ) As within_dist_3d,
ST_DWithin(
      ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4326; POINT(-72.1235 42.3521 4)'),2163),
      ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4326;LINESTRING(-72.1260 42.45 15, -72.123 42.1546 \leftrightarrow
           20)'),2163),
      126.8
    ) As within_dist_2d;
 within_dist_3d | within_dist_2d
                 Ιt
```

See Also

ST_3DDistance, ST_Distance, ST_DWithin, ST_3DMaxDistance, ST_Transform

8.9.4 ST_3DDFullyWithin

ST_3DDFullyWithin — Returns true if all of the 3D geometries are within the specified distance of one another.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_3DDFullyWithin**(geometry g1, geometry g2, double precision distance);

Description

Returns true if the 3D geometries are fully within the specified distance of one another. The distance is specified in units defined by the spatial reference system of the geometries. For this function to make sense, the source geometries must both be of the same coordinate projection, having the same SRID.



Note

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries.

Availability: 2.0.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 264 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_3DMaxDistance, ST_3DDWithin, ST_DWithin, ST_DFullyWithin

8.9.5 ST_3DIntersects

ST_3DIntersects — Returns TRUE if the Geometries "spatially intersect" in 3d - only for points, linestrings, polygons, polyhedral surface (area). With SFCGAL backend enabled also supports TINS

Synopsis

boolean **ST_3DIntersects**(geometry geomA , geometry geomB);

Description

Overlaps, Touches, Within all imply spatial intersection. If any of the aforementioned returns true, then the geometries also spatially intersect. Disjoint implies false for spatial intersection.

Availability: 2.0.0



Note

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries.



Note

In order to take advantage of support for TINS, you need to enable the SFCGAL backend. This can be done at session time with: set postgis.backend =sfcgal; or at the database or system level. Database level can be done with ALTER DATABASE gisdb SET postgis.backend =sfcgal;.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 265 / 791



This method is also provided by SFCGAL backend.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: ?

Geometry Examples

TIN Examples

```
set postgis.backend = sfcgal;
SELECT ST_3DIntersects('TIN(((0 0,1 0,0 1,0 0)))'::geometry, 'POINT(.1 .1)'::geometry);
st_3dintersects
-----t
```

See Also

ST_Intersects

8.9.6 ST_3DLongestLine

ST_3DLongestLine — Returns the 3-dimensional longest line between two geometries

Synopsis

geometry ST_3DLongestLine(geometry g1, geometry g2);

Description

Returns the 3-dimensional longest line between two geometries. The function will only return the first longest line if more than one. The line returned will always start in g1 and end in g2. The 3D length of the line this function returns will always be the same as ST_3DMaxDistance returns for g1 and g2.

Availability: 2.0.0

Changed: 2.2.0 - if 2 2D geometries are input, a 2D point is returned (instead of old behavior assuming 0 for missing Z). In case of 2D and 3D, Z is no longer assumed to be 0 for missing Z.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 266 / 791

```
linestring and point -- both 3d and 2d longest line
SELECT ST_AseWKT(ST_3DLongestLine(line,pt)) AS lol3d_line_pt,
              ST_AsEWKT(ST_LongestLine(line,pt)) As lol2d_line_pt
       FROM (SELECT 'POINT(100 100 30)'::geometry As pt,
                     'LINESTRING (20 80 20, 98 190 1, 110 180 3, 50 75 1000)':: ←
    geometry As line
             ) As foo;
          lol3d_line_pt | lol2d_line_pt
______
LINESTRING(50 75 1000,100 100 30) | LINESTRING(98 190,100 100)
linestring and multipoint -- both 3d and 2d longest line
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_3DLongestLine(line,pt)) AS lol3d_line_pt,
             ST_AsEWKT(ST_LongestLine(line,pt)) As lol2d_line_pt
       FROM (SELECT 'MULTIPOINT(100 100 30, 50 74 1000)'::geometry As pt,
                      'LINESTRING (20 80 20, 98 190 1, 110 180 3, 50 75 900)':: ←
    geometry As line
              ) As foo;
                        | lol2d_line_pt
         lol3d_line_pt
                                ______
LINESTRING(98 190 1,50 74 1000) | LINESTRING(98 190,50 74)
Multilinestring and polygon both 3d and 2d longest line
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_3DLongestLine(poly, mline)) As lol3d,
   ST_AsEWKT(ST_LongestLine(poly, mline)) As lol2d
      FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYGON((175 150 5, 20 40 5, 35 45 5, 50 60 5, ↔
    100 100 5, 175 150 5))') As poly,
               ST_GeomFromEWKT('MULTILINESTRING((175 155 2, 20 40 20, 50 60 -2, 125 \leftrightarrow
    100 1, 175 155 1),
           (1 10 2, 5 20 1))') As mline ) As foo;
           lol3d | lol2d
LINESTRING(175 150 5,1 10 2) | LINESTRING(175 150,1 10)
```

See Also

ST_3DClosestPoint, ST_3DDistance, ST_LongestLine, ST_3DShortestLine, ST_3DMaxDistance

8.9.7 ST 3DMaxDistance

ST_3DMaxDistance — For geometry type Returns the 3-dimensional cartesian maximum distance (based on spatial ref) between two geometries in projected units.

Synopsis

float **ST_3DMaxDistance**(geometry g1, geometry g2);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 267 / 791

Description

For geometry type returns the 3-dimensional maximum cartesian distance between two geometries in projected units (spatial ref units).



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Availability: 2.0.0

Changed: 2.2.0 - In case of 2D and 3D, Z is no longer assumed to be 0 for missing Z.

Examples

```
-- Geometry example - units in meters (SRID: 2163 US National Atlas Equal area) (3D point
   and line compared 2D point and line)
-- Note: currently no vertical datum support so Z is not transformed and assumed to be same \hookleftarrow
    units as final.
SELECT ST_3DMaxDistance(
      ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4326; POINT(-72.1235 42.3521 10000)'),2163),
      ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4326;LINESTRING(-72.1260 42.45 15, -72.123 42.1546 \leftrightarrow
           20)'),2163)
    ) As dist_3d,
    ST_MaxDistance(
      ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4326; POINT(-72.1235 42.3521 10000)'),2163),
      ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=4326;LINESTRING(-72.1260 42.45 15, -72.123 42.1546 \leftrightarrow
           20)'),2163)
    ) As dist_2d;
     dist_3d
                 dist_2d
 24383.7467488441 | 22247.8472107251
```

See Also

ST_Distance, ST_3DDWithin, ST_3DMaxDistance, ST_Transform

8.9.8 ST_3DShortestLine

ST_3DShortestLine — Returns the 3-dimensional shortest line between two geometries

Synopsis

geometry **ST_3DShortestLine**(geometry g1, geometry g2);

Description

Returns the 3-dimensional shortest line between two geometries. The function will only return the first shortest line if more than one, that the function finds. If g1 and g2 intersects in just one point the function will return a line with both start and end in that intersection-point. If g1 and g2 are intersecting with more than one point the function will return a line with start and end in the same point but it can be any of the intersecting points. The line returned will always start in g1 and end in g2. The 3D length of the line this function returns will always be the same as ST_3DDistance returns for g1 and g2.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 268 / 791

Changed: 2.2.0 - if 2 2D geometries are input, a 2D point is returned (instead of old behavior assuming 0 for missing Z). In case of 2D and 3D, Z is no longer assumed to be 0 for missing Z.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

Examples

```
linestring and point -- both 3d and 2d shortest line
SELECT ST_AseWKT(ST_3DShortestLine(line,pt)) AS shl3d_line_pt,
                 ST_AsEWKT(ST_ShortestLine(line,pt)) As shl2d_line_pt
        FROM (SELECT 'POINT(100 100 30)'::geometry As pt,
                         'LINESTRING (20 80 20, 98 190 1, 110 180 3, 50 75 1000)':: \leftarrow
     geometry As line
                ) As foo;
 shl3d_line_pt
                   shl2d_line_pt
 LINESTRING(54.6993798867619 128.935022917228 11.5475869506606,100 100 30) | \Leftarrow
     LINESTRING(73.0769230769231 115.384615384615,100 100)
linestring and multipoint -- both 3d and 2d shortest line
SELECT ST_AseWKT(ST_3DShortestLine(line,pt)) AS shl3d_line_pt,
                 ST_AsEWKT(ST_ShortestLine(line,pt)) As shl2d_line_pt
        FROM (SELECT 'MULTIPOINT(100 100 30, 50 74 1000)'::geometry As pt,
                         'LINESTRING (20 80 20, 98 190 1, 110 180 3, 50 75 900)':: \leftarrow
     geometry As line
               ) As foo;
                       shl3d_line_pt
                                                                               | ←
     shl2d_line_pt
 LINESTRING (54.6993798867619 128.935022917228 11.5475869506606,100 100 30) | LINESTRING ←
     (5075,5074)
Multilinestring and polygon both 3d and 2d shortest line
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_3DShortestLine(poly, mline)) As shl3d,
    ST_AsEWKT(ST_ShortestLine(poly, mline)) As shl2d
        FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYGON((175 150 5, 20 40 5, 35 45 5, 50 60 5, ↔
     100 100 5, 175 150 5))') As poly,
                 ST_GeomFromEWKT('MULTILINESTRING((175 155 2, 20 40 20, 50 60 -2, 125 \leftrightarrow
     100 1, 175 155 1),
                 (1 10 2, 5 20 1))') As mline ) As foo;
                    shl3d ←
                                                                                         sh12d
 LINESTRING(39.993580415989 54.1889925532825 5,40.4078575708294 53.6052383805529 ←
     5.03423778139177) | LINESTRING(20 40,20 40)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 269 / 791

See Also

ST_3DClosestPoint, ST_3DDistance, ST_LongestLine, ST_ShortestLine, ST_3DMaxDistance

8.9.9 ST_Area

ST_Area — Returns the area of the surface if it is a Polygon or MultiPolygon. For geometry, a 2D Cartesian area is determined with units specified by the SRID. For geography, area is determined on a curved surface with units in square meters.

Synopsis

```
float ST_Area(geometry g1);
float ST_Area(geography geog, boolean use_spheroid=true);
```

Description

Returns the area of the geometry if it is a Polygon or MultiPolygon. Return the area measurement of an ST_Surface or ST_MultiSurface value. For geometry, a 2D Cartesian area is determined with units specified by the SRID. For geography, by default area is determined on a spheroid with units in square meters. To measure around the faster but less accurate sphere, use ST_Area(geog,false).

Enhanced: 2.0.0 - support for 2D polyhedral surfaces was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.2.0 - measurement on spheroid performed with GeographicLib for improved accuracy and robustness. Requires Proj >= 4.9.0 to take advantage of the new feature.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.1.2, 9.5.3



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



Note

For polyhedral surfaces, only supports 2D polyhedral surfaces (not 2.5D). For 2.5D, may give a non-zero answer, but only for the faces that sit completely in XY plane.



This method is also provided by SFCGAL backend.

Examples

Return area in square feet for a plot of Massachusetts land and multiply by conversion to get square meters. Note this is in square feet because EPSG:2249 is Massachusetts State Plane Feet

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 270 / 791

Return area square feet and transform to Massachusetts state plane meters (EPSG:26986) to get square meters. Note this is in square feet because 2249 is Massachusetts State Plane Feet and transformed area is in square meters since EPSG:26986 is state plane Massachusetts meters

Return area square feet and square meters using geography data type. Note that we transform to our geometry to geography (before you can do that make sure your geometry is in WGS 84 long lat 4326). Geography always measures in meters. This is just for demonstration to compare. Normally your table will be stored in geography data type already.

```
SELECT ST_Area(the_geog)/POWER(0.3048,2) As sqft_spheroid, ST_Area(the_geog,false)/POWER \leftarrow
   (0.3048,2) As sqft_sphere, ST_Area(the_geog) As sqm_spheroid
   FROM (SELECT
   geography (
   ST_Transform(
      ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((743238 2967416,743238 2967450,743265 2967450,743265.625 ↔
         2967416,743238 2967416))',
        2249
        ) ,4326
      )
   )
  ) As foo(the_geog);
  sqft_spheroid | sqft_sphere | sqm_spheroid
 928.684403538925 | 927.049336105925 | 86.2776042893529
 --if your data is in geography already
SELECT ST_Area(the_geog)/POWER(0.3048,2) As sqft, ST_Area(the_geog) As sqm
 FROM somegeogtable;
```

See Also

ST_GeomFromText, ST_GeographyFromText, ST_SetSRID, ST_Transform

8.9.10 ST_Azimuth

ST_Azimuth — Returns the north-based azimuth as the angle in radians measured clockwise from the vertical on pointA to pointB.

Synopsis

float ST_Azimuth(geometry pointA, geometry pointB);
float ST_Azimuth(geography pointA, geography pointB);

Description

Returns the azimuth in radians of the segment defined by the given point geometries, or NULL if the two points are coincident. The azimuth is angle is referenced from north, and is positive clockwise: North = 0; East = $\pi/2$; South = π ; West = $3\pi/2$.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 271 / 791

For the geography type, the forward azimuth is solved as part of the inverse geodesic problem.

The azimuth is mathematical concept defined as the angle between a reference plane and a point, with angular units in radians. Units can be converted to degrees using a built-in PostgreSQL function degrees(), as shown in the example.

Availability: 1.1.0

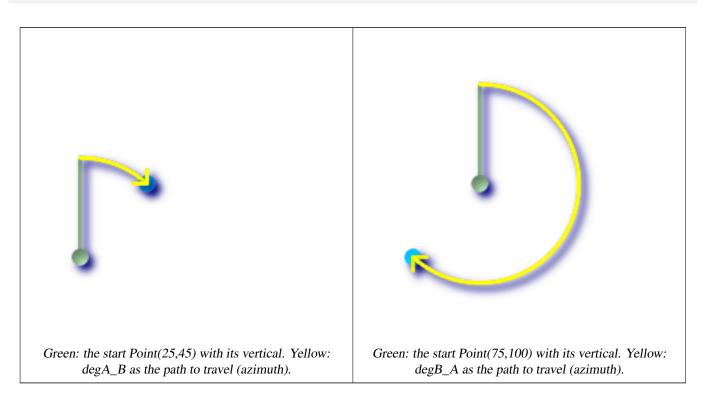
Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for geography was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.2.0 measurement on spheroid performed with GeographicLib for improved accuracy and robustness. Requires Proj >= 4.9.0 to take advantage of the new feature.

Azimuth is especially useful in conjunction with ST_Translate for shifting an object along its perpendicular axis. See upgis_lineshift Plpgsqlfunctions PostGIS wiki section for example of this.

Examples

Geometry Azimuth in degrees



See Also

ST Point, ST Translate, ST Project, PostgreSQL Math Functions

8.9.11 ST Centroid

ST_Centroid — Returns the geometric center of a geometry.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 272 / 791

Synopsis

geometry ST_Centroid(geometry g1);

Description

Computes the geometric center of a geometry, or equivalently, the center of mass of the geometry as a POINT. For [MULTI]POINTs, this is computed as the arithmetic mean of the input coordinates. For [MULTI]LINESTRINGs, this is computed as the weighted length of each line segment. For [MULTI]POLYGONS, "weight" is thought in terms of area. If an empty geometry is supplied, an empty GEOMETRYCOLLECTION is returned. If NULL is supplied, NULL is returned. If CIRCULARSTRING or COMPOUNDCURVE are supplied, they are converted to linestring with CurveToLine first, then same than for LINESTRING

New in 2.3.0: support CIRCULARSTRING and COMPOUNDCURVE (using CurveToLine)

The centroid is equal to the centroid of the set of component Geometries of highest dimension (since the lower-dimension geometries contribute zero "weight" to the centroid).



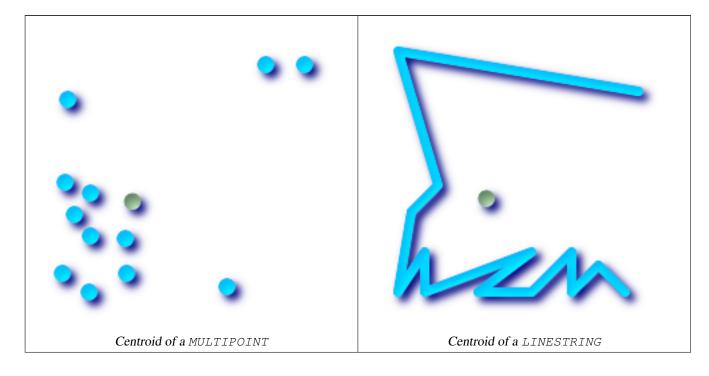
This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



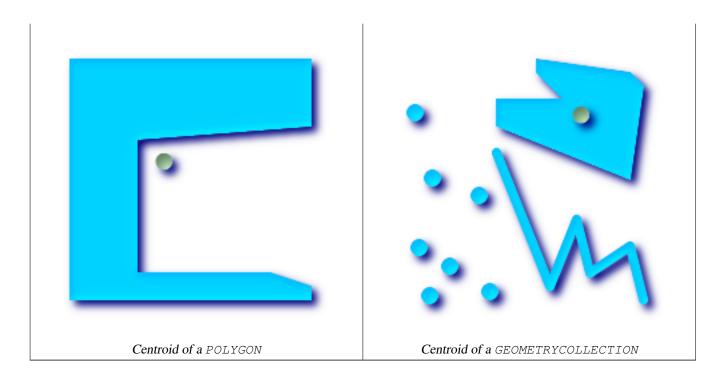
This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.1.4, 9.5.5

Examples

In each of the following illustrations, the blue dot represents the centroid of the source geometry.



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 273 / 791



See Also

ST_PointOnSurface

8.9.12 ST_ClosestPoint

ST_ClosestPoint — Returns the 2-dimensional point on g1 that is closest to g2. This is the first point of the shortest line.

Synopsis

geometry ST_ClosestPoint(geometry g1, geometry g2);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 274 / 791

Description

Returns the 2-dimensional point on g1 that is closest to g2. This is the first point of the shortest line.

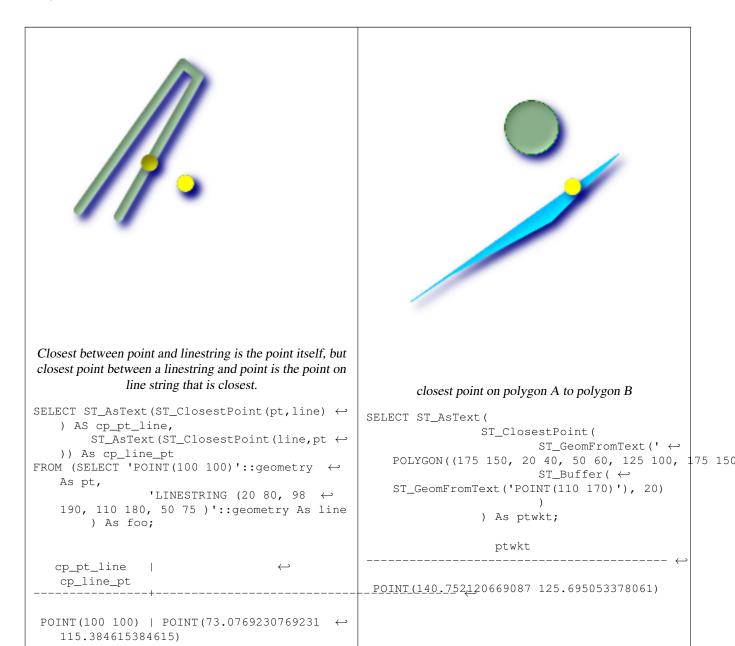


Note

If you have a 3D Geometry, you may prefer to use ST_3DClosestPoint.

Availability: 1.5.0

Examples



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 275 / 791

See Also

ST_3DClosestPoint,ST_Distance, ST_LongestLine, ST_ShortestLine, ST_MaxDistance

8.9.13 ST_ClusterDBSCAN

ST_ClusterDBSCAN — Windowing function that returns integer id for the cluster each input geometry is in based on 2D implementation of Density-based spatial clustering of applications with noise (DBSCAN) algorithm.

Synopsis

integer ST_ClusterDBSCAN(geometry winset geom, float8 eps, integer minpoints);

Description

Returns cluster number for each input geometry, based on a 2D implementation of the Density-based spatial clustering of applications with noise (DBSCAN) algorithm. Unlike ST_ClusterKMeans, it does not require the number of clusters to be specified, but instead uses the desired distance (eps) and density(minpoints) parameters to construct each cluster.

An input geometry will be added to a cluster if it is either:

- A "core" geometry, that is within eps distance (Cartesian) of at least minpoints input geometries (including itself) or
- A "border" geometry, that is within eps distance of a core geometry.

Note that border geometries may be within eps distance of core geometries in more than one cluster; in this case, either assignment would be correct, and the border geometry will be arbitrarily asssigned to one of the available clusters. In these cases, it is possible for a correct cluster to be generated with fewer than minpoints geometries. When assignment of a border geometry is ambiguous, repeated calls to ST_ClusterDBSCAN will produce identical results if an ORDER BY clause is included in the window definition, but cluster assignments may differ from other implementations of the same algorithm.



Note

Input geometries that do not meet the criteria to join any other cluster will be assigned a cluster number of NULL.

Availability: 2.3.0 - requires GEOS

Examples

Assigning a cluster number to each parcel point:

```
SELECT parcel_id, ST_ClusterDBSCAN(geom, eps := 0.5, minpoints := 5) over () AS cid
FROM parcels;
```

Combining parcels with the same cluster number into a single geometry. This uses named argument calling

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 276 / 791

See Also

ST_ClusterKMeans, ST_ClusterIntersecting, ST_ClusterWithin

8.9.14 ST_ClusterIntersecting

ST_ClusterIntersecting — Aggregate. Returns an array with the connected components of a set of geometries

Synopsis

geometry[] ST_ClusterIntersecting(geometry set g);

Description

ST_ClusterIntersecting is an aggregate function that returns an array of GeometryCollections, where each GeometryCollection represents an interconnected set of geometries.

Availability: 2.2.0 - requires GEOS

Examples

See Also

ST_ClusterDBSCAN, ST_ClusterKMeans, ST_ClusterWithin

8.9.15 ST_ClusterKMeans

ST_ClusterKMeans — Windowing function that returns integer id for the cluster each input geometry is in.

Synopsis

integer **ST_ClusterKMeans**(geometry winset geom, integer number_of_clusters);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 277 / 791

Description

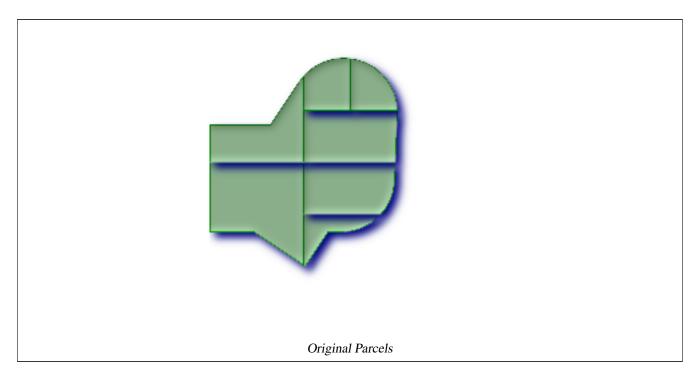
Returns 2D distance based k-means cluster number for each input geometry. The distance used for clustering is the distance between the centroids of the geometries.

Availability: 2.3.0 - requires GEOS

Examples

Generate dummy set of parcels for examples

```
CREATE TABLE parcels AS
SELECT lpad((row_number() over())::text,3,'0') As parcel_id, geom,
('{residential, commercial}'::text[])[1 + mod(row_number()OVER(),2)] As type
FROM
    ST_Subdivide(ST_Buffer('LINESTRING(40 100, 98 100, 100 150, 60 90)'::geometry,
    40, 'endcap=square'),12) As geom;
```



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 278 / 791

See Also

ST_ClusterDBSCAN, ST_ClusterIntersecting, ST_ClusterWithin, ST_Subdivide

8.9.16 ST_ClusterWithin

ST_ClusterWithin — Aggregate. Returns an array of GeometryCollections, where each GeometryCollection represents a set of geometries separated by no more than the specified distance.

Synopsis

geometry[] ST_ClusterWithin(geometry set g, float8 distance);

Description

ST_ClusterWithin is an aggregate function that returns an array of GeometryCollections, where each GeometryCollection represents a set of geometries separated by no more than the specified distance. (Distances are Cartesian distances in the units of the SRID.)

Availability: 2.2.0 - requires GEOS

Examples

See Also

ST_ClusterDBSCAN, ST_ClusterKMeans, ST_ClusterIntersecting

8.9.17 ST_Contains

ST_Contains — Returns true if and only if no points of B lie in the exterior of A, and at least one point of the interior of B lies in the interior of A.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_Contains**(geometry geomA, geometry geomB);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 279 / 791

Description

Geometry A contains Geometry B if and only if no points of B lie in the exterior of A, and at least one point of the interior of B lies in the interior of A. An important subtlety of this definition is that A does not contain its boundary, but A does contain itself. Contrast that to ST_ContainsProperly where geometry A does not Contain Properly itself.

Returns TRUE if geometry B is completely inside geometry A. For this function to make sense, the source geometries must both be of the same coordinate projection, having the same SRID. ST_Contains is the inverse of ST_Within. So ST_Contains(A,B) implies ST Within(B,A) except in the case of invalid geometries where the result is always false regardless or not defined.

Performed by the GEOS module

Enhanced: 2.3.0 Enhancement to PIP short-circuit extended to support MultiPoints with few points. Prior versions only supported point in polygon.



Important

Do not call with a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION as an argument



Important

Do not use this function with invalid geometries. You will get unexpected results.

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries. To avoid index use, use the function _ST_Contains.

NOTE: this is the "allowable" version that returns a boolean, not an integer.

This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.2 // s2.1.13.3 - same as within(geometry B, geometry A)



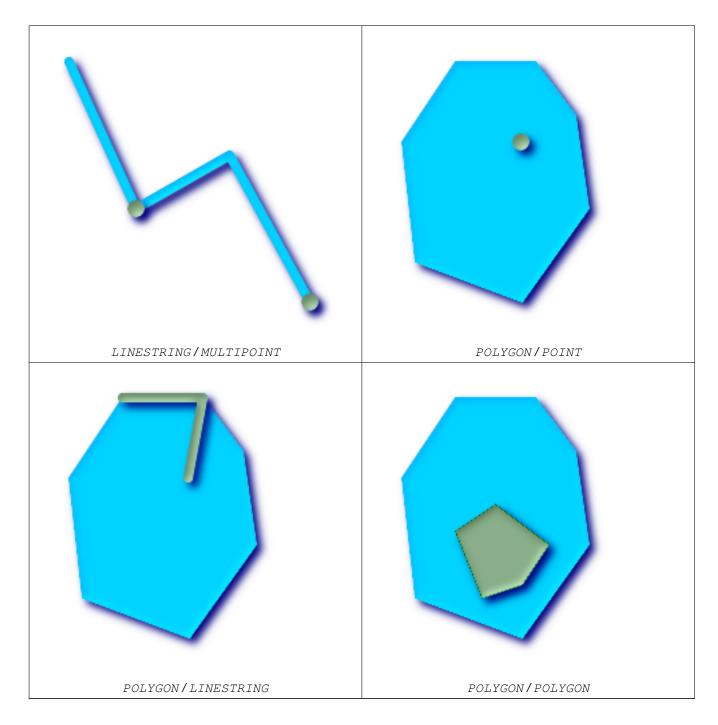
This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.31

There are certain subtleties to ST_Contains and ST_Within that are not intuitively obvious. For details check out Subtleties of OGC Covers, Contains, Within

Examples

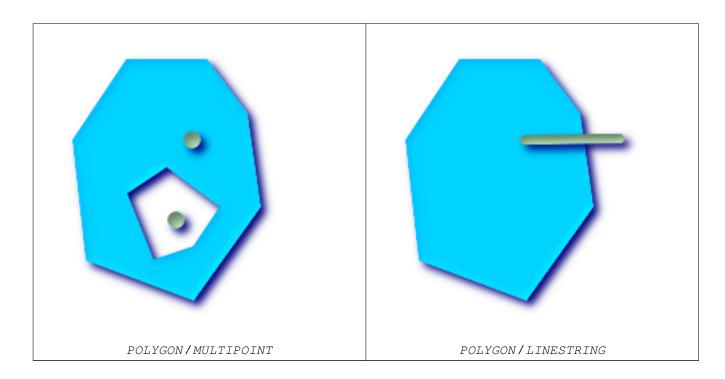
The ST_Contains predicate returns TRUE in all the following illustrations.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 280 / 791



The ST_Contains predicate returns FALSE in all the following illustrations.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 281 / 791



```
-- A circle within a circle
SELECT ST_Contains(smallc, bigc) As smallcontainsbig,
     ST_Contains(bigc, smallc) As bigcontainssmall,
     ST_Contains(bigc, ST_Union(smallc, bigc)) as bigcontainsunion,
     ST_Equals(bigc, ST_Union(smallc, bigc)) as bigisunion,
     ST_Covers(bigc, ST_ExteriorRing(bigc)) As bigcoversexterior,
     ST_Contains(bigc, ST_ExteriorRing(bigc)) As bigcontainsexterior
FROM (SELECT ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1 2)'), 10) As smallc,
       ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1 2)'), 20) As bigc) As foo;
-- Result
  \verb|small| contains \verb|big| | \verb|big| contains \verb|small| | \verb|big| contains \verb|union| | \verb|big| covers \verb|exterior|| \leftarrow |
  bigcontainsexterior
      Ιt
                                                           Ιt
                                                                   | t | f
-- Example demonstrating difference between contains and contains properly
SELECT ST_GeometryType(geomA) As geomtype, ST_Contains(geomA,geomA) AS acontainsa, \leftarrow
   ST_ContainsProperly(geomA, geomA) AS acontainspropa,
   ST_Contains(geomA, ST_Boundary(geomA)) As acontainsba, ST_ContainsProperly(geomA, <math>\leftarrow
       ST_Boundary(geomA)) As acontainspropba
FROM (VALUES ( ST_Buffer(ST_Point(1,1), 5,1) ),
       ( ST_MakeLine(ST_Point(1,1), ST_Point(-1,-1) ) ),
        ( ST_Point(1,1) )
    ) As foo(geomA);
  geomtype | acontainsa | acontainspropa | acontainsba | acontainspropba

      ST_Polygon
      | t
      | f
      | f
      | f

      ST_LineString
      | t
      | f
      | f
      | f

      ST_Point
      | t
      | t
      | f
      | f
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 282 / 791

See Also

ST_Boundary, ST_ContainsProperly, ST_Covers, ST_CoveredBy, ST_Equals, ST_Within

8.9.18 ST_ContainsProperly

ST_ContainsProperly — Returns true if B intersects the interior of A but not the boundary (or exterior). A does not contain properly itself, but does contain itself.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_ContainsProperly**(geometry geomA, geometry geomB);

Description

Returns true if B intersects the interior of A but not the boundary (or exterior).

A does not contain properly itself, but does contain itself.

Every point of the other geometry is a point of this geometry's interior. The DE-9IM Intersection Matrix for the two geometries matches [T**FF*FF*] used in ST_Relate

Note



From JTS docs slightly reworded: The advantage to using this predicate over ST_Contains and ST_Intersects is that it can be computed efficiently, with no need to compute topology at individual points.

An example use case for this predicate is computing the intersections of a set of geometries with a large polygonal geometry. Since intersection is a fairly slow operation, it can be more efficient to use containsProperly to filter out test geometries which lie wholly inside the area. In these cases the intersection is known a priori to be exactly the original test geometry.

Availability: 1.4.0 - requires GEOS \geq 3.1.0.



Important

Do not call with a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION as an argument



Important

Do not use this function with invalid geometries. You will get unexpected results.

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries. To avoid index use, use the function _ST_ContainsProperly.

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 283 / 791

```
--a circle within a circle
 SELECT ST_ContainsProperly(smallc, bigc) As smallcontainspropbig,
 ST_ContainsProperly(bigc, smallc) As bigcontainspropsmall,
 ST_ContainsProperly(bigc, ST_Union(smallc, bigc)) as bigcontainspropunion,
 ST_Equals(bigc, ST_Union(smallc, bigc)) as bigisunion,
 ST_Covers(bigc, ST_ExteriorRing(bigc)) As bigcoversexterior,
 ST_ContainsProperly(bigc, ST_ExteriorRing(bigc)) As bigcontainsexterior
 FROM (SELECT ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1 2)'), 10) As smallc,
 ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1 2)'), 20) As bigc) As foo;
 smallcontainspropbig \mid bigcontainspropsmall \mid bigcontainspropunion \mid bigisunion \mid \leftarrow
    bigcoversexterior | bigcontainsexterior
        ______
                     | t
                                           | f
                                                                 | f
 --example demonstrating difference between contains and contains properly
SELECT ST_GeometryType(geomA) As geomtype, ST_Contains(geomA, geomA) AS acontainsa, \leftrightarrow
    ST_ContainsProperly(geomA, geomA) AS acontainspropa,
ST_Contains(geomA, ST_Boundary(geomA)) As acontainsba, ST_ContainsProperly(geomA, \leftarrow
    ST_Boundary(geomA)) As acontainspropba
FROM (VALUES ( ST_Buffer(ST_Point(1,1), 5,1) ),
     ( ST_MakeLine(ST_Point(1,1), ST_Point(-1,-1) ) ),
     ( ST_Point(1,1) )
 ) As foo(geomA);
 geomtype | acontainsa | acontainspropa | acontainsba | acontainspropba
ST_Polygon | t
                     | f
| f
                                 | f
                                                     | f
ST_LineString | t
                                        | f
                                                     | f
ST_Point
          | t
```

See Also

ST_GeometryType, ST_Boundary, ST_Contains, ST_Covers, ST_CoveredBy, ST_Equals, ST_Relate, ST_Within

8.9.19 ST Covers

ST_Covers — Returns 1 (TRUE) if no point in Geometry B is outside Geometry A

Synopsis

boolean **ST_Covers**(geometry geomA, geometry geomB); boolean **ST_Covers**(geography geogpolyA, geography geogpointB);

Description

Returns 1 (TRUE) if no point in Geometry/Geography B is outside Geometry/Geography A Performed by the GEOS module



Important

Do not call with a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION as an argument

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 284 / 791



Important

For geography only Polygon covers point is supported.



Important

Do not use this function with invalid geometries. You will get unexpected results.

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries. To avoid index use, use the function ST Covers.

Enhanced: 2.3.0 Enhancement to PIP short-circuit for geometry extended to support MultiPoints with few points. Prior versions only supported point in polygon.

Availability: 1.5 - support for geography was introduced.

Availability: 1.2.2 - requires GEOS >= 3.0

NOTE: this is the "allowable" version that returns a boolean, not an integer.

Not an OGC standard, but Oracle has it too.

There are certain subtleties to ST_Contains and ST_Within that are not intuitively obvious. For details check out Subtleties of OGC Covers, Contains, Within

Examples

Geometry example

Geeography Example

See Also

ST_Contains, ST_CoveredBy, ST_Within

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 285 / 791

8.9.20 ST_CoveredBy

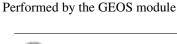
ST_CoveredBy — Returns 1 (TRUE) if no point in Geometry/Geography A is outside Geometry/Geography B

Synopsis

```
boolean ST_CoveredBy(geometry geomA, geometry geomB); boolean ST_CoveredBy(geography geogA, geography geogB);
```

Description

Returns 1 (TRUE) if no point in Geometry/Geography A is outside Geometry/Geography B





Important

Do not call with a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION as an argument



Important

Do not use this function with invalid geometries. You will get unexpected results.

Availability: 1.2.2 - requires GEOS >= 3.0

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries. To avoid index use, use the function _ST_CoveredBy.

NOTE: this is the "allowable" version that returns a boolean, not an integer.

Not an OGC standard, but Oracle has it too.

There are certain subtleties to ST_Contains and ST_Within that are not intuitively obvious. For details check out Subtleties of OGC Covers, Contains, Within

Examples

See Also

ST_Contains, ST_Covers, ST_ExteriorRing, ST_Within

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 286 / 791

8.9.21 ST_Crosses

ST_Crosses — Returns TRUE if the supplied geometries have some, but not all, interior points in common.

Synopsis

boolean ST_Crosses(geometry g1, geometry g2);

Description

ST_Crosses takes two geometry objects and returns TRUE if their intersection "spatially cross", that is, the geometries have some, but not all interior points in common. The intersection of the interiors of the geometries must not be the empty set and must have a dimensionality less than the maximum dimension of the two input geometries. Additionally, the intersection of the two geometries must not equal either of the source geometries. Otherwise, it returns FALSE.

In mathematical terms, this is expressed as:

$$a.Crosses(b) \Leftrightarrow (dim(I(a) \cap I(b)) \leq max(dim(I(a)), dim(I(b)))) \wedge (a \cap b \neq a) \wedge (a \cap b \neq b)$$

The DE-9IM Intersection Matrix for the two geometries is:

- T*T***** (for Point/Line, Point/Area, and Line/Area situations)
- T****T** (for Line/Point, Area/Point, and Area/Line situations)
- 0****** (for Line/Line situations)

For any other combination of dimensions this predicate returns false.

The OpenGIS Simple Features Specification defines this predicate only for Point/Line, Point/Area, Line/Line, and Line/Area situations. JTS / GEOS extends the definition to apply to Line/Point, Area/Point and Area/Line situations as well. This makes the relation symmetric.



Important

Do not call with a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION as an argument



Note

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.13.3

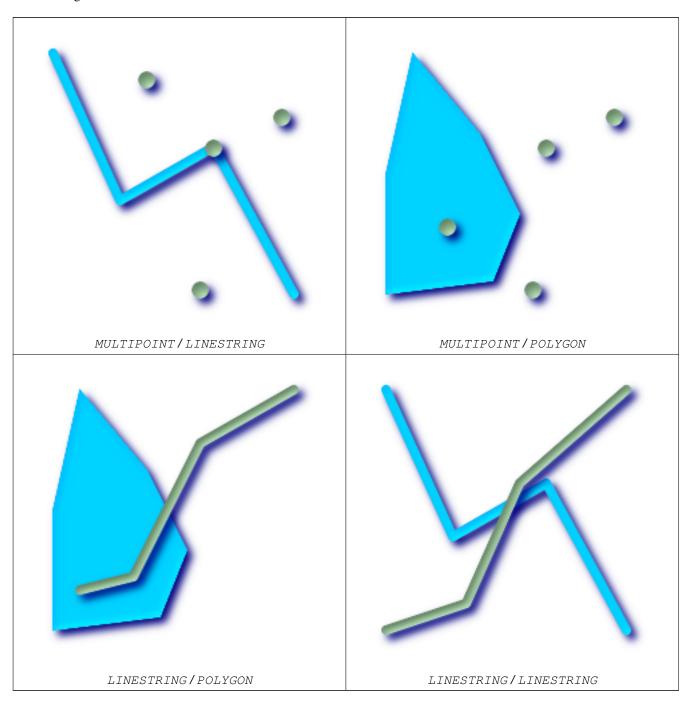


This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.29

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 287 / 791

Examples

The following illustrations all return TRUE.



Consider a situation where a user has two tables: a table of roads and a table of highways.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 288 / 791

```
CREATE TABLE roads (
   id serial NOT NULL,
   the_geom geometry,
   CONSTRAINT roads_pkey PRIMARY KEY ( 
        road_id)
   );

CREATE TABLE highways (
        id serial NOT NULL,
        the_gem geometry,
        CONSTRAINT roads_pkey PRIMARY KEY ( 
        road_id)
   );
```

To determine a list of roads that cross a highway, use a query similiar to:

```
SELECT roads.id
FROM roads, highways
WHERE ST_Crosses(roads.the_geom, highways.the_geom);
```

8.9.22 ST_LineCrossingDirection

ST_LineCrossingDirection — Given 2 linestrings, returns a number between -3 and 3 denoting what kind of crossing behavior. 0 is no crossing.

Synopsis

integer **ST_LineCrossingDirection**(geometry linestringA, geometry linestringB);

Description

Given 2 linestrings, returns a number between -3 and 3 denoting what kind of crossing behavior. 0 is no crossing. This is only supported for LINESTRING

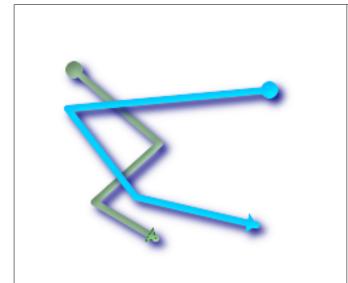
Definition of integer constants is as follows:

- 0: LINE NO CROSS
- -1: LINE CROSS LEFT
- 1: LINE CROSS RIGHT
- -2: LINE MULTICROSS END LEFT
- 2: LINE MULTICROSS END RIGHT
- -3: LINE MULTICROSS END SAME FIRST LEFT
- 3: LINE MULTICROSS END SAME FIRST RIGHT

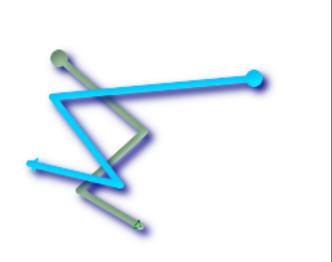
Availability: 1.4

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 289 / 791



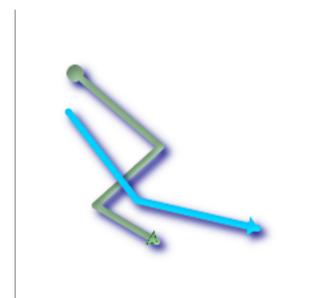
Line 1 (green), Line 2 ball is start point, triangle are end points. Query below.



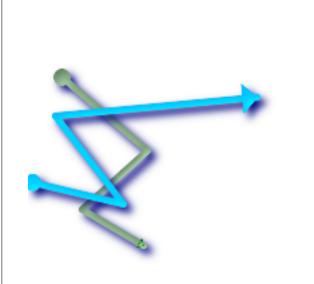
Line 1 (green), Line 2 (blue) ball is start point, triangle are end points. Query below.

2 | -2

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 290 / 791



Line 1 (green), Line 2 (blue) ball is start point, triangle are end points. Query below.



Line 1 (green), Line 2 (blue) ball is start point, triangle are end points. Query below.

```
SELECT s1.gid, s2.gid, ST_LineCrossingDirection(s1.the_geom, s2.the_geom)

FROM streets s1 CROSS JOIN streets s2 ON (s1.gid != s2.gid AND s1.the_geom && s2.the_geom ↔

)

WHERE ST_CrossingDirection(s1.the_geom, s2.the_geom) > 0;
```

See Also

ST_Crosses

8.9.23 ST_Disjoint

ST_Disjoint — Returns TRUE if the Geometries do not "spatially intersect" - if they do not share any space together.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_Disjoint**(geometry A , geometry B);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 291 / 791

Description

Overlaps, Touches, Within all imply geometries are not spatially disjoint. If any of the aforementioned returns true, then the geometries are not spatially disjoint. Disjoint implies false for spatial intersection.



Important

Do not call with a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION as an argument

Performed by the GEOS module



Note

This function call does not use indexes



Note

NOTE: this is the "allowable" version that returns a boolean, not an integer.

This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.2 //s2.1.13.3 - a.Relate(b, 'FF*FF****')



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.26

Examples

See Also

ST_Intersects

8.9.24 ST_Distance

ST_Distance — For geometry type Returns the 2D Cartesian distance between two geometries in projected units (based on spatial ref). For geography type defaults to return minimum geodesic distance between two geographies in meters.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 292 / 791

Synopsis

```
float ST_Distance(geometry g1, geometry g2);
float ST_Distance(geography gg1, geography gg2);
float ST_Distance(geography gg1, geography gg2, boolean use_spheroid);
```

Description

For geometry type returns the minimum 2D Cartesian distance between two geometries in projected units (spatial ref units). For geography type defaults to return the minimum geodesic distance between two geographies in meters. If use_spheroid is false, a faster sphere calculation is used instead of a spheroid.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.23



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This method is also provided by SFCGAL backend.

Availability: 1.5.0 geography support was introduced in 1.5. Speed improvements for planar to better handle large or many vertex geometries

Enhanced: 2.1.0 improved speed for geography. See Making Geography faster for details.

Enhanced: 2.1.0 - support for curved geometries was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.2.0 - measurement on spheroid performed with GeographicLib for improved accuracy and robustness. Requires Proj >= 4.9.0 to take advantage of the new feature.

Basic Geometry Examples

```
--Geometry example - units in planar degrees 4326 is WGS 84 long lat unit=degrees
SELECT ST_Distance(
   ST_GeomFromText('POINT(-72.1235 42.3521)',4326),
    ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(-72.1260 42.45, -72.123 42.1546)', 4326)
 );
st_distance
0.00150567726382282
-- Geometry example - units in meters (SRID: 26986 Massachusetts state plane meters) (most
   accurate for Massachusetts)
SELECT ST_Distance(
      ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(-72.1235 42.3521)',4326),26986),
      ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(-72.1260 42.45, -72.123 42.1546)', 4326) \leftrightarrow
   );
st_distance
123.797937878454
-- Geometry example - units in meters (SRID: 2163 US National Atlas Equal area) (least \leftrightarrow
   accurate)
SELECT ST_Distance(
      ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(-72.1235 42.3521)',4326),2163),
      ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(-72.1260 42.45, -72.123 42.1546)', 4326) \leftrightarrow
          ,2163)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 293 / 791

Geography Examples

See Also

ST_3DDistance, ST_DWithin, ST_DistanceSphere, ST_DistanceSpheroid, ST_MaxDistance, ST_HausdorffDistance, ST_Transform

8.9.25 ST_MinimumClearance

ST_MinimumClearance — Returns the minimum clearance of a geometry, a measure of a geometry's robustness.

Synopsis

float **ST_MinimumClearance**(geometry g);

Description

It is not uncommon to have a geometry that, while meeting the criteria for validity according to ST_IsValid (polygons) or ST_IsSimple (lines), would become invalid if one of the vertices moved by a slight distance, as can happen during conversion to text-based formats (such as WKT, KML, GML GeoJSON), or binary formats that do not use double-precision floating point coordinates (MapInfo TAB).

A geometry's "minimum clearance" is the smallest distance by which a vertex of the geometry could be moved to produce an invalid geometry. It can be thought of as a quantitative measure of a geometry's robustness, where increasing values of minimum clearance indicate increasing robustness.

If a geometry has a minimum clearance of e, it can be said that:

- No two distinct vertices in the geometry are separated by less than e.
- No vertex is closer than e to a line segement of which it is not an endpoint.

If no minimum clearance exists for a geometry (for example, a single point, or a multipoint whose points are identical), then ST_MinimumClearance will return Infinity.

Availability: 2.3.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.6.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 294 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_MinimumClearance('POLYGON ((0 0, 1 0, 1 1, 0.5 3.2e-4, 0 0))');
st_minimumclearance
-----
0.00032
```

See Also

ST_MinimumClearanceLine

8.9.26 ST_MinimumClearanceLine

ST_MinimumClearanceLine — Returns the two-point LineString spanning a geometry's minimum clearance.

Synopsis

Geometry **ST_MinimumClearanceLine**(geometry g);

Description

Returns the two-point LineString spanning a geometry's minimum clearance. If the geometry does not have a minimum clearance, LINESTRING EMPTY will be returned.

Availability: 2.3.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.6.0

Examples

See Also

ST_MinimumClearance

8.9.27 ST_HausdorffDistance

ST_HausdorffDistance — Returns the Hausdorff distance between two geometries. Basically a measure of how similar or dissimilar 2 geometries are. Units are in the units of the spatial reference system of the geometries.

Synopsis

```
float ST_HausdorffDistance(geometry g1, geometry g2); float ST_HausdorffDistance(geometry g1, geometry g2, float densifyFrac);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 295 / 791

Description

Implements algorithm for computing a distance metric which can be thought of as the "Discrete Hausdorff Distance". This is the Hausdorff distance restricted to discrete points for one of the geometries. Wikipedia article on Hausdorff distance Martin Davis note on how Hausdorff Distance calculation was used to prove correctness of the CascadePolygonUnion approach.

When densifyFrac is specified, this function performs a segment densification before computing the discrete hausdorff distance. The densifyFrac parameter sets the fraction by which to densify each segment. Each segment will be split into a number of equal-length subsegments, whose fraction of the total length is closest to the given fraction.



Note

The current implementation supports only vertices as the discrete locations. This could be extended to allow an arbitrary density of points to be used.



Note

This algorithm is NOT equivalent to the standard Hausdorff distance. However, it computes an approximation that is correct for a large subset of useful cases. One important part of this subset is Linestrings that are roughly parallel to each other, and roughly equal in length. This is a useful metric for line matching.

Availability: 1.5.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.2.0

Examples

For each building, find the parcel that best represents it. First we require the parcel intersect with the geometry. DISTINCT ON guarantees we get each building listed only once, the ORDER BY .. ST_HausdorffDistance gives us a preference of parcel that is most similar to the building.

```
SELECT DISTINCT ON(buildings.gid) buildings.gid, parcels.parcel_id
FROM buildings INNER JOIN parcels ON ST_Intersects(buildings.geom,parcels.geom)
ORDER BY buildings.gid, ST_HausdorffDistance(buildings.geom, parcels.geom);
```

8.9.28 ST_MaxDistance

ST_MaxDistance — Returns the 2-dimensional largest distance between two geometries in projected units.

Synopsis

float **ST_MaxDistance**(geometry g1, geometry g2);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 296 / 791

Description



Note

Returns the 2-dimensional maximum distance between two geometries in projected units. If g1 and g2 is the same geometry the function will return the distance between the two vertices most far from each other in that geometry.

Availability: 1.5.0

Examples

Basic furthest distance the point is to any part of the line

See Also

ST_Distance, ST_LongestLine, ST_DFullyWithin

8.9.29 ST_DistanceSphere

ST_DistanceSphere — Returns minimum distance in meters between two lon/lat geometries. Uses a spherical earth and radius derived from the spheroid defined by the SRID. Faster than ST_DistanceSpheroid ST_DistanceSpheroid, but less accurate. PostGIS versions prior to 1.5 only implemented for points.

Synopsis

 $float \ \textbf{ST_DistanceSphere} (geometry\ geomlon lat A,\ geometry\ geomlon lat B);$

Description

Returns minimum distance in meters between two lon/lat points. Uses a spherical earth and radius derived from the spheroid defined by the SRID. Faster than ST_DistanceSpheroid, but less accurate. PostGIS Versions prior to 1.5 only implemented for points.

Availability: 1.5 - support for other geometry types besides points was introduced. Prior versions only work with points.

Changed: 2.2.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Distance_Sphere

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 297 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT round (CAST(ST_DistanceSphere(ST_Centroid(the_geom), ST_GeomFromText('POINT(-118 38) \leftarrow
    ',4326)) As numeric),2) As dist_meters,
round (CAST (ST_Distance (ST_Transform (ST_Centroid (the_geom), 32611),
    ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(-118 38)', 4326),32611)) As numeric),2) As \leftrightarrow
        dist_utm11_meters,
round(CAST(ST_Distance(ST_Centroid(the_geom), ST_GeomFromText('POINT(-118 38)', 4326)) As
   numeric),5) As dist_degrees,
round (CAST (ST_Distance (ST_Transform (the_geom, 32611),
    ST_Transform(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(-118 38)', 4326),32611)) As numeric),2) As \leftrightarrow
        min_dist_line_point_meters
FROM
  (SELECT ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(-118.584 38.374,-118.583 38.5)', 4326) As the_geom)
     as foo;
   dist_meters | dist_utml1_meters | dist_degrees | min_dist_line_point_meters
                         70438.00 |
    70424.47 |
                                         0.72900 |
                                                                        65871.18
```

See Also

ST_Distance, ST_DistanceSpheroid

8.9.30 ST DistanceSpheroid

ST_DistanceSpheroid — Returns the minimum distance between two lon/lat geometries given a particular spheroid. PostGIS versions prior to 1.5 only support points.

Synopsis

float **ST_DistanceSpheroid**(geometry geomlonlatA, geometry geomlonlatB, spheroid measurement_spheroid);

Description

Returns minimum distance in meters between two lon/lat geometries given a particular spheroid. See the explanation of spheroids given for ST_LengthSpheroid. PostGIS version prior to 1.5 only support points.



Note

This function currently does not look at the SRID of a geometry and will always assume its represented in the coordinates of the passed in spheroid. Prior versions of this function only support points.

Availability: 1.5 - support for other geometry types besides points was introduced. Prior versions only work with points.

Changed: 2.2.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Distance_Spheroid

Examples

```
SELECT round(CAST(

ST_DistanceSpheroid(ST_Centroid(the_geom), ST_GeomFromText('POINT(-118 38)',4326), ' 

SPHEROID["WGS 84",6378137,298.257223563]')

As numeric),2) As dist_meters_spheroid,
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 298 / 791

See Also

ST_Distance, ST_DistanceSphere

8.9.31 ST_DFullyWithin

ST_DFullyWithin — Returns true if all of the geometries are within the specified distance of one another

Synopsis

boolean **ST_DFullyWithin**(geometry g1, geometry g2, double precision distance);

Description

Returns true if the geometries is fully within the specified distance of one another. The distance is specified in units defined by the spatial reference system of the geometries. For this function to make sense, the source geometries must both be of the same coordinate projection, having the same SRID.



Note

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries.

Availability: 1.5.0

Examples

See Also

ST_MaxDistance, ST_DWithin

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 299 / 791

8.9.32 ST_DWithin

ST_DWithin — Returns true if the geometries are within the specified distance of one another. For geometry units are in those of spatial reference and For geography units are in meters and measurement is defaulted to use_spheroid=true (measure around spheroid), for faster check, use_spheroid=false to measure along sphere.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_DWithin**(geometry g1, geometry g2, double precision distance_of_srid); boolean **ST_DWithin**(geography gg1, geography gg2, double precision distance_meters); boolean **ST_DWithin**(geography gg1, geography gg2, double precision distance_meters, boolean use_spheroid);

Description

Returns true if the geometries are within the specified distance of one another.

For Geometries: The distance is specified in units defined by the spatial reference system of the geometries. For this function to make sense, the source geometries must both be of the same coordinate projection, having the same SRID.

For geography units are in meters and measurement is defaulted to use_spheroid=true, for faster check, use_spheroid=false to measure along sphere.



Note

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries.



Note

Prior to 1.3, ST_Expand was commonly used in conjunction with && and ST_Distance to achieve the same effect and in pre-1.3.4 this function was basically short-hand for that construct. From 1.3.4, ST_DWithin uses a more short-circuit distance function which should make it more efficient than prior versions for larger buffer regions.



Note

Use ST_3DDWithin if you have 3D geometries.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.

Availability: 1.5.0 support for geography was introduced

Enhanced: 2.1.0 improved speed for geography. See Making Geography faster for details.

Enhanced: 2.1.0 support for curved geometries was introduced.

```
--Find the nearest hospital to each school
--that is within 3000 units of the school.
-- We do an ST_DWithin search to utilize indexes to limit our search list
-- that the non-indexable ST_Distance needs to process
--If the units of the spatial reference is meters then units would be meters
SELECT DISTINCT ON (s.gid) s.gid, s.school_name, s.the_geom, h.hospital_name
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 300 / 791

```
FROM schools s

LEFT JOIN hospitals h ON ST_DWithin(s.the_geom, h.the_geom, 3000)

ORDER BY s.gid, ST_Distance(s.the_geom, h.the_geom);

--The schools with no close hospitals
--Find all schools with no hospital within 3000 units
--away from the school. Units is in units of spatial ref (e.g. meters, feet, degrees)

SELECT s.gid, s.school_name

FROM schools s

LEFT JOIN hospitals h ON ST_DWithin(s.the_geom, h.the_geom, 3000)

WHERE h.gid IS NULL;
```

See Also

ST_Distance, ST_Expand

8.9.33 ST_Equals

ST_Equals — Returns true if the given geometries represent the same geometry. Directionality is ignored.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_Equals**(geometry A, geometry B);

Description

Returns TRUE if the given Geometries are "spatially equal". Use this for a 'better' answer than '='. Note by spatially equal we mean $ST_Within(A,B)$ = true and $ST_Within(B,A)$ = true and also mean ordering of points can be different but represent the same geometry structure. To verify the order of points is consistent, use $ST_OrderingEquals$ (it must be noted $ST_OrderingEquals$ is a little more stringent than simply verifying order of points are the same).



Important

This function will return false if either geometry is invalid except in the case where they are binary equal.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.2



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.24

Changed: 2.2.0 Returns true even for invalid geometries if they are binary equal

```
SELECT ST_Equals(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(0 0, 10 10)'),
   ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(0 0, 5 5, 10 10)'));
st_equals
-----
t
(1 row)

SELECT ST_Equals(ST_Reverse(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(0 0, 10 10)')),
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 301 / 791

```
ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(0 0, 5 5, 10 10)'));
st_equals
----
t
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_IsValid, ST_OrderingEquals, ST_Reverse, ST_Within

8.9.34 ST_GeometricMedian

ST_GeometricMedian — Returns the geometric median of a MultiPoint.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_GeometricMedian** (geometry g , float8 tolerance , int max_iter , boolean fail_if_not_converged);

Description

Computes the approximate geometric median of a MultiPoint geometry using the Weiszfeld algorithm. The geometric median provides a centrality measure that is less sensitive to outlier points than the centroid. The algorithm will iterate until the distance change between successive iterations is less than the supplied tolerance parameter. If this condition has not been met after max_iterations iterations, the function will produce an error and exit, unless fail_if_not_converged is set to false. If a tolerance value is not provided, a default tolerance value will be calculated based on the extent of the input geometry.

Availability: 2.3.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples



Comparison of the centroid (turquoise point) and geometric median (red point) of a four-point MultiPoint (yellow points).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 302 / 791

See Also

ST Centroid

8.9.35 ST_HasArc

ST_HasArc — Returns true if a geometry or geometry collection contains a circular string

Synopsis

boolean **ST_HasArc**(geometry geomA);

Description

Returns true if a geometry or geometry collection contains a circular string

Availability: 1.2.3?



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

```
SELECT ST_HasArc(ST_Collect('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4, 5 6)', 'CIRCULARSTRING(1 1, 2 3, 4 5, 6 ←
7, 5 6)'));
st_hasarc
-----
t
```

See Also

ST_CurveToLine, ST_LineToCurve

8.9.36 ST_Intersects

ST_Intersects — Returns TRUE if the Geometries/Geography "spatially intersect in 2D" - (share any portion of space) and FALSE if they don't (they are Disjoint). For geography -- tolerance is 0.00001 meters (so any points that close are considered to intersect)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 303 / 791

Synopsis

boolean **ST_Intersects**(geometry geomA , geometry geomB); boolean **ST_Intersects**(geography geogA , geography geogB);

Description

If a geometry or geography shares any portion of space then they intersect. For geography -- tolerance is 0.00001 meters (so any points that are close are considered to intersect)

Overlaps, Touches, Within all imply spatial intersection. If any of the aforementioned returns true, then the geometries also spatially intersect. Disjoint implies false for spatial intersection.



Important

Do not call with a <code>GEOMETRYCOLLECTION</code> as an argument for geometry version. The geography version supports <code>GEOMETRYCOLLECTION</code> since its a thin wrapper around distance implementation.

Enhanced: 2.3.0 Enhancement to PIP short-circuit extended to support MultiPoints with few points. Prior versions only supported point in polygon.

Performed by the GEOS module (for geometry), geography is native

Availability: 1.5 support for geography was introduced.



Note

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries.



Note

For geography, this function has a distance tolerance of about 0.00001 meters and uses the sphere rather than spheroid calculation.



Note

NOTE: this is the "allowable" version that returns a boolean, not an integer.

This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.2 //s2.1.13.3 - ST_Intersects(g1, g2) --> Not (ST_Disjoint(g1, g2))



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.27



This method is also provided by SFCGAL backend.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 304 / 791

Geometry Examples

Geography Examples

See Also

ST_3DIntersects, ST_Disjoint

8.9.37 ST_Length

ST_Length — Returns the 2D length of the geometry if it is a LineString or MultiLineString. geometry are in units of spatial reference and geography are in meters (default spheroid)

Synopsis

```
float ST_Length(geometry a_2dlinestring);
float ST_Length(geography geog, boolean use_spheroid=true);
```

Description

For geometry: Returns the 2D Cartesian length of the geometry if it is a LineString, MultiLineString, ST_Curve, ST_MultiCurve. 0 is returned for areal geometries. For areal geometries use ST_Perimeter. For geometry types, units for length measures are specified by the spatial reference system of the geometry.

For geography types, the calculations are performed using the inverse geodesic problem, where length units are in meters. If PostGIS is compiled with PROJ version 4.8.0 or later, the spheroid is specified by the SRID, otherwise it is exclusive to WGS84. If use_spheroid=false, then calculations will approximate a sphere instead of a spheroid.

Currently for geometry this is an alias for ST_Length2D, but this may change to support higher dimensions.



Warning

Changed: 2.0.0 Breaking change -- in prior versions applying this to a MULTI/POLYGON of type geography would give you the perimeter of the POLYGON/MULTIPOLYGON. In 2.0.0 this was changed to return 0 to be in line with geometry behavior. Please use ST_Perimeter if you want the perimeter of a polygon

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 305 / 791



Note

For geography measurement defaults spheroid measurement. To use the faster less accurate sphere use ST_Length(gg,false);



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.5.1



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.1.2, 9.3.4

Availability: 1.5.0 geography support was introduced in 1.5.



This method is also provided by SFCGAL backend.

Geometry Examples

Return length in feet for line string. Note this is in feet because EPSG:2249 is Massachusetts State Plane Feet

```
SELECT ST_Length(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(743238 2967416,743238 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967416,743238 2967416,743238 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,743265 2967450,74326
```

Geography Examples

Return length of WGS 84 geography line

See Also

 $ST_GeographyFromText, ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_LengthSpheroid, ST_Perimeter, ST_Transform$

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 306 / 791

8.9.38 ST_Length2D

ST_Length2D — Returns the 2-dimensional length of the geometry if it is a linestring or multi-linestring. This is an alias for ST_Length

Synopsis

float **ST_Length2D**(geometry a_2dlinestring);

Description

Returns the 2-dimensional length of the geometry if it is a linestring or multi-linestring. This is an alias for ST_Length

See Also

ST_Length, ST_3DLength

8.9.39 ST_3DLength

ST_3DLength — Returns the 3-dimensional or 2-dimensional length of the geometry if it is a linestring or multi-linestring.

Synopsis

float **ST_3DLength**(geometry a_3dlinestring);

Description

Returns the 3-dimensional or 2-dimensional length of the geometry if it is a linestring or multi-linestring. For 2-d lines it will just return the 2-d length (same as ST_Length and ST_Length2D)



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Length3D

Examples

Return length in feet for a 3D cable. Note this is in feet because EPSG:2249 is Massachusetts State Plane Feet

See Also

ST_Length, ST_Length2D

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 307 / 791

8.9.40 ST_LengthSpheroid

ST_LengthSpheroid — Calculates the 2D or 3D length/perimeter of a geometry on an ellipsoid. This is useful if the coordinates of the geometry are in longitude/latitude and a length is desired without reprojection.

Synopsis

float **ST_LengthSpheroid**(geometry a_geometry, spheroid a_spheroid);

Description

Calculates the length/perimeter of a geometry on an ellipsoid. This is useful if the coordinates of the geometry are in longitude/latitude and a length is desired without reprojection. The ellipsoid is a separate database type and can be constructed as follows:

```
SPHEROID[<NAME>,<SEMI-MAJOR AXIS>,<INVERSE FLATTENING>]
SPHEROID["GRS_1980",6378137,298.257222101]
```

Availability: 1.2.2

Changed: 2.2.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Length_Spheroid and used to have a ST_3DLength_Spheroid alias



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

```
SELECT ST_LengthSpheroid( geometry_column,
       'SPHEROID["GRS_1980",6378137,298.257222101]')
       FROM geometry_table;
SELECT ST_LengthSpheroid( the_geom, sph_m ) As tot_len,
ST_LengthSpheroid(ST_GeometryN(the_geom, 1), sph_m) As len_line1,
ST_LengthSpheroid(ST_GeometryN(the_geom,2), sph_m) As len_line2
       FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromText('MULTILINESTRING((-118.584 38.374,-118.583 38.5),
  (-71.05957 42.3589 , -71.061 43))') As the_geom,
CAST('SPHEROID["GRS_1980",6378137,298.257222101]' As spheroid) As sph_m) as foo;
 tot_len | len_line1 | len_line2
85204.5207562955 | 13986.8725229309 | 71217.6482333646
--3D
SELECT ST_LengthSpheroid( the_geom, sph_m ) As tot_len,
ST_LengthSpheroid(ST_GeometryN(the_geom, 1), sph_m) As len_line1,
ST_LengthSpheroid(ST_GeometryN(the_geom,2), sph_m) As len_line2
       FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('MULTILINESTRING((-118.584 38.374 20,-118.583 38.5 30) \leftarrow
  (-71.05957 42.3589 75, -71.061 43 90))') As the_geom,
CAST('SPHEROID["GRS_1980",6378137,298.257222101]' As spheroid) As sph_m) as foo;
            len_line1
                               | len_line2
  85204.5259107402 | 13986.876097711 | 71217.6498130292
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 308 / 791

See Also

ST_GeometryN, ST_Length

8.9.41 ST_Length2D_Spheroid

ST_Length2D_Spheroid — Calculates the 2D length/perimeter of a geometry on an ellipsoid. This is useful if the coordinates of the geometry are in longitude/latitude and a length is desired without reprojection.

Synopsis

float **ST_Length2D_Spheroid**(geometry a_geometry, spheroid a_spheroid);

Description

Calculates the 2D length/perimeter of a geometry on an ellipsoid. This is useful if the coordinates of the geometry are in longitude/latitude and a length is desired without reprojection. The ellipsoid is a separate database type and can be constructed as follows:

```
SPHEROID[<NAME>,<SEMI-MAJOR AXIS>,<INVERSE FLATTENING>]
SPHEROID["GRS_1980",6378137,298.257222101]
```



Note

This is much like ST_LengthSpheroid except it will ignore the Z ordinate in calculations.

```
SELECT ST_Length2D_Spheroid( geometry_column,
        'SPHEROID["GRS_1980",6378137,298.257222101]')
        FROM geometry_table;
SELECT ST_Length2D_Spheroid( the_geom, sph_m ) As tot_len,
ST_Length2D_Spheroid(ST_GeometryN(the_geom, 1), sph_m) As len_line1,
ST_Length2D_Spheroid(ST_GeometryN(the_geom,2), sph_m) As len_line2
        FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromText('MULTILINESTRING((-118.584 38.374,-118.583 38.5),
  (-71.05957 42.3589 , -71.061 43))') As the_geom,
CAST('SPHEROID["GRS_1980",6378137,298.257222101]' As spheroid) As sph_m) as foo;
 tot_len | len_line1 | len_line2
 85204.5207562955 | 13986.8725229309 | 71217.6482333646
 --3D Observe same answer
SELECT ST_Length2D_Spheroid( the_geom, sph_m ) As tot_len,
ST_Length2D_Spheroid(ST_GeometryN(the_geom, 1), sph_m) As len_line1,
ST_Length2D_Spheroid(ST_GeometryN(the_geom,2), sph_m) As len_line2
        FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('MULTILINESTRING((-118.584 38.374 20,-118.583 38.5 30) \leftrightarrow
  (-71.05957 42.3589 75, -71.061 43 90))') As the_geom,
CAST('SPHEROID["GRS_1980",6378137,298.257222101]' As spheroid) As sph_m) as foo;
tot_len | len_line1 | len_line2
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 309 / 791

```
85204.5207562955 | 13986.8725229309 | 71217.6482333646
```

See Also

ST_GeometryN, ST_LengthSpheroid

8.9.42 ST_LongestLine

ST_LongestLine — Returns the 2-dimensional longest line points of two geometries. The function will only return the first longest line if more than one, that the function finds. The line returned will always start in g1 and end in g2. The length of the line this function returns will always be the same as st_maxdistance returns for g1 and g2.

Synopsis

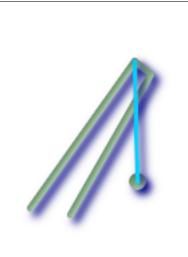
geometry ST_LongestLine(geometry g1, geometry g2);

Description

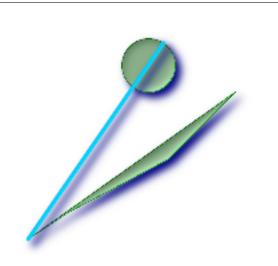
Returns the 2-dimensional longest line between the points of two geometries.

Availability: 1.5.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 310 / 791

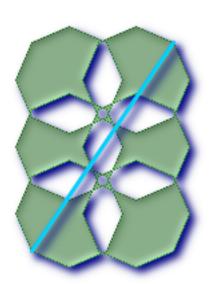


Longest line between point and line



longest line between polygon and polygon

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 311 / 791



longest straight distance to travel from one part of an elegant city to the other Note the max distance = to the length of the line.

See Also

ST_MaxDistance, ST_ShortestLine, ST_LongestLine

8.9.43 ST_OrderingEquals

ST_OrderingEquals — Returns true if the given geometries represent the same geometry and points are in the same directional order.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_OrderingEquals**(geometry A, geometry B);

Description

ST_OrderingEquals compares two geometries and returns t (TRUE) if the geometries are equal and the coordinates are in the same order; otherwise it returns f (FALSE).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 312 / 791



Note

This function is implemented as per the ArcSDE SQL specification rather than SQL-MM. http://edndoc.esri.com/arcsde/9.1/sql_api/sqlapi3.htm#ST_OrderingEquals



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.43

Examples

See Also

ST_Equals, ST_Reverse

8.9.44 ST_Overlaps

ST_Overlaps — Returns TRUE if the Geometries share space, are of the same dimension, but are not completely contained by each other.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_Overlaps**(geometry A, geometry B);

Description

Returns TRUE if the Geometries "spatially overlap". By that we mean they intersect, but one does not completely contain another. Performed by the GEOS module



Note

Do not call with a GeometryCollection as an argument

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 313 / 791

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries. To avoid index use, use the function _ST_Overlaps.

NOTE: this is the "allowable" version that returns a boolean, not an integer.



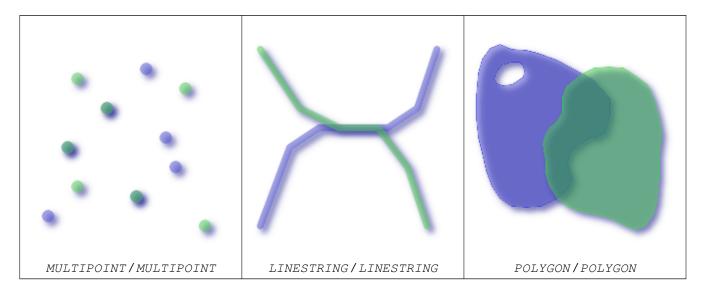
This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.2 // s2.1.13.3



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.32

Examples

The following illustrations all return TRUE.



```
--a point on a line is contained by the line and is of a lower dimension, and therefore \ \ \hookleftarrow
   does not overlap the line
     nor crosses
SELECT ST_Overlaps(a,b) As a_overlap_b,
  ST_Crosses(a,b) As a_crosses_b,
   ST_Intersects(a, b) As a_intersects_b, ST_Contains(b,a) As b_contains_a
FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1 0.5)') As a, ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 0, 1 1, 3 \leftrightarrow
   5)') As b)
  As foo
a_overlap_b | a_crosses_b | a_intersects_b | b_contains_a
_____
                                 | t
                   | t
      | f
--a line that is partly contained by circle, but not fully is defined as intersecting and \,\leftrightarrow
   crossing,
-- but since of different dimension it does not overlap
SELECT ST_Overlaps(a,b) As a_overlap_b, ST_Crosses(a,b) As a_crosses_b,
 ST_Intersects(a, b) As a_intersects_b,
  ST_Contains(a,b) As a_contains_b
FROM (SELECT ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1 0.5)'), 3) As a, ST_GeomFromText(' \leftrightarrow
   LINESTRING(1 0, 1 1, 3 5)') As b)
 As foo;
a_overlap_b | a_crosses_b | a_intersects_b | a_contains_b
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 314 / 791

```
-- a 2-dimensional bent hot dog (aka buffered line string) that intersects a circle,
 -- but is not fully contained by the circle is defined as overlapping since they are of \leftrightarrow
    the same dimension,
   but it does not cross, because the intersection of the 2 is of the same dimension
   as the maximum dimension of the 2
SELECT ST_Overlaps(a,b) As a_overlap_b, ST_Crosses(a,b) As a_crosses_b, ST_Intersects(a, b) \leftarrow
    As a_intersects_b,
ST_Contains(b,a) As b_contains_a,
ST_Dimension(a) As dim_a, ST_Dimension(b) as dim_b, ST_Dimension(ST_Intersection(a,b)) As \leftarrow
   dima_intersection_b
FROM (SELECT ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1 0.5)'), 3) As a,
  ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 0, 1 1, 3 5)'),0.5) As b)
 As foo;
 a_overlap_b | a_crosses_b | a_intersects_b | b_contains_a | dim_a | dim_b | \leftrightarrow
    dima_intersection_b
                                                                    2 |
             | f
```

See Also

ST_Contains, ST_Crosses, ST_Dimension, ST_Intersects

8.9.45 ST_Perimeter

ST_Perimeter — Return the length measurement of the boundary of an ST_Surface or ST_MultiSurface geometry or geography. (Polygon, MultiPolygon). geometry measurement is in units of spatial reference and geography is in meters.

Synopsis

float **ST_Perimeter**(geometry g1); float **ST_Perimeter**(geography geog, boolean use_spheroid=true);

Description

Returns the 2D perimeter of the geometry/geography if it is a ST_Surface, ST_MultiSurface (Polygon, MultiPolygon). 0 is returned for non-areal geometries. For linear geometries use ST_Length. For geometry types, units for perimeter measures are specified by the spatial reference system of the geometry.

For geography types, the calculations are performed using the inverse geodesic problem, where perimeter units are in meters. If PostGIS is compiled with PROJ version 4.8.0 or later, the spheroid is specified by the SRID, otherwise it is exclusive to WGS84. If use_spheroid=false, then calculations will approximate a sphere instead of a spheroid.

Currently this is an alias for ST_Perimeter2D, but this may change to support higher dimensions.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.5.1



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.1.3, 9.5.4

Availability 2.0.0: Support for geography was introduced

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 315 / 791

Examples: Geometry

Return perimeter in feet for Polygon and MultiPolygon. Note this is in feet because EPSG:2249 is Massachusetts State Plane Feet

```
SELECT ST_Perimeter(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((743238 2967416,743238 2967450,743265 2967450,
743265.625 2967416,743238 2967416))', 2249));
st_perimeter
122.630744000095
(1 row)
SELECT ST_Perimeter(ST_GeomFromText('MULTIPOLYGON(((763104.471273676 2949418.44119003,
763104.477769673 2949418.42538203,
763104.189609677 2949418.22343004,763104.471273676 2949418.44119003)),
((763104.471273676 2949418.44119003,763095.804579742 2949436.33850239,
763086.132105649 2949451.46730207,763078.452329651 2949462.11549407,
763075.354136904 2949466.17407812,763064.362142565 2949477.64291974,
763059.953961626 2949481.28983009,762994.637609571 2949532.04103014,
762990.568508415 2949535.06640477,762986.710889563 2949539.61421415,
763117.237897679 2949709.50493431,763235.236617789 2949617.95619822,
763287.718121842 2949562.20592617,763111.553321674 2949423.91664605,
763104.471273676 2949418.44119003)))', 2249));
st_perimeter
845.227713366825
(1 row)
```

Examples: Geography

Return perimeter in meters and feet for Polygon and MultiPolygon. Note this is geography (WGS 84 long lat)

```
SELECT ST_Perimeter(geog) As per_meters, ST_Perimeter(geog)/0.3048 As per_ft
FROM ST_GeogFromText('POLYGON((-71.1776848522251 42.3902896512902,-71.1776843766326 \leftrightarrow
   42.3903829478009,
-71.1775844305465 42.3903826677917, -71.1775825927231 42.3902893647987, -71.1776848522251
   42.3902896512902))') As geog;
  per meters |
                      per_ft
37.3790462565251 | 122.634666195949
-- MultiPolygon example --
SELECT ST_Perimeter(geog) As per_meters, ST_Perimeter(geog, false) As per_sphere_meters,
   ST_Perimeter(geog)/0.3048 As per_ft
FROM ST_GeogFromText('MULTIPOLYGON(((-71.1044543107478 42.340674480411,-71.1044542869917 \leftrightarrow
   42.3406744369506,
-71.1044553562977 42.340673886454, -71.1044543107478 42.340674480411)),
((-71.1044543107478\ 42.340674480411, -71.1044860600303\ 42.3407237015564, -71.1045215770124)
   42.3407653385914,
-71.1045498002983 42.3407946553165,-71.1045611902745 42.3408058316308,-71.1046016507427
   42.340837442371,
-71.104617893173 42.3408475056957,-71.1048586153981 42.3409875993595,-71.1048736143677 \leftrightarrow
   42.3409959528211,
-71.1039672113619 \ 42.3412202916693, -71.1037740497748 \ 42.3410666421308,
-71.1044280218456 42.3406894151355,-71.1044543107478 42.340674480411)))') As geog;
                | per_sphere_meters |
   per meters
                                           per_ft
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 316 / 791

257.634283683311 | 257.412311446337 | 845.256836231335

See Also

ST_GeogFromText, ST_GeomFromText, ST_Length

8.9.46 ST_Perimeter2D

ST_Perimeter2D — Returns the 2-dimensional perimeter of the geometry, if it is a polygon or multi-polygon. This is currently an alias for ST_Perimeter.

Synopsis

float ST_Perimeter2D(geometry geomA);

Description

Returns the 2-dimensional perimeter of the geometry, if it is a polygon or multi-polygon.



Note

This is currently an alias for ST_Perimeter. In future versions ST_Perimeter may return the highest dimension perimeter for a geometry. This is still under consideration

See Also

ST_Perimeter

8.9.47 ST 3DPerimeter

ST_3DPerimeter — Returns the 3-dimensional perimeter of the geometry, if it is a polygon or multi-polygon.

Synopsis

float ST_3DPerimeter(geometry geomA);

Description

Returns the 3-dimensional perimeter of the geometry, if it is a polygon or multi-polygon. If the geometry is 2-dimensional, then the 2-dimensional perimeter is returned.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Perimeter3D

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 317 / 791

Examples

Perimeter of a slightly elevated polygon in the air in Massachusetts state plane feet

```
SELECT ST_3DPerimeter(the_geom), ST_Perimeter2d(the_geom), ST_Perimeter(the_geom) FROM
      (SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=2249; POLYGON((743238 2967416 2,743238 2967450 1,
743265.625 2967416 1,743238 2967416 2))') As the_geom) As foo;
  ST_3DPerimeter | st_perimeter2d | st_perimeter
105.465793597674 | 105.432997272188 | 105.432997272188
```

See Also

ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_Perimeter, ST_Perimeter2D

8.9.48 ST_PointOnSurface

ST_PointOnSurface — Returns a POINT guaranteed to lie on the surface.

Synopsis

geometry ST_PointOnSurface(geometry g1);

Description

Returns a POINT guaranteed to intersect a surface.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.1.5, 9.5.6. According to the specs, ST PointOnSurface

This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s3.2.14.2 // s3.2.18.2

works for surface geometries (POLYGONs, MULTIPOLYGONS, CURVED POLYGONS). So PostGIS seems to be extending what the spec allows here. Most databases Oracle, DB II, ESRI SDE seem to only support this function for surfaces. SQL Server 2008 like PostGIS supports for all common geometries.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_PointOnSurface('POINT(0 5)'::geometry));
st_astext
POINT(0 5)
(1 row)
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_PointOnSurface('LINESTRING(0 5, 0 10)'::geometry));
st_astext
POINT(0 5)
(1 row)
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_PointOnSurface('POLYGON((0 0, 0 5, 5 5, 5 0, 0 0))'::geometry));
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 318 / 791

```
st_astext
------
POINT(2.5 2.5)
(1 row)

SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_PointOnSurface(ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(0 5 1, 0 0 1, 0 10 2)')));
st_asewkt
------
POINT(0 0 1)
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_Centroid, ST_PointInsideCircle

8.9.49 ST_Project

ST_Project — Returns a POINT projected from a start point using a distance in meters and bearing (azimuth) in radians.

Synopsis

geography ST_Project(geography g1, float distance, float azimuth);

Description

Returns a POINT projected along a geodesic from a start point using an azimuth (bearing) measured in radians and distance measured in meters. This is also called a direct geodesic problem.

The azimuth is sometimes called the heading or the bearing in navigation. It is measured relative to true north (azimuth zero). East is azimuth 90 (π /2), south is azimuth 180 (π), west is azimuth 270 (3 π /2).

The distance is given in meters.

Availability: 2.0.0

Example: Using degrees - projected point 100,000 meters and bearing 45 degrees

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Project('POINT(0 0)'::geography, 100000, radians(45.0)));

st_astext

POINT(0.635231029125537 0.639472334729198)
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_Azimuth, ST_Distance, PostgreSQL Math Functions

8.9.50 ST_Relate

ST_Relate — Returns true if this Geometry is spatially related to anotherGeometry, by testing for intersections between the Interior, Boundary and Exterior of the two geometries as specified by the values in the intersectionMatrixPattern. If no intersectionMatrixPattern is passed in, then returns the maximum intersectionMatrixPattern that relates the 2 geometries.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 319 / 791

Synopsis

boolean **ST_Relate**(geometry geomA, geometry geomB, text intersectionMatrixPattern); text **ST_Relate**(geometry geomA, geometry geomB); text **ST_Relate**(geometry geomA, geometry geomB, integer BoundaryNodeRule);

Description

Version 1: Takes geomA, geomB, intersectionMatrix and Returns 1 (TRUE) if this Geometry is spatially related to anotherGeometry, by testing for intersections between the Interior, Boundary and Exterior of the two geometries as specified by the values in the DE-9IM matrix pattern.

This is especially useful for testing compound checks of intersection, crosses, etc in one step.

Do not call with a GeometryCollection as an argument



Note

This is the "allowable" version that returns a boolean, not an integer. This is defined in OGC spec



Note

This DOES NOT automagically include an index call. The reason for that is some relationships are anti e.g. Disjoint. If you are using a relationship pattern that requires intersection, then include the && index call.

Version 2: Takes geomA and geomB and returns the Section 4.3.6

Version 3: same as version 2, but allows to specify a boundary node rule (1:OGC/MOD2, 2:Endpoint, 3:MultivalentEndpoint, 4:MonovalentEndpoint)



Note

Do not call with a GeometryCollection as an argument

not in OGC spec, but implied. see s2.1.13.2

Performed by the GEOS module



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.2 // s2.1.13.3



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.25

Enhanced: 2.0.0 - added support for specifying boundary node rule (requires GEOS \geq = 3.0).

```
--Find all compounds that intersect and not touch a poly (interior intersects)

SELECT 1.*, b.name As poly_name
FROM polys As b

INNER JOIN compounds As 1

ON (p.the_geom && b.the_geom
AND ST_Relate(1.the_geom, b.the_geom, 'T*******'));
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 320 / 791

```
SELECT ST_Relate(ST_GeometryFromText('POINT(1 2)'), ST_Buffer(ST_GeometryFromText('POINT(1 \leftrightarrow
   2)'),2));
st_relate
OFFFFF212
SELECT ST_Relate(ST_GeometryFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4)'), ST_GeometryFromText(' \leftrightarrow
   LINESTRING(5 6, 7 8)'));
st_relate
FF1FF0102
SELECT ST_Relate(ST_GeometryFromText('POINT(1 2)'), ST_Buffer(ST_GeometryFromText('POINT(1 \leftrightarrow
    2)'),2), 'OFFFFF212');
st_relate
t.
SELECT ST_Relate(ST_GeometryFromText('POINT(1 2)'), ST_Buffer(ST_GeometryFromText('POINT(1 \leftrightarrow
    2)'),2), '*FF*FF212');
st relate
t
```

See Also

ST_Crosses, Section 4.3.6, ST_Disjoint, ST_Intersects, ST_Touches

8.9.51 ST_RelateMatch

ST_RelateMatch — Returns true if intersectionMattrixPattern1 implies intersectionMatrixPattern2

Synopsis

boolean ST_RelateMatch(text intersectionMatrix, text intersectionMatrixPattern);

Description

Takes intersectionMatrix and intersectionMatrixPattern and Returns true if the intersectionMatrix satisfies the intersectionMatrixPattern. For more information refer to Section 4.3.6.

Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.3.0.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 321 / 791

See Also

Section 4.3.6, ST_Relate

8.9.52 ST_ShortestLine

ST_ShortestLine — Returns the 2-dimensional shortest line between two geometries

Synopsis

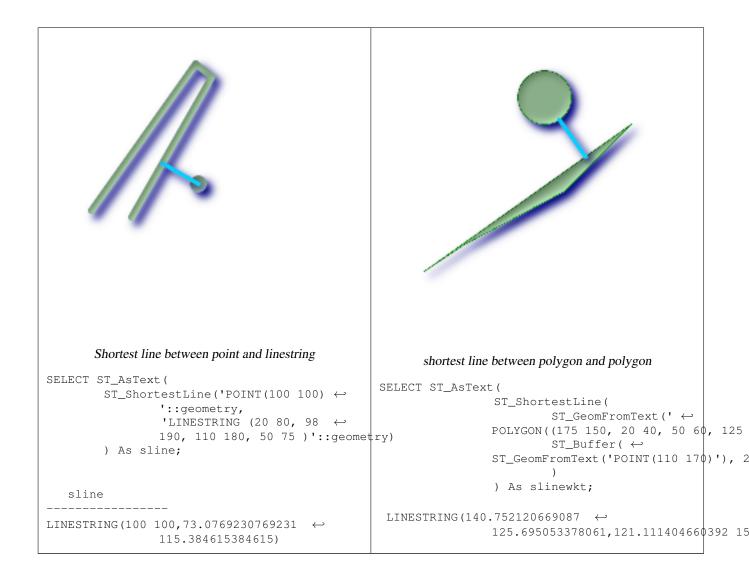
geometry ST_ShortestLine(geometry g1, geometry g2);

Description

Returns the 2-dimensional shortest line between two geometries. The function will only return the first shortest line if more than one, that the function finds. If g1 and g2 intersects in just one point the function will return a line with both start and end in that intersection-point. If g1 and g2 are intersecting with more than one point the function will return a line with start and end in the same point but it can be any of the intersecting points. The line returned will always start in g1 and end in g2. The length of the line this function returns will always be the same as ST_Distance returns for g1 and g2.

Availability: 1.5.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 322 / 791



See Also

ST_ClosestPoint, ST_Distance, ST_LongestLine, ST_MaxDistance

8.9.53 ST_Touches

ST_Touches — Returns TRUE if the geometries have at least one point in common, but their interiors do not intersect.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_Touches**(geometry g1, geometry g2);

Description

Returns TRUE if the only points in common between g1 and g2 lie in the union of the boundaries of g1 and g2. The ST_To uches relation applies to all Area/Area, Line/Line, Line/Area, Point/Area and Point/Line pairs of relationships, but *not* to the Point/Point pair.

In mathematical terms, this predicate is expressed as:

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 323 / 791

$$a.Touches(b) \Leftrightarrow (I(a) \cap I(b) = \emptyset) \land (a \cap b) \neq \emptyset$$

The allowable DE-9IM Intersection Matrices for the two geometries are:

- FT*****
- F**T****
- F***T***



Important

Do not call with a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION as an argument



Note

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries. To avoid using an index, use _ST_Touches instead.



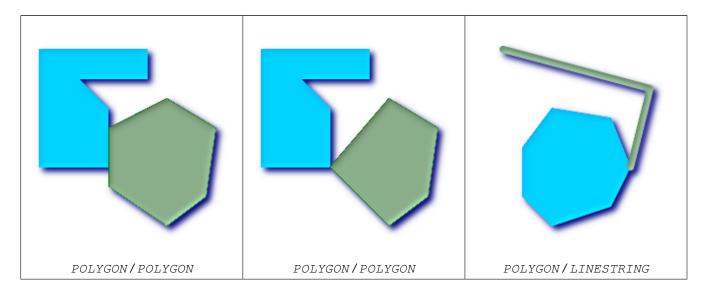
This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.2 // s2.1.13.3



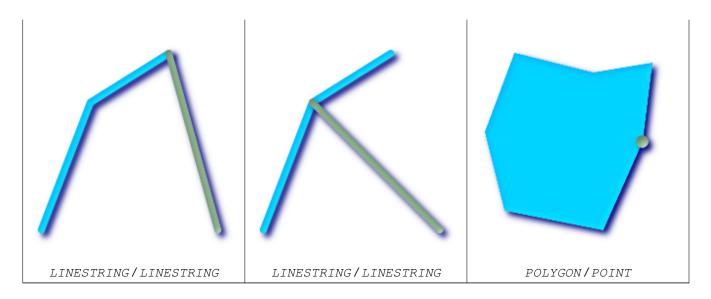
This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.28

Examples

The ST_Touches predicate returns TRUE in all the following illustrations.



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 324 / 791



8.9.54 ST_Within

ST_Within — Returns true if the geometry A is completely inside geometry B

Synopsis

boolean **ST_Within**(geometry A, geometry B);

Description

Returns TRUE if geometry A is completely inside geometry B. For this function to make sense, the source geometries must both be of the same coordinate projection, having the same SRID. It is a given that if $ST_Within(A,B)$ is true and $ST_Within(B,A)$ is true, then the two geometries are considered spatially equal.

Performed by the GEOS module

Enhanced: 2.3.0 Enhancement to PIP short-circuit for geometry extended to support MultiPoints with few points. Prior versions only supported point in polygon.



Important

Do not call with a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION as an argument

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 325 / 791



Important

Do not use this function with invalid geometries. You will get unexpected results.

This function call will automatically include a bounding box comparison that will make use of any indexes that are available on the geometries. To avoid index use, use the function _ST_Within.

NOTE: this is the "allowable" version that returns a boolean, not an integer.

This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.2 // s2.1.13.3 - a.Relate(b, 'T*F**F***')



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.30

Examples

```
--a circle within a circle
SELECT ST_Within(smallc, smallc) As smallinsmall,
 ST_Within(smallc, bigc) As smallinbig,
 ST_Within(bigc, smallc) As biginsmall,
 ST_Within(ST_Union(smallc, bigc), bigc) as unioninbig,
 ST_Within(bigc, ST_Union(smallc, bigc)) as biginunion,
 ST_Equals(bigc, ST_Union(smallc, bigc)) as bigisunion
FROM
(
SELECT ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(50 50)'), 20) As smallc,
 ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(50 50)'), 40) As bigc) As foo;
--Result
smallinsmall | smallinbig | biginsmall | unioninbig | biginunion | bigisunion
      -----
             | t
                        | f
                                   | t
                                                | t
(1 row)
```



See Also

ST_Contains, ST_Equals, ST_IsValid

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 326 / 791

8.10 SFCGAL Functions

8.10.1 postgis_sfcgal_version

postgis_sfcgal_version — Returns the version of SFCGAL in use

Synopsis

text postgis_sfcgal_version(void);

Description

Availability: 2.1.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

8.10.2 ST_Extrude

ST_Extrude — Extrude a surface to a related volume

Synopsis

geometry **ST_Extrude**(geometry geom, float x, float y, float z);

Description

Availability: 2.1.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

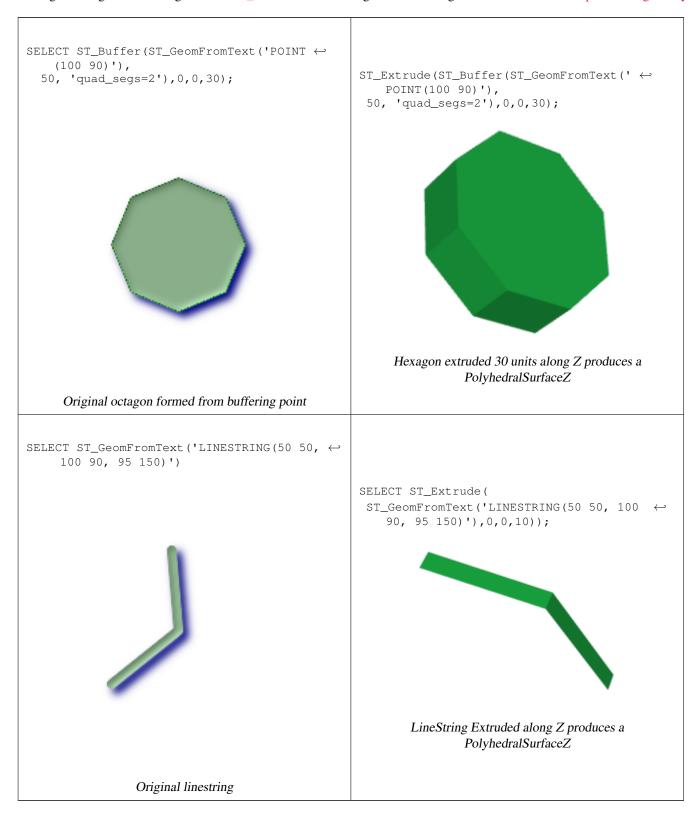


This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 327 / 791

Examples

3D images were generated using PostGIS ST_AsX3D and rendering in HTML using X3Dom HTML Javascript rendering library.



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 328 / 791

See Also

ST_AsX3D

8.10.3 ST_StraightSkeleton

ST_StraightSkeleton — Compute a straight skeleton from a geometry

Synopsis

geometry ST_StraightSkeleton(geometry geom);

Description

Availability: 2.1.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



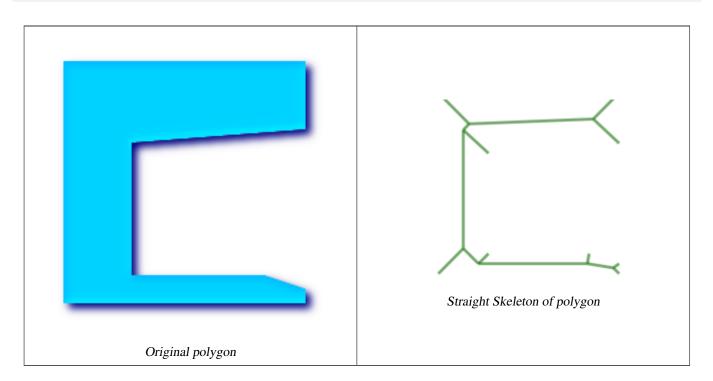
This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

SELECT ST_StraightSkeleton(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON ((190 190, 10 190, 10 10, 190 10, 190 \leftrightarrow 20, 160 30, 60 30, 60 130, 190 140, 190 190))'));



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 329 / 791

8.10.4 ST_ApproximateMedialAxis

ST_ApproximateMedialAxis — Compute the approximate medial axis of an areal geometry.

Synopsis

geometry ST_ApproximateMedialAxis(geometry geom);

Description

Return an approximate medial axis for the areal input based on its straight skeleton. Uses an SFCGAL specific API when built against a capable version (1.2.0+). Otherwise the function is just a wrapper around ST_StraightSkeleton (slower case).

Availability: 2.2.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



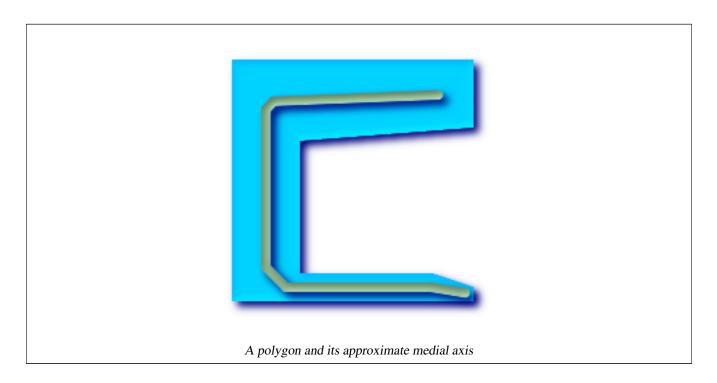
This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

SELECT ST_ApproximateMedialAxis(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON ((190 190, 10 190, 10 10, 190 10, \leftrightarrow 190 20, 160 30, 60 30, 60 130, 190 140, 190 190))'));



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 330 / 791

See Also

ST_StraightSkeleton

8.10.5 ST_IsPlanar

ST_IsPlanar — Check if a surface is or not planar

Synopsis

boolean **ST_IsPlanar**(geometry geom);

Description

Availability: 2.2.0: This was documented in 2.1.0 but got accidentally left out in 2.1 release.



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

8.10.6 ST_Orientation

ST_Orientation — Determine surface orientation

Synopsis

integer ST_Orientation(geometry geom);

Description

The function only applies to polygons. It returns -1 if the polygon is counterclockwise oriented and 1 if the polygon is clockwise oriented.

Availability: 2.1.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

8.10.7 ST_ForceLHR

ST_ForceLHR — Force LHR orientation

Synopsis

geometry ST_ForceLHR(geometry geom);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 331 / 791

Description

Availability: 2.1.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

8.10.8 ST MinkowskiSum

 $ST_MinkowskiSum --- Performs\ Minkowski\ sum$

Synopsis

geometry ST_MinkowskiSum(geometry geom1, geometry geom2);

Description

This function performs a 2D minkowski sum of a point, line or polygon with a polygon.

A minkowski sum of two geometries A and B is the set of all points that are the sum of any point in A and B. Minkowski sums are often used in motion planning and computer-aided design. More details on Wikipedia Minkowski addition.

The first parameter can be any 2D geometry (point, linestring, polygon). If a 3D geometry is passed, it will be converted to 2D by forcing Z to 0, leading to possible cases of invalidity. The second parameter must be a 2D polygon.

Implementation utilizes CGAL 2D Minkowskisum.

Availability: 2.1.0

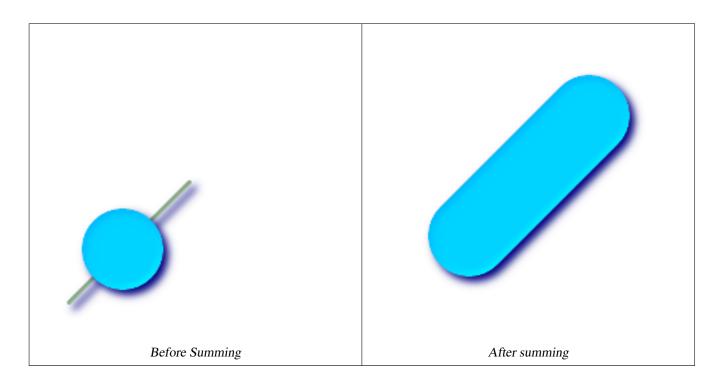


This method needs SFCGAL backend.

Examples

Minkowski Sum of Linestring and circle polygon where Linestring cuts thru the circle

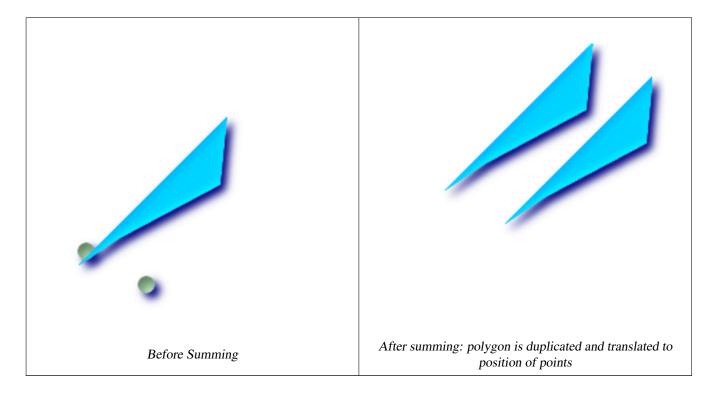
PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 332 / 791



```
SELECT ST_MinkowskiSum(line, circle))
FROM (SELECT
    ST_MakeLine(ST_MakePoint(10, 10),ST_MakePoint(100, 100)) As line,
    ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(50 50)'), 30) As circle) As foo;
48.5194970290472,35.0559116309237 43.3328930094119,38.7867965644036 \leftrightarrow
    38.7867965644035,43.332893009412 35.0559116309236,48.5194970290474
    32.2836140246614, \\ 54.1472903395162 \quad 30.5764415879031, \\ 60.0000000000001 \quad 30,65.8527096604839 \quad \hookleftarrow
    30.5764415879031,71.4805029709527 32.2836140246614,76.6671069905881 \leftrightarrow
    35.0559116309237,81.2132034355964 38.7867965644036,171.213203435596 \leftrightarrow
   128.786796564404,174.944088369076 133.332893009412,177.716385975339 \leftarrow
   138.519497029047,179.423558412097 144.147290339516,180 150,179.423558412097
    155.852709660484,177.716385975339 161.480502970953,174.944088369076 \leftrightarrow
   166.667106990588,171.213203435596 171.213203435596,166.667106990588 174.944088369076,
161.480502970953 \ 177.716385975339, 155.852709660484 \ 179.423558412097, 150 \ \ \hookleftarrow
    180,144.147290339516 \ 179.423558412097,138.519497029047 \ 177.716385975339,133.332893009412 \ \hookleftarrow
    174.944088369076,128.786796564403 171.213203435596,38.7867965644035 \leftrightarrow
    81.2132034355963, 35.0559116309236 \ 76.667106990588, 32.2836140246614 \ \ \hookleftarrow
    71.4805029709526,30.5764415879031 65.8527096604838,30 59.999999999999)))
```

Minkowski Sum of a polygon and multipoint

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 333 / 791



```
SELECT ST_MinkowskiSum(mp, poly)
FROM (SELECT 'MULTIPOINT(25 50,70 25)'::geometry As mp,
    'POLYGON((130 150, 20 40, 50 60, 125 100, 130 150))'::geometry As poly
    ) As foo

-- wkt --
MULTIPOLYGON(
    ((70 115,100 135,175 175,225 225,70 115)),
    ((120 65,150 85,225 125,275 175,120 65))
    )
```

8.10.9 ST_3DIntersection

ST_3DIntersection — Perform 3D intersection

Synopsis

geometry ST_3DIntersection(geometry geom1, geometry geom2);

Description

Return a geometry that is the shared portion between geom1 and geom2.

Availability: 2.1.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 334 / 791



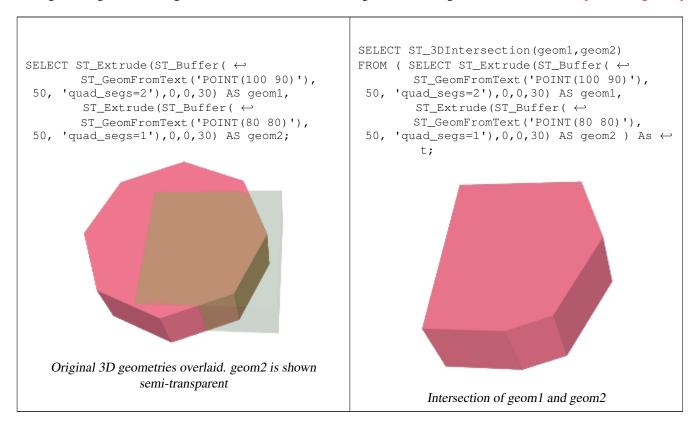
This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

3D images were generated using PostGIS ST_AsX3D and rendering in HTML using X3Dom HTML Javascript rendering library.



3D linestrings and polygons

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_3DIntersection(linestring, polygon)) As wkt

FROM ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING Z (2 2 6,1.5 1.5 7,1 1 8,0.5 0.5 8,0 0 10)') AS ↔
linestring
CROSS JOIN ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((0 0 8, 0 1 8, 1 1 8, 1 0 8, 0 0 8))') AS polygon;

wkt

LINESTRING Z (1 1 8,0.5 0.5 8)
```

Cube (closed Polyhedral Surface) and Polygon Z

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_3DIntersection(
    ST_GeomFromText('POLYHEDRALSURFACE Z( ((0 0 0, 0 0 1, 0 1 1, 0 1 0, 0 0 0)),
    ((0 0 0, 0 1 0, 1 1 0, 1 0 0, 0 0 0)), ((0 0 0, 1 0 0, 1 0 1, 0 0 1, 0 0 0)),
    ((1 1 0, 1 1 1, 1 0 1, 1 0 0, 1 1 0)),
    ((0 1 0, 0 1 1, 1 1 1, 1 1 0, 0 1 0)), ((0 0 1, 1 0 1, 1 1 1, 0 1 1, 0 0 1)) )'),
    'POLYGON Z ((0 0 0, 0 0 0.5, 0 0.5 0.5, 0 0.5 0, 0 0 0))'::geometry))
```

TIN Z (((0 0 0,0 0 0.5,0 0.5 0.5,0 0 0)),((0 0.5 0,0 0 0,0 0.5 0.5,0 0.5 0)))

Intersection of 2 solids that result in volumetric intersection is also a solid (ST_Dimension returns 3)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 335 / 791

```
SELECT ST_ASText(ST_3DIntersection( ST_Extrude(ST_Buffer('POINT(10 20)'::geometry,10,1) ←
ST_Extrude(ST_Buffer('POINT(10 20)'::geometry,10,1),2,0,10) ));
20 10)),
 ((20 20 0,16.6666666666667 23.3333333333333 10,20 20 10,20 20 0)),
 10)),
 10,16.6666666666667 23.33333333333333 10)),
 ((20 20 0,9.999999999995 30 0,16.666666666667 23.3333333333333333 10,20 20 0)),
 10,12 12 10,10 10 0,13.33333333333 13.333333333333 10)),
 23.333333333333 10)),
 ((10 10 0,0 20 0,9.999999999999 30 0,10 10 0)),
 ((12 12 10,11 11 10,10 10 0,12 12 10)),((12 28 10,11 11 10,12 12 10,12 28 10)),
 ((9.99999999999 30 0,11 29 10,12 28 10,9.99999999999 30 0)),((0 20 0,2 20
   10,9.999999999999 30 0,0 20 0)),
 ((10\ 10\ 0.2\ 20\ 10.0\ 20\ 0.10\ 10\ 0)),((11\ 11\ 10.2\ 20\ 10.10\ 10\ 0.11\ 11\ 10)),((12\ 28\ 10.11\ 29\leftrightarrow 0.10\ 10\ 0.11)
    10,11 11 10,12 28 10)),
 ((9.9999999999995\ 30\ 0,2\ 20\ 10,11\ 29\ 10,9.9999999999995\ 30\ 0)),((11\ 11\ 10,11\ 29\ 10,2\ 20\ \leftrightarrow\ 10,0))
    10,11 11 10)))
```

8.10.10 ST 3DDifference

ST_3DDifference — Perform 3D difference

Synopsis

geometry ST_3DDifference(geometry geom1, geometry geom2);

Description

Returns that part of geom1 that is not part of geom2.

Availability: 2.2.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

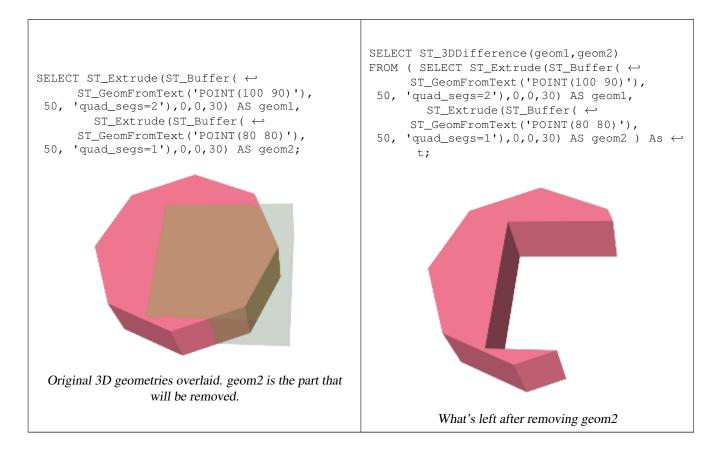


This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

3D images were generated using PostGIS ST_AsX3D and rendering in HTML using X3Dom HTML Javascript rendering library.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 336 / 791



See Also

ST_Extrude, ST_AsX3D, ST_3DIntersection ST_3DUnion

8.10.11 ST_3DUnion

ST_3DUnion — Perform 3D union

Synopsis

geometry ST_3DUnion(geometry geom1, geometry geom2);

Description

Availability: 2.2.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.

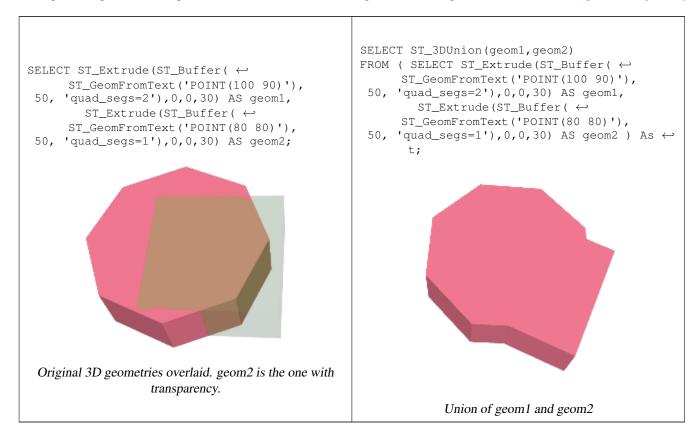


This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 337 / 791

Examples

3D images were generated using PostGIS ST_AsX3D and rendering in HTML using X3Dom HTML Javascript rendering library.



See Also

ST_Extrude, ST_AsX3D, ST_3DIntersection ST_3DDifference

8.10.12 ST 3DArea

ST_3DArea — Computes area of 3D surface geometries. Will return 0 for solids.

Synopsis

floatST_3DArea(geometry geom1);

Description

Availability: 2.1.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 338 / 791

Examples

Note: By default a PolyhedralSurface built from WKT is a surface geometry, not solid. It therefore has surface area. Once converted to a solid, no area.

See Also

ST_Area, ST_MakeSolid, ST_IsSolid, ST_Area

8.10.13 ST_Tesselate

ST_Tesselate — Perform surface Tesselation of a polygon or polyhedral surface and returns as a TIN or collection of TINS

Synopsis

geometry ST_Tesselate(geometry geom);

Description

Takes as input a surface such a MULTI(POLYGON) or POLYHEDRALSURFACE and returns a TIN representation via the process of tesselation using triangles.

Availability: 2.1.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

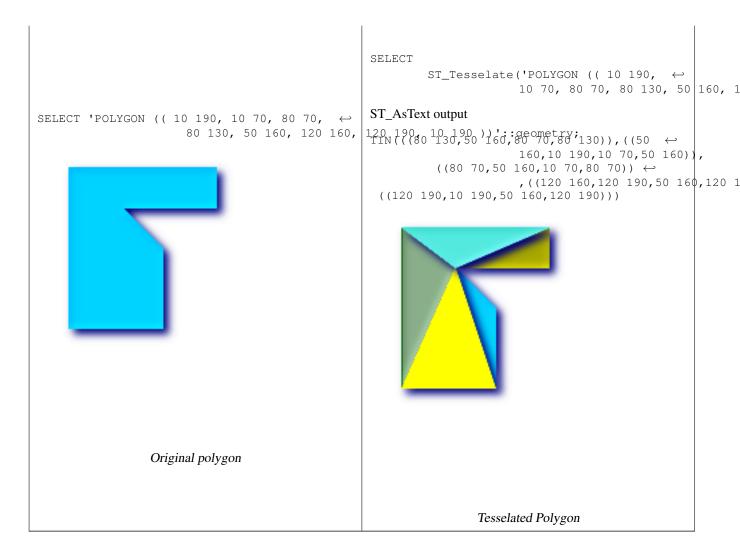
Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 339 / 791

```
SELECT ST_Tesselate(ST_GeomFromText(' \leftarrow
                                                                            POLYHEDRALSURFACE Z( ((0 0 0, 0
                                                              ((0 0 0, 0 1 0, 1 1 0, 1 0 0, 0 0 \leftarrow
                                                              ((1\ 1\ 0,\ 1\ 1\ 1,\ 1\ 0\ 1,\ 1\ 0\ 0,\ 1\ 0),\ 1\ \leftrightarrow
                                                                             0)),
                                                              ((0\ 1\ 0,\ 0\ 1\ 1,\ 1\ 1\ 1,\ 1\ 1\ 0,\ 0\ 1\ \hookleftarrow
                                                                             0)), ((0 0 1, 1 0 1, 1 1
SELECT ST_GeomFromText('POLYHEDRALSURFACE \leftarrow
                        Z( ((0 0 0, 0 0 1, 0 1 / 'ST_AsText output.'),
                  ((0\ 0\ 0,\ 0\ 1\ 0,\ 1\ 1\ 0,\ 1\ \leftrightarrow
                       0 0, 0 0 0)), ((0 0 0, 1
                                                   OrfN 2 P( 0 0 0, 0, 0 0, 0 0), ((0 1 ↔
                  ((1 1 0, 1 1 1, 1 0 1, 1 \leftrightarrow
                                                                            0,0000,011,010)),
                       0 0, 1 1 0)),
                                                              ((0 0 0,0 1 0,1 1 0,0 0 0)),
                       ((0 1 0, 0 1 1, 1 1 1, 1 ↔
                                                              ((0 0 1,0 0 0,1 0 0,0 0 1)),
                                                              ((1\ 1\ 0,1\ 1\ 1,1\ 0\ 1,1\ 1\ 0)),((1\ 0\ \leftrightarrow
                                                                             0,1 1 0,1 0 1,1 0 0)),
                                                              ((0\ 1\ 0,0\ 1\ 1,1\ 1\ 1,0\ 1\ 0)),((1\ 1\leftrightarrow
                                                                             0,0 1 0,1 1 1,1 1 0)),
                                                              ((0 1 1,1 0 1,1 1 1,0 1 1)),((0 1 \leftrightarrow
                                                                             1,0 0 1,1 0 1,0 1 1)))
                   Original Cube
                                                             Tesselated Cube with triangles colored
```

1, 0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 340 / 791



8.10.14 ST_Volume

ST_Volume — Computes the volume of a 3D solid. If applied to surface (even closed) geometries will return 0.

Synopsis

float ST_Volume(geometry geom1);

Description

Availability: 2.2.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 341 / 791

Example

When closed surfaces are created with WKT, they are treated as areal rather than solid. To make them solid, you need to use ST_MakeSolid. Areal geometries have no volume. Here is an example to demonstrate.

See Also

ST_3DArea, ST_MakeSolid, ST_IsSolid

8.10.15 ST_MakeSolid

ST_MakeSolid — Cast the geometry into a solid. No check is performed. To obtain a valid solid, the input geometry must be a closed Polyhedral Surface or a closed TIN.

Synopsis

geometryST_MakeSolid(geometry geom1);

Description

Availability: 2.2.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

8.10.16 ST_lsSolid

ST_IsSolid — Test if the geometry is a solid. No validity check is performed.

Synopsis

boolean ST_IsSolid (geometry geom 1);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 342 / 791

Description

Availability: 2.2.0



This method needs SFCGAL backend.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

8.11 Geometry Processing

8.11.1 ST Buffer

ST_Buffer — (T) Returns a geometry covering all points within a given distance from the input geometry.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_Buffer(geometry g1, float radius_of_buffer); geometry ST_Buffer(geometry g1, float radius_of_buffer, integer num_seg_quarter_circle); geometry ST_Buffer(geometry g1, float radius_of_buffer, text buffer_style_parameters); geography ST_Buffer(geography g1, float radius_of_buffer, integer num_seg_quarter_circle); geography ST_Buffer(geography g1, float radius_of_buffer, integer num_seg_quarter_circle); geography ST_Buffer(geography g1, float radius_of_buffer, text buffer_style_parameters);
```

Description

Returns a geometry/geography that represents all points whose distance from this Geometry/geography is less than or equal to distance.

Geometry: Calculations are in the Spatial Reference System of the geometry. Introduced in 1.5 support for different end cap and mitre settings to control shape.



Note

Negative radii: For polygons, a negative radius can be used, which will shrink the polygon rather than expanding it.



Note

Geography: For geography this is really a thin wrapper around the geometry implementation. It first determines the best SRID that fits the bounding box of the geography object (favoring UTM, Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area (LAEA) north/south pole, and falling back on mercator in worst case scenario) and then buffers in that planar spatial ref and retransforms back to WGS84 geography.

For geography this may not behave as expected if object is sufficiently large that it falls between two UTM zones or crosses the dateline

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 343 / 791

Availability: 1.5 - ST_Buffer was enhanced to support different endcaps and join types. These are useful for example to convert road linestrings into polygon roads with flat or square edges instead of rounded edges. Thin wrapper for geography was added. - requires GEOS >= 3.2 to take advantage of advanced geometry functionality.

The optional third parameter (currently only applies to geometry) can either specify number of segments used to approximate a quarter circle (integer case, defaults to 8) or a list of blank-separated key=value pairs (string case) to tweak operations as follows:

- 'quad_segs=#': number of segments used to approximate a quarter circle (defaults to 8).
- 'endcap=roundlflatlsquare': endcap style (defaults to "round", needs GEOS-3.2 or higher for a different value). 'butt' is also accepted as a synonym for 'flat'.
- 'join=roundlmitrelbevel' : join style (defaults to "round", needs GEOS-3.2 or higher for a different value). 'miter' is also accepted as a synonym for 'mitre'.
- 'mitre_limit=#.#': mitre ratio limit (only affects mitered join style). 'mitre_limit' is also accepted as a synonym for 'mitre_limit'.

Units of radius are measured in units of the spatial reference system.

The inputs can be POINTS, MULTIPOINTS, LINESTRINGS, MULTILINESTRINGS, POLYGONS, MULTIPOLYGONS, and GeometryCollections.



Note

This function ignores the third dimension (z) and will always give a 2-d buffer even when presented with a 3d-geometry.

Performed by the GEOS module.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.3



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.17

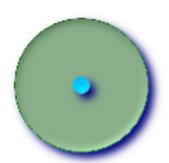


Note

People often make the mistake of using this function to try to do radius searches. Creating a buffer to to a radius search is slow and pointless. Use ST DWithin instead.

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 344 / 791



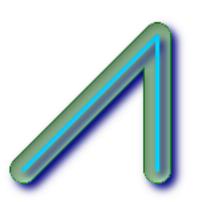
quad_segs=8 (default)

```
SELECT ST_Buffer(
ST_GeomFromText('POINT(100 90)'),
50, 'quad_segs=8');
```



quad_segs=2 (lame)

```
SELECT ST_Buffer(
ST_GeomFromText('POINT(100 90)'),
50, 'quad_segs=2');
```



endcap=round join=round (default)

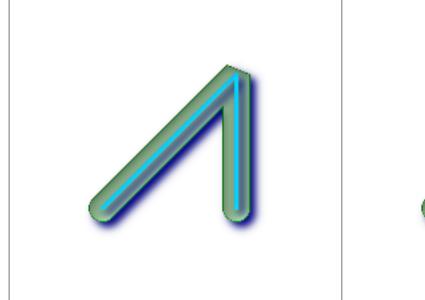
```
SELECT ST_Buffer(
ST_GeomFromText(
  'LINESTRING(50 50,150 150,150 50)'
), 10, 'endcap=round join=round');
```



endcap=square

```
SELECT ST_Buffer(
ST_GeomFromText(
  'LINESTRING(50 50,150 150,150 50)'
), 10, 'endcap=square join=round');
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 345 / 791



join=bevel

'LINESTRING(50 50,150 150,150 50)'

SELECT ST_Buffer(

ST GeomFromText(

), 10, 'join=bevel');

```
join=mitre_limit=5.0 (default mitre limit)
```

```
--A buffered point approximates a circle
-- A buffered point forcing approximation of (see diagram)
-- 2 points per circle is poly with 8 sides (see diagram)
SELECT ST_NPoints(ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(100 90)'), 50)) As \leftrightarrow
   promisingcircle_pcount,
ST_NPoints(ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(100 90)'), 50, 2)) As lamecircle_pcount;
promisingcircle_pcount | lamecircle_pcount
-----+-----
     33 |
--A lighter but lamer circle
-- only 2 points per quarter circle is an octagon
--Below is a 100 meter octagon
-- Note coordinates are in NAD 83 long lat which we transform
to Mass state plane meter and then buffer to get measurements in meters;
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Buffer(
ST_Transform(
ST_SetSRID(ST_MakePoint(-71.063526, 42.35785),4269), 26986)
,100,2)) As octagon;
POLYGON((236057.59057465 900908.759918696,236028.301252769 900838.049240578,235
957.59057465 900808.759918696,235886.879896532 900838.049240578,235857.59057465
900908.759918696,235886.879896532 900979.470596815,235957.59057465 901008.759918
696,236028.301252769 900979.470596815,236057.59057465 900908.759918696))
```

SELECT ST_Buffer(

ST_GeomFromText(

'LINESTRING(50 50,150 150,150 50)'

), 10, 'join=mitre mitre_limit=5.0');

See Also

ST_Collect, ST_DWithin, ST_SetSRID, ST_Transform, ST_Union

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 346 / 791

8.11.2 ST_BuildArea

ST_BuildArea — Creates an areal geometry formed by the constituent linework of given geometry

Synopsis

geometry ST_BuildArea(geometry A);

Description

Creates an areal geometry formed by the constituent linework of given geometry. The return type can be a Polygon or Multi-Polygon, depending on input. If the input lineworks do not form polygons NULL is returned. The inputs can be LINESTRINGS, MULTILINESTRINGS, POLYGONS, MULTIPOLYGONS, and GeometryCollections.

This function will assume all inner geometries represent holes

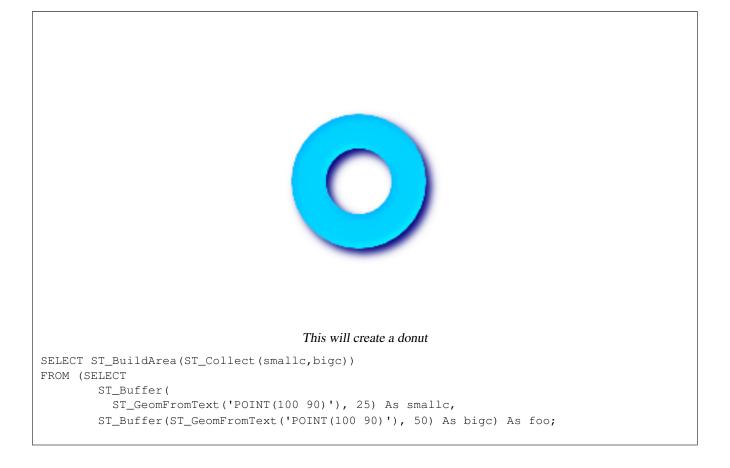


Note

Input linework must be correctly noded for this function to work properly

Availability: 1.1.0 - requires GEOS >= 2.1.0.

Examples



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 347 / 791



This will create a gaping hole inside the circle with prongs sticking out

See Also

ST_Node, ST_MakePolygon, ST_BdPolyFromText, ST_BdMPolyFromTextwrappers to this function with standard OGC interface

8.11.3 ST_ClipByBox2D

ST_ClipByBox2D — Returns the portion of a geometry falling within a rectangle.

Synopsis

geometry ST_ClipByBox2D(geometry geom, box2d box);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 348 / 791

Description

Clips a geometry by a 2D box in a fast but possibly dirty way. The output geometry is not guaranteed to be valid (self-intersections for a polygon may be introduced). Topologically invalid input geometries do not result in exceptions being thrown.

Performed by the GEOS module.



Note

Requires GEOS 3.5.0+

Availability: 2.2.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.5.0.

Examples

```
-- Rely on implicit cast from geometry to box2d for the second parameter SELECT ST_ClipByBox2D(the_geom, ST_MakeEnvelope(0,0,10,10)) FROM mytab;
```

See Also

ST_Intersection, ST_MakeBox2D, ST_MakeEnvelope

8.11.4 ST_Collect

ST_Collect — Return a specified ST_Geometry value from a collection of other geometries.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_Collect(geometry set g1field); geometry ST_Collect(geometry g1, geometry g2); geometry ST_Collect(geometry[] g1_array);
```

Description

Output type can be a MULTI* or a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION. Comes in 2 variants. Variant 1 collects 2 geometries. Variant 2 is an aggregate function that takes a set of geometries and collects them into a single ST_Geometry.

Aggregate version: This function returns a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION or a MULTI object from a set of geometries. The ST_Collect() function is an "aggregate" function in the terminology of PostgreSQL. That means that it operates on rows of data, in the same way the SUM() and AVG() functions do. For example, "SELECT ST_Collect(GEOM) FROM GEOMTABLE GROUP BY ATTRCOLUMN" will return a separate GEOMETRYCOLLECTION for each distinct value of ATTRCOLUMN.

Non-Aggregate version: This function returns a geometry being a collection of two input geometries. Output type can be a MULTI* or a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION.

Note



ST_Collect and ST_Union are often interchangeable. ST_Collect is in general orders of magnitude faster than ST_Union because it does not try to dissolve boundaries or validate that a constructed MultiPolgon doesn't have overlapping regions. It merely rolls up single geometries into MULTI and MULTI or mixed geometry types into Geometry Collections. Unfortunately geometry collections are not well-supported by GIS tools. To prevent ST_Collect from returning a Geometry Collection when collecting MULTI geometries, one can use the below trick that utilizes ST_Dump to expand the MULTIs out to singles and then regroup them.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 349 / 791

Availability: 1.4.0 - ST_Collect(geomarray) was introduced. ST_Collect was enhanced to handle more geometries faster.

This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

This method supports Circular Strings and Curves This method supports Circular Strings and Curves, but will never return a MULTICURVE or MULTI as one would expect and PostGIS does not currently support those.

Examples

Aggregate example (http://postgis.refractions.net/pipermail/postgis-users/2008-June/020331.html)

```
SELECT stusps,
    ST_Multi(ST_Collect(f.the_geom)) as singlegeom
FROM (SELECT stusps, (ST_Dump(the_geom)).geom As the_geom
    FROM
    somestatetable ) As f
GROUP BY stusps
```

Non-Aggregate example

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Collect(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1 2)'),
  ST_GeomFromText('POINT(-2 3)') ));
st_astext
MULTIPOINT (1 2, -2 3)
--Collect 2 d points
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Collect(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1 2)'),
   ST_GeomFromText('POINT(1 2)') );
st_astext
MULTIPOINT (1 2,1 2)
--Collect 3d points
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_Collect(ST_GeomFromEWKT('POINT(1 2 3)'),
    ST_GeomFromEWKT('POINT(1 2 4)') );
    st_asewkt
 MULTIPOINT(1 2 3,1 2 4)
 --Example with curves
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Collect(ST_GeomFromText('CIRCULARSTRING(220268 150415,220227 \leftrightarrow
   150505,220227 150406)'),
ST_GeomFromText('CIRCULARSTRING(220227 150406,2220227 150407,220227 150406)')));
                                 st_astext
 GEOMETRYCOLLECTION (CIRCULARSTRING (220268 150415, 220227 150505, 220227 150406),
 CIRCULARSTRING(220227 150406,2220227 150407,220227 150406))
-- New ST_Collect array construct
SELECT ST_Collect(ARRAY(SELECT the_geom FROM sometable));
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Collect(ARRAY[ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4)'),
      ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(3 4, 4 5)')])) As wktcollect;
--wkt collect --
MULTILINESTRING((1 2, 3 4), (3 4, 4 5))
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 350 / 791

See Also

ST_Dump, ST_Union

8.11.5 ST ConcaveHull

ST_ConcaveHull — The concave hull of a geometry represents a possibly concave geometry that encloses all geometries within the set. You can think of it as shrink wrapping.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_ConcaveHull**(geometry geomA, float target_percent, boolean allow_holes=false);

Description

The concave hull of a geometry represents a possibly concave geometry that encloses all geometries within the set. Defaults to false for allowing polygons with holes. The result is never higher than a single polygon.

The target_percent is the target percent of area of convex hull the PostGIS solution will try to approach before giving up or exiting. One can think of the concave hull as the geometry you get by vacuum sealing a set of geometries. The target_percent of 1 will give you the same answer as the convex hull. A target_percent between 0 and 0.99 will give you something that should have a smaller area than the convex hull. This is different from a convex hull which is more like wrapping a rubber band around the set of geometries.

It is usually used with MULTI and Geometry Collections. Although it is not an aggregate - you can use it in conjunction with ST_Collect or ST_Union to get the concave hull of a set of points/linestring/polygons ST_ConcaveHull(ST_Collect(somepointfield), 0.80).

It is much slower to compute than convex hull but encloses the geometry better and is also useful for image recognition.

Performed by the GEOS module



Note

Note - If you are using with points, linestrings, or geometry collections use ST_Collect. If you are using with polygons, use ST_Union since it may fail with invalid geometries.

Note



Note - The smaller you make the target percent, the longer it takes to process the concave hull and more likely to run into topological exceptions. Also the more floating points and number of points you accrue. First try a 0.99 which does a first hop, is usually very fast, sometimes as fast as computing the convex hull, and usually gives much better than 99% of shrink since it almost always overshoots. Second hope of 0.98 it slower, others get slower usually quadratically. To reduce precision and float points, use ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology or ST_SnapToGrid after ST_ConcaveHull. ST_SnapToGrid is a bit faster, but could result in invalid geometries where as ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology almost always preserves the validity of the geometry.

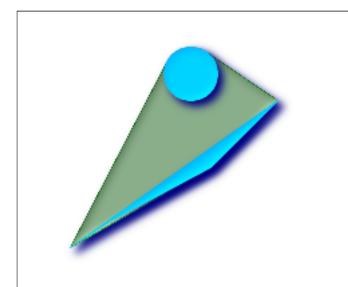
More real world examples and brief explanation of the technique are shown http://www.bostongis.com/postgis_concavehull.snippet
Also check out Simon Greener's article on demonstrating ConcaveHull introduced in Oracle 11G R2. http://www.spatialdbadvisor.com/oracle_spatial_tips_tricks/172/concave-hull-geometries-in-oracle-11gr2. The solution we get at 0.75 target percent of convex hull is similar to the shape Simon gets with Oracle SDO_CONCAVEHULL_BOUNDARY.

Availability: 2.0.0

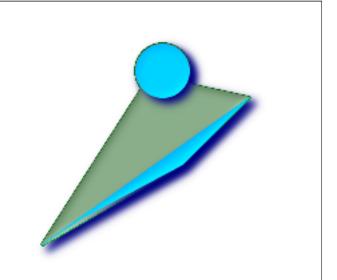
PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 351 / 791

Examples

```
--Get estimate of infected area based on point observations
SELECT d.disease_type,
ST_ConcaveHull(ST_Collect(d.pnt_geom), 0.99) As geom
FROM disease_obs As d
GROUP BY d.disease_type;
```

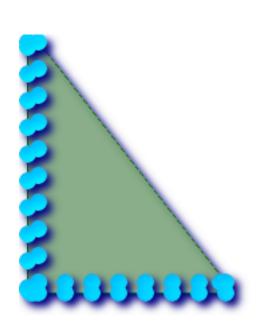


ST_ConcaveHull of 2 polygons encased in target 100% shrink concave hull



-- geometries overlaid with concavehull at target 90% of convex hull area

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 352 / 791



L Shape points overlaid with convex hull

-- this produces a table of 42 points ↔
that form an L shape

SELECT (ST_DumpPoints(ST_GeomFromText(
'MULTIPOINT(14 14,34 14,54 14,74 14,94 ↔
14,114 14,134 14,

150 14,154 14,154 6,134 6,114 6,94 6,74 ↔
6,54 6,34 6,

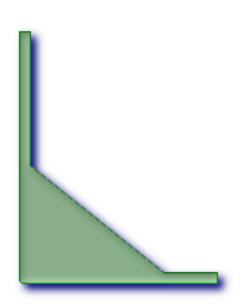
14 6,10 6,8 6,7 7,6 8,6 10,6 30,6 50,6 ↔
70,6 90,6 110,6 130,

6 150,6 170,6 190,6 194,14 194,14 174,14 ↔
154,14 134,14 114,

14 94,14 74,14 54,14 34,14 14)'))).geom
INTO TABLE l_shape;

FROM l_shape;

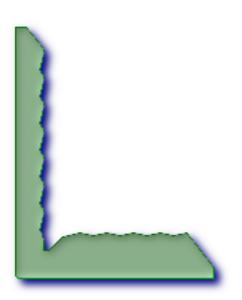
SELECT ST_ConvexHull(ST_Collect(geom))



ST_ConcaveHull of L points at target 99% of convex hull

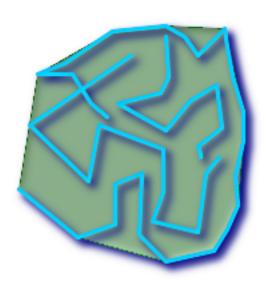
SELECT ST_ConcaveHull(ST_Collect(geom), ←
 0.99)
 FROM l_shape;

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 353 / 791



Concave Hull of L points at target 80% convex hull area

-- Concave Hull L shape points
-- at target 80% of convexhull
 SELECT ST_ConcaveHull(ST_Collect(
geom), 0.80)
 FROM l_shape;



multilinestring overlaid with Convex hull



multilinestring with overlaid with Concave hull of linestrings at 99% target -- first hop

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 354 / 791

See Also

ST_Collect, ST_ConvexHull, ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology, ST_SnapToGrid

8.11.6 ST_ConvexHull

ST_ConvexHull — The convex hull of a geometry represents the minimum convex geometry that encloses all geometries within the set.

Synopsis

geometry ST_ConvexHull(geometry geomA);

Description

The convex hull of a geometry represents the minimum convex geometry that encloses all geometries within the set.

One can think of the convex hull as the geometry you get by wrapping an elastic band around a set of geometries. This is different from a concave hull which is analogous to shrink-wrapping your geometries.

It is usually used with MULTI and Geometry Collections. Although it is not an aggregate - you can use it in conjunction with ST_Collect to get the convex hull of a set of points. ST_ConvexHull(ST_Collect(somepointfield)).

It is often used to determine an affected area based on a set of point observations.

Performed by the GEOS module



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.3



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.16



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
--Get estimate of infected area based on point observations
SELECT d.disease_type,
ST_ConvexHull(ST_Collect(d.the_geom)) As the_geom
FROM disease_obs As d
GROUP BY d.disease_type;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 355 / 791



Convex Hull of a MultiLinestring and a MultiPoint seen together with the MultiLinestring and MultiPoint

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_ConvexHull(
   ST_Collect(
   ST_GeomFromText('MULTILINESTRING((100 190,10 8),(150 10, 20 30))'),
   ST_GeomFromText('MULTIPOINT(50 5, 150 30, 50 10, 10 10)')
   )));
---st_astext--
POLYGON((50 5,10 8,10 10,100 190,150 30,150 10,50 5))
```

See Also

ST_Collect, ST_ConcaveHull, ST_MinimumBoundingCircle

8.11.7 ST_CurveToLine

ST_CurveToLine — Converts a CIRCULARSTRING/CURVEPOLYGON to a LINESTRING/POLYGON

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_CurveToLine(geometry curveGeom); geometry ST_CurveToLine(geometry curveGeom, integer segments_per_qtr_circle);
```

Description

Converst a CIRCULAR STRING to regular LINESTRING or CURVEPOLYGON to POLYGON. Useful for outputting to devices that can't support CIRCULARSTRING geometry types

Converts a given geometry to a linear geometry. Each curved geometry or segment is converted into a linear approximation using the default value of 32 segments per quarter circle

Availability: 1.2.2?



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1.



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.1.7

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 356 / 791



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

```
SELECT ST_ASText(ST_CurveToLine(ST_GeomFromText('CIRCULARSTRING(220268 150415,220227 ←
   150505,220227 150406)')));
--Result --
LINESTRING(220268 150415,220269.95064912 150416.539364228,220271.823415575 \leftrightarrow
    150418.17258804,220273.613787707 150419.895736857,
220275.317452352\ 150421.704659462,220276.930305234\ 150423.594998003,220278.448460847\ \ \hookleftarrow
    150425.562198489,
220279.868261823 150427.60152176,220281.186287736 150429.708054909,220282.399363347 \leftrightarrow
    150431.876723113.
220283.50456625\ 150434.10230186, 220284.499233914\ 150436.379429536, 220285.380970099\ \ \hookleftarrow
    150438.702620341,220286.147650624 150441.066277505,
220286.797428488 \ 150443.464706771, 220287.328738321 \ 150445.892130112, 220287.740300149 \ \ \hookleftarrow
    150448.342699654,
220288.031122486\ 150450.810511759, 220288.200504713\ 150453.289621251, 220288.248038775\ \leftrightarrow
    150455.77405574,
220288.173610157\ 150458.257830005, 220287.977398166\ 150460.734960415, 220287.659875492\ \ \leftrightarrow
    150463.199479347,
220287.221807076 150465.64544956,220286.664248262 150468.066978495,220285.988542259
    150470.458232479,220285.196316903 150472.81345077,
 220284.289480732 150475.126959442,220283.270218395 150477.39318505,220282.140985384
    150479.606668057,
220280.90450212 \ 150481.762075989, 220279.5637474 \ 150483.85421628, 220278.12195122 \ \ \hookleftarrow
    150485.87804878,
150491.491836488,
150496.326509628,
220265.520429459 150497.746310603,220263.41389631 150499.064336517,220261.245228106
    150500.277412127,
 220259.019649359\ 150501.38261503,220256.742521683\ 150502.377282695,220254.419330878\ \leftrightarrow
    150503.259018879,
220252.055673714\ 150504.025699404,220249.657244448\ 150504.675477269,220247.229821107\ \leftrightarrow
    150505.206787101,
220244.779251566\ 150505.61834893, 220242.311439461\ 150505.909171266, 220239.832329968\ \ \hookleftarrow
    150506.078553494,
150505.855446946,
 220229.922471872\ 150505.537924272,220227.47650166\ 150505.099855856,220225.054972724\ \leftrightarrow
    150504.542297043,
220222.663718741 150503.86659104,220220.308500449 150503.074365683,
 220217.994991777 150502.167529512,220215.72876617 150501.148267175,
220213.515283163 150500.019034164,220211.35987523 150498.7825509,
220209.267734939 150497.441796181,220207.243902439 150496,
220205.293253319\ 150494.460635772, 220203.420486864\ 150492.82741196, 220201.630114732\ \ \hookleftarrow
    150491.104263143,
220199.926450087 \ 150489.295340538, 220198.313597205 \ 150487.405001997, 220196.795441592 \ \ \hookleftarrow
    150485.437801511,
220195.375640616\ 150483.39847824,220194.057614703\ 150481.291945091,220192.844539092\ \leftrightarrow
    150479.123276887,220191.739336189 150476.89769814,
220190.744668525\ 150474.620570464,220189.86293234\ 150472.297379659,220189.096251815\ \leftrightarrow
    150469.933722495,
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 357 / 791

```
220188.446473951 150467.535293229,220187.915164118 150465.107869888,220187.50360229
   150462.657300346.
150455.22594426,
220187.070292282\ 150452.742169995,220187.266504273\ 150450.265039585,220187.584026947\ \leftrightarrow
   150447.800520653,
220188.022095363 150445.35455044,220188.579654177 150442.933021505,220189.25536018 \leftrightarrow
   150440.541767521,
220190.047585536\ 150438.18654923,220190.954421707\ 150435.873040558,220191.973684044\ \leftrightarrow
   150433.60681495,
 220193.102917055\ 150431.393331943,220194.339400319\ 150429.237924011,220195.680155039\ \leftrightarrow
   150427.14578372,220197.12195122 150425.12195122,
150419.508163512,220203.826610682 150417.804498867,
150413.253689397,220211.830006129 150411.935663483,
150408.622717305,220220.824571561 150407.740981121,
220223.188228725 150406.974300596,220225.586657991 150406.324522731,220227 150406)
--3d example
SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_CurveToLine(ST_GeomFromEWKT('CIRCULARSTRING(220268 150415 1,220227 ←
  150505 2,220227 150406 3)')));
Output
LINESTRING(220268 150415 1,220269.95064912 150416.539364228 1.0181172856673,
1.05435185700189,....AD INFINITUM ....
 220225.586657991 150406.324522731 1.32611114201132,220227 150406 3)
--use only 2 segments to approximate quarter circle
SELECT ST_ASText(ST_CurveToLine(ST_GeomFromText('CIRCULARSTRING(220268 150415,220227 ↔
  150505,220227 150406)'),2));
st astext
LINESTRING(220268 150415,220287.740300149 150448.342699654,220278.12195122 ←
   150485.87804878,
220244.779251566 150505.61834893,220207.243902439 150496,220187.50360229 150462.657300346,
220197.12195122 150425.12195122,220227 150406)
```

See Also

ST_LineToCurve

8.11.8 ST_DelaunayTriangles

ST_DelaunayTriangles — Return a Delaunay triangulation around the given input points.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_DelaunayTriangles**(geometry g1, float tolerance, int4 flags);

Description

Return a Delaunay triangulation around the vertices of the input geometry. Output is a COLLECTION of polygons (for flags=0) or a MULTILINESTRING (for flags=1) or TIN (for flags=2). The tolerance, if any, is used to snap input vertices togheter.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 358 / 791

Availability: 2.1.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.4.0.

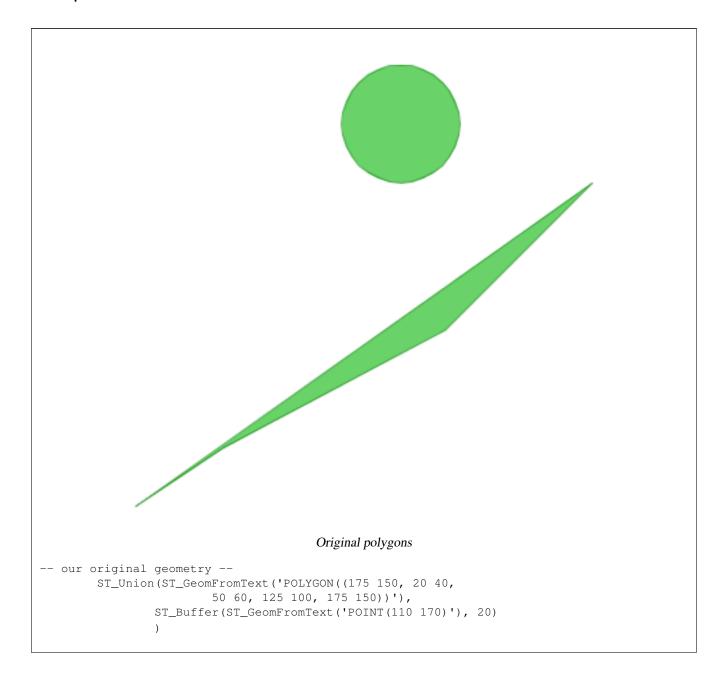


This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

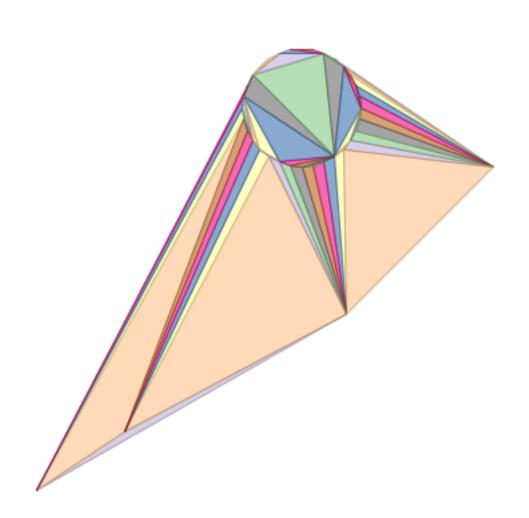


This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

2D Examples



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 359 / 791

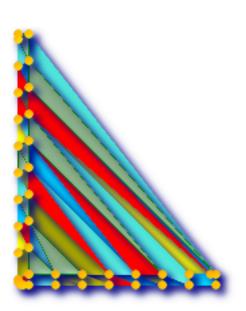


ST_DelaunayTriangles of 2 polygons: delaunay triangle polygons each triangle themed in different color

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 360 / 791



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 361 / 791



-- delaunay triangles of 45 points as 55 triangle polygons

```
-\!- this produces a table of 42 points that form an L shape
SELECT (ST_DumpPoints(ST_GeomFromText(
'MULTIPOINT(14 14,34 14,54 14,74 14,94 14,114 14,134 14,
150 14,154 14,154 6,134 6,114 6,94 6,74 6,54 6,34 6,
14 6,10 6,8 6,7 7,6 8,6 10,6 30,6 50,6 70,6 90,6 110,6 130,
6 150,6 170,6 190,6 194,14 194,14 174,14 154,14 134,14 114,
14 94,14 74,14 54,14 34,14 14)'))).geom
        INTO TABLE l_shape;
-- output as individual polygon triangles
SELECT ST_AsText((ST_Dump(geom)).geom) As wkt
FROM ( SELECT ST_DelaunayTriangles(ST_Collect(geom)) As geom
FROM l_shape) As foo;
---wkt ---
POLYGON((6 194,6 190,14 194,6 194))
POLYGON((14 194,6 190,14 174,14 194))
POLYGON((14 194,14 174,154 14,14 194))
POLYGON((154 14,14 174,14 154,154 14))
POLYGON((154 14,14 154,150 14,154 14))
POLYGON((154 14,150 14,154 6,154 14))
:
```

3D Examples

```
-- 3D multipoint --
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_DelaunayTriangles(ST_GeomFromText(
'MULTIPOINT Z(14 14 10,
150 14 100,34 6 25, 20 10 150)'))) As wkt;

----wkt---
GEOMETRYCOLLECTION Z (POLYGON Z ((14 14 10,20 10 150,34 6 25,14 14 10))
,POLYGON Z ((14 14 10,34 6 25,150 14 100,14 14 10)))
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 362 / 791

See Also

ST_ConcaveHull, ST_Dump

8.11.9 ST_Difference

ST_Difference — Returns a geometry that represents that part of geometry A that does not intersect with geometry B.

Synopsis

geometry ST_Difference(geometry geomA, geometry geomB);

Description

Returns a geometry that represents that part of geometry A that does not intersect with geometry B. One can think of this as Geometry A - ST_Intersection(A,B). If A is completely contained in B then an empty geometry collection is returned.



Note

Note - order matters. B - A will always return a portion of B

Performed by the GEOS module



Note

Do not call with a GeometryCollection as an argument



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.3

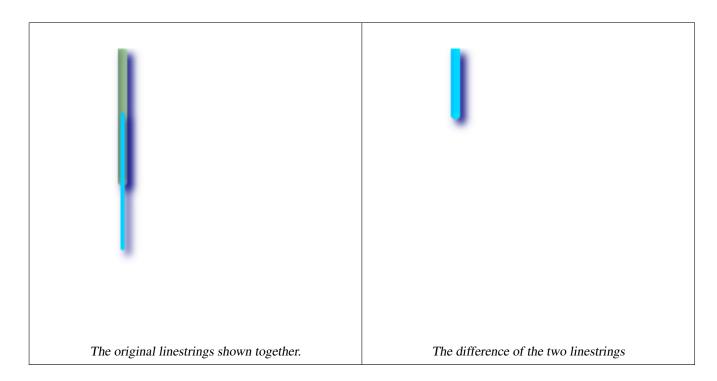


This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.20

This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index. However it seems to only consider x y when doing the difference and tacks back on the Z-Index

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 363 / 791



```
--When used in 3d doesn't quite do the right thing

SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_Difference(ST_GeomFromEWKT('MULTIPOINT(-118.58 38.38 5,-118.60 38.329 ↔
6,-118.614 38.281 7)'), ST_GeomFromEWKT('POINT(-118.614 38.281 5)')));

st_asewkt
------

MULTIPOINT(-118.6 38.329 6,-118.58 38.38 5)
```

See Also

ST_SymDifference

8.11.10 ST_Dump

ST_Dump — Returns a set of geometry_dump (geom,path) rows, that make up a geometry g1.

Synopsis

```
geometry_dump[] ST_Dump(geometry g1);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 364 / 791

Description

This is a set-returning function (SRF). It returns a set of geometry_dump rows, formed by a geometry (geom) and an array of integers (path). When the input geometry is a simple type (POINT,LINESTRING,POLYGON) a single record will be returned with an empty path array and the input geometry as geom. When the input geometry is a collection or multi it will return a record for each of the collection components, and the path will express the position of the component inside the collection.

ST_Dump is useful for expanding geometries. It is the reverse of a GROUP BY in that it creates new rows. For example it can be use to expand MULTIPOLYGONS into POLYGONS.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.

Availability: PostGIS 1.0.0RC1. Requires PostgreSQL 7.3 or higher.



Note

Prior to 1.3.4, this function crashes if used with geometries that contain CURVES. This is fixed in 1.3.4+



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Standard Examples

Polyhedral Surfaces, TIN and Triangle Examples

```
-- Polyhedral surface example
-- Break a Polyhedral surface into its faces

SELECT (a.p_geom).path[1] As path, ST_ASEWKT((a.p_geom).geom) As geom_ewkt

FROM (SELECT ST_Dump(ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYHEDRALSURFACE(
((0 0 0, 0 0 1, 0 1 1, 0 1 0, 0 0 0)),
((0 0 0, 0 1 0, 1 1 0, 1 0 0, 0 0 0)),
((0 0 1, 1 0 1, 1 0 0, 1 1 0)),
((0 1 0, 0 1 1, 1 1 1, 1 1 0, 0 1 0)), ((0 0 1, 1 0 1, 1 1, 0 1 1, 0 0 1))
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 365 / 791

```
-- TIN --
SELECT (g.gdump).path, ST_AsEWKT((g.gdump).geom) as wkt
  FROM
    (SELECT
       ST_Dump( ST_GeomFromEWKT('TIN (((
                0 0 0,
                0 0 1,
                0 1 0,
                0 0 0
            )), ((
                0 0 0,
                0 1 0,
                1 1 0,
                0 0 0
            ))
            )') ) AS gdump
   ) AS g;
-- result -
 path |
                        wkt
 {1} | TRIANGLE((0 0 0,0 0 1,0 1 0,0 0 0))
     | TRIANGLE((0 0 0,0 1 0,1 1 0,0 0 0))
 {2}
```

See Also

geometry_dump, Section 14.6, ST_Collect, ST_Collect, ST_GeometryN

8.11.11 ST DumpPoints

ST_DumpPoints — Returns a set of geometry_dump (geom,path) rows of all points that make up a geometry.

Synopsis

geometry_dump[]ST_DumpPoints(geometry geom);

Description

This set-returning function (SRF) returns a set of geometry_dump rows formed by a geometry (geom) and an array of integers (path).

The geom component of geometry_dump are all the POINTs that make up the supplied geometry

The path component of geometry_dump (an integer[]) is an index reference enumerating the POINTs of the supplied geometry. For example, if a LINESTRING is supplied, a path of $\{i\}$ is returned where i is the nth coordinate in the LINEST RING. If a POLYGON is supplied, a path of $\{i,j\}$ is returned where i is the ring number (1 is outer; inner rings follow) and j enumerates the POINTs (again 1-based index).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 366 / 791

Enhanced: 2.1.0 Faster speed. Reimplemented as native-C.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.

Availability: 1.5.0



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

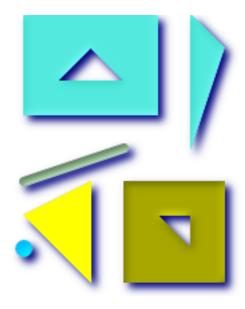


This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Classic Explode a Table of LineStrings into nodes

```
SELECT edge_id, (dp).path[1] As index, ST_AsText((dp).geom) As wktnode
FROM (SELECT 1 As edge_id
  , ST_DumpPoints(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4, 10 10)')) AS dp
    UNION ALL
    SELECT 2 As edge_id
  , ST_DumpPoints(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(3 5, 5 6, 9 10)')) AS dp
  ) As foo;
 edge_id | index |
                      wktnode
               1 | POINT(1 2)
       1 |
               2 | POINT(3 4)
       1 |
               3 | POINT(10 10)
       2 |
               1 | POINT(3 5)
       2 |
               2 | POINT(5 6)
               3 | POINT(9 10)
```

Standard Geometry Examples



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 367 / 791

```
SELECT path, ST_AsText(geom)
FROM (
  SELECT (ST_DumpPoints(g.geom)).*
  FROM
    (SELECT
       'GEOMETRYCOLLECTION (
          POINT ( 0 1 ),
          LINESTRING ( 0 3, 3 4 ),
          POLYGON (( 2 0, 2 3, 0 2, 2 0 )),
          POLYGON ((30,33,63,60,30),
                   (51, 42, 52, 51)),
          MULTIPOLYGON (
                  ((05, 08, 48, 45, 05),
                   (16, 36, 27, 16)),
                  ((54, 58, 67, 54))
         )
        )'::geometry AS geom
   ) AS g
  ) j;
  path
          | st_astext
     ----+----
       | POINT(0 1)
| POINT(0 3)
| POINT(3 4)
 {1,1}
 {2,1}
 {2,2}
 {3,1,1} | POINT(2 0)
         | POINT(2 3)
 {3,1,2}
 {3,1,3}
          | POINT(0 2)
         | POINT(2 0)
 {3,1,4}
         | POINT(3 0)
 {4,1,1}
 {4,1,2}
         | POINT(3 3)
 {4,1,3} | POINT(6 3)
 {4,1,4} | POINT(6 0)
 \{4,1,5\} | POINT(3 0)
 {4,2,1} | POINT(5 1)
 {4,2,2} | POINT(4 2)
 \{4,2,3\} | POINT(5 2)
 {4,2,4} | POINT(5 1)
 \{5,1,1,1\} | POINT(0 5)
 \{5,1,1,2\} | POINT(0 8)
 {5,1,1,3} | POINT(4 8)
 \{5,1,1,4\} \mid POINT(45)
 \{5,1,1,5\} \mid POINT(0 5)
 \{5,1,2,1\} \mid POINT(1 6)
 \{5,1,2,2\} | POINT(3 6)
 \{5,1,2,3\} | POINT(2 7)
 {5,1,2,4} | POINT(1 6)
 \{5,2,1,1\} | POINT(5 4)
 {5,2,1,2} | POINT(5 8)
 {5,2,1,3} | POINT(6 7)
 \{5,2,1,4\} \mid POINT(5 4)
(29 rows)
```

Polyhedral Surfaces, TIN and Triangle Examples

```
-- Polyhedral surface cube --
SELECT (g.gdump).path, ST_AsEWKT((g.gdump).geom) as wkt
FROM
(SELECT
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 368 / 791

```
ST_DumpPoints(ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYHEDRALSURFACE( ((0 0 0, 0 0 1, 0 1 1, 0 1 0, 0 0 \leftrightarrow
           0)),
((0\ 0\ 0,\ 0\ 1\ 0,\ 1\ 1\ 0,\ 1\ 0\ 0,\ 0\ 0)),\ ((0\ 0\ 0,\ 1\ 0\ 0,\ 1\ 0\ 1,\ 0\ 0\ 1)),
((1\ 1\ 0,\ 1\ 1\ 1,\ 1\ 0\ 1,\ 1\ 0\ 0,\ 1\ 1\ 0)),
((0 1 0, 0 1 1, 1 1 1, 1 1 0, 0 1 0)), ((0 0 1, 1 0 1, 1 1 1, 0 1 1, 0 0 1)) )') ) AS gdump
   ) AS g;
-- result --
 path |
              wkt
 {1,1,1} | POINT(0 0 0)
 \{1,1,2\} | POINT(0 0 1)
 \{1,1,3\} | POINT(0 1 1)
 \{1,1,4\} \mid POINT(0 1 0)
 \{1,1,5\} | POINT(0 0 0)
 \{2,1,1\} | POINT(0 0 0)
 \{2,1,2\} | POINT(0 1 0)
 \{2,1,3\} | POINT(1 1 0)
 {2,1,4} | POINT(1 0 0)
 {2,1,5} | POINT(0 0 0)
 {3,1,1} | POINT(0 0 0)
 \{3,1,2\} | POINT(1 0 0)
 {3,1,3} \mid POINT(1 0 1)
 \{3,1,4\} \mid POINT(0 0 1)
 {3,1,5} \mid POINT(0 0 0)
 \{4,1,1\} | POINT(1 1 0)
 \{4,1,2\} | POINT(1 1 1)
 \{4,1,3\} | POINT(1 0 1)
 {4,1,4} | POINT(1 0 0)
 \{4,1,5\} | POINT(1 1 0)
 \{5,1,1\} | POINT(0 1 0)
 \{5,1,2\} | POINT(0 1 1)
 \{5,1,3\} | POINT(1 1 1)
 {5,1,4} | POINT(1 1 0)
 \{5,1,5\} | POINT(0 1 0)
 {6,1,1} | POINT(0 0 1)
 \{6,1,2\} | POINT(1 0 1)
 \{6,1,3\} \mid POINT(1 1 1)
 {6,1,4} | POINT(0 1 1)
 \{6,1,5\} | POINT(0 0 1)
(30 rows)
-- Triangle --
SELECT (g.gdump).path, ST_AsText((g.gdump).geom) as wkt
 FROM
    (SELECT
       ST_DumpPoints( ST_GeomFromEWKT('TRIANGLE ((
                 0 0,
                 0 9,
                 90,
                 0 0
            ))') ) AS gdump
   ) AS g;
-- result -
path | wkt
 ----+---
 {1} | POINT(0 0)
     | POINT(0 9)
 {2}
```

```
-- TIN --
```

| POINT(9 0)

{4} | POINT(0 0)

{3}

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 369 / 791

```
SELECT (g.gdump).path, ST_AsEWKT((g.gdump).geom) as wkt
  FROM
    (SELECT
       ST_DumpPoints( ST_GeomFromEWKT('TIN (((
                 0 0 0,
                 0 0 1,
                 0 1 0,
                 0 0 0
             )), ((
                 0 0 0,
                 0 1 0,
                 1 1 0,
                 0 0 0
             )') ) AS gdump
    ) AS g;
-- result -
  path
        wkt
 {1,1,1} | POINT(0 0 0)
 {1,1,2} | POINT(0 0 1)
 \{1,1,3\} | POINT(0 1 0)
 \{1,1,4\} \mid POINT(0 0 0)
 \{2,1,1\} \mid POINT(0 0 0)
 \{2,1,2\} | POINT(0 1 0)
 \{2,1,3\} | POINT(1 1 0)
 \{2,1,4\} \mid POINT(0 0 0)
(8 rows)
```

See Also

geometry_dump, Section 14.6, ST_Dump, ST_DumpRings

8.11.12 ST DumpRings

ST_DumpRings — Returns a set of geometry_dump rows, representing the exterior and interior rings of a polygon.

Synopsis

geometry_dump[] ST_DumpRings(geometry a_polygon);

Description

This is a set-returning function (SRF). It returns a set of geometry_dump rows, defined as an integer[] and a geometry, aliased "path" and "geom" respectively. The "path" field holds the polygon ring index containing a single integer: 0 for the shell, >0 for holes. The "geom" field contains the corresponding ring as a polygon.

Availability: PostGIS 1.1.3. Requires PostgreSQL 7.3 or higher.



Note

This only works for POLYGON geometries. It will not work for MULTIPOLYGONS



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 370 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT sometable.field1, sometable.field1,
    (ST_DumpRings(sometable.the_geom)).geom As the_geom
FROM sometableOfpolys;
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(geom) As the_geom, path
 FROM ST_DumpRings(
    ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYGON((-8149064 5133092 1,-8149064 5132986 1,-8148996 5132839 ↔
       1,-8148972 5132767 1,-8148958 5132508 1,-8148941 5132466 1,-8148924 5132394 1,
    -8148903 5132210 1,-8148930 5131967 1,-8148992 5131978 1,-8149237 5132093 1,-8149404
        5132211 1,-8149647 5132310 1,-8149757 5132394 1,
    -8150305 5132788 1,-8149064 5133092 1),
    (-8149362\ 5132394\ 1, -8149446\ 5132501\ 1, -8149548\ 5132597\ 1, -8149695\ 5132675\ 1, -8149362\ \leftrightarrow
        5132394 1))')
      as foo;
    )
 path |
                                                       the_geom
  \{0\} | POLYGON((-8149064 5133092 1,-8149064 5132986 1,-8148996 5132839 1,-8148972 5132767 \leftrightarrow
      1,-8148958 5132508 1,
               -8148941 5132466 1,-8148924 5132394 1,
                -8148903 5132210 1,-8148930 5131967 1,
                -8148992 5131978 1,-8149237 5132093 1,
               -8149404 \ 5132211 \ 1, -8149647 \ 5132310 \ 1, -8149757 \ 5132394 \ 1, -8150305 \ 5132788 \ \ \hookleftarrow
        1,-8149064 5133092 1))
  {1} | POLYGON((-8149362 5132394 1,-8149446 5132501 1,
               -8149548 5132597 1,-8149695 5132675 1,-8149362 5132394 1))
```

See Also

geometry_dump, Section 14.6, ST_Dump, ST_ExteriorRing, ST_InteriorRingN

8.11.13 ST_FlipCoordinates

ST_FlipCoordinates — Returns a version of the given geometry with X and Y axis flipped. Useful for people who have built latitude/longitude features and need to fix them.

Synopsis

geometry ST_FlipCoordinates(geometry geom);

Description

Returns a version of the given geometry with X and Y axis flipped.

Availability: 2.0.0



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports M coordinates.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 371 / 791



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Example

```
SELECT ST_AseWKT(ST_FlipCoordinates(GeomFromEWKT('POINT(1 2)')));
POINT(2 1)
```

See Also

ST_SwapOrdinates

8.11.14 ST_GeneratePoints

ST_GeneratePoints — Converts a polygon or multi-polygon into a multi-point composed of randomly location points within the original areas.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_GeneratePoints**(g geometry , npoints numeric);

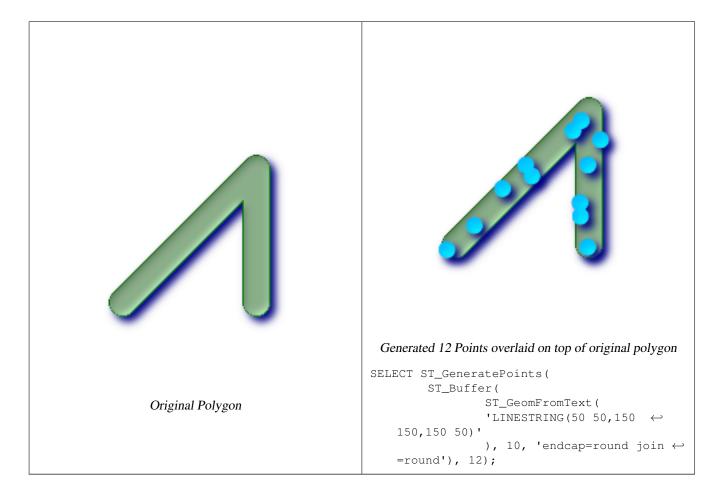
Description

ST_GeneratePoints generates pseudo-random points until the requested number are found within the input area.

Availability: 2.3.0

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 372 / 791



8.11.15 ST Intersection

ST_Intersection — (T) Returns a geometry that represents the shared portion of geomA and geomB.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_Intersection**(geometry geomA , geometry geomB); geography **ST_Intersection**(geography geogA , geography geogB);

Description

Returns a geometry that represents the point set intersection of the Geometries.

In other words - that portion of geometry A and geometry B that is shared between the two geometries.

If the geometries do not share any space (are disjoint), then an empty geometry collection is returned.

ST_Intersection in conjunction with ST_Intersects is very useful for clipping geometries such as in bounding box, buffer, region queries where you only want to return that portion of a geometry that sits in a country or region of interest.

Note



Geography: For geography this is really a thin wrapper around the geometry implementation. It first determines the best SRID that fits the bounding box of the 2 geography objects (if geography objects are within one half zone UTM but not same UTM will pick one of those) (favoring UTM or Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area (LAEA) north/south pole, and falling back on mercator in worst case scenario) and then intersection in that best fit planar spatial ref and retransforms back to WGS84 geography.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 373 / 791



Important

Do not call with a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION as an argument



Warning

This function will drop the M coorindate values if present.



Warning

If working with 3D geometries, you may want to use SFGCAL based ST_3DIntersection which does a proper 3D intersection for 3D geometries. Although this function works with Z-coordinate, it does an averaging of Z-Coordinate values when postgis.backend=geos.postgis.backend=sfcgal, it will return a 2D geometry regardless ignoring the Z-Coordinate. Refer to postgis.backend for details.

Performed by the GEOS module



This method is also provided by SFCGAL backend.

Availability: 1.5 support for geography data type was introduced.



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.3



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.18

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Intersection('POINT(0 0)'::geometry, 'LINESTRING ( 2 0, 0 2 )':: \leftrightarrow
   geometry));
 st_astext
GEOMETRYCOLLECTION EMPTY
(1 row)
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Intersection('POINT(0 0)'::geometry, 'LINESTRING ( 0 0, 0 2 )':: \leftrightarrow
   geometry));
 st_astext
POINT(0 0)
(1 row)
---Clip all lines (trails) by country (here we assume country geom are POLYGON or \leftrightarrow
   MULTIPOLYGONS)
-- NOTE: we are only keeping intersections that result in a LINESTRING or MULTILINESTRING \ \leftrightarrow
   because we don't
-- care about trails that just share a point
-- the dump is needed to expand a geometry collection into individual single MULT* parts
-- the below is fairly generic and will work for polys, etc. by just changing the where \ \hookleftarrow
   clause
SELECT clipped.gid, clipped.f_name, clipped_geom
FROM (SELECT trails.gid, trails.f_name, (ST_Dump(ST_Intersection(country.the_geom, trails. \leftarrow
   the_geom))).geom As clipped_geom
FROM country
 INNER JOIN trails
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 374 / 791

Examples: 2.5Dish

Geos is the default backend if not set. Note this is not a true intersection, compare to the same example using ST_3DIntersection.

If your PostGIS is compiled with sfcgal support, have option of using sfcgal, but note if basically cases down both geometries to 2D before doing intersection and returns the ST_Force2D equivalent result which is a 2D geometry

See Also

ST 3DIntersection, ST Difference, ST Dimension, ST Dump, ST Force2D, ST SymDifference, ST Intersects, ST Multi

8.11.16 ST_LineToCurve

ST LineToCurve — Converts a LINESTRING/POLYGON to a CIRCULARSTRING, CURVEPOLYGON

Synopsis

geometry **ST_LineToCurve**(geometry geomANoncircular);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 375 / 791

Description

Converts plain LINESTRING/POLYGON to CIRCULAR STRINGs and Curved Polygons. Note much fewer points are needed to describe the curved equivalent.



Note

If the input LINESTRING/POLYGON is not curved enough to clearly represent a curve, the function will return the same input geometry.

Availability: 1.2.2?



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

```
-- 2D Example
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_LineToCurve(foo.the_geom)) As curvedastext,ST_AsText(foo.the_geom) As \leftrightarrow
   non_curvedastext
  FROM (SELECT ST_Buffer('POINT(1 3)'::geometry, 3) As the_geom) As foo;
curvedatext
                                                                          non curvedastext
CURVEPOLYGON (CIRCULARSTRING (4 3,3.12132034355964 0.878679656440359, | POLYGON ((4 \leftrightarrow
   3,3.94235584120969 2.41472903395162,3.77163859753386 1.85194970290473,
1 0,-1.12132034355965 5.12132034355963,4 3))
                                                                       | 3.49440883690764 ↔
   1.33328930094119,3.12132034355964 0.878679656440359,
                                                                       | 2.66671069905881 ↔
                                                                           0.505591163092366, 2.14805029
                                                                           0.228361402466141,
                                                                       1.58527096604839
                                                                           0.0576441587903094,1 \leftrightarrow
                                                                           0,
                                                                         0.414729033951621 ←
                                                                           0.0576441587903077, -0.1480503
                                                                            0.228361402466137,
                                                                         -0.666710699058802
                                                                          0.505591163092361,-1.1213203
                                                                            0.878679656440353,
                                                                         -1.49440883690763 ←
                                                                          1.33328930094119,-1.77163859
                                                                           1.85194970290472
                                                                          --ETC-- ←
                                                                           ,3.94235584120969 ←
                                                                           3.58527096604839,4 ←
--3D example
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_LineToCurve(geom)) As curved, ST_AsText(geom) AS not_curved
FROM (SELECT ST_Translate(ST_Force3D(ST_Boundary(ST_Buffer(ST_Point(1,3), 2,2))),0,0,3) AS \leftrightarrow
   geom) AS foo;
                        curved
                                                                         not_curved
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 376 / 791

See Also

ST_CurveToLine

8.11.17 ST MakeValid

ST_MakeValid — Attempts to make an invalid geometry valid without losing vertices.

Synopsis

 $geometry \ ST_MakeValid (geometry \ input);$

Description

The function attempts to create a valid representation of a given invalid geometry without losing any of the input vertices. Already-valid geometries are returned without further intervention.

Supported inputs are: POINTS, MULTIPOINTS, LINESTRINGS, MULTILINESTRINGS, POLYGONS, MULTIPOLYGONS and GEOMETRYCOLLECTIONS containing any mix of them.

In case of full or partial dimensional collapses, the output geometry may be a collection of lower-to-equal dimension geometries or a geometry of lower dimension.

Single polygons may become multi-geometries in case of self-intersections.

Availability: 2.0.0, requires GEOS-3.3.0

Enhanced: 2.0.1, speed improvements requires GEOS-3.3.4

Enhanced: 2.1.0 added support for GEOMETRYCOLLECTION and MULTIPOINT.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

See Also

ST_IsValid ST_CollectionExtract

8.11.18 ST MemUnion

ST_MemUnion — Same as ST_Union, only memory-friendly (uses less memory and more processor time).

Synopsis

geometry ST_MemUnion(geometry set geomfield);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 377 / 791

Description

Some useful description here.



Note

Same as ST_Union, only memory-friendly (uses less memory and more processor time). This aggregate function works by unioning the geometries one at a time to previous result as opposed to ST_Union aggregate which first creates an array and then unions



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

See ST_Union

See Also

ST_Union

8.11.19 ST_MinimumBoundingCircle

ST_MinimumBoundingCircle — Returns the smallest circle polygon that can fully contain a geometry. Default uses 48 segments per quarter circle.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_MinimumBoundingCircle**(geometry geomA, integer num_segs_per_qt_circ=48);

Description

Returns the smallest circle polygon that can fully contain a geometry.



Note

The circle is approximated by a polygon with a default of 48 segments per quarter circle. Because the polygon is an approximation of the minimum bounding circle, some points in the input geometry may not be contained within the polygon. The approximation can be improved by increasing the number of segments, with little performance penalty. For applications where a polygonal approximation is not suitable, ST MinimumBoundingRadius may be used.

It is often used with MULTI and Geometry Collections. Although it is not an aggregate - you can use it in conjunction with ST_Collect to get the minimum bounding circle of a set of geometries. ST_MinimumBoundingCircle(ST_Collect(somepointfield)).

The ratio of the area of a polygon divided by the area of its Minimum Bounding Circle is often referred to as the Roeck test.

Availability: 1.4.0 - requires GEOS

See Also

ST_Collect, ST_MinimumBoundingRadius

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 378 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT d.disease_type,
ST_MinimumBoundingCircle(ST_Collect(d.the_geom)) As the_geom
FROM disease_obs As d
GROUP BY d.disease_type;
```



Minimum bounding circle of a point and linestring. Using 8 segs to approximate a quarter circle

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_MinimumBoundingCircle(
    ST_Collect (
      ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(55 75,125 150)'),
         ST_Point(20, 80)), 8
         )) As wktmbc;
wktmbc
POLYGON((135.59714732062 115,134.384753327498 102.690357210921,130.79416296937 ↔
    90.8537670908995,124.963360620072 79.9451031602111,117.116420743937
    70.3835792560632,107.554896839789 62.5366393799277,96.6462329091006
    56.70583703063,84.8096427890789 53.115246672502,72.50000000000001 \leftrightarrow
    51.9028526793802,60.1903572109213 53.1152466725019,48.3537670908996 \leftrightarrow
    56.7058370306299,37.4451031602112 62.5366393799276,27.8835792560632
    70.383579256063, 20.0366393799278 79.9451031602109, 14.20583703063 \leftrightarrow
    90.8537670908993, 10.615246672502 \ 102.690357210921, 9.40285267938019 \ 115, 10.6152466725019 \ \ \hookleftarrow
    127.309642789079, 14.2058370306299 \ 139.1462329091, 20.0366393799275 \ \ \hookleftarrow
    150.054896839789,27.883579256063 159.616420743937,
37.4451031602108 \ 167.463360620072, 48.3537670908992 \ 173.29416296937, 60.190357210921 \ \ \hookleftarrow
    176.884753327498,
72.499999999998 178.09714732062,84.8096427890786 176.884753327498,96.6462329091003 \leftrightarrow
    173.29416296937,107.554896839789 167.463360620072,
117.116420743937 \ 159.616420743937, 124.963360620072 \ 150.054896839789, 130.79416296937 \ \ \hookleftarrow
    139.146232909101,134.384753327498 127.309642789079,135.59714732062 115))
```

See Also

ST Collect, ST MinimumBoundingRadius

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 379 / 791

8.11.20 ST_MinimumBoundingRadius

ST_MinimumBoundingRadius — Returns the center point and radius of the smallest circle that can fully contain a geometry.

Synopsis

(geometry, double precision) **ST_MinimumBoundingRadius**(geometry geom);

Description

Returns a record containing the center point and radius of the smallest circle that can fully contain a geometry.

Can be used in conjunction with ST_Collect to get the minimum bounding circle of a set of geometries.

Availability - 2.3.0

See Also

 $ST_Collect,\,ST_MinimumBoundingCircle$

Examples

8.11.21 ST_Polygonize

ST_Polygonize — Aggregate. Creates a GeometryCollection containing possible polygons formed from the constituent linework of a set of geometries.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_Polygonize(geometry set geomfield); geometry ST_Polygonize(geometry[] geom_array);
```

Description

Creates a GeometryCollection containing possible polygons formed from the constituent linework of a set of geometries.



Note

Geometry Collections are often difficult to deal with with third party tools, so use ST_Polygonize in conjunction with ST_Dump to dump the polygons out into individual polygons.



Note

Input linework must be correctly noded for this function to work properly

Availability: 1.0.0RC1 - requires GEOS >= 2.1.0.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 380 / 791

Examples: Polygonizing single linestrings

```
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_Polygonize(the_geom_4269)) As geomtextrep
FROM (SELECT the_geom_4269 FROM ma.suffolk_edges ORDER BY tlid LIMIT 45) As foo;
geomtextrep
 SRID=4269; GEOMETRYCOLLECTION (POLYGON ((-71.040878 42.285678, -71.040943 42.2856, -71.04096 ↔
    42.285752,-71.040878 42.285678)),
POLYGON((-71.17166 42.353675,-71.172026 42.354044,-71.17239 42.354358,-71.171794 ↔
    42.354971, -71.170511 42.354855,
 -71.17112 42.354238,-71.17166 42.353675)))
(1 row)
--Use ST_Dump to dump out the polygonize geoms into individual polygons
SELECT ST_AseWKT((ST_Dump(foofoo.polycoll)).geom) As geomtextrep
FROM (SELECT ST_Polygonize(the_geom_4269) As polycoll
 FROM (SELECT the_geom_4269 FROM ma.suffolk_edges
   ORDER BY tlid LIMIT 45) As foo) As foofoo;
geomtextrep
 SRID=4269; POLYGON((-71.040878 42.285678, -71.040943 42.2856, -71.04096 42.285752,
-71.040878 42.285678))
SRID=4269; POLYGON((-71.17166 42.353675, -71.172026 42.354044, -71.17239 42.354358
,-71.171794 42.354971,-71.170511 42.354855,-71.17112 42.354238,-71.17166 42.353675))
(2 rows)
```

See Also

ST_Node, ST_Dump

8.11.22 ST_Node

ST_Node — Node a set of linestrings.

Synopsis

geometry ST_Node(geometry geom);

Description

Fully node a set of linestrings using the least possible number of nodes while preserving all of the input ones.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.3.0.



Note

Due to a bug in GEOS up to 3.3.1 this function fails to node self-intersecting lines. This is fixed with GEOS 3.3.2 or higher.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 381 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_UnaryUnion

8.11.23 ST_OffsetCurve

ST_OffsetCurve — Return an offset line at a given distance and side from an input line. Useful for computing parallel lines about a center line

Synopsis

geometry ST_OffsetCurve(geometry line, float signed_distance, text style_parameters=");

Description

Return an offset line at a given distance and side from an input line. All points of the returned geometries are not further than the given distance from the input geometry.

For positive distance the offset will be at the left side of the input line and retain the same direction. For a negative distance it'll be at the right side and in the opposite direction.

Availability: 2.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.2, improved with GEOS >= 3.3

The optional third parameter allows specifying a list of blank-separated key=value pairs to tweak operations as follows:

- 'quad_segs=#' : number of segments used to approximate a quarter circle (defaults to 8).
- 'join=roundlmitrelbevel' : join style (defaults to "round"). 'miter' is also accepted as a synonym for 'mitre'.
- 'mitre_limit=#.#': mitre ratio limit (only affects mitred join style). 'miter_limit' is also accepted as a synonym for 'mitre_limit'.

Units of distance are measured in units of the spatial reference system.

The inputs can only be LINESTRINGS.

Performed by the GEOS module.



Note

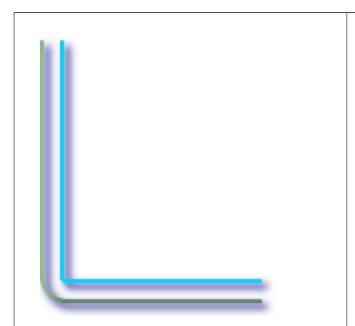
This function ignores the third dimension (z) and will always give a 2-d result even when presented with a 3d-geometry.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 382 / 791

Examples

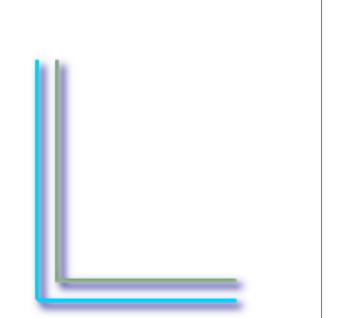
Compute an open buffer around roads

```
SELECT ST_Union(
  ST_OffsetCurve(f.the_geom, f.width/2, 'quad_segs=4 join=round'),
  ST_OffsetCurve(f.the_geom, -f.width/2, 'quad_segs=4 join=round')
) as track
FROM someroadstable;
```



15, 'quad_segs=4 join=round' original line and its offset 15 units.

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_OffsetCurve( \hookleftarrow
   ST_GeomFromText(
'LINESTRING(164 16,144 16,124 16,104 \leftrightarrow
   16,84 16,64 16,
        44 16,24 16,20 16,18 16,17 17,
        16 18,16 20,16 40,16 60,16 80,16 ↔
   100,
        16 120,16 140,16 160,16 180,16 ↔
   195)'),
        15, 'quad_segs=4 join=round'));
--output --
LINESTRING(164 1,18 1,12.2597485145237 \leftrightarrow
   2.1418070123307,
        7.39339828220179 ←
    5.39339828220179,
        5.39339828220179 ←
    7.39339828220179,
        2.14180701233067 ↔
   12.2597485145237,1 18,1 195)
```



-15, 'quad_segs=4 join=round' original line and its offset -15 units

```
SELECT ST_AsText (ST_OffsetCurve (geom, -15, 'quad_segs=4 join=round'))  
As notsocurvy  
FROM ST_GeomFromText (
'LINESTRING(164 16,144 16,124 16,104 ↔ 16,84 16,64 16, 44 16,24 16,20 16,18 16,17 17, 16 18,16 20,16 40,16 60,16 80,16 ↔ 100, 16 120,16 140,16 160,16 180,16 ↔ 195)') As geom; -- notsocurvy --
LINESTRING(31 195,31 31,164 31)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 383 / 791



double-offset to get more curvy, note the first reverses direction, so -30 + 15 = -15

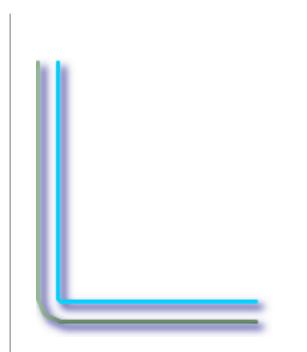
```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_OffsetCurve( \leftarrow
    ST_OffsetCurve(geom,
        -30, 'quad_segs=4 join=round'), \leftrightarrow
    -15, 'quad_segs=4 join=round')) As morecuty As parallel_curves
        FROM ST\_GeomFromText (
'LINESTRING(164 16,144 16,124 16,104 \leftrightarrow
    16,84 16,64 16,
        44 16,24 16,20 16,18 16,17 17,
        16 18,16 20,16 40,16 60,16 80,16 ↔
    100,
        16 120,16 140,16 160,16 180,16 ↔
    195)') As geom;
-- morecurvy
LINESTRING(164 31,46 31,40.2597485145236 ↔
    32.1418070123307,
35.3933982822018 35.3933982822018,
32.1418070123307 \ 40.2597485145237,31 \ \leftrightarrow
    46,31 195)
```



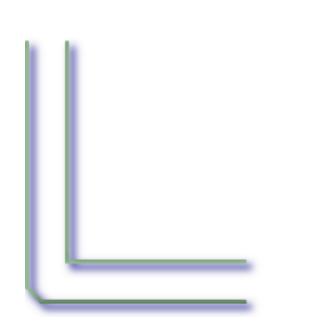
double-offset to get more curvy, combined with regular offset 15 to get parallel lines. Overlaid with original.

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Collect(
         ST_OffsetCurve(geom, 15, ' \leftarrow
    quad_segs=4 join=round'),
         ST\_OffsetCurve(ST\_OffsetCurve( \leftrightarrow
         -30, 'quad_segs=4 join=round'), \leftarrow
    -15, 'quad_segs=4 join=round')
        FROM ST_GeomFromText(
'LINESTRING(164 16,144 16,124 16,104 \leftrightarrow
   16,84 16,64 16,
         44 16,24 16,20 16,18 16,17 17,
         16 18,16 20,16 40,16 60,16 80,16
    100,
         16 120,16 140,16 160,16 180,16 ↔
   195)') As geom;
-- parallel curves
MULTILINESTRING((164 1,18 \leftarrow
    1,12.2597485145237 2.1418070123307,
7.39339828220179 ←
    5.39339828220179,5.39339828220179 7.39339$282201
2.14180701233067 12.2597485145237,1 18,1 <math>\leftrightarrow
(164 31,46 31,40.2597485145236 ↔
    32.1418070123307,35.3933982822018 35.39339828220
32.1418070123307 \ 40.2597485145237,31 \ \leftrightarrow
    46,31 195))
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 384 / 791



15, 'quad_segs=4 join=bevel' shown with original line



15,-15 collected, join=mitre mitre_limit=2.1

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Collect(
        ST_OffsetCurve(geom, 15, ' \leftarrow
   quad_segs=4 join=mitre mitre_limit=2.2'),
        ST_OffsetCurve(geom, -15, ' \leftarrow
    quad_segs=4 join=mitre mitre_limit=2.2')
        ) )
        FROM ST_GeomFromText(
'LINESTRING(164 16,144 16,124 16,104 ↔
   16,84 16,64 16,
        44 16,24 16,20 16,18 16,17 17,
        16 18,16 20,16 40,16 60,16 80,16
   100,
        16 120,16 140,16 160,16 180,16 ↔
   195)') As geom;
-- output -
MULTILINESTRING((164 1,11.7867965644036 ←
   1,1 11.7867965644036,1 195),
        (31 195,31 31,164 31))
```

See Also

ST Buffer

8.11.24 ST_RemoveRepeatedPoints

ST_RemoveRepeatedPoints — Returns a version of the given geometry with duplicated points removed.

Synopsis

geometry ST_RemoveRepeatedPoints(geometry geom, float8 tolerance);

Description

Returns a version of the given geometry with duplicated points removed. Will actually do something only with (multi)lines, (multi)polygons and multipoints but you can safely call it with any kind of geometry. Since simplification occurs on a object-by-

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 385 / 791

object basis you can also feed a GeometryCollection to this function.

If the tolerance parameter is provided, vertices within the tolerance of one another will be considered the "same" for the purposes of removal.

Availability: 2.2.0



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

See Also

ST_Simplify

8.11.25 ST_SharedPaths

ST_SharedPaths — Returns a collection containing paths shared by the two input linestrings/multilinestrings.

Synopsis

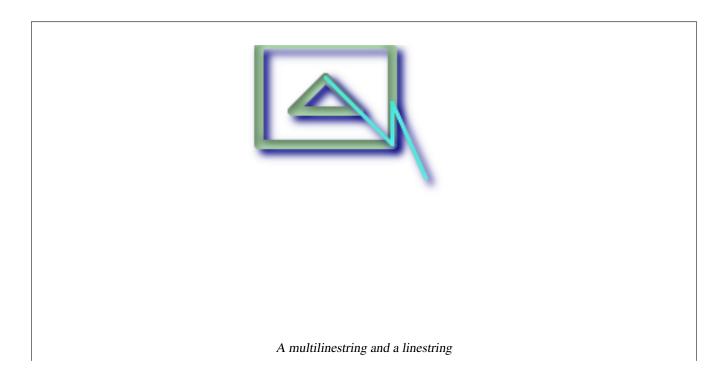
geometry ST_SharedPaths(geometry lineal1, geometry lineal2);

Description

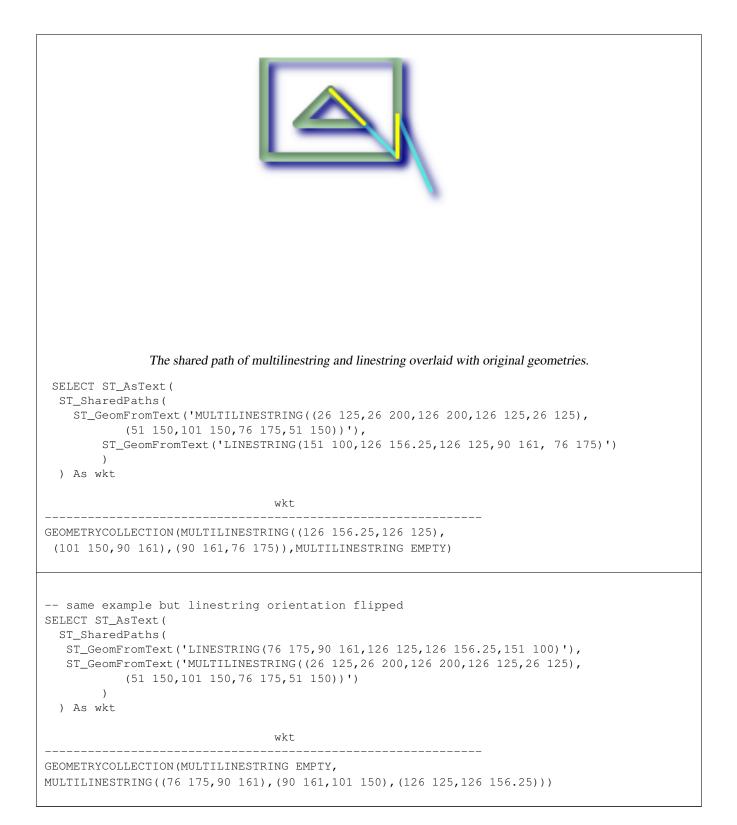
Returns a collection containing paths shared by the two input geometries. Those going in the same direction are in the first element of the collection, those going in the opposite direction are in the second element. The paths themselves are given in the direction of the first geometry.

Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0.

Examples: Finding shared paths



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 386 / 791



See Also

ST_Dump, ST_GeometryN, ST_NumGeometries

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 387 / 791

8.11.26 ST_ShiftLongitude

ST_ShiftLongitude — Toggle geometry coordinates between -180..180 and 0..360 ranges.

Synopsis

geometry ST_ShiftLongitude(geometry geomA);

Description

Reads every point/vertex in every component of every feature in a geometry, and if the longitude coordinate is <0, adds 360 to it. The result would be a 0-360 version of the data to be plotted in a 180 centric map



Note

This is only useful for data in long lat e.g. 4326 (WGS 84 long lat)



Pre-1.3.4 bug prevented this from working for MULTIPOINT. 1.3.4+ works with MULTIPOINT as well.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces and TIN was introduced.

NOTE: this function was renamed from "ST_Shift_Longitude" in 2.2.0



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

See Also

ST_WrapX

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 388 / 791

8.11.27 ST_WrapX

ST_WrapX — Wrap a geometry around an X value.

Synopsis

geometry ST_WrapX(geometry geom, float8 wrap, float8 move);

Description

This function splits the input geometries and then moves every resulting component falling on the right (for negative 'move') or on the left (for positive 'move') of given 'wrap' line in the direction specified by the 'move' parameter, finally re-unioning the pieces togheter.



Note

This is useful to "recenter" long-lat input to have features of interest not spawned from one side to the other.

Availability: 2.3.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
-- Move all components of the given geometries whose bounding box
-- falls completely on the left of x=0 to +360
select ST_WrapX(the_geom, 0, 360);

-- Move all components of the given geometries whose bounding box
-- falls completely on the left of x=-30 to +360
select ST_WrapX(the_geom, -30, 360);
```

See Also

ST_ShiftLongitude

8.11.28 ST_Simplify

ST_Simplify — Returns a "simplified" version of the given geometry using the Douglas-Peucker algorithm.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_Simplify**(geometry geomA, float tolerance, boolean preserveCollapsed);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 389 / 791

Description

Returns a "simplified" version of the given geometry using the Douglas-Peucker algorithm. Will actually do something only with (multi)lines and (multi)polygons but you can safely call it with any kind of geometry. Since simplification occurs on a object-by-object basis you can also feed a GeometryCollection to this function.

The "preserve collapsed" flag will retain objects that would otherwise be too small given the tolerance. For example, a 1m long line simplified with a 10m tolerance. If the preserve flag is given, the line will not disappear. This flag is useful for rendering engines, to avoid having large numbers of very small objects disappear from a map leaving surprising gaps.



Note

Note that returned geometry might lose its simplicity (see ST IsSimple)



Note

Note topology may not be preserved and may result in invalid geometries. Use (see ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology) to preserve topology.

Availability: 1.2.2

Examples

A circle simplified too much becomes a triangle, medium an octagon,

See Also

ST_IsSimple, ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology, Topology ST_Simplify

8.11.29 ST SimplifyPreserveTopology

ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology — Returns a "simplified" version of the given geometry using the Douglas-Peucker algorithm. Will avoid creating derived geometries (polygons in particular) that are invalid.

Synopsis

 $geometry \ \textbf{ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology} (geometry \ geom A, \ float \ tolerance);$

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 390 / 791

Description

Returns a "simplified" version of the given geometry using the Douglas-Peucker algorithm. Will avoid creating derived geometries (polygons in particular) that are invalid. Will actually do something only with (multi)lines and (multi)polygons but you can safely call it with any kind of geometry. Since simplification occurs on a object-by-object basis you can also feed a GeometryCollection to this function.

Performed by the GEOS module.



Note

Requires GEOS 3.0.0+

Availability: 1.3.3

Examples

Same example as Simplify, but we see Preserve Topology prevents oversimplification. The circle can at most become a square.

```
SELECT ST_Npoints(the_geom) As np_before, ST_NPoints(ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology(the_geom ←
    ,0.1)) As np01_notbadcircle, ST_NPoints(ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology(the_geom,0.5)) As
   np05_notquitecircle,
ST_NPoints(ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology(the_geom,1)) As np1_octagon, ST_NPoints(\leftrightarrow
   ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology(the_geom, 10)) As np10_square,
ST_NPoints(ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology(the_geom, 100)) As np100_stillsquare
FROM (SELECT ST_Buffer('POINT(1 3)', 10,12) As the_geom) As foo;
--result--
 np_before | np01_notbadcircle | np05_notquitecircle | np1_octagon | np10_square | \leftrightarrow
    np100_stillsquare
    49 |
                         33 I
                                                17 |
                                                                9 |
                                                                                5 | ←
```

See Also

ST_Simplify

8.11.30 ST SimplifyVW

ST_SimplifyVW — Returns a "simplified" version of the given geometry using the Visvalingam-Whyatt algorithm

Synopsis

geometry **ST_SimplifyVW**(geometry geomA, float tolerance);

Description

Returns a "simplified" version of the given geometry using the Visvalingam-Whyatt algorithm. Will actually do something only with (multi)lines and (multi)polygons but you can safely call it with any kind of geometry. Since simplification occurs on a object-by-object basis you can also feed a GeometryCollection to this function.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 391 / 791



Note

Note that returned geometry might lose its simplicity (see ST_lsSimple)



Note

Note topology may not be preserved and may result in invalid geometries. Use (see ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology) to preserve topology.



Note

This function handles 3D and the third dimension will affect the result.

Availability: 2.2.0

Examples

A LineString is simplified with a minimum area threshold of 30.

```
select ST_AsText(ST_SimplifyVW(geom, 30)) simplified
FROM (SELECT 'LINESTRING(5 2, 3 8, 6 20, 7 25, 10 10)'::geometry geom) As foo;
-result
simplified
-----+
LINESTRING(5 2, 7 25, 10 10)
```

See Also

ST_SetEffectiveArea, ST_Simplify, ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology, Topology ST_Simplify

8.11.31 ST_SetEffectiveArea

ST_SetEffectiveArea — Sets the effective area for each vertex, storing the value in the M ordinate. A simplified geometry can then be generated by filtering on the M ordinate.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_SetEffectiveArea**(geometry geomA, float threshold = 0, integer set_area = 1);

Description

Sets the effective area for each vertex, using the Visvalingam-Whyatt algorithm. The effective area is stored as the M-value of the vertex. If the optional "theshold" parameter is used, a simplified geometry will be returned, containing only vertices with an effective area greater than or equal to the threshold value.

This function can be used for server-side simplification when a threshold is specified. Another option is to use a threshold value of zero. In this case, the full geometry will be returned with effective areas as M-values, which can be used by the client to simplify very quickly.

Will actually do something only with (multi)lines and (multi)polygons but you can safely call it with any kind of geometry. Since simplification occurs on a object-by-object basis you can also feed a GeometryCollection to this function.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 392 / 791



Note

Note that returned geometry might lose its simplicity (see ST_lsSimple)



Note

Note topology may not be preserved and may result in invalid geometries. Use (see ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology) to preserve topology.



Moto

The output geometry will lose all previous information in the M-values



Note

This function handles 3D and the third dimension will affect the effective area

Availability: 2.2.0

Examples

Calculating the effective area of a LineString. Because we use a threshold value of zero, all vertices in the input geometry are returned.

```
select ST_AsText(ST_SetEffectiveArea(geom)) all_pts, ST_AsText(ST_SetEffectiveArea(geom, 30) ←
    ) thrshld_30
FROM (SELECT 'LINESTRING(5 2, 3 8, 6 20, 7 25, 10 10)'::geometry geom) As foo;
-result
    all_pts | thrshld_30
-----+
LINESTRING M (5 2 3.40282346638529e+38,3 8 29,6 20 1.5,7 25 49.5,10 10 3.40282346638529e ←
    +38) | LINESTRING M (5 2 3.40282346638529e+38,7 25 49.5,10 10 3.40282346638529e+38)
```

See Also

ST_SimplifyVW

8.11.32 ST_Split

ST_Split — Returns a collection of geometries resulting by splitting a geometry.

Synopsis

geometry ST_Split(geometry input, geometry blade);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 393 / 791

Description

The function supports splitting a line by (multi)point, (multi)line or (multi)polygon boundary, a (multi)polygon by line. The returned geometry is always a collection.

Think of this function as the opposite of ST_Union. Theoretically applying ST_Union to the elements of the returned collection should always yield the original geometry.

Availability: 2.0.0

Changed: 2.2.0 support for splitting a line by a multiline, a multipoint or (multi)polygon boundary was introduced.



Note

To improve the robustness of ST_Split it may be convenient to ST_Snap the input to the blade in advance using a very low tolerance. Otherwise the internally used coordinate grid may cause tolerance problems, where coordinates of input and blade do not fall onto each other and the input is not being split correctly (see #2192).

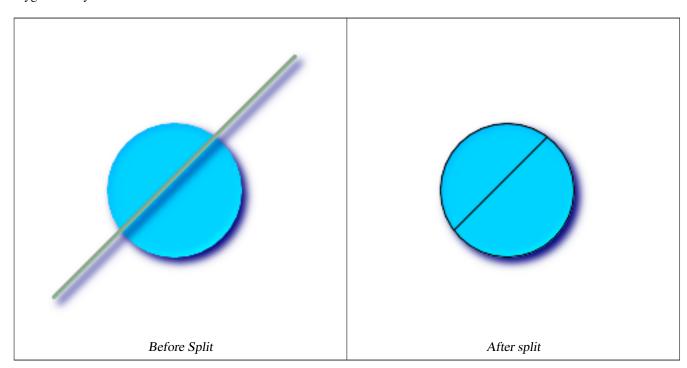


Note

When a (multi)polygon is passed as as the blade, its linear component (the boundary) is used for cutting the input.

Examples

Polygon Cut by Line



```
-- this creates a geometry collection consisting of the 2 halves of the polygon
-- this is similar to the example we demonstrated in ST_BuildArea

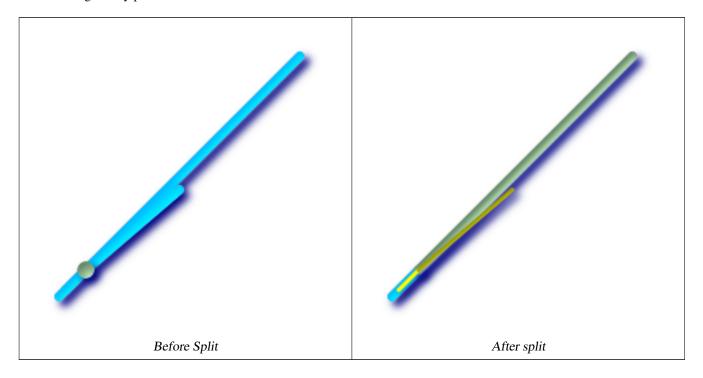
SELECT ST_Split(circle, line)

FROM (SELECT

ST_MakeLine(ST_MakePoint(10, 10),ST_MakePoint(190, 190)) As line,
ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('POINT(100 90)'), 50) As circle) As foo;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 394 / 791

Multilinestring Cut by point



PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 395 / 791

See Also

ST_AsText, ST_BuildArea, ST_Dump, ST_GeometryN, ST_Union, ST_Subdivide

8.11.33 ST_SymDifference

 $ST_SymDifference$ — Returns a geometry that represents the portions of A and B that do not intersect. It is called a symmetric difference because $ST_SymDifference(A,B) = ST_SymDifference(B,A)$.

Synopsis

geometry ST_SymDifference(geometry geomA, geometry geomB);

Description

Returns a geometry that represents the portions of A and B that do not intersect. It is called a symmetric difference because $ST_SymDifference(A,B) = ST_SymDifference(B,A)$. One can think of this as $ST_Union(geomA,geomB) - ST_Intersection(A,B)$.

Performed by the GEOS module



Note

Do not call with a GeometryCollection as an argument

 \checkmark

This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.3

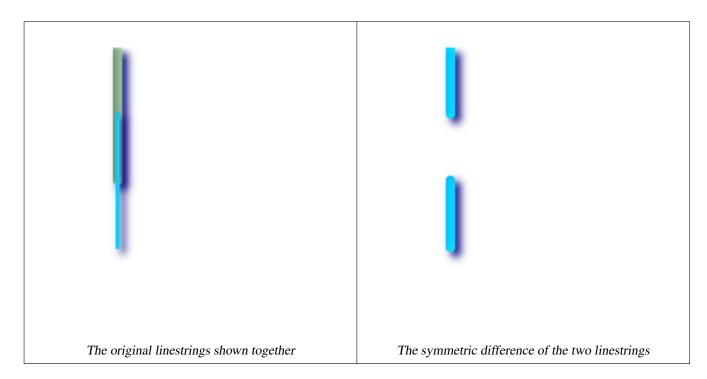


This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.21

This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index. However it seems to only consider x y when doing the difference and tacks back on the Z-Index

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 396 / 791



```
--Safe for 2d - symmetric difference of 2 linestrings

SELECT ST_AsText(

ST_SymDifference(

ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(50 100, 50 200)'),

ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(50 50, 50 150)')

));

st_astext
-----

MULTILINESTRING((50 150,50 200), (50 50,50 100))
```

```
--When used in 3d doesn't quite do the right thing

SELECT ST_ASEWKT(ST_SymDifference(ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 1, 1 4 2)'),

ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 1 3, 1 3 4)')))

st_astext
------

MULTILINESTRING((1 3 2.75,1 4 2),(1 1 3,1 2 2.25))
```

See Also

ST_Difference, ST_Intersection, ST_Union

8.11.34 ST_Subdivide

ST_Subdivide — Returns a set of geometry where no geometry in the set has more than the specified number of vertices.

Synopsis

set of geometry **ST_Subdivide**(geometry geom, integer max_vertices=256);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 397 / 791

Description

Turns a single geometry into a set in which each element has fewer than the maximum allowed number of vertices. Useful for converting excessively large polygons and other objects into small portions that fit within the database page size. Uses the same envelope clipping as ST_ClipByBox2D does, recursively subdividing the input geometry until all portions have less than the maximum vertex count. Minimum vertice count allowed is 8 and if you try to specify lower than 8, it will throw an error.

Clipping performed by the GEOS module.



Note

Requires GEOS 3.5.0+

Availability: 2.2.0 requires GEOS >= 3.5.0.

Examples

-- Create a new subdivided table suitable for joining to the original CREATE TABLE subdivided_geoms AS SELECT pkey, ST_Subdivide(geom) AS geom FROM original_geoms;

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 398 / 791



Subdivide max 10 vertices

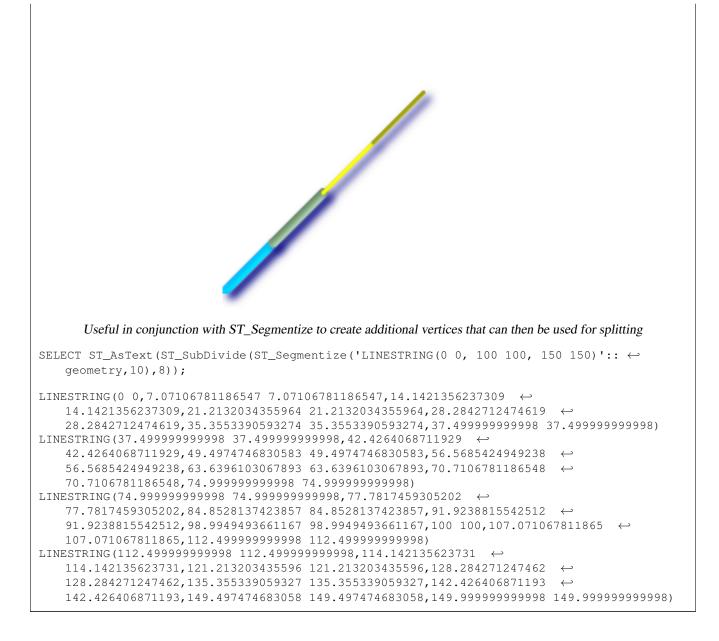
1 | POLYGON((22 64,29.3913043478263 98.00000000001,106.00000000001 98.0000000001, 106.000000000001 27.5882352941173,85 35,68 29,66 28,49 42,32 56,22 64))

29.913043478263 98.000000000001))

3 | POLYGON((106.00000000001 27.5882352941173,106.00000000001 98.00000000000, 189.52380952381 98.00000000001,185 79,186 56,186 52,178 34,168 18,147 13, 132 0,119 23,106.00000000001 27.5882352941173))

4 | POLYGON((106.00000000001 98.0000000001,106.0000000001 183.27272727272, 114 184,132 186,146 178,176 184,179 162,184 141,190 122,190 100,189.5238095238 98.00000000001,106.00000000001 98.00000000001))

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 399 / 791



See Also

ST AsText, ST ClipByBox2D, ST Segmentize, ST Split

8.11.35 ST SwapOrdinates

ST_SwapOrdinates — Returns a version of the given geometry with given ordinate values swapped.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_SwapOrdinates**(geometry geom, cstring ords);

Description

Returns a version of the given geometry with given ordinates swapped.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 400 / 791

The ords parameter is a 2-characters string naming the ordinates to swap. Valid names are: x,y,z and m.

Availability: 2.2.0



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This function supports M coordinates.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Example

See Also

ST_FlipCoordinates

8.11.36 ST Union

ST_Union — Returns a geometry that represents the point set union of the Geometries.

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_Union(geometry set g1field);
geometry ST_Union(geometry g1, geometry g2);
geometry ST_Union(geometry[] g1_array);
```

Description

Output type can be a MULTI*, single geometry, or Geometry Collection. Comes in 2 variants. Variant 1 unions 2 geometries resulting in a new geometry with no intersecting regions. Variant 2 is an aggregate function that takes a set of geometries and unions them into a single ST_Geometry resulting in no intersecting regions.

Aggregate version: This function returns a MULTI geometry or NON-MULTI geometry from a set of geometries. The ST_Union() function is an "aggregate" function in the terminology of PostgreSQL. That means that it operates on rows of data, in the same way the SUM() and AVG() functions do and like most aggregates, it also ignores NULL geometries.

Non-Aggregate version: This function returns a geometry being a union of two input geometries. Output type can be a MULTI*, NON-MULTI or GEOMETRYCOLLECTION. If any are NULL, then NULL is returned.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 401 / 791



Note

ST_Collect and ST_Union are often interchangeable. ST_Union is in general orders of magnitude slower than ST_Collect because it tries to dissolve boundaries and reorder geometries to ensure that a constructed Multi* doesn't have intersecting regions.

Performed by the GEOS module.

NOTE: this function was formerly called GeomUnion(), which was renamed from "Union" because UNION is an SQL reserved word.

Availability: 1.4.0 - ST_Union was enhanced. ST_Union(geomarray) was introduced and also faster aggregate collection in Post-greSQL. If you are using GEOS 3.1.0+ ST_Union will use the faster Cascaded Union algorithm described in http://blog.cleverelephant.ca 2009/01/must-faster-unions-in-postgis-14.html



This method implements the OpenGIS Simple Features Implementation Specification for SQL 1.1. s2.1.1.3



Note

Aggregate version is not explicitly defined in OGC SPEC.

This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.19 the z-index (elevation) when polygons are involved.

Examples

Aggregate example

```
SELECT stusps,

ST_Multi(ST_Union(f.the_geom)) as singlegeom

FROM sometable As f

GROUP BY stusps
```

Non-Aggregate example

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 402 / 791

```
UNION ALL
 SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('POINT(-2 3 1)') as the_geom
SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(5 5 5, 10 10 10)') as the_geom ) as foo;
st_asewkt
GEOMETRYCOLLECTION (POINT (-2 3 1), LINESTRING (5 5 5,10 10 10), POLYGON ((-7 4.2 5,-7.1 4.2 \leftrightarrow
   5,-7.1 4.3 5,-7 4.2 5)));
--3d example not mixing dimensions
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(st_union(the_geom))
(SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('POLYGON((-7 4.2 2,-7.1 4.2 3,-7.1 4.3 2,
-7 4.2 2))') as the_geom
UNION ALL
SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('POINT(5 5 5)') as the_geom
UNION ALL
 SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('POINT(-2 3 1)') as the_geom
UNTON ALL
SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(5 5 5, 10 10 10)') as the_geom ) as foo;
st asewkt
GEOMETRYCOLLECTION (POINT (-2 3 1), LINESTRING (5 5 5,10 10 10), POLYGON ((-7 4.2 2,-7.1 4.2 \leftrightarrow
   3, -7.1 \ 4.3 \ 2, -7 \ 4.2 \ 2)))
--Examples using new Array construct
SELECT ST_Union(ARRAY(SELECT the_geom FROM sometable));
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Union(ARRAY[ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4)'),
      ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(3 4, 4 5)')])) As wktunion;
--wktunion--
MULTILINESTRING((3 4,4 5),(1 2,3 4))
```

See Also

ST_Collect ST_UnaryUnion

8.11.37 ST_UnaryUnion

ST_UnaryUnion — Like ST_Union, but working at the geometry component level.

Synopsis

geometry ST_UnaryUnion(geometry geom);

Description

Unlike ST_Union, ST_UnaryUnion does dissolve boundaries between components of a multipolygon (invalid) and does perform union between the components of a geometrycollection. Each components of the input geometry is assumed to be valid, so you won't get a valid multipolygon out of a bow-tie polygon (invalid).

You may use this function to node a set of linestrings. You may mix ST_UnaryUnion with ST_Collect to fine-tune how many geometries at once you want to dissolve to be nice on both memory size and CPU time, finding the balance between ST_Union and ST_MemUnion.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 403 / 791



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.3.0.

See Also

ST_Union, ST_MemUnion, ST_Collect, ST_Node

8.11.38 ST_VoronoiLines

ST_VoronoiLines — Returns the boundaries between the cells of the Voronoi diagram constructed from the vertices of a geometry.

Synopsis

geometry ST_VoronoiLines(g1 geometry , tolerance float8 , extend_to geometry);

Description

ST_VoronoiLines computes a two-dimensional Voronoi diagram from the vertices of the supplied geometry and returns the boundaries between cells in that diagram as a MultiLineString.

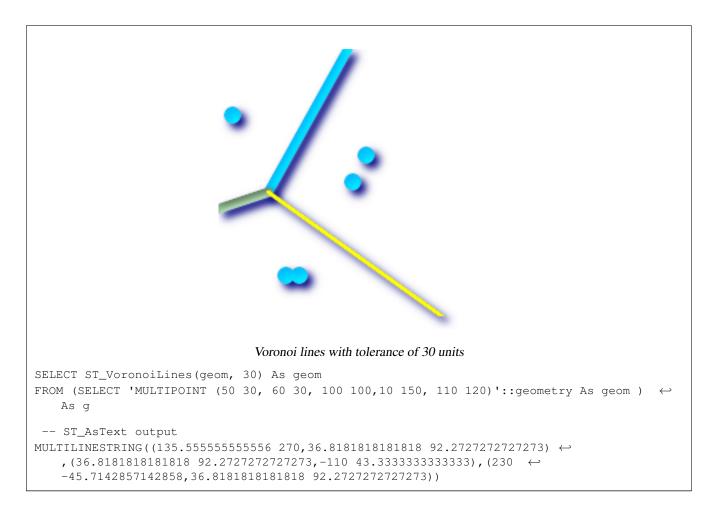
Optional parameters:

- 'tolerance': The distance within which vertices will be considered equivalent. Robustness of the algorithm can be improved by supplying a nonzero tolerance distance. (default = 0.0)
- 'extend_to': If a geometry is supplied as the "extend_to" parameter, the diagram will be extended to cover the envelope of the "extend_to" geometry, unless that envelope is smaller than the default envelope. (default = NULL)

Availability: 2.3.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.5.0.

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 404 / 791



See Also

ST_DelaunayTriangles, ST_VoronoiPolygons, ST_Collect

8.11.39 ST_VoronoiPolygons

ST_VoronoiPolygons — Returns the cells of the Voronoi diagram constructed from the vertices of a geometry.

Synopsis

geometry ST_VoronoiPolygons(g1 geometry , tolerance float8 , extend_to geometry);

Description

ST_VoronoiPolygons computes a two-dimensional Voronoi diagram from the vertices of the supplied geometry. The result is a GeometryCollection of Polygons that covers an envelope larger than the extent of the input vertices.

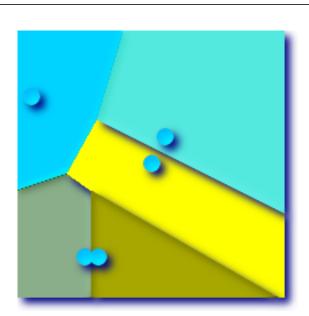
Optional parameters:

- 'tolerance': The distance within which vertices will be considered equivalent. Robustness of the algorithm can be improved by supplying a nonzero tolerance distance. (default = 0.0)
- 'extend_to': If a geometry is supplied as the "extend_to" parameter, the diagram will be extended to cover the envelope of the "extend_to" geometry, unless that envelope is smaller than the default envelope. (default = NULL)

Availability: 2.3.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.5.0.

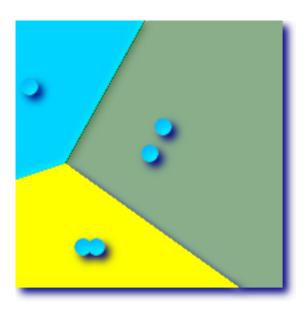
PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 405 / 791

Examples



Points overlaid on top of Voronoi diagram

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 406 / 791

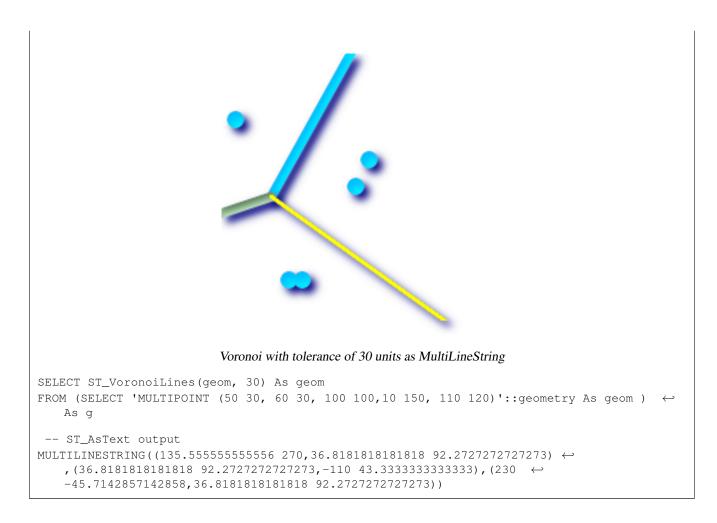


Voronoi with tolerance of 30 units

```
SELECT ST_VoronoiPolygons(geom, 30) As geom
FROM (SELECT 'MULTIPOINT (50 30, 60 30, 100 100,10 150, 110 120)'::geometry As geom ) ←
    As g;

-- ST_AsText output
GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(POLYGON((-110 43.3333333333333,-110 270,100.5 270,59.3478260869565 ←
    132.826086956522,36.8181818181818 92.27272727273,-110 43.333333333333)),
POLYGON((230 47.5,230 -45.7142857142858,36.8181818181818 ←
    92.27272727273,59.3478260869565 132.826086956522,230 47.5)),POLYGON((230 ←
    -45.7142857142858,230 -90,-110 -90,-110 43.333333333333,36.8181818181818 ←
    92.27272727273,230 -45.7142857142858)),
POLYGON((100.5 270,230 270,230 47.5,59.3478260869565 132.826086956522,100.5 270)))
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 407 / 791



See Also

ST_DelaunayTriangles, ST_VoronoiLines, ST_Collect

8.12 Linear Referencing

8.12.1 ST_LineInterpolatePoint

ST_LineInterpolatePoint — Returns a point interpolated along a line. Second argument is a float8 between 0 and 1 representing fraction of total length of linestring the point has to be located.

Synopsis

geometry ST_LineInterpolatePoint(geometry a_linestring, float8 a_fraction);

Description

Returns a point interpolated along a line. First argument must be a LINESTRING. Second argument is a float8 between 0 and 1 representing fraction of total linestring length the point has to be located.

See ST_LineLocatePoint for computing the line location nearest to a Point.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 408 / 791



Note

Since release 1.1.1 this function also interpolates M and Z values (when present), while prior releases set them to 0.0.

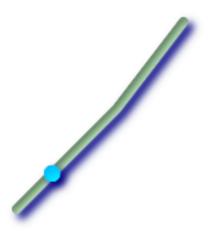
Availability: 0.8.2, Z and M supported added in 1.1.1

Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Line_Interpolate_Point.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples



A linestring with the interpolated point at 20% position (0.20)

```
--Return point 20% along 2d line
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_LineInterpolatePoint(the_line, 0.20))
 FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(25 50, 100 125, 150 190)') as the_line) As foo;
  st_asewkt
POINT (51.5974135047432 76.5974135047432)
--Return point mid-way of 3d line
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_LineInterpolatePoint(the_line, 0.5))
 FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 3, 4 5 6, 6 7 8)') as the_line) As foo;
 st_asewkt
POINT(3.5 4.5 5.5)
--find closest point on a line to a point or other geometry
ST_GeomFromText('POINT(4 3)')))
FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 4 5, 6 7)') As the_line) As foo;
  st_astext
POINT(3 4)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 409 / 791

See Also

ST_AsText, ST_AsEWKT, ST_Length, ST_LineLocatePoint

8.12.2 ST_LineLocatePoint

ST_LineLocatePoint — Returns a float between 0 and 1 representing the location of the closest point on LineString to the given Point, as a fraction of total 2d line length.

Synopsis

float8 **ST_LineLocatePoint**(geometry a_linestring, geometry a_point);

Description

Returns a float between 0 and 1 representing the location of the closest point on LineString to the given Point, as a fraction of total 2d line length.

You can use the returned location to extract a Point (ST_LineInterpolatePoint) or a substring (ST_LineSubstring).

This is useful for approximating numbers of addresses

Availability: 1.1.0

Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Line_Locate_Point.

Examples

```
--Rough approximation of finding the street number of a point along the street
--Note the whole foo thing is just to generate dummy data that looks
--like house centroids and street
--We use ST_DWithin to exclude
--houses too far away from the street to be considered on the street
SELECT ST_AsText(house_loc) As as_text_house_loc,
  startstreet num +
   CAST( (endstreet_num - startstreet_num)
      * ST_LineLocatePoint(street_line, house_loc) As integer) As street_num
FROM
(SELECT ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4)') As street_line,
  ST_MakePoint(x*1.01,y*1.03) As house_loc, 10 As startstreet_num,
    20 As endstreet_num
FROM generate_series(1,3) x CROSS JOIN generate_series(2,4) As y)
As foo
WHERE ST_DWithin(street_line, house_loc, 0.2);
as_text_house_loc | street_num
POINT (1.01 2.06)
                            1.0
 POINT(2.02 3.09) |
                            15
 POINT (3.03 4.12)
                             20
 --find closest point on a line to a point or other geometry
 SELECT ST_AsText(ST_LineInterpolatePoint(foo.the_line, ST_LineLocatePoint(foo.the_line,
    ST_GeomFromText('POINT(4 3)')))
FROM (SELECT ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 4 5, 6 7)') As the_line) As foo;
  st_astext
 POINT (3 4)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 410 / 791

See Also

ST_DWithin, ST_Length2D, ST_LineInterpolatePoint, ST_LineSubstring

8.12.3 ST_LineSubstring

ST_LineSubstring — Return a linestring being a substring of the input one starting and ending at the given fractions of total 2d length. Second and third arguments are float8 values between 0 and 1.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_LineSubstring**(geometry a_linestring, float8 startfraction, float8 endfraction);

Description

Return a linestring being a substring of the input one starting and ending at the given fractions of total 2d length. Second and third arguments are float8 values between 0 and 1. This only works with LINESTRINGs. To use with contiguous MULTI-LINESTRINGs use in conjunction with ST_LineMerge.

If 'start' and 'end' have the same value this is equivalent to ST_LineInterpolatePoint.

See ST_LineLocatePoint for computing the line location nearest to a Point.



Note

Since release 1.1.1 this function also interpolates M and Z values (when present), while prior releases set them to unspecified values.

Availability: 1.1.0, Z and M supported added in 1.1.1

Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Line_Substring.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples



A linestring seen with 1/3 midrange overlaid (0.333, 0.666)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 411 / 791

```
--Return the approximate 1/3 mid-range part of a linestring
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Line_SubString(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(25 50, 100 125, 150 190)'),
   0.333, 0.666));
                       st astext
LINESTRING(69.2846934853974 94.2846934853974,100 125,111.700356260683 140.210463138888)
-- The below example simulates a while loop in
--SQL using PostgreSQL generate_series() to cut all
--linestrings in a table to 100 unit segments
-- of which no segment is longer than 100 units
-- units are measured in the SRID units of measurement
-- It also assumes all geometries are LINESTRING or contiguous MULTILINESTRING
--and no geometry is longer than 100 units*10000
--for better performance you can reduce the 10000
--to match max number of segments you expect
SELECT field1, field2, ST_LineSubstring(the_geom, 100.00*n/length,
  WHEN 100.00*(n+1) < length THEN <math>100.00*(n+1)/length
 ELSE 1
 END) As the_geom
FROM
  (SELECT sometable.field1, sometable.field2,
  ST_LineMerge(sometable.the_geom) AS the_geom,
 ST_Length(sometable.the_geom) As length
 FROM sometable
 ) AS t
CROSS JOIN generate_series(0,10000) AS n
WHERE n*100.00/length < 1;
```

See Also

ST_Length, ST_LineInterpolatePoint, ST_LineMerge

8.12.4 ST_LocateAlong

ST_LocateAlong — Return a derived geometry collection value with elements that match the specified measure. Polygonal elements are not supported.

Synopsis

geometry ST_LocateAlong(geometry ageom_with_measure, float8 a_measure, float8 offset);

Description

Return a derived geometry collection value with elements that match the specified measure. Polygonal elements are not supported.

If an offset is provided, the resultant will be offset to the left or right of the input line by the specified number of units. A positive offset will be to the left, and a negative one to the right.

Semantic is specified by: ISO/IEC CD 13249-3:200x(E) - Text for Continuation CD Editing Meeting

Availability: 1.1.0 by old name ST_Locate_Along_Measure.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 412 / 791

Changed: 2.0.0 in prior versions this used to be called ST_Locate_Along_Measure. The old name has been deprecated and will be removed in the future but is still available.



Note

Use this function only for geometries with an M component



This function supports M coordinates.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsText(the_geom)
   FROM
    (SELECT ST LocateAlong(
     ST_GeomFromText('MULTILINESTRINGM((1 2 3, 3 4 2, 9 4 3),
    (1 2 3, 5 4 5))'),3) As the_geom) As foo;
             st_asewkt
MULTIPOINT M (1 2 3)
--Geometry collections are difficult animals so dump them
--to make them more digestable
SELECT ST_AsText((ST_Dump(the_geom)).geom)
 FROM
  (SELECT ST_LocateAlong(
     ST_GeomFromText('MULTILINESTRINGM((1 2 3, 3 4 2, 9 4 3),
  (1 2 3, 5 4 5))'),3) As the_geom) As foo;
  st_asewkt
POINTM(1 2 3)
 POINTM(9 4 3)
 POINTM(1 2 3)
```

See Also

ST_Dump, ST_LocateBetween

8.12.5 ST LocateBetween

ST_LocateBetween — Return a derived geometry collection value with elements that match the specified range of measures inclusively. Polygonal elements are not supported.

Synopsis

geometry ST_LocateBetween(geometry geomA, float8 measure_start, float8 measure_end, float8 offset);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 413 / 791

Description

Return a derived geometry collection value with elements that match the specified range of measures inclusively. Polygonal elements are not supported.

Semantic is specified by: ISO/IEC CD 13249-3:200x(E) - Text for Continuation CD Editing Meeting

Availability: 1.1.0 by old name ST_Locate_Between_Measures.

Changed: 2.0.0 - in prior versions this used to be called ST_Locate_Between_Measures. The old name has been deprecated and will be removed in the future but is still available for backward compatibility.



This function supports M coordinates.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsText(the_geom)
FROM
(SELECT ST_LocateBetween(
ST_GeomFromText('MULTILINESTRING M ((1 2 3, 3 4 2, 9 4 3),
(1 2 3, 5 4 5))'),1.5, 3) As the_geom) As foo;

st_asewkt

GEOMETRYCOLLECTION M (LINESTRING M (1 2 3,3 4 2,9 4 3),POINT M (1 2 3))

--Geometry collections are difficult animals so dump them
--to make them more digestable
SELECT ST_AsText((ST_Dump(the_geom)).geom)
FROM
(SELECT ST_LocateBetween(
ST_GeomFromText('MULTILINESTRING M ((1 2 3, 3 4 2, 9 4 3),
(1 2 3, 5 4 5))'),1.5, 3) As the_geom) As foo;

st_asewkt

LINESTRING M (1 2 3,3 4 2,9 4 3)
POINT M (1 2 3)
```

See Also

ST_Dump, ST_LocateAlong

8.12.6 ST_LocateBetweenElevations

ST_LocateBetweenElevations — Return a derived geometry (collection) value with elements that intersect the specified range of elevations inclusively. Only 3D, 4D LINESTRINGS and MULTILINESTRINGS are supported.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_LocateBetweenElevations**(geometry geom_mline, float8 elevation_start, float8 elevation_end);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 414 / 791

Description

Return a derived geometry (collection) value with elements that intersect the specified range of elevations inclusively. Only 3D, 3DM LINESTRINGS and MULTILINESTRINGS are supported.

Availability: 1.4.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_LocateBetweenElevations(
     ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 3, 4 5 6)'),2,4)) As ewelev;
                  ewelev
 MULTILINESTRING((1 2 3,2 3 4))
SELECT ST_AsEWKT(ST_LocateBetweenElevations(
      ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 6, 4 5 -1, 7 8 9)'),6,9)) As ewelev;
        ewelev
GEOMETRYCOLLECTION (POINT (1 2 6), LINESTRING (6.1 7.1 6,7 8 9))
--Geometry collections are difficult animals so dump them
--to make them more digestable
SELECT ST_AsEWKT((ST_Dump(the_geom)).geom)
    (SELECT ST_LocateBetweenElevations(
     ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 6, 4 5 -1, 7 8 9)'),6,9) As the_geom) As foo;
      st_asewkt
POINT(1 2 6)
LINESTRING(6.1 7.1 6,7 8 9)
```

See Also

ST_Dump

8.12.7 ST_InterpolatePoint

ST_InterpolatePoint — Return the value of the measure dimension of a geometry at the point closed to the provided point.

Synopsis

float8 ST_InterpolatePoint(geometry line, geometry point);

Description

Return the value of the measure dimension of a geometry at the point closed to the provided point.

Availability: 2.0.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 415 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_InterpolatePoint('LINESTRING M (0 0 0, 10 0 20)', 'POINT(5 5)');
st_interpolatepoint
-----
10
```

See Also

ST_AddMeasure, ST_LocateAlong, ST_LocateBetween

8.12.8 ST AddMeasure

ST_AddMeasure — Return a derived geometry with measure elements linearly interpolated between the start and end points.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_AddMeasure**(geometry geom_mline, float8 measure_start, float8 measure_end);

Description

Return a derived geometry with measure elements linearly interpolated between the start and end points. If the geometry has no measure dimension, one is added. If the geometry has a measure dimension, it is over-written with new values. Only LINESTRINGS and MULTILINESTRINGS are supported.

Availability: 1.5.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_AddMeasure(
ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 0, 2 0, 4 0)'),1,4)) As ewelev;
          ewelev
LINESTRINGM(1 0 1,2 0 2,4 0 4)
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_AddMeasure(
ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 0 4, 2 0 4, 4 0 4)'),10,40)) As ewelev;
                 ewelev
LINESTRING(1 0 4 10,2 0 4 20,4 0 4 40)
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_AddMeasure(
ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRINGM(1 0 4, 2 0 4, 4 0 4)'),10,40)) As ewelev;
                ewelev
LINESTRINGM(1 0 10,2 0 20,4 0 40)
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_AddMeasure(
 \texttt{ST\_GeomFromEWKT('MULTILINESTRINGM((1 0 4, 2 0 4, 4 0 4), (1 0 4, 2 0 4, 4 0 4))'), 10, 70))} \  \  As \  \  \hookleftarrow  
     ewelev;
                              ewelev
 MULTILINESTRINGM((1 0 10,2 0 20,4 0 40),(1 0 40,2 0 50,4 0 70))
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 416 / 791

8.13 Temporal Support

8.13.1 ST_IsValidTrajectory

ST_IsValidTrajectory — Returns true if the geometry is a valid trajectory.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_IsValidTrajectory**(geometry line);

Description

Tell if a geometry encodes a valid trajectory. Valid trajectories are encoded as LINESTRING with M value growing from each vertex to the next.

Valid trajectories are expected as input to some spatio-temporal queries like ST_ClosestPointOfApproach

Availability: 2.2.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

See Also

ST_ClosestPointOfApproach

8.13.2 ST_ClosestPointOfApproach

ST_ClosestPointOfApproach — Returns the measure at which points interpolated along two lines are closest.

Synopsis

float8 **ST_ClosestPointOfApproach**(geometry track1, geometry track2);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 417 / 791

Description

Returns the smallest measure at which point interpolated along the given lines are at the smallest distance. Inputs must be valid trajectories as checked by ST_IsValidTrajectory. Null is returned if the trajectories do not overlap on the M range.

See ST_LocateAlong for getting the actual points at the given measure.

Availability: 2.2.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
-- Return the time in which two objects moving between 10:00 and 11:00
-- are closest to each other and their distance at that point
WITH inp AS ( SELECT
  ST_AddMeasure('LINESTRING Z (0 0 0, 10 0 5)'::geometry,
   extract(epoch from '2015-05-26 10:00'::timestamptz),
   extract(epoch from '2015-05-26 11:00'::timestamptz)
  ST_AddMeasure('LINESTRING Z (0 2 10, 12 1 2)'::geometry,
    extract(epoch from '2015-05-26 10:00'::timestamptz),
    extract(epoch from '2015-05-26 11:00'::timestamptz)
  ) b
), cpa AS (
 SELECT ST_ClosestPointOfApproach(a,b) m FROM inp
), points AS (
  SELECT ST_Force3DZ(ST_GeometryN(ST_LocateAlong(a,m),1)) pa,
         ST_Force3DZ(ST_GeometryN(ST_LocateAlong(b,m),1)) pb
 FROM inp, cpa
SELECT to_timestamp(m) t,
       ST_Distance(pa,pb) distance
FROM points, cpa;
                              1
                                   distance
 2015-05-26 10:45:31.034483+02 | 1.96036833151395
```

See Also

 $ST_IsValidTrajectory, ST_DistanceCPA, ST_LocateAlong, ST_AddMeasure$

8.13.3 ST_DistanceCPA

ST_DistanceCPA — Returns the distance between closest points of approach in two trajectories.

Synopsis

float8 **ST_DistanceCPA**(geometry track1, geometry track2);

Description

Returns the minimum distance two moving objects have ever been each-other. Inputs must be valid trajectories as checked by ST_IsValidTrajectory. Null is returned if the trajectories do not overlap on the M range.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 418 / 791

Availability: 2.2.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

See Also

ST_IsValidTrajectory, ST_ClosestPointOfApproach, ST_AddMeasure, |=|

8.13.4 ST_CPAWithin

ST_CPAWithin — Returns true if the trajectories' closest points of approach are within the specified distance.

Synopsis

float8 ST_CPAWithin(geometry track1, geometry track2, float8 maxdist);

Description

Checks whether two moving objects have ever been within the specified max distance.

Inputs must be valid trajectories as checked by ST_IsValidTrajectory. False is returned if the trajectories do not overlap on the M range.

Availability: 2.2.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
WITH inp AS ( SELECT

ST_AddMeasure('LINESTRING Z (0 0 0, 10 0 5)'::geometry,
extract(epoch from '2015-05-26 10:00'::timestamptz),
extract(epoch from '2015-05-26 11:00'::timestamptz)
) a,
ST_AddMeasure('LINESTRING Z (0 2 10, 12 1 2)'::geometry,
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 419 / 791

See Also

ST_IsValidTrajectory, ST_ClosestPointOfApproach, ST_DistanceCPA, |=|

8.14 Long Transactions Support

This module and associated pl/pgsql functions have been implemented to provide long locking support required by Web Feature Service specification.



Note

Users must use serializable transaction level otherwise locking mechanism would break.

8.14.1 AddAuth

AddAuth — Add an authorization token to be used in current transaction.

Synopsis

boolean AddAuth(text auth_token);

Description

Add an authorization token to be used in current transaction.

Creates/adds to a temp table called temp_lock_have_table the current transaction identifier and authorization token key.

Availability: 1.1.3

Examples

```
SELECT LockRow('towns', '353', 'priscilla');
BEGIN TRANSACTION;
SELECT AddAuth('joey');
UPDATE towns SET the_geom = ST_Translate(the_geom, 2, 2) WHERE gid = 353;
COMMIT;
---Error--
ERROR: UPDATE where "gid" = '353' requires authorization 'priscilla'
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 420 / 791

See Also

LockRow

8.14.2 CheckAuth

CheckAuth — Creates trigger on a table to prevent/allow updates and deletes of rows based on authorization token.

Synopsis

```
integer CheckAuth(text a_schema_name, text a_table_name, text a_key_column_name); integer CheckAuth(text a_table_name, text a_key_column_name);
```

Description

Creates trigger on a table to prevent/allow updates and deletes of rows based on authorization token. Identify rows using <rowid col> column.

If a_schema_name is not passed in, then searches for table in current schema.



Note

If an authorization trigger already exists on this table function errors.

If Transaction support is not enabled, function throws an exception.

Availability: 1.1.3

Examples

```
SELECT CheckAuth('public', 'towns', 'gid');
result
-----
0
```

See Also

EnableLongTransactions

8.14.3 DisableLongTransactions

DisableLongTransactions — Disable long transaction support. This function removes the long transaction support metadata tables, and drops all triggers attached to lock-checked tables.

Synopsis

text DisableLongTransactions();

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 421 / 791

Description

Disable long transaction support. This function removes the long transaction support metadata tables, and drops all triggers attached to lock-checked tables.

Drops meta table called authorization_table and a view called authorized_tables and all triggers called check authtrigger

Availability: 1.1.3

Examples

```
SELECT DisableLongTransactions();
--result--
Long transactions support disabled
```

See Also

EnableLongTransactions

8.14.4 EnableLongTransactions

EnableLongTransactions — Enable long transaction support. This function creates the required metadata tables, needs to be called once before using the other functions in this section. Calling it twice is harmless.

Synopsis

text EnableLongTransactions();

Description

Enable long transaction support. This function creates the required metadata tables, needs to be called once before using the other functions in this section. Calling it twice is harmless.

Creates a meta table called authorization_table and a view called authorized_tables

Availability: 1.1.3

Examples

```
SELECT EnableLongTransactions();
--result--
Long transactions support enabled
```

See Also

DisableLongTransactions

8.14.5 LockRow

LockRow — Set lock/authorization for specific row in table

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 422 / 791

Synopsis

```
integer LockRow(text a_schema_name, text a_table_name, text a_row_key, text an_auth_token, timestamp expire_dt); integer LockRow(text a_table_name, text a_row_key, text an_auth_token, timestamp expire_dt); integer LockRow(text a_table_name, text a_row_key, text an_auth_token);
```

Description

Set lock/authorization for specific row in table <authid> is a text value, <expires> is a timestamp defaulting to now()+1hour. Returns 1 if lock has been assigned, 0 otherwise (already locked by other auth)

Availability: 1.1.3

Examples

```
SELECT LockRow('public', 'towns', '2', 'joey');
LockRow
-----
1
--Joey has already locked the record and Priscilla is out of luck
SELECT LockRow('public', 'towns', '2', 'priscilla');
LockRow
------
0
```

See Also

UnlockRows

8.14.6 UnlockRows

UnlockRows — Remove all locks held by specified authorization id. Returns the number of locks released.

Synopsis

integer UnlockRows(text auth_token);

Description

Remove all locks held by specified authorization id. Returns the number of locks released.

Availability: 1.1.3

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 423 / 791

See Also

LockRow

Miscellaneous Functions

8.15.1 ST_Accum

ST_Accum — Aggregate. Constructs an array of geometries.

Synopsis

geometry[] ST_Accum(geometry set geomfield);

Description

Aggregate. Constructs an array of geometries.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

```
SELECT (ST_Accum(the_geom)) As all_em, ST_AsText((ST_Accum(the_geom))[1]) As grabone,
(ST_Accum(the_geom))[2:4] as grab_rest
   FROM (SELECT ST_MakePoint(a*CAST(random()*10 As integer), a*CAST(random()*10 As \leftrightarrow
      integer), a*CAST(random()*10 As integer)) As the_geom
     FROM generate_series(1,4) a) As foo;
all_em|grabone
         | grab_rest
0101000080000000000
0001840000000000002C4000000000003040:
POINT(5 10) | {010100008000000000001840000000000002C4000000000003040:
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_Collect

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 424 / 791

8.15.2 Box2D

Box2D — Returns a BOX2D representing the maximum extents of the geometry.

Synopsis

box2d **Box2D**(geometry geomA);

Description

Returns a BOX2D representing the maximum extents of the geometry.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples

```
SELECT Box2D(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4, 5 6)'));
box2d
-----
BOX(1 2,5 6)

SELECT Box2D(ST_GeomFromText('CIRCULARSTRING(220268 150415,220227 150505,220227 150406)') 
);
box2d
-----
BOX(220186.984375 150406,220288.25 150506.140625)
```

See Also

Box3D, ST_GeomFromText

8.15.3 Box3D

Box3D — Returns a BOX3D representing the maximum extents of the geometry.

Synopsis

box3d **Box3D**(geometry geomA);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 425 / 791

Description

Returns a BOX3D representing the maximum extents of the geometry.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

```
SELECT Box3D(ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(1 2 3, 3 4 5, 5 6 5)'));

Box3d
-----

BOX3D(1 2 3,5 6 5)

SELECT Box3D(ST_GeomFromEWKT('CIRCULARSTRING(220268 150415 1,220227 150505 1,220227 ← 150406 1)'));

Box3d
-----

BOX3D(220227 150406 1,220268 150415 1)
```

See Also

Box2D, ST_GeomFromEWKT

8.15.4 ST_EstimatedExtent

ST_EstimatedExtent — Return the 'estimated' extent of the given spatial table. The estimated is taken from the geometry column's statistics. The current schema will be used if not specified.

Synopsis

```
box2d ST_EstimatedExtent(text schema_name, text table_name, text geocolumn_name, boolean parent_ony); box2d ST_EstimatedExtent(text schema_name, text table_name, text geocolumn_name); box2d ST_EstimatedExtent(text table_name, text geocolumn_name);
```

Description

Return the 'estimated' extent of the given spatial table. The estimated is taken from the geometry column's statistics. The current schema will be used if not specified. The default behavior is to also use statistics collected from children tables (tables with INHERITS) if available. If 'parent_ony' is set to TRUE, only statistics for the given table are used and children tables are ignored.

For PostgreSQL>=8.0.0 statistics are gathered by VACUUM ANALYZE and resulting extent will be about 95% of the real one.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 426 / 791



Note

In absence of statistics (empty table or no ANALYZE called) this function returns NULL. Prior to version 1.5.4 an exception was thrown instead.

For PostgreSQL<8.0.0 statistics are gathered by update_geometry_stats() and resulting extent will be exact.

Availability: 1.0.0

Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Estimated_Extent.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

```
SELECT ST_EstimatedExtent('ny', 'edges', 'the_geom');
--result--
BOX(-8877653 4912316,-8010225.5 5589284)

SELECT ST_EstimatedExtent('feature_poly', 'the_geom');
--result--
BOX(-124.659652709961 24.6830825805664,-67.7798080444336 49.0012092590332)
```

See Also

ST_Extent

8.15.5 ST_Expand

ST_Expand — Returns bounding box expanded in all directions from the bounding box of the input geometry. Uses double-precision

Synopsis

```
geometry ST_Expand(geometry geom, float units_to_expand); geometry ST_Expand(geometry geom, float dx, float dy, float dz=0, float dm=0); box2d ST_Expand(box2d box, float units_to_expand); box2d ST_Expand(box2d box, float dx, float dy); box3d ST_Expand(box3d box, float units_to_expand); box3d ST_Expand(box3d box, float dx, float dy, float dz=0);
```

Description

This function returns a bounding box expanded from the bounding box of the input, either by specifying a single distance with which the box should be expanded in all directions, or by specifying an expansion distance for each direction. Uses double-precision. Can be very useful for distance queries, or to add a bounding box filter to a query to take advantage of a spatial index.

In addition to the geometry version of ST_Expand, which is the most commonly used, variants are provided that accept and produce internal BOX2D and BOX3D data types.

ST_Expand is similar in concept to ST_Buffer, except while buffer expands the geometry in all directions, ST_Expand expands the bounding box an x,y,z unit amount.

Units are in the units of the spatial reference system in use denoted by the SRID.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 427 / 791



Note

Pre 1.3, ST_Expand was used in conjunction with distance to do indexable queries. Something of the form the geom && ST_Expand('POINT(10 20)', 10) AND ST_Distance(the_geom, 'POINT(10 20)') < 10 Post 1.2, this was replaced with the easier ST_DWithin construct.



Note

Availability: 1.5.0 behavior changed to output double precision instead of float4 coordinates.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.3.0 support was added to expand a box by different amounts in different dimensions.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples



Note

Examples below use US National Atlas Equal Area (SRID=2163) which is a meter projection

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_Buffer, ST_DWithin, ST_GeomFromEWKT, ST_GeomFromText, ST_SRID

8.15.6 ST_Extent

ST_Extent — an aggregate function that returns the bounding box that bounds rows of geometries.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 428 / 791

Synopsis

box2d ST_Extent(geometry set geomfield);

Description

ST_Extent returns a bounding box that encloses a set of geometries. The ST_Extent function is an "aggregate" function in the terminology of SQL. That means that it operates on lists of data, in the same way the SUM() and AVG() functions do.

Since it returns a bounding box, the spatial Units are in the units of the spatial reference system in use denoted by the SRID

ST_Extent is similar in concept to Oracle Spatial/Locator's SDO_AGGR_MBR



Note

Since ST_Extent returns a bounding box, the SRID meta-data is lost. Use ST_SetSRID to force it back into a geometry with SRID meta data. The coordinates are in the units of the spatial ref of the original geometries.



Note

ST_Extent will return boxes with only an x and y component even with (x,y,z) coordinate geometries. To maintain x,y,z use ST_3DExtent instead.



Note

Availability: 1.4.0

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Examples



Note

Examples below use Massachusetts State Plane ft (SRID=2249)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 429 / 791

```
bextent | name

BOX(778783.5625 2951741.25,794875.8125 2970042.75) | A

BOX(751315.8125 2919164.75,765202.6875 2935417.25) | B

BOX(739651.875 2917394.75,756688.375 2935866) | C

--Force back into a geometry
-- and render the extended text representation of that geometry

SELECT ST_SetSRID(ST_Extent(the_geom),2249) as bextent FROM sometable;

bextent

SRID=2249; POLYGON((739651.875 2908247.25,739651.875 2970042.75,794875.8125 2970042.75,794875.8125 2908247.25))
```

See Also

ST_AsEWKT, ST_3DExtent, ST_SetSRID, ST_SRID

8.15.7 ST_3DExtent

ST_3DExtent — an aggregate function that returns the box3D bounding box that bounds rows of geometries.

Synopsis

box3d ST_3DExtent(geometry set geomfield);

Description

ST_3DExtent returns a box3d (includes Z coordinate) bounding box that encloses a set of geometries. The ST_3DExtent function is an "aggregate" function in the terminology of SQL. That means that it operates on lists of data, in the same way the SUM() and AVG() functions do.

Since it returns a bounding box, the spatial Units are in the units of the spatial reference system in use denoted by the SRID



Note

Since ST_3DExtent returns a bounding box, the SRID meta-data is lost. Use ST_SetSRID to force it back into a geometry with SRID meta data. The coordinates are in the units of the spatial ref of the original geometries.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.

Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Extent3D



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 430 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_3DExtent(foo.the_geom) As b3extent
FROM (SELECT ST_MakePoint(x,y,z) As the_geom
  FROM generate_series(1,3) As x
    CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,2) As y
    CROSS JOIN generate_series(0,2) As Z) As foo;
    b3extent
 BOX3D(1 1 0,3 2 2)
--Get the extent of various elevated circular strings
SELECT ST_3DExtent (foo.the_geom) As b3extent
FROM (SELECT ST_Translate(ST_Force_3DZ(ST_LineToCurve(ST_Buffer(ST_MakePoint(x,y),1))),0,0, \leftarrow
   z) As the_geom
  FROM generate_series(1,3) As x
    CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,2) As y
    CROSS JOIN generate_series(0,2) As Z) As foo;
  b3extent
 BOX3D(1 0 0,4 2 2)
```

See Also

ST_Extent, ST_Force3DZ

8.15.8 Find_SRID

Find_SRID — The syntax is find_srid(a_db_schema, a_table, a_column) and the function returns the integer SRID of the specified column by searching through the GEOMETRY_COLUMNS table.

Synopsis

integer Find_SRID(varchar a_schema_name, varchar a_table_name, varchar a_geomfield_name);

Description

The syntax is find_srid(<db/schema>, , <column>) and the function returns the integer SRID of the specified column by searching through the GEOMETRY_COLUMNS table. If the geometry column has not been properly added with the AddGeometryColumns() function, this function will not work either.

Examples

```
SELECT Find_SRID('public', 'tiger_us_state_2007', 'the_geom_4269');
find_srid
-----
4269
```

See Also

ST_SRID

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 431 / 791

8.15.9 ST_MemSize

ST_MemSize — Returns the amount of space (in bytes) the geometry takes.

Synopsis

integer ST_MemSize(geometry geomA);

Description

Returns the amount of space (in bytes) the geometry takes.

This is a nice compliment to PostgreSQL built in functions pg_column_size, pg_size_pretty, pg_relation_size, pg_total_relation_size.

Note



pg_relation_size which gives the byte size of a table may return byte size lower than ST_MemSize. This is because pg_relation_size does not add toasted table contribution and large geometries are stored in TOAST tables.

pg_total_relation_size - includes, the table, the toasted tables, and the indexes.

pg_column_size returns how much space a geometry would take in a column considering compression, so may be lower than ST_MemSize



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves



This function supports Polyhedral surfaces.



This function supports Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network Surfaces (TIN).

Changed: 2.2.0 name changed to ST_MemSize to follow naming convention. In prior versions this function was called ST_Mem_Size, old name deprecated though still available.

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 432 / 791

See Also

8.15.10 ST_PointInsideCircle

ST_PointInsideCircle — Is the point geometry insert circle defined by center_x, center_y, radius

Synopsis

boolean **ST_PointInsideCircle**(geometry a_point, float center_x, float center_y, float radius);

Description

The syntax for this functions is ST_PointInsideCircle(<geometry>,<circle_center_x>,<circle_center_y>,<radius>). Returns the true if the geometry is a point and is inside the circle. Returns false otherwise.



Note

This only works for points as the name suggests

Availability: 1.2

Changed: 2.2.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Point_Inside_Circle

Examples

```
SELECT ST_PointInsideCircle(ST_Point(1,2), 0.5, 2, 3);
st_pointinsidecircle
-----t
```

See Also

ST_DWithin

8.16 Exceptional Functions

These functions are rarely used functions that should only be used if your data is corrupted in someway. They are used for troubleshooting corruption and also fixing things that should under normal circumstances, never happen.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 433 / 791

8.16.1 PostGIS AddBBox

PostGIS_AddBBox — Add bounding box to the geometry.

Synopsis

geometry PostGIS_AddBBox(geometry geomA);

Description

Add bounding box to the geometry. This would make bounding box based queries faster, but will increase the size of the geometry.



Note

Bounding boxes are automatically added to geometries so in general this is not needed unless the generated bounding box somehow becomes corrupted or you have an old install that is lacking bounding boxes. Then you need to drop the old and readd.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

```
UPDATE sometable
SET the_geom = PostGIS_AddBBox(the_geom)
WHERE PostGIS_HasBBox(the_geom) = false;
```

See Also

PostGIS_DropBBox, PostGIS_HasBBox

8.16.2 PostGIS DropBBox

PostGIS_DropBBox — Drop the bounding box cache from the geometry.

Synopsis

geometry PostGIS_DropBBox(geometry geomA);

Description

Drop the bounding box cache from the geometry. This reduces geometry size, but makes bounding-box based queries slower. It is also used to drop a corrupt bounding box. A tale-tell sign of a corrupt cached bounding box is when your ST_Intersects and other relation queries leave out geometries that rightfully should return true.

Note



Bounding boxes are automatically added to geometries and improve speed of queries so in general this is not needed unless the generated bounding box somehow becomes corrupted or you have an old install that is lacking bounding boxes. Then you need to drop the old and readd. This kind of corruption has been observed in 8.3-8.3.6 series whereby cached bboxes were not always recalculated when a geometry changed and upgrading to a newer version without a dump reload will not correct already corrupted boxes. So one can manually correct using below and readd the bbox or do a dump reload.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 434 / 791



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

```
--This example drops bounding boxes where the cached box is not correct

--The force to ST_AsBinary before applying Box2D forces a recalculation of the box, 
and Box2D applied to the table geometry always

-- returns the cached bounding box.

UPDATE sometable

SET the_geom = PostGIS_DropBBox(the_geom)

WHERE Not (Box2D(ST_AsBinary(the_geom)) = Box2D(the_geom));

UPDATE sometable

SET the_geom = PostGIS_AddBBox(the_geom)

WHERE Not PostGIS_HasBBOX(the_geom);
```

See Also

PostGIS_AddBBox, PostGIS_HasBBox, Box2D

8.16.3 PostGIS_HasBBox

PostGIS_HasBBox — Returns TRUE if the bbox of this geometry is cached, FALSE otherwise.

Synopsis

boolean **PostGIS_HasBBox**(geometry geomA);

Description

Returns TRUE if the bbox of this geometry is cached, FALSE otherwise. Use PostGIS_AddBBox and PostGIS_DropBBox to control caching.



This method supports Circular Strings and Curves

Examples

```
SELECT the_geom
FROM sometable WHERE PostGIS_HasBBox(the_geom) = false;
```

See Also

PostGIS_AddBBox, PostGIS_DropBBox

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 435 / 791

Chapter 9

Raster Reference

The functions given below are the ones which a user of PostGIS Raster is likely to need and which are currently available in PostGIS Raster. There are other functions which are required support functions to the raster objects which are not of use to a general user.

raster is a new PostGIS type for storing and analyzing raster data.

For loading rasters from raster files please refer to Section 5.1

For the examples in this reference we will be using a raster table of dummy rasters - Formed with the following code

```
CREATE TABLE dummy_rast(rid integer, rast raster);
INSERT INTO dummy_rast(rid, rast)
VALUES (1,
('01' -- little endian (uint8 ndr)
'0000' -- version (uint16 0)
'0000' -- nBands (uint16 0)
'000000000000000040' -- scaleX (float64 2)
'00000000000000840' -- scaleY (float64 3)
'000000000000E03F' -- ipX (float64 0.5)
'000000000000E03F' -- ipY (float64 0.5)
'0000000000000000' -- skewX (float64 0)
'0000000000000000' -- skewY (float64 0)
'00000000' -- SRID (int32 0)
'0A00' -- width (uint16 10)
| \cdot |
'1400' -- height (uint16 20)
)::raster
-- Raster: 5 x 5 pixels, 3 bands, PT_8BUI pixel type, NODATA = 0
(2, ('01000003009A99999999999A93F9A999999999BF000000E02B274A' ||
FFFFFFF050005000400FDFEFDFEFEFDFEFEFDF9FAFEF' ||
   EFCF9FBFDFEFEFDFCFAFEFEF04004E627AADD16076B4F9FE6370A9F5FE59637AB0E54F58617087040046566487A15060
   ')::raster);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 436 / 791

9.1 Raster Support Data types

9.1.1 geomval

geomval — A spatial datatype with two fields - geom (holding a geometry object) and val (holding a double precision pixel value from a raster band).

Description

geomval is a compound data type consisting of a geometry object referenced by the .geom field and val, a double precision value that represents the pixel value at a particular geometric location in a raster band. It is used by the ST_DumpAsPolygon and Raster intersection family of functions as an output type to explode a raster band into geometry polygons.

See Also

Section 14.6

9.1.2 addbandarg

addbandarg — A composite type used as input into the ST_AddBand function defining the attributes and initial value of the new band.

Description

A composite type used as input into the ST_AddBand function defining the attributes and initial value of the new band.

index integer 1-based value indicating the position where the new band will be added amongst the raster's bands. If NULL, the new band will be added at the end of the raster's bands.

pixeltype text Pixel type of the new band. One of defined pixel types as described in ST_BandPixelType.

initial value double precision Initial value that all pixels of new band will be set to.

nodataval double precision NODATA value of the new band. If NULL, the new band will not have a NODATA value assigned.

See Also

ST AddBand

9.1.3 rastbandarg

rastbandarg — A composite type for use when needing to express a raster and a band index of that raster.

Description

A composite type for use when needing to express a raster and a band index of that raster.

raster The raster in question/

nband integer 1-based value indicating the band of raster

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 437 / 791

See Also

ST_MapAlgebra

9.1.4 raster

raster — raster spatial data type.

Description

raster is a spatial data type used to represent raster data such as those imported from jpegs, tiffs, pngs, digital elevation models. Each raster has 1 or more bands each having a set of pixel values. Rasters can be georeferenced.



Note

Requires PostGIS be compiled with GDAL support. Currently rasters can be implicitly converted to geometry type, but the conversion returns the ST_ConvexHull of the raster. This auto casting may be removed in the near future so don't rely on it.

Casting Behavior

This section lists the automatic as well as explicit casts allowed for this data type

Cast To	Behavior
geometry	automatic

See Also

Chapter 9

9.1.5 reclassarg

reclassarg — A composite type used as input into the ST_Reclass function defining the behavior of reclassification.

Description

A composite type used as input into the ST_Reclass function defining the behavior of reclassification.

nband integer The band number of band to reclassify.

reclassexpr text range expression consisting of comma delimited range:map_range mappings. : to define mapping that defines how to map old band values to new band values. (means >,) means less than,] < or equal, [means > or equal

```
    [a-b] = a <= x <= b</li>
    (a-b] = a < x <= b</li>
    [a-b) = a <= x < b</li>
    (a-b) = a < x < b</li>
```

(notation is optional so a-b means the same as (a-b)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 438 / 791

pixeltype text One of defined pixel types as described in ST_BandPixelType

nodataval double precision Value to treat as no data. For image outputs that support transparency, these will be blank.

Example: Reclassify band 2 as an 8BUI where 255 is nodata value

```
SELECT ROW(2, '0-100:1-10, 101-500:11-150,501 - 10000: 151-254', '8BUI', 255)::reclassarg;
```

Example: Reclassify band 1 as an 1BB and no nodata value defined

```
SELECT ROW(1, '0-100]:0, (100-255:1', '1BB', NULL)::reclassarg;
```

See Also

ST_Reclass

9.1.6 summarystats

summaryStats — A composite type returned by the ST_SummaryStats and ST_SummaryStatsAgg functions.

Description

A composite type returned by the ST_SummaryStats and ST_SummaryStatsAgg functions.

count integer Number of pixels counted for the summary statistics.

sum double precision Sum of all counted pixel values.

mean double precision Arithmetic mean of all counted pixel values.

stddev double precision Standard deviation of all counted pixel values.

min double precision Minimum value of counted pixel values.

max double precision Maximum value of counted pixel values.

See Also

ST_SummaryStats, ST_SummaryStatsAgg

9.1.7 unionarg

unionarg — A composite type used as input into the ST_Union function defining the bands to be processed and behavior of the UNION operation.

Description

A composite type used as input into the ST_Union function defining the bands to be processed and behavior of the UNION operation.

nband integer 1-based value indicating the band of each input raster to be processed.

uniontype text Type of UNION operation. One of defined types as described in ST_Union.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 439 / 791

See Also

ST_Union

9.2 Raster Management

9.2.1 AddRasterConstraints

AddRasterConstraints — Adds raster constraints to a loaded raster table for a specific column that constrains spatial ref, scaling, blocksize, alignment, bands, band type and a flag to denote if raster column is regularly blocked. The table must be loaded with data for the constraints to be inferred. Returns true of the constraint setting was accomplished and if issues a notice.

Synopsis

boolean **AddRasterConstraints**(name rasttable, name rastcolumn, boolean srid, boolean scale_x, boolean scale_y, boolean blocksize_x, boolean blocksize_y, boolean same_alignment, boolean regular_blocking, boolean num_bands=true, boolean pixel_types=true, boolean nodata_values=true, boolean out_db=true, boolean extent=true);

boolean AddRasterConstraints(name rasttable, name rastcolumn, text[] VARIADIC constraints);

boolean AddRasterConstraints(name rastschema, name rasttable, name rastcolumn, text[] VARIADIC constraints);

boolean **AddRasterConstraints**(name rastschema, name rasttable, name rastcolumn, boolean srid=true, boolean scale_x=true, boolean scale_y=true, boolean blocksize_x=true, boolean blocksize_y=true, boolean same_alignment=true, boolean regular_blocking=faboolean num bands=true, boolean pixel types=true, boolean nodata values=true, boolean out db=true, boolean extent=true);

Description

Generates constraints on a raster column that are used to display information in the raster_columns raster catalog. The rastschema is the name of the table schema the table resides in. The srid must be an integer value reference to an entry in the SPATIAL_REF_SYS table.

raster2pgsql loader uses this function to register raster tables

Valid constraint names to pass in: refer to Section 5.2.1 for more details.

- blocksize sets both X and Y blocksize
- blocksize_x sets X tile (width in pixels of each tile)
- blocksize_y sets Y tile (height in pixels of each tile)
- extent computes extent of whole table and applys constraint all rasters must be within that extent
- num_bands number of bands
- pixel_types reads array of pixel types for each band ensure all band n have same pixel type
- regular_blocking sets spatially unique (no two rasters can be spatially the same) and coverage tile (raster is aligned to a coverage) constraints
- same_alignment ensures they all have same alignment meaning any two tiles you compare will return true for. Refer to ST_SameAlignment
- srid ensures all have same srid
- More -- any listed as inputs into the above functions

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 440 / 791



Note

This function infers the constraints from the data already present in the table. As such for it to work, you must create the raster column first and then load it with data.



Note

If you need to load more data in your tables after you have already applied constraints, you may want to run the DropRasterConstraints if the extent of your data has changed.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples: Apply all possible constraints on column based on data

```
CREATE TABLE myrasters (rid SERIAL primary key, rast raster);
INSERT INTO myrasters(rast)
SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(1000, 1000, 0.3, -0.3, 2, 2, 0, 0,4326), 1, '8BSI':: ←
   text, -129, NULL);
SELECT AddRasterConstraints('myrasters'::name, 'rast'::name);
-- verify if registered correctly in the raster_columns view --
SELECT srid, scale_x, scale_y, blocksize_x, blocksize_y, num_bands, pixel_types, \leftrightarrow
   nodata_values
  FROM raster_columns
 WHERE r_table_name = 'myrasters';
 \verb| srid | scale_x | scale_y | blocksize_x | blocksize_y | num_bands | pixel_types| \; \leftrightarrow \;
    nodata_values
                                                              1 | {8BSI}
              2 |
                         2 |
                                     1000 |
                                                   1000 |
 4326 I
                                                                                 | {0}
```

Examples: Apply single constraint

```
CREATE TABLE public.myrasters2(rid SERIAL primary key, rast raster);
INSERT INTO myrasters2(rast)
SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(1000, 1000, 0.3, -0.3, 2, 2, 0, 0,4326), 1, '8BSI':: 
    text, -129, NULL);

SELECT AddRasterConstraints('public'::name, 'myrasters2'::name, 'rast'::name,' 
    regular_blocking', 'blocksize');
-- get notice--
NOTICE: Adding regular blocking constraint
NOTICE: Adding blocksize-X constraint
NOTICE: Adding blocksize-Y constraint
```

See Also

Section 5.2.1, ST_AddBand, ST_MakeEmptyRaster, DropRasterConstraints, ST_BandPixelType, ST_SRID

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 441 / 791

9.2.2 DropRasterConstraints

DropRasterConstraints — Drops PostGIS raster constraints that refer to a raster table column. Useful if you need to reload data or update your raster column data.

Synopsis

boolean **DropRasterConstraints**(name rasttable, name rastcolumn, boolean srid, boolean scale_x, boolean scale_y, boolean blocksize_x, boolean blocksize_y, boolean same_alignment, boolean regular_blocking, boolean num_bands=true, boolean pixel_types=t boolean nodata_values=true, boolean out_db=true, boolean extent=true);

boolean **DropRasterConstraints**(name rastschema, name rasttable, name rastcolumn, boolean srid=true, boolean scale_x=true, boolean scale_y=true, boolean slocksize_y=true, boolean same_alignment=true, boolean regular_blocking=faboolean num_bands=true, boolean pixel_types=true, boolean nodata_values=true, boolean out_db=true, boolean extent=true); boolean **DropRasterConstraints**(name rastschema, name rasttable, name rastcolumn, text[] constraints);

Description

Drops PostGIS raster constraints that refer to a raster table column that were added by AddRasterConstraints. Useful if you need to load more data or update your raster column data. You do not need to do this if you want to get rid of a raster table or a raster column.

To drop a raster table use the standard

```
DROP TABLE mytable
```

To drop just a raster column and leave the rest of the table, use standard SQL

```
ALTER TABLE mytable DROP COLUMN rast
```

the table will disappear from the raster_columns catalog if the column or table is dropped. However if only the constraints are dropped, the raster column will still be listed in the raster_columns catalog, but there will be no other information about it aside from the column name and table.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

See Also

AddRasterConstraints

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 442 / 791

9.2.3 AddOverviewConstraints

AddOverviewConstraints — Tag a raster column as being an overview of another.

Synopsis

boolean **AddOverviewConstraints**(name ovschema, name ovtable, name ovcolumn, name refschema, name reftable, name refcolumn, int ovfactor);

boolean AddOverviewConstraints(name ovtable, name ovcolumn, name reftable, name refcolumn, int ovfactor);

Description

Adds constraints on a raster column that are used to display information in the raster_overviews raster catalog.

The ovfactor parameter represents the scale multiplier in the overview column: higher overview factors have lower resolution.

When the ovschema and refschema parameters are omitted, the first table found scanning the search_path will be used.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
CREATE TABLE res1 AS SELECT
ST AddBand(
 ST_MakeEmptyRaster(1000, 1000, 0, 0, 2),
  1, '8BSI'::text, -129, NULL
) r1;
CREATE TABLE res2 AS SELECT
ST_AddBand(
  ST_MakeEmptyRaster(500, 500, 0, 0, 4),
 1, '8BSI'::text, -129, NULL
) r2;
SELECT AddOverviewConstraints('res2', 'r2', 'res1', 'r1', 2);
-- verify if registered correctly in the raster_overviews view --
SELECT o_table_name ot, o_raster_column oc,
      r_table_name rt, r_raster_column rc,
      overview_factor f
FROM raster_overviews WHERE o_table_name = 'res2';
 ot | oc | rt | rc | f
     -+---+---
res2 | r2 | res1 | r1 | 2
(1 row)
```

See Also

Section 5.2.2, DropOverviewConstraints, ST_CreateOverview, AddRasterConstraints

9.2.4 DropOverviewConstraints

DropOverviewConstraints — Untag a raster column from being an overview of another.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 443 / 791

Synopsis

boolean **DropOverviewConstraints**(name ovschema, name ovtable, name ovcolumn); boolean **DropOverviewConstraints**(name ovtable, name ovcolumn);

Description

Remove from a raster column the constraints used to show it as being an overview of another in the raster_overviews raster catalog.

When the ovschema parameter is omitted, the first table found scanning the search_path will be used.

Availability: 2.0.0

See Also

Section 5.2.2, AddOverviewConstraints, DropRasterConstraints

9.2.5 PostGIS_GDAL_Version

PostGIS_GDAL_Version — Reports the version of the GDAL library in use by PostGIS.

Synopsis

text PostGIS_GDAL_Version();

Description

Reports the version of the GDAL library in use by PostGIS. Will also check and report if GDAL can find its data files.

Examples

```
SELECT PostGIS_GDAL_Version();

postgis_gdal_version

GDAL 1.11dev, released 2013/04/13
```

See Also

postgis.gdal_datapath

9.2.6 PostGIS_Raster_Lib_Build_Date

PostGIS_Raster_Lib_Build_Date — Reports full raster library build date.

Synopsis

text PostGIS_Raster_Lib_Build_Date();

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 444 / 791

Description

Reports raster build date

Examples

See Also

PostGIS_Raster_Lib_Version

9.2.7 PostGIS_Raster_Lib_Version

PostGIS_Raster_Lib_Version — Reports full raster version and build configuration infos.

Synopsis

text PostGIS_Raster_Lib_Version();

Description

Reports full raster version and build configuration infos.

Examples

See Also

PostGIS_Lib_Version

9.2.8 ST_GDALDrivers

ST_GDALDrivers — Returns a list of raster formats supported by your lib gdal. These are the formats you can output your raster using ST_AsGDALRaster.

Synopsis

setof record **ST_GDALDrivers**(integer OUT idx, text OUT short_name, text OUT long_name, text OUT create_options);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 445 / 791

Description

Returns a list of raster formats short_name,long_name and creator options of each format supported by your lib gdal. Use the short_name as input in the format parameter of ST_AsGDALRaster. Options vary depending on what drivers your libgdal was compiled with. create_options returns an xml formatted set of CreationOptionList/Option consisting of name and optional type, description and set of VALUE for each creator option for the specific driver.

Changed: 2.0.6, 2.1.3 - by default no drivers are enabled, unless GUC or Environment variable gdal_enabled_drivers is set.

Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GDAL >= 1.6.0.

Examples: List of Drivers

```
SET postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers = 'ENABLE_ALL';
SELECT short_name, long_name
FROM st_qdaldrivers()
ORDER BY short_name;
  short_name |
                              long_name
AAIGrid | Arc/Info ASCII Grid
ARG
               | Azavea Raster Grid format
DTED
               | DTED Elevation Raster
EHdr
               | ESRI .hdr Labelled
FIT
               | FIT Image
 GIF
                | Graphics Interchange Format (.gif)
               | GeoPackage
 GPKG
              | Golden Software 7 Binary Grid (.grd)
 GS7BG
 GSAG
                | Golden Software ASCII Grid (.grd)
                | Golden Software Binary Grid (.grd)
 GTiff
                | GeoTIFF
 HF2
                | HF2/HFZ heightfield raster
HFA
                | Erdas Imagine Images (.img)
               | ILWIS Raster Map
 TLWIS
               | Intergraph Raster
 TNGR
                | JPEG JFIF
 JPEG
 KMLSUPEROVERLAY | Kml Super Overlay
T<sub>1</sub>C<sub>2</sub>P
                | FARSITE v.4 Landscape File (.lcp)
               | Vexcel MFF Raster
               | National Imagery Transmission Format
NITF
 PNG
               | Portable Network Graphics
 R
               | R Object Data Store
 RST
               | Idrisi Raster A.1
 SAGA
               | SAGA GIS Binary Grid (.sdat)
 SRTMHGT | SRTMHGT File Format
 USGSDEM
               | USGS Optional ASCII DEM (and CDED)
               | Virtual Raster
 VRT
 WMS
                | OGC Web Map Service
XPM
                | X11 PixMap Format
 XYZ
                | ASCII Gridded XYZ
                | ZMap Plus Grid
 ZMap
(31 rows)
```

Example: List of options for each driver

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 446 / 791

```
FROM (SELECT unnest(xpath('/CreationOptionList/Option', create_options::xml)) As opt
FROM st_gdaldrivers()
WHERE short_name = 'JPEG') As g;
                  | otype |
PROGRESSIVE | boolean | whether to generate a progressive JPEG
 QUALITY
                  WORLDFILE
                  | boolean | whether to geneate a worldfile
               | boolean | whether to generate a validity mask
 INTERNAL MASK
 COMMENT
                   | string | Comment
 {\tt SOURCE\_ICC\_PROFILE~|~string~|~ICC~profile~encoded~in~Base 64}
 EXIF_THUMBNAIL | boolean | whether to generate an EXIF thumbnail(overview).
                               By default its max dimension will be 128
THUMBNAIL_WIDTH | int
                             | Forced thumbnail width
THUMBNAIL_HEIGHT | int
                             | Forced thumbnail height
(9 rows)
-- raw xml output for creator options for GeoTiff --
SELECT create_options
FROM st_gdaldrivers()
WHERE short_name = 'GTiff';
<CreationOptionList>
    <Option name="COMPRESS" type="string-select">
        <Value>NONE</Value>
        <Value>LZW</Value>
        <Value>PACKBITS</Value>
        <Value>JPEG</Value>
        <Value>CCITTRLE</Value>
        <Value>CCITTFAX3</Value>
        <Value>CCITTFAX4</Value>
        <Value>DEFLATE</Value>
    </Option>
    <Option name="PREDICTOR" type="int" description="Predictor Type"/>
    <Option name="JPEG_QUALITY" type="int" description="JPEG quality 1-100" default="75"/>
    <Option name="ZLEVEL" type="int" description="DEFLATE compression level 1-9" default \leftrightarrow
       ="6"/>
    <Option name="NBITS" type="int" description="BITS for sub-byte files (1-7), sub-uint16 \leftrightarrow
       (9-15), sub-uint32 (17-31)"/>
    <Option name="INTERLEAVE" type="string-select" default="PIXEL">
        <Value>BAND</Value>
        <Value>PIXEL</Value>
    </Option>
    <Option name="TILED" type="boolean" description="Switch to tiled format"/>
    <Option name="TFW" type="boolean" description="Write out world file"/>
    <Option name="RPB" type="boolean" description="Write out .RPB (RPC) file"/>
    <Option name="BLOCKXSIZE" type="int" description="Tile Width"/>
    <Option name="BLOCKYSIZE" type="int" description="Tile/Strip Height"/>
    <Option name="PHOTOMETRIC" type="string-select">
        <Value>MINISBLACK</Value>
        <Value>MINISWHITE</Value>
        <Value>PALETTE</Value>
        <Value>RGB</Value>
        <Value>CMYK</Value>
        <Value>YCBCR</Value>
        <Value>CIELAB</Value>
        <Value>ICCLAB</Value>
        <Value>ITULAB</Value>
```

</Option>

missing blocks?" default="FALSE"/>

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 447 / 791

```
<Option name="ALPHA" type="boolean" description="Mark first extrasample as being alpha \leftrightarrow
        "/>
    <Option name="PROFILE" type="string-select" default="GDALGeoTIFF">
        <Value>GDALGeoTIFF</Value>
        <Value>GeoTIFF</Value>
        <Value>BASELINE</Value>
    </Option>
    <Option name="PIXELTYPE" type="string-select">
        <Value>DEFAULT</Value>
        <Value>SIGNEDBYTE</Value>
    </Option>
    <Option name="BIGTIFF" type="string-select" description="Force creation of BigTIFF file \leftrightarrow
        ">
        <Value>YES</Value>
        <Value>NO</Value>
        <Value>IF_NEEDED</Value>
        <Value>IF_SAFER</Value>
    </Option>
    <Option name="ENDIANNESS" type="string-select" default="NATIVE" description="Force \leftrightarrow
        endianness of created file. For DEBUG purpose mostly">
        <Value>NATIVE</Value>
        <Value>INVERTED</Value>
        <Value>LITTLE</Value>
        <Value>BIG</Value>
    </Option>
    <Option name="COPY_SRC_OVERVIEWS" type="boolean" default="NO" description="Force copy \leftrightarrow
        of overviews of source dataset (CreateCopy())"/>
</CreationOptionList>
-- Output the create options XML column for GTiff as a table \, --
SELECT (xpath('@name', g.opt))[1]::text As oname,
       (xpath('@type', g.opt))[1]::text As otype,
       (xpath('@description', g.opt))[1]::text As descrip,
       array_to_string(xpath('Value/text()', g.opt),', ') As vals
FROM (SELECT unnest(xpath('/CreationOptionList/Option', create_options::xml)) As opt
FROM st_gdaldrivers()
WHERE short_name = 'GTiff') As g;
                    \texttt{descrip} \;\; \leftarrow \;\;
       oname
                          otype
                                                                                   vals
 COMPRESS
                    | string-select | ←
                                                                              | NONE, LZW, ←
     PACKBITS, JPEG, CCITTRLE, CCITTFAX3, CCITTFAX4, DEFLATE
                                     | Predictor Type ←
 PREDICTOR
                    | int
 JPEG_QUALITY
                    | int
                                     | JPEG quality 1-100 ↔
                                                          ZLEVEL
                     | int
                                      \mid DEFLATE compression level 1-9 \leftrightarrow
                                      | BITS for sub-byte files (1-7), sub-uint16 (9-15), sub \leftarrow
 NBITS
                     | int
    -uint32 (17-31) |
 INTERLEAVE
                     | string-select | ←
                                                                               | BAND, PIXEL
 TILED
                                      | Switch to tiled format \ensuremath{\leftarrow}
                     | boolean
 TFW
                     | boolean
                                      | Write out world file ←
                                      | Write out .RPB (RPC) file \leftrightarrow
 RPR
                     | boolean
                                                   BLOCKXSIZE
                     | \text{ int } | \text{ Tile Width } \leftarrow
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 448 / 791

```
BLOCKYSIZE
                                        | Tile/Strip Height ←
                      | int
PHOTOMETRIC
                      \mid string-select \mid \leftrightarrow
                                                                                  | MINISBLACK,
    MINISWHITE, PALETTE, RGB, CMYK, YCBCR, CIELAB, ICCLAB, ITULAB
SPARSE_OK
                      | boolean
                                       | Can newly created files have missing blocks? \leftarrow
ALPHA
                      | boolean
                                        | Mark first extrasample as being alpha \,\,\leftarrow\,\,
PROFILE
                      | string-select |
                                                                                   | GDALGeoTIFF,
    GeoTIFF, BASELINE
PIXELTYPE
                     | string-select | ←
                                                                                   | DEFAULT, ←
    SIGNEDBYTE
                      | string-select | Force creation of BigTIFF file \,\,\,\,\,\,\,\,\,
BIGTIFF
                                              | YES, NO, IF_NEEDED, IF_SAFER
ENDIANNESS | string-select | Force endianness of created file. For DEBUG purpose mostly | NATIVE, INVERTED, LITTLE, BIG
COPY_SRC_OVERVIEWS | boolean
                                      | Force copy of overviews of source dataset (CreateCopy ←
    ())
(19 rows)
```

See Also

ST_AsGDALRaster, ST_SRID, postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers

9.2.9 UpdateRasterSRID

UpdateRasterSRID — Change the SRID of all rasters in the user-specified column and table.

Synopsis

raster **UpdateRasterSRID**(name schema_name, name table_name, name column_name, integer new_srid); raster **UpdateRasterSRID**(name table_name, name column_name, integer new_srid);

Description

Change the SRID of all rasters in the user-specified column and table. The function will drop all appropriate column constraints (extent, alignment and SRID) before changing the SRID of the specified column's rasters.



Note

The data (band pixel values) of the rasters are not touched by this function. Only the raster's metadata is changed.

Availability: 2.1.0

See Also

UpdateGeometrySRID

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 449 / 791

9.2.10 ST_CreateOverview

ST_CreateOverview — Create an reduced resolution version of a given raster coverage.

Synopsis

regclass **ST_CreateOverview**(regclass tab, name col, int factor, text algo='NearestNeighbor');

Description

Create an overview table with resampled tiles from the source table. Output tiles will have the same size of input tiles and cover the same spatial extent with a lower resolution (pixel size will be 1/factor of the original in both directions).

The overview table will be made available in the raster_overviews catalog and will have raster constraints enforced.

Algorithm options are: 'NearestNeighbor', 'Bilinear', 'Cubic', 'CubicSpline', and 'Lanczos'. Refer to: GDAL Warp resampling methods for more details.

Availability: 2.2.0

See Also

ST Retile, AddOverviewConstraints, AddRasterConstraints, Section 5.2.2

9.3 Raster Constructors

9.3.1 ST_AddBand

ST_AddBand — Returns a raster with the new band(s) of given type added with given initial value in the given index location. If no index is specified, the band is added to the end.

Synopsis

- (1) raster **ST AddBand**(raster rast, addbandarg[] addbandargset);
- $(2)\ raster\ \textbf{ST_AddBand} (raster\ rast,\ integer\ index,\ text\ pixeltype,\ double\ precision\ initial value=0,\ double\ precision\ nodataval=NULL);$
- (3) raster **ST_AddBand**(raster rast, text pixeltype, double precision initialvalue=0, double precision nodataval=NULL);
- (4) raster **ST_AddBand**(raster torast, raster fromrast, integer fromband=1, integer torastindex=at_end);
- (5) raster **ST_AddBand**(raster torast, raster[] from rasts, integer from band=1, integer to rastindex=at_end);
- (6) raster ST AddBand(raster rast, integer index, text outdbfile, integer[] outdbindex, double precision nodataval=NULL);
- (7) raster **ST_AddBand**(raster rast, text outdbfile, integer[] outdbindex, integer index=at_end, double precision nodataval=NULL);

Description

Returns a raster with a new band added in given position (index), of given type, of given initial value, and of given nodata value. If no index is specified, the band is added to the end. If no fromband is specified, band 1 is assumed. Pixel type is a string representation of one of the pixel types specified in ST_BandPixelType. If an existing index is specified all subsequent bands >= that index are incremented by 1. If an initial value greater than the max of the pixel type is specified, then the initial value is set to the highest value allowed by the pixel type.

For the variant that takes an array of addbandarg (Variant 1), a specific addbandarg's index value is relative to the raster at the time when the band described by that addbandarg is being added to the raster. See the Multiple New Bands example below.

For the variant that takes an array of rasters (Variant 5), if torast is NULL then the fromband band of each raster in the array is accumulated into a new raster.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 450 / 791

For the variants that take outdbfile (Variants 6 and 7), the value must include the full path to the raster file. The file must also be accessible to the postgres server process.

Enhanced: 2.1.0 support for addbandarg added.

Enhanced: 2.1.0 support for new out-db bands added.

Examples: Single New Band

```
-- Add another band of type 8 bit unsigned integer with pixels initialized to 200
UPDATE dummy_rast
   SET rast = ST_AddBand(rast,'8BUI'::text,200)
WHERE rid = 1;
-- Create an empty raster 100x100 units, with upper left \, right at 0, add 2 bands (band 1 \,\leftrightarrow
  is 0/1 boolean bit switch, band2 allows values 0-15)
-- uses addbandargs
INSERT INTO dummy_rast(rid, rast)
   VALUES(10, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(100, 100, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
   ROW(1, '1BB'::text, 0, NULL),
   ROW(2, '4BUI'::text, 0, NULL)
    ]::addbandarg[]
    )
   );
-- output meta data of raster bands to verify all is right --
SELECT (bmd).*
FROM (SELECT ST_BandMetaData(rast,generate_series(1,2)) As bmd
  FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid = 10) AS foo;
 --result --
pixeltype | nodatavalue | isoutdb | path
 ______
       | f
1BB
4BUT
                      | f
         -- output meta data of raster -
SELECT (rmd).width, (rmd).height, (rmd).numbands
FROM (SELECT ST_MetaData(rast) As rmd
  FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid = 10) AS foo;
upperleftx | upperlefty | width | height | scalex | scaley | skewx | skewy | srid | \leftrightarrow
  numbands
 ______
        0 |
                   0 | 100 | 100 | 1 | -1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
```

Examples: Multiple New Bands

```
SELECT

*
FROM ST_BandMetadata(
   ST_AddBand(
   ST_MakeEmptyRaster(10, 10, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
   ARRAY[
      ROW(NULL, '8BUI', 255, 0),
      ROW(NULL, '16BUI', 1, 2),
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 451 / 791

```
ROW(2, '32BUI', 100, 12),
    ROW(2, '32BF', 3.14, -1)
  ]::addbandarg[]
),
ARRAY[]::integer[]
bandnum | pixeltype | nodatavalue | isoutdb | path
     1 | 8BUI
                             0 | f
     2 | 32BF
                -1 | f
                 12 | f
     3 | 32BUI
                         2 | f
     4 | 16BUI
```

```
-- Aggregate the 1st band of a table of like rasters into a single raster
-- with as many bands as there are test_types and as many rows (new rasters) as there are 
mice
-- NOTE: The ORDER BY test_type is only supported in PostgreSQL 9.0+
-- for 8.4 and below it usually works to order your data in a subselect (but not guaranteed 
)
-- The resulting raster will have a band for each test_type alphabetical by test_type
-- For mouse lovers: No mice were harmed in this exercise
SELECT
   mouse,
   ST_AddBand(NULL, array_agg(rast ORDER BY test_type), 1) As rast
FROM mice_studies
GROUP BY mouse;
```

Examples: New Out-db band

See Also

 $ST_BandMetaData, ST_BandPixelType, ST_MakeEmptyRaster, ST_MetaData, ST_NumBands, ST_Reclass$

9.3.2 ST_AsRaster

ST_AsRaster — Converts a PostGIS geometry to a PostGIS raster.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 452 / 791

Synopsis

raster **ST_AsRaster**(geometry geom, raster ref, text pixeltype, double precision value=1, double precision nodataval=0, boolean touched=false);

raster **ST_AsRaster**(geometry geom, raster ref, text[] pixeltype=ARRAY['8BUI'], double precision[] value=ARRAY[1], double precision[] nodataval=ARRAY[0], boolean touched=false);

raster **ST_AsRaster**(geometry geom, double precision scalex, double precision scaley, double precision gridy, double precision gridy, text pixeltype, double precision value=1, double precision nodataval=0, double precision skewx=0, double precision skewy=0, boolean touched=false);

raster **ST_AsRaster**(geometry geom, double precision scalex, double precision scaley, double precision gridx=NULL, double precision gridy=NULL, text[] pixeltype=ARRAY['8BUI'], double precision[] value=ARRAY[1], double precision[] nodataval=ARRAY[0], double precision skewx=0, double precision skewy=0, boolean touched=false);

raster **ST_AsRaster**(geometry geom, double precision scalex, double precision scaley, text pixeltype, double precision value=1, double precision nodataval=0, double precision upperleftx=NULL, double precision upperlefty=NULL, double precision skewx=0, double precision skewy=0, boolean touched=false);

raster **ST_AsRaster**(geometry geom, double precision scalex, double precision scaley, text[] pixeltype, double precision[] value=ARRAY[1], double precision[] nodataval=ARRAY[0], double precision upperleftx=NULL, double precision skewx=0, double precision skewy=0, boolean touched=false);

raster **ST_AsRaster**(geometry geom, integer width, integer height, double precision gridx, double precision gridy, text pixeltype, double precision value=1, double precision nodataval=0, double precision skewx=0, double precision skewy=0, boolean touched=false);

raster **ST_AsRaster**(geometry geom, integer width, integer height, double precision gridx=NULL, double precision gridy=NULL, text[] pixeltype=ARRAY['8BUI'], double precision[] value=ARRAY[1], double precision[] nodataval=ARRAY[0], double precision skewx=0, double precision skewy=0, boolean touched=false);

raster **ST_AsRaster**(geometry geom, integer width, integer height, text pixeltype, double precision value=1, double precision nodataval=0, double precision upperleftx=NULL, double precision upperlefty=NULL, double precision skewx=0, double precision skewx=0, boolean touched=false);

raster **ST_AsRaster**(geometry geom, integer width, integer height, text[] pixeltype, double precision[] value=ARRAY[1], double precision[] nodataval=ARRAY[0], double precision upperleftx=NULL, double precision upperlefty=NULL, double precision skewx=0, double precision skewy=0, boolean touched=false);

Description

Converts a PostGIS geometry to a PostGIS raster. The many variants offers three groups of possibilities for setting the alignment and pixelsize of the resulting raster.

The first group, composed of the two first variants, produce a raster having the same alignment (scalex, scaley, gridx and gridy), pixel type and nodata value as the provided reference raster. You generally pass this reference raster by joining the table containing the geometry with the table containing the reference raster.

The second group, composed of four variants, let you set the dimensions of the raster by providing the parameters of a pixel size (scalex & scaley and skewx & skewy). The width & height of the resulting raster will be adjusted to fit the extent of the geometry. In most cases, you must cast integer scalex & scaley arguments to double precision so that PostgreSQL choose the right variant.

The third group, composed of four variants, let you fix the dimensions of the raster by providing the dimensions of the raster (width & height). The parameters of the pixel size (scalex & scaley and skewx & skewy) of the resulting raster will be adjusted to fit the extent of the geometry.

The two first variants of each of those two last groups let you specify the alignment with an arbitrary corner of the alignment grid (gridx & gridy) and the two last variants takes the upper left corner (upperleftx & upperlefty).

Each group of variant allows producing a one band raster or a multiple bands raster. To produce a multiple bands raster, you must provide an array of pixel types (pixeltype[]), an array of initial values (value) and an array of nodata values (noda taval). If not provided pixeltyped defaults to 8BUI, values to 1 and nodataval to 0.

The output raster will be in the same spatial reference as the source geometry. The only exception is for variants with a reference raster. In this case the resulting raster will get the same SRID as the reference raster.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 453 / 791

The optional touched parameter defaults to false and maps to the GDAL ALL_TOUCHED rasterization option, which determines if pixels touched by lines or polygons will be burned. Not just those on the line render path, or whose center point is within the polygon.

This is particularly useful for rendering jpegs and pngs of geometries directly from the database when using in combination with ST_AsPNG and other ST_AsGDALRaster family of functions.

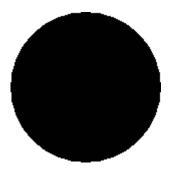
Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GDAL >= 1.6.0.



Note

Not yet capable of rendering complex geometry types such as curves, TINS, and PolyhedralSurfaces, but should be able too once GDAL can.

Examples: Output geometries as PNG files



black circle

```
-- this will output a black circle taking up 150 x 150 pixels -- SELECT ST_AsPNG(ST_AsRaster(ST_Buffer(ST_Point(1,5),10),150, 150));
```



example from buffer rendered with just PostGIS

```
-- the bands map to RGB bands - the value (118,154,118) - teal --
SELECT ST_AsPNG(
ST_AsRaster(
ST_Buffer(
ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(50 50,150 150,150 50)'), 10,'join=bevel'),
200,200,ARRAY['8BUI', '8BUI', '8BUI'], ARRAY[118,154,118], ARRAY[0,0,0]));
```

See Also

ST_BandPixelType, ST_Buffer, ST_GDALDrivers, ST_AsGDALRaster, ST_AsPNG, ST_AsJPEG, ST_SRID

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 454 / 791

9.3.3 ST_Band

ST_Band — Returns one or more bands of an existing raster as a new raster. Useful for building new rasters from existing rasters.

Synopsis

```
raster ST_Band(raster rast, integer[] nbands = ARRAY[1]);
raster ST_Band(raster rast, integer nband);
raster ST_Band(raster rast, text nbands, character delimiter=,);
```

Description

Returns one or more bands of an existing raster as a new raster. Useful for building new rasters from existing rasters or export of only selected bands of a raster or rearranging the order of bands in a raster. If no band is specified, band 1 is assumed. Used as a helper function in various functions such as for deleting a band.



Warning

For the <code>nbands</code> as text variant of function, the default delimiter is , which means you can ask for '1,2,3' and if you wanted to use a different delimeter you would do $ST_Band(rast, '1@2@3', '@')$. For asking for multiple bands, we strongly suggest you use the array form of this function e.g. $ST_Band(rast, '\{1,2,3\}'::int[])$; since the <code>text</code> list of bands form may be removed in future versions of PostGIS.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
-- Return bands 2 and 3. Using array cast syntax

SELECT ST_NumBands(ST_Band(rast, '{2,3}'::int[])) As num_bands
   FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2;

num_bands
------2

-- Return bands 2 and 3. Use array to define bands

SELECT ST_NumBands(ST_Band(rast, ARRAY[2,3])) As num_bands
   FROM dummy_rast

WHERE rid=2;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 455 / 791







dupe_band



sing_band

--Make a new raster with 2nd band of original and 1st band repeated twice, and another with just the third band SELECT rast, ST_Band(rast, ARRAY[2,1,1]) As dupe_band, ST_Band(rast, 3) As sing_band FROM samples.than_chunked WHERE rid=35;

See Also

ST_AddBand, ST_NumBands, ST_Reclass, Chapter 9

9.3.4 ST_MakeEmptyRaster

ST_MakeEmptyRaster — Returns an empty raster (having no bands) of given dimensions (width & height), upperleft X and Y, pixel size and rotation (scalex, scaley, skewx & skewy) and reference system (srid). If a raster is passed in, returns a new raster with the same size, alignment and SRID. If srid is left out, the spatial ref is set to unknown (0).

Synopsis

raster ST_MakeEmptyRaster(raster rast);

raster **ST_MakeEmptyRaster**(integer width, integer height, float8 upperleftx, float8 upperlefty, float8 scalex, float8 scalex, float8 skewx, float8 skewy, integer srid=unknown);

raster ST_MakeEmptyRaster(integer width, integer height, float8 upperleftx, float8 upperlefty, float8 pixelsize);

Description

Returns an empty raster (having no band) of given dimensions (width & height) and georeferenced in spatial (or world) coordinates with upper left X (upperleftx), upper left Y (upperlefty), pixel size and rotation (scalex, scaley, skewx & skewy) and reference system (srid).

The last version use a single parameter to specify the pixel size (pixelsize). scalex is set to this argument and scaley is set to the negative value of this argument. skewx and skewy are set to 0.

If an existing raster is passed in, it returns a new raster with the same meta data settings (without the bands).

If no srid is specified it defaults to 0. After you create an empty raster you probably want to add bands to it and maybe edit it. Refer to **ST_AddBand** to define bands and **ST_SetValue** to set initial pixel values.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 456 / 791

Examples

```
INSERT INTO dummy_rast(rid, rast)
VALUES(3, ST_MakeEmptyRaster( 100, 100, 0.0005, 0.0005, 1, 1, 0, 0, 4326) );
--use an existing raster as template for new raster
INSERT INTO dummy_rast(rid, rast)
SELECT 4, ST_MakeEmptyRaster(rast)
FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid = 3;
-- output meta data of rasters we just added
SELECT rid, (md).*
FROM (SELECT rid, ST_MetaData(rast) As md
 FROM dummy_rast
 WHERE rid IN(3,4)) As foo;
-- output --
rid | upperleftx | upperlefty | width | height | scalex | scaley | skewx | skewy | srid | ↔
 ____+_____
       0.0005 |
                   0.0005 | 100 | 100 |
                                                1 |
                                                             1 | 0 |
                                                                          0 | ←
      4326 |
                  0
      0.0005 |
                    0.0005 | 100 | 100 |
                                            1 |
  4 |
                                                             1 | 0 |
                                                                          0 | ←
      4326 I
```

See Also

ST_AddBand, ST_MetaData, ST_ScaleX, ST_ScaleY, ST_SetValue, ST_SkewX, , ST_SkewY

9.3.5 ST Tile

ST_Tile — Returns a set of rasters resulting from the split of the input raster based upon the desired dimensions of the output rasters.

Synopsis

set of raster **ST_Tile**(raster rast, int[] nband, integer width, integer height, boolean padwithnodata=FALSE, double precision no-dataval=NULL);

setof raster **ST_Tile**(raster rast, integer nband, integer width, integer height, boolean padwithnodata=FALSE, double precision nodataval=NULL);

setof raster ST_Tile(raster rast, integer width, integer height, boolean padwithnodata=FALSE, double precision nodataval=NULL);

Description

Returns a set of rasters resulting from the split of the input raster based upon the desired dimensions of the output rasters.

If padwithnodata = FALSE, edge tiles on the right and bottom sides of the raster may have different dimensions than the rest of the tiles. If padwithnodata = TRUE, all tiles will have the same dimensions with the possibility that edge tiles being padded with NODATA values. If raster band(s) do not have NODATA value(s) specified, one can be specified by setting nodataval.



Note

If a specified band of the input raster is out-of-db, the corresponding band in the output rasters will also be out-of-db.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 457 / 791

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      1, 0), 2, '8BUI', 10, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 3, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      2, 0), 2, '8BUI', 20, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 6, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      3, 0), 2, '8BUI', 30, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, -3, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      4, 0), 2, '8BUI', 40, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 3, -3, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      5, 0), 2, '8BUI', 50, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 6, -3, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      6, 0), 2, '8BUI', 60, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, -6, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
     7, 0), 2, '8BUI', 70, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 3, -6, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
                                                                                                  \leftarrow
      8, 0), 2, '8BUI', 80, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 6, -6, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI', \leftrightarrow
     9, 0), 2, '8BUI', 90, 0) AS rast
), bar AS (
 SELECT ST_Union(rast) AS rast FROM foo
), baz AS (
 SELECT ST_Tile(rast, 3, 3, TRUE) AS rast FROM bar
SELECT
 ST_DumpValues(rast)
FROM baz;
              st_dumpvalues
 (1,"{\{1,1,1\},\{1,1,1\},\{1,1,1\}\}"})
 (2, "{{10,10,10},{10,10,10},{10,10,10}}")
 (1, "{\{2,2,2\}, \{2,2,2\}, \{2,2,2\}\}"})
 (2, "{{20,20,20},{20,20},{20,20},{20,20,20}}")
 (1, "{{3,3,3},{3,3,3},{3,3,3}}")
 (2, "{{30,30,30},{30,30},{30,30},{30,30,30}}")
 (1, "{{4,4,4}, {4,4,4}, {4,4,4}}")
 (2, "{ {40, 40, 40}, {40, 40}, {40, 40}, {40, 40, 40}}")
 (1, "{{5,5,5}, {5,5,5}, {5,5,5}}")
 (2, "{{50,50,50},{50,50},{50,50},{50,50}}")
 (1, "{{6,6,6},{6,6,6},{6,6,6}}")
 (2, "{{60,60,60},{60,60},{60,60},{60,60}}")
 (1, "{{7,7,7},{7,7,7},{7,7,7}}")
 (2, "{{70,70,70},{70,70},{70,70},{70,70,70}}")
 (1, "{{8,8,8},{8,8,8},{8,8,8}}")
 (2, "{{80,80,80},{80,80,80},{80,80,80}}")
 (1, "{{9,9,9},{9,9,9},{9,9,9}}")
 (2, "{{90,90,90},{90,90},{90,90},{90,90}}")
(18 rows)
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      1, 0), 2, '8BUI', 10, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 3, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI', \leftrightarrow
      2, 0), 2, '8BUI', 20, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 458 / 791

```
SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 6, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI', \leftrightarrow
      3, 0), 2, '8BUI', 30, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, -3, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      4, 0), 2, '8BUI', 40, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 3, -3, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      5, 0), 2, '8BUI', 50, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 6, -3, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      6, 0), 2, '8BUI', 60, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, -6, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      7, 0), 2, '8BUI', 70, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 3, -6, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      8, 0), 2, '8BUI', 80, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 6, -6, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI',
      9, 0), 2, '8BUI', 90, 0) AS rast
), bar AS (
  SELECT ST_Union(rast) AS rast FROM foo
), baz AS (
  SELECT ST_Tile(rast, 3, 3, 2) AS rast FROM bar
SELECT
  ST_DumpValues(rast)
FROM baz;
               st_dumpvalues
 (1, "{{10,10,10},{10,10,10},{10,10,10}}")
 (1, "{{20,20,20},{20,20,20},{20,20,20}}")
 (1, "{{30,30,30},{30,30},{30,30},{30,30,30}}")
 (1, "{ {40, 40, 40}, {40, 40}, {40, 40}, {40, 40, 40}}")
 (1,"{\{50,50,50\},\{50,50,50\},\{50,50,50\}\}}")
 (1, "{\{60, 60, 60\}, \{60, 60, 60\}, \{60, 60, 60\}\}"})
 (1, "{{70,70,70},{70,70},{70,70},{70,70,}}")
 (1, "{{80,80,80},{80,80,80},{80,80,80}}")
 (1, "{{90,90,90},{90,90},{90,90},{90,90,90}}")
(9 rows)
```

See Also

ST_Union, ST_Retile

9.3.6 ST Retile

ST_Retile — Return a set of configured tiles from an arbitrarily tiled raster coverage.

Synopsis

SETOF raster ST_Retile(regclass tab, name col, geometry ext, float8 sfx, float8 sfy, int tw, int th, text algo='NearestNeighbor');

Description

Return a set of tiles having the specified scale (sfx, sfy) and max size (tw, th) and covering the specified extent (ext) with data coming from the specified raster coverage (tab, col).

Algorithm options are: 'NearestNeighbor', 'Bilinear', 'Cubic', 'CubicSpline', and 'Lanczos'. Refer to: GDAL Warp resampling methods for more details.

Availability: 2.2.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 459 / 791

See Also

ST_CreateOverview

9.3.7 ST_FromGDALRaster

ST_FromGDALRaster — Returns a raster from a supported GDAL raster file.

Synopsis

raster ST_FromGDALRaster(bytea gdaldata, integer srid=NULL);

Description

Returns a raster from a supported GDAL raster file. gdaldata is of type bytea and should be the contents of the GDAL raster file

If srid is NULL, the function will try to automatically assign the SRID from the GDAL raster. If srid is provided, the value provided will override any automatically assigned SRID.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT ST_AsPNG(ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 0, 0, 0.1,
     -0.1, 0, 0, 4326), 1, '8BUI', 1, 0), 2, '8BUI', 2, 0), 3, '8BUI', 3, 0)) AS png
bar AS (
 SELECT 1 AS rid, ST_FromGDALRaster(png) AS rast FROM foo
 UNION ALL
 SELECT 2 AS rid, ST_FromGDALRaster(png, 3310) AS rast FROM foo
SELECT
 ST_Metadata(rast) AS metadata,
 ST_SummaryStats(rast, 1) AS stats1,
 ST_SummaryStats(rast, 2) AS stats2,
 ST_SummaryStats(rast, 3) AS stats3
FROM bar
ORDER BY rid;
rid |
              metadata
                               stats1
                                               stats2
                                                               stats3
  1 | (0,0,2,2,1,-1,0,0,0,3)
                               | (4,4,1,0,1,1) | (4,8,2,0,2,2) | (4,12,3,0,3,3)
   2 \mid (0,0,2,2,1,-1,0,0,3310,3) \mid (4,4,1,0,1,1) \mid (4,8,2,0,2,2) \mid (4,12,3,0,3,3)
(2 rows)
```

See Also

ST_AsGDALRaster

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 460 / 791

9.4 Raster Accessors

9.4.1 ST_GeoReference

ST_GeoReference — Returns the georeference meta data in GDAL or ESRI format as commonly seen in a world file. Default is GDAL.

Synopsis

text ST_GeoReference(raster rast, text format=GDAL);

Description

Returns the georeference meta data including carriage return in GDAL or ESRI format as commonly seen in a world file. Default is GDAL if no type specified. type is string 'GDAL' or 'ESRI'.

Difference between format representations is as follows:

```
GDAL:
```

```
scalex
skewy
skewx
scaley
upperleftx
upperlefty
```

ESRI:

```
scalex
skewy
skewx
scaley
upperleftx + scalex*0.5
upperlefty + scaley*0.5
```

Examples

See Also

ST_SetGeoReference, ST_ScaleX, ST_ScaleY

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 461 / 791

9.4.2 ST_Height

ST_Height — Returns the height of the raster in pixels.

Synopsis

integer ST_Height(raster rast);

Description

Returns the height of the raster.

Examples

See Also

ST Width

9.4.3 ST_IsEmpty

ST_IsEmpty — Returns true if the raster is empty (width = 0 and height = 0). Otherwise, returns false.

Synopsis

boolean ST_IsEmpty(raster rast);

Description

Returns true if the raster is empty (width = 0 and height = 0). Otherwise, returns false.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 462 / 791

See Also

ST_HasNoBand

9.4.4 ST_MemSize

ST_MemSize — Returns the amount of space (in bytes) the raster takes.

Synopsis

integer ST_MemSize(raster rast);

Description

Returns the amount of space (in bytes) the raster takes.

This is a nice compliment to PostgreSQL built in functions pg_column_size, pg_size_pretty, pg_relation_size, pg_total_relation_size.



Note

pg_relation_size which gives the byte size of a table may return byte size lower than ST_MemSize. This is because pg_relation_size does not add toasted table contribution and large geometries are stored in TOAST tables. pg_column_size might return lower because it returns the compressed size.

pg_total_relation_size - includes, the table, the toasted tables, and the indexes.

Availability: 2.2.0

Examples

```
SELECT ST_MemSize(ST_AsRaster(ST_Buffer(ST_Point(1,5),10,1000),150, 150, '8BUI')) As 
    rast_mem;

rast_mem
------
22568
```

See Also

9.4.5 ST_MetaData

ST_MetaData — Returns basic meta data about a raster object such as pixel size, rotation (skew), upper, lower left, etc.

Synopsis

record ST_MetaData(raster rast);

Description

Returns basic meta data about a raster object such as pixel size, rotation (skew), upper, lower left, etc. Columns returned: upperleftx | upperlefty | width | height | scalex | scaley | skewx | skewy | srid | numbands

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 463 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_BandMetaData, ST_NumBands

9.4.6 ST_NumBands

ST_NumBands — Returns the number of bands in the raster object.

Synopsis

integer ST_NumBands(raster rast);

Description

Returns the number of bands in the raster object.

Examples

See Also

ST_Value

9.4.7 ST_PixelHeight

ST_PixelHeight — Returns the pixel height in geometric units of the spatial reference system.

Synopsis

double precision **ST_PixelHeight**(raster rast);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 464 / 791

Description

Returns the height of a pixel in geometric units of the spatial reference system. In the common case where there is no skew, the pixel height is just the scale ratio between geometric coordinates and raster pixels.

Refer to ST_PixelWidth for a diagrammatic visualization of the relationship.

Examples: Rasters with no skew

Examples: Rasters with skew different than 0

See Also

```
ST_PixelWidth, ST_ScaleX, ST_ScaleY, ST_SkewX, ST_SkewY
```

9.4.8 ST_PixelWidth

ST_PixelWidth — Returns the pixel width in geometric units of the spatial reference system.

Synopsis

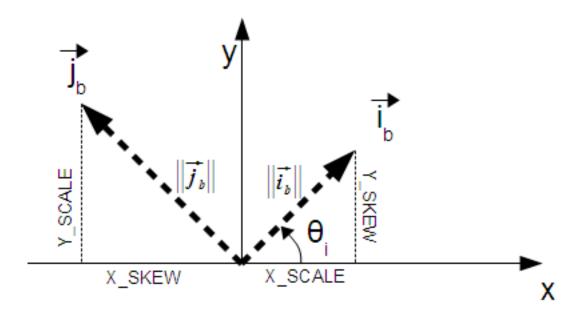
double precision **ST_PixelWidth**(raster rast);

Description

Returns the width of a pixel in geometric units of the spatial reference system. In the common case where there is no skew, the pixel width is just the scale ratio between geometric coordinates and raster pixels.

The following diagram demonstrates the relationship:

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 465 / 791



Pixel Width: Pixel size in the i direction Pixel Height: Pixel size in the j direction

Examples: Rasters with no skew

Examples: Rasters with skew different than 0

See Also

ST_PixelHeight, ST_ScaleX, ST_ScaleY, ST_SkewX, ST_SkewY

9.4.9 ST_ScaleX

ST_ScaleX — Returns the X component of the pixel width in units of coordinate reference system.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 466 / 791

Synopsis

float8 ST_ScaleX(raster rast);

Description

Returns the X component of the pixel width in units of coordinate reference system. Refer to World File for more details.

Changed: 2.0.0. In WKTRaster versions this was called ST_PixelSizeX.

Examples

See Also

ST_Width

9.4.10 ST_ScaleY

ST_ScaleY — Returns the Y component of the pixel height in units of coordinate reference system.

Synopsis

float8 ST_ScaleY(raster rast);

Description

Returns the Y component of the pixel height in units of coordinate reference system. May be negative. Refer to World File for more details.

Changed: 2.0.0. In WKTRaster versions this was called ST_PixelSizeY.

Examples

See Also

ST_Height

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 467 / 791

9.4.11 ST_RasterToWorldCoord

ST_RasterToWorldCoord — Returns the raster's upper left corner as geometric X and Y (longitude and latitude) given a column and row. Column and row starts at 1.

Synopsis

record **ST_RasterToWorldCoord**(raster rast, integer xcolumn, integer yrow);

Description

Returns the upper left corner as geometric X and Y (longitude and latitude) given a column and row. Returned X and Y are in geometric units of the georeferenced raster. Numbering of column and row starts at 1 but if either parameter is passed a zero, a negative number or a number greater than the respective dimension of the raster, it will return coordinates outside of the raster assuming the raster's grid is applicable outside the raster's bounds.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

See Also

ST_RasterToWorldCoordX, ST_RasterToWorldCoordY, ST_SetSkew

9.4.12 ST_RasterToWorldCoordX

ST_RasterToWorldCoordX — Returns the geometric X coordinate upper left of a raster, column and row. Numbering of columns and rows starts at 1.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 468 / 791

Synopsis

float8 **ST_RasterToWorldCoordX**(raster rast, integer xcolumn); float8 **ST_RasterToWorldCoordX**(raster rast, integer xcolumn, integer yrow);

Description

Returns the upper left X coordinate of a raster column row in geometric units of the georeferenced raster. Numbering of columns and rows starts at 1 but if you pass in a negative number or number higher than number of columns in raster, it will give you coordinates outside of the raster file to left or right with the assumption that the skew and pixel sizes are same as selected raster.



Note

For non-skewed rasters, providing the X column is sufficient. For skewed rasters, the georeferenced coordinate is a function of the ST_ScaleX and ST_SkewX and row and column. An error will be raised if you give just the X column for a skewed raster.

Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, this was called ST_Raster2WorldCoordX

Examples

See Also

 $ST_ScaleX, ST_RasterToWorldCoordY, ST_SetSkew, ST_SkewX$

9.4.13 ST_RasterToWorldCoordY

ST_RasterToWorldCoordY — Returns the geometric Y coordinate upper left corner of a raster, column and row. Numbering of columns and rows starts at 1.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 469 / 791

Synopsis

```
float8 ST_RasterToWorldCoordY(raster rast, integer yrow); float8 ST_RasterToWorldCoordY(raster rast, integer xcolumn, integer yrow);
```

Description

Returns the upper left Y coordinate of a raster column row in geometric units of the georeferenced raster. Numbering of columns and rows starts at 1 but if you pass in a negative number or number higher than number of columns/rows in raster, it will give you coordinates outside of the raster file to left or right with the assumption that the skew and pixel sizes are same as selected raster tile.



Note

For non-skewed rasters, providing the Y column is sufficient. For skewed rasters, the georeferenced coordinate is a function of the ST_ScaleY and ST_SkewY and row and column. An error will be raised if you give just the Y row for a skewed raster.

Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, this was called ST_Raster2WorldCoordY

Examples

See Also

ST_ScaleY, ST_RasterToWorldCoordX, ST_SetSkew, ST_SkewY

9.4.14 ST_Rotation

ST_Rotation — Returns the rotation of the raster in radian.

Synopsis

float8 **ST_Rotation**(raster rast);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 470 / 791

Description

Returns the uniform rotation of the raster in radian. If a raster does not have uniform rotation, NaN is returned. Refer to World File for more details.

Examples

See Also

ST_SetRotation, ST_SetScale, ST_SetSkew

9.4.15 ST_SkewX

ST_SkewX — Returns the georeference X skew (or rotation parameter).

Synopsis

float8 ST_SkewX(raster rast);

Description

Returns the georeference X skew (or rotation parameter). Refer to World File for more details.

Examples

```
SELECT rid, ST_SkewX(rast) As skewx, ST_SkewY(rast) As skewy,
   ST_GeoReference(rast) as georef
FROM dummy_rast;
rid | skewx | skewy |
                          georef
  1 | 0 | 0 | 2.000000000
                   : 0.0000000000
                   : 0.0000000000
                   : 3.0000000000
                   : 0.5000000000
                   : 0.5000000000
  2 | 0 |
                0 | 0.0500000000
                   : 0.0000000000
                    : 0.0000000000
                    : -0.0500000000
                    : 3427927.7500000000
                    : 5793244.0000000000
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 471 / 791

See Also

ST_GeoReference, ST_SkewY, ST_SetSkew

9.4.16 ST_SkewY

ST_SkewY — Returns the georeference Y skew (or rotation parameter).

Synopsis

float8 ST_SkewY(raster rast);

Description

Returns the georeference Y skew (or rotation parameter). Refer to World File for more details.

Examples

```
SELECT rid, ST_SkewX(rast) As skewx, ST_SkewY(rast) As skewy,
   ST_GeoReference(rast) as georef
FROM dummy_rast;
rid | skewx | skewy |
                          georef
  1 | 0 | 0 | 2.000000000
                    : 0.0000000000
                    : 0.0000000000
                    : 3.0000000000
                    : 0.5000000000
                    : 0.5000000000
  2 |
        0 |
                0 | 0.0500000000
                   : 0.0000000000
                    : 0.0000000000
                    : -0.0500000000
                    : 3427927.7500000000
                    : 5793244.0000000000
```

See Also

ST_GeoReference, ST_SkewX, ST_SetSkew

9.4.17 ST_SRID

ST_SRID — Returns the spatial reference identifier of the raster as defined in spatial_ref_sys table.

Synopsis

integer ST_SRID(raster rast);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 472 / 791

Description

Returns the spatial reference identifier of the raster object as defined in the spatial_ref_sys table.



Note

From PostGIS 2.0+ the srid of a non-georeferenced raster/geometry is 0 instead of the prior -1.

Examples

```
SELECT ST_SRID(rast) As srid
FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=1;
srid
-----0
```

See Also

Section 4.3.1, ST_SRID

9.4.18 ST_Summary

ST_Summary — Returns a text summary of the contents of the raster.

Synopsis

text ST_Summary(raster rast);

Description

Returns a text summary of the contents of the raster.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

```
SELECT ST_Summary(
    ST_AddBand(
        ST_AddBand(
            ST_MakeEmptyRaster(10, 10, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0)
             , 1, '8BUI', 1, 0
        )
        , 2, '32BF', 0, -9999
    )
        , 3, '16BSI', 0, NULL
    )
);

st_summary
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 473 / 791

```
Raster of 10x10 pixels has 3 bands and extent of BOX(0 -10,10 0)+
band 1 of pixtype 8BUI is in-db with NODATA value of 0 +
band 2 of pixtype 32BF is in-db with NODATA value of -9999 +
band 3 of pixtype 16BSI is in-db with no NODATA value
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_MetaData, ST_BandMetaData, ST_Summary ST_Extent

9.4.19 ST_UpperLeftX

ST_UpperLeftX — Returns the upper left X coordinate of raster in projected spatial ref.

Synopsis

float8 ST_UpperLeftX(raster rast);

Description

Returns the upper left X coordinate of raster in projected spatial ref.

Examples

See Also

ST_UpperLeftY, ST_GeoReference, Box3D

9.4.20 ST_UpperLeftY

ST_UpperLeftY — Returns the upper left Y coordinate of raster in projected spatial ref.

Synopsis

float8 ST_UpperLeftY(raster rast);

Description

Returns the upper left Y coordinate of raster in projected spatial ref.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 474 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT rid, ST_UpperLeftY(rast) As uly
FROM dummy_rast;

rid | uly
----+-----
1 | 0.5
2 | 5793244
```

See Also

ST_UpperLeftX, ST_GeoReference, Box3D

9.4.21 ST_Width

ST_Width — Returns the width of the raster in pixels.

Synopsis

integer ST_Width(raster rast);

Description

Returns the width of the raster in pixels.

Examples

See Also

ST_Height

9.4.22 ST_WorldToRasterCoord

ST_WorldToRasterCoord — Returns the upper left corner as column and row given geometric X and Y (longitude and latitude) or a point geometry expressed in the spatial reference coordinate system of the raster.

Synopsis

```
record ST_WorldToRasterCoord(raster rast, geometry pt); record ST_WorldToRasterCoord(raster rast, double precision longitude, double precision latitude);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 475 / 791

Description

Returns the upper left corner as column and row given geometric X and Y (longitude and latitude) or a point geometry. This function works regardless of whether or not the geometric X and Y or point geometry is outside the extent of the raster. Geometric X and Y must be expressed in the spatial reference coordinate system of the raster.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

See Also

ST_WorldToRasterCoordX, ST_WorldToRasterCoordY, ST_RasterToWorldCoordX, ST_RasterToWorldCoordY, ST_SRID

9.4.23 ST WorldToRasterCoordX

ST_WorldToRasterCoordX — Returns the column in the raster of the point geometry (pt) or a X and Y world coordinate (xw, yw) represented in world spatial reference system of raster.

Synopsis

```
integer ST_WorldToRasterCoordX(raster rast, geometry pt); integer ST_WorldToRasterCoordX(raster rast, double precision xw); integer ST_WorldToRasterCoordX(raster rast, double precision xw, double precision yw);
```

Description

Returns the column in the raster of the point geometry (pt) or a X and Y world coordinate (xw, yw). A point, or (both xw and yw world coordinates are required if a raster is skewed). If a raster is not skewed then xw is sufficient. World coordinates are in the spatial reference coordinate system of the raster.

Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, this was called ST_World2RasterCoordX

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 476 / 791

See Also

 $ST_RasterToWorldCoordX, ST_RasterToWorldCoordY, ST_SRID$

9.4.24 ST_WorldToRasterCoordY

ST_WorldToRasterCoordY — Returns the row in the raster of the point geometry (pt) or a X and Y world coordinate (xw, yw) represented in world spatial reference system of raster.

Synopsis

```
integer ST_WorldToRasterCoordY(raster rast, geometry pt);
integer ST_WorldToRasterCoordY(raster rast, double precision xw);
integer ST_WorldToRasterCoordY(raster rast, double precision xw, double precision yw);
```

Description

Returns the row in the raster of the point geometry (pt) or a X and Y world coordinate (xw, yw). A point, or (both xw and yw world coordinates are required if a raster is skewed). If a raster is not skewed then xw is sufficient. World coordinates are in the spatial reference coordinate system of the raster.

Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, this was called ST_World2RasterCoordY

Examples

See Also

 $ST_RasterToWorldCoordX, ST_RasterToWorldCoordY, ST_SRID$

9.5 Raster Band Accessors

9.5.1 ST_BandMetaData

ST_BandMetaData — Returns basic meta data for a specific raster band. band num 1 is assumed if none-specified.

Synopsis

record ST_BandMetaData(raster rast, integer bandnum=1);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 477 / 791

Description

Returns basic meta data about a raster band. Columns returned pixeltype | nodatavalue | isoutdb | path.



Note

If raster contains no bands then an error is thrown.



Note

If band has no NODATA value, nodatavalue will be NULL.

Examples

```
SELECT rid, (foo.md).*

FROM (SELECT rid, ST_BandMetaData(rast,1) As md

FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2) As foo;

rid | pixeltype | nodatavalue | isoutdb | path

2 | 8BUI | 0 | f |
```

See Also

ST_MetaData, ST_BandPixelType

9.5.2 ST_BandNoDataValue

ST_BandNoDataValue — Returns the value in a given band that represents no data. If no band num 1 is assumed.

Synopsis

double precision **ST_BandNoDataValue**(raster rast, integer bandnum=1);

Description

Returns the value that represents no data for the band

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 478 / 791

See Also

ST_NumBands

9.5.3 ST_BandIsNoData

 $ST_BandIsNoData -- Returns \ true \ if the \ band \ is \ filled \ with \ only \ nodata \ values.$

Synopsis

boolean **ST_BandIsNoData**(raster rast, integer band, boolean forceChecking=true); boolean **ST_BandIsNoData**(raster rast, boolean forceChecking=true);

Description

Returns true if the band is filled with only nodata values. Band 1 is assumed if not specified. If the last argument is TRUE, the entire band is checked pixel by pixel. Otherwise, the function simply returns the value of the isnodata flag for the band. The default value for this parameter is FALSE, if not specified.

Availability: 2.0.0



Note

If the flag is dirty (this is, the result is different using TRUE as last parameter and not using it) you should update the raster to set this flag to true, by using ST_SetBandlsNodata(), or ST_SetBandNodataValue() with TRUE as last argument. See ST_SetBandlsNoData.

```
-- Create dummy table with one raster column
create table dummy_rast (rid integer, rast raster);
-- Add raster with two bands, one pixel/band. In the first band, nodatavalue = pixel value \ \leftrightarrow
-- In the second band, nodatavalue = 13, pixel value = 4
insert into dummy_rast values(1,
'01' -- little endian (uint8 ndr)
| \cdot |
'0000' -- version (uint16 0)
'0200' -- nBands (uint16 0)
'17263529ED684A3F' -- scaleX (float64 0.000805965234044584)
'F9253529ED684ABF' -- scaleY (float64 -0.00080596523404458)
\prod
'1C9F33CE69E352C0' -- ipX (float64 -75.5533328537098)
\prod
'718F0E9A27A44840' -- ipY (float64 49.2824585505576)
'ED50EB853EC32B3F' -- skewX (float64 0.000211812383858707)
'7550EB853EC32B3F' -- skewY (float64 0.000211812383858704)
'E6100000' -- SRID (int32 4326)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 479 / 791

```
'0100' -- width (uint16 1)
'0100' -- height (uint16 1)
'6' -- hasnodatavalue and isnodata value set to true.
'2' -- first band type (4BUI)
\Box
'03' -- novalue==3
'03' -- pixel(0,0)==3 (same that nodata)
| \cdot |
'0' -- hasnodatavalue set to false
'5' -- second band type (16BSI)
'0D00' -- novalue==13
'0400' -- pixel(0,0) == 4
)::raster
);
select st_bandisnodata(rast, 1) from dummy_rast where rid = 1; -- Expected true
select st_bandisnodata(rast, 2) from dummy_rast where rid = 1; -- Expected false
```

See Also

 $ST_BandNoDataValue, ST_NumBands, ST_SetBandNoDataValue, ST_SetBandIsNoDataValue, ST_SetBandIsN$

9.5.4 ST BandPath

ST_BandPath — Returns system file path to a band stored in file system. If no bandnum specified, 1 is assumed.

Synopsis

text ST_BandPath(raster rast, integer bandnum=1);

Description

Returns system file path to a band. Throws an error if called with an in db band.

Examples

See Also

9.5.5 ST_BandPixelType

ST_BandPixelType — Returns the type of pixel for given band. If no bandnum specified, 1 is assumed.

Synopsis

text **ST_BandPixelType**(raster rast, integer bandnum=1);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 480 / 791

Description

Returns the value that represents no data for the band

There are 11 pixel types. Pixel Types supported are as follows:

- 1BB 1-bit boolean
- 2BUI 2-bit unsigned integer
- 4BUI 4-bit unsigned integer
- 8BSI 8-bit signed integer
- 8BUI 8-bit unsigned integer
- 16BSI 16-bit signed integer
- 16BUI 16-bit unsigned integer
- 32BSI 32-bit signed integer
- 32BUI 32-bit unsigned integer
- 32BF 32-bit float
- 64BF 64-bit float

Examples

See Also

ST_NumBands

9.5.6 ST_HasNoBand

ST_HasNoBand — Returns true if there is no band with given band number. If no band number is specified, then band number 1 is assumed.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_HasNoBand**(raster rast, integer bandnum=1);

Description

Returns true if there is no band with given band number. If no band number is specified, then band number 1 is assumed.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 481 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_NumBands

9.6 Raster Pixel Accessors and Setters

9.6.1 ST PixelAsPolygon

ST_PixelAsPolygon — Returns the polygon geometry that bounds the pixel for a particular row and column.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_PixelAsPolygon**(raster rast, integer columnx, integer rowy);

Description

Returns the polygon geometry that bounds the pixel for a particular row and column.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

See Also

ST_DumpAsPolygons, ST_PixelAsPoint, ST_PixelAsPoint, ST_PixelAsCentroid, ST_PixelAsCentroids, ST_Intersection, ST_AsText

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 482 / 791

9.6.2 ST_PixelAsPolygons

ST_PixelAsPolygons — Returns the polygon geometry that bounds every pixel of a raster band along with the value, the X and the Y raster coordinates of each pixel.

Synopsis

setof record **ST_PixelAsPolygons**(raster rast, integer band=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=TRUE);

Description

Returns the polygon geometry that bounds every pixel of a raster band along with the value (double precision), the X and the Y raster coordinates (integers) of each pixel.



Note

ST_PixelAsPolygons returns one polygon geometry for every pixel. This is different than ST_DumpAsPolygons where each geometry represents one or more pixels with the same pixel value.



Note

When exclude_nodata_value = TRUE, only those pixels whose values are not NODATA are returned as polygons.

Availability: 2.0.0

Enhanced: 2.1.0 exclude_nodata_value optional argument was added.

Changed: 2.1.1 Changed behavior of exclude_nodata_value.

Examples

```
-- get raster pixel polygon
SELECT (gv).x, (gv).y, (gv).val, ST_AsText((gv).geom) geom
FROM (SELECT ST_PixelAsPolygons(
                 ST_SetValue(ST_SetValue(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 0, 0, 0.001,
                     -0.001, 0.001, 0.001, 4269),
                                                     '8BUI'::text, 1, 0),
                                          2, 2, 10),
                             1, 1, NULL)
) gv
) foo;
 x \mid y \mid val \mid
                              geom
           | POLYGON((0 0,0.001 0.001,0.002 0,0.001 -0.001,0 0))
 1 | 2 | 1 | POLYGON((0.001 -0.001,0.002 0,0.003 -0.001,0.002 -0.002,0.001 -0.001))
         1 | POLYGON((0.001 0.001,0.002 0.002,0.003 0.001,0.002 0,0.001 0.001))
 2 | 2 | 10 | POLYGON((0.002 0,0.003 0.001,0.004 0,0.003 -0.001,0.002 0))
```

See Also

 $ST_DumpAsPolygons, ST_PixelAsPolygon, ST_PixelAsPoint, ST_PixelAsPoints, ST_PixelAsCentroids, ST_PixelAsCentroids, ST_AsText$

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 483 / 791

9.6.3 ST_PixelAsPoint

ST_PixelAsPoint — Returns a point geometry of the pixel's upper-left corner.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_PixelAsPoint**(raster rast, integer columnx, integer rowy);

Description

Returns a point geometry of the pixel's upper-left corner.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_PixelAsPoint(rast, 1, 1)) FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid = 1;
    st_astext
------
POINT(0.5 0.5)
```

See Also

ST_DumpAsPolygons, ST_PixelAsPolygon, ST_PixelAsPolygons, ST_PixelAsPoints, ST_PixelAsCentroid, ST_PixelAsCentroids

9.6.4 ST_PixelAsPoints

ST_PixelAsPoints — Returns a point geometry for each pixel of a raster band along with the value, the X and the Y raster coordinates of each pixel. The coordinates of the point geometry are of the pixel's upper-left corner.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_PixelAsPoints**(raster rast, integer band=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=TRUE);

Description

Returns a point geometry for each pixel of a raster band along with the value, the X and the Y raster coordinates of each pixel. The coordinates of the point geometry are of the pixel's upper-left corner.



Note

When exclude_nodata_value = TRUE, only those pixels whose values are not NODATA are returned as points.

Availability: 2.1.0

Changed: 2.1.1 Changed behavior of exclude_nodata_value.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 484 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT x, y, val, ST_AsText(geom) FROM (SELECT (ST_PixelAsPoints(rast, 1)).* FROM \leftarrow
   dummy_rast WHERE rid = 2) foo;
x | y | val |
                        st_astext
1 | 1 | 253 | POINT (3427927.75 5793244)
 2 | 1 | 254 | POINT (3427927.8 5793244)
 3 | 1 | 253 | POINT (3427927.85 5793244)
 4 | 1 | 254 | POINT (3427927.9 5793244)
 5 | 1 | 254 | POINT(3427927.95 5793244)
 1 | 2 | 253 | POINT (3427927.75 5793243.95)
 2 | 2 | 254 | POINT (3427927.8 5793243.95)
 3 | 2 | 254 | POINT (3427927.85 5793243.95)
 4 | 2 | 253 | POINT(3427927.9 5793243.95)
 5 | 2 | 249 | POINT (3427927.95 5793243.95)
 1 | 3 | 250 | POINT (3427927.75 5793243.9)
 2 | 3 | 254 | POINT (3427927.8 5793243.9)
 3 | 3 | 254 | POINT (3427927.85 5793243.9)
 4 | 3 | 252 | POINT(3427927.9 5793243.9)
 5 | 3 | 249 | POINT (3427927.95 5793243.9)
 1 | 4 | 251 | POINT (3427927.75 5793243.85)
 2 | 4 | 253 | POINT (3427927.8 5793243.85)
 3 | 4 | 254 | POINT (3427927.85 5793243.85)
 4 | 4 | 254 | POINT (3427927.9 5793243.85)
 5 | 4 | 253 | POINT (3427927.95 5793243.85)
 1 | 5 | 252 | POINT (3427927.75 5793243.8)
 2 | 5 | 250 | POINT (3427927.8 5793243.8)
 3 | 5 | 254 | POINT (3427927.85 5793243.8)
 4 | 5 | 254 | POINT (3427927.9 5793243.8)
 5 | 5 | 254 | POINT (3427927.95 5793243.8)
```

See Also

ST_DumpAsPolygons, ST_PixelAsPolygon, ST_PixelAsPolygons, ST_PixelAsPoint, ST_PixelAsCentroid, ST_PixelAsCentroids

9.6.5 ST PixelAsCentroid

ST_PixelAsCentroid — Returns the centroid (point geometry) of the area represented by a pixel.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_PixelAsCentroid**(raster rast, integer x, integer y);

Description

Returns the centroid (point geometry) of the area represented by a pixel.

Availability: 2.1.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 485 / 791

See Also

ST_DumpAsPolygons, ST_PixelAsPolygon, ST_PixelAsPolygons, ST_PixelAsPoint, ST_PixelAsPoints, ST_PixelAsCentroids

9.6.6 ST PixelAsCentroids

ST_PixelAsCentroids — Returns the centroid (point geometry) for each pixel of a raster band along with the value, the X and the Y raster coordinates of each pixel. The point geometry is the centroid of the area represented by a pixel.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_PixelAsCentroids**(raster rast, integer band=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=TRUE);

Description

Returns the centroid (point geometry) for each pixel of a raster band along with the value, the X and the Y raster coordinates of each pixel. The point geometry is the centroid of the area represented by a pixel.



Note

When exclude_nodata_value = TRUE, only those pixels whose values are not NODATA are returned as points.

Availability: 2.1.0

Changed: 2.1.1 Changed behavior of exclude_nodata_value.

```
SELECT x, y, val, ST_AsText(geom) FROM (SELECT (ST_PixelAsCentroids(rast, 1)).* FROM \leftrightarrow
   dummy_rast WHERE rid = 2) foo;
x \mid y \mid val \mid
                          st_astext
1 | 1 | 253 | POINT (3427927.775 5793243.975)
 2 | 1 | 254 | POINT (3427927.825 5793243.975)
 3 | 1 | 253 | POINT (3427927.875 5793243.975)
 4 | 1 | 254 | POINT (3427927.925 5793243.975)
 5 | 1 | 254 | POINT (3427927.975 5793243.975)
 1 | 2 | 253 | POINT (3427927.775 5793243.925)
 2 | 2 | 254 | POINT (3427927.825 5793243.925)
 3 | 2 | 254 | POINT (3427927.875 5793243.925)
 4 | 2 | 253 | POINT (3427927.925 5793243.925)
 5 | 2 | 249 | POINT (3427927.975 5793243.925)
 1 | 3 | 250 | POINT (3427927.775 5793243.875)
 2 | 3 | 254 | POINT (3427927.825 5793243.875)
 3 | 3 | 254 | POINT (3427927.875 5793243.875)
 4 | 3 | 252 | POINT (3427927.925 5793243.875)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 486 / 791

```
5 | 3 | 249 | POINT (3427927.975 5793243.875)

1 | 4 | 251 | POINT (3427927.775 5793243.825)

2 | 4 | 253 | POINT (3427927.825 5793243.825)

3 | 4 | 254 | POINT (3427927.875 5793243.825)

4 | 4 | 254 | POINT (3427927.975 5793243.825)

5 | 4 | 253 | POINT (3427927.975 5793243.825)

1 | 5 | 252 | POINT (3427927.775 5793243.775)

2 | 5 | 250 | POINT (3427927.825 5793243.775)

3 | 5 | 254 | POINT (3427927.875 5793243.775)

4 | 5 | 254 | POINT (3427927.925 5793243.775)

5 | 5 | 254 | POINT (3427927.925 5793243.775)
```

See Also

ST_DumpAsPolygons, ST_PixelAsPolygon, ST_PixelAsPolygons, ST_PixelAsPoints, ST_Pixel

9.6.7 ST Value

ST_Value — Returns the value of a given band in a given columnx, rowy pixel or at a particular geometric point. Band numbers start at 1 and assumed to be 1 if not specified. If exclude_nodata_value is set to false, then all pixels include nodata pixels are considered to intersect and return value. If exclude_nodata_value is not passed in then reads it from metadata of raster.

Synopsis

```
double precision ST_Value(raster rast, geometry pt, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true); double precision ST_Value(raster rast, integer band, geometry pt, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true); double precision ST_Value(raster rast, integer x, integer y, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true); double precision ST_Value(raster rast, integer band, integer x, integer y, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true);
```

Description

Returns the value of a given band in a given columnx, rowy pixel or at a given geometry point. Band numbers start at 1 and band is assumed to be 1 if not specified. If exclude_nodata_value is set to true, then only non nodata pixels are considered. If exclude_nodata_value is set to false, then all pixels are considered.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 exclude_nodata_value optional argument was added.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 487 / 791

```
SELECT rid, ST_Value(rast, 1, 1, 1) As b1pval,
   ST_Value(rast, 2, 1, 1) As b2pval, ST_Value(rast, 3, 1, 1) As b3pval
FROM dummy_rast
WHERE rid=2;
rid | b1pval | b2pval | b3pval
  2 | 253 | 78 | 70
--- Get all values in bands 1,2,3 of each pixel --
SELECT x, y, ST_Value(rast, 1, x, y) As b1val,
 ST_Value(rast, 2, x, y) As b2val, ST_Value(rast, 3, x, y) As b3val
FROM dummy_rast CROSS JOIN
generate_series(1, 1000) As x CROSS JOIN generate_series(1, 1000) As y
WHERE rid = 2 AND x <= ST_Width(rast) AND y <= ST_Height(rast);
x | y | b1val | b2val | b3val
1 | 1 |
        253 | 78 | 70
                 96 |
1 | 2 |
          253 |
                           80
         250 |
                 99 |
1 | 3 |
                           90
                  89 |
         251 |
                           77
1 | 4 |
                  79 |
1 | 5 |
         252 |
                           62
                 98 |
2 | 1 |
        254 |
                         86
 2 | 2 | 254 | 118 | 108
 :
--- Get all values in bands 1,2,3 of each pixel same as above but returning the upper left \leftrightarrow
  point point of each pixel -
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_SetSRID(
 ST_Point(ST_UpperLeftX(rast) + ST_ScaleX(rast)*x,
   ST_UpperLeftY(rast) + ST_ScaleY(rast)*y),
   ST_SRID(rast))) As uplpt
   , ST_Value(rast, 1, x, y) As b1val,
 ST_Value(rast, 2, x, y) As b2val, ST_Value(rast, 3, x, y) As b3val
FROM dummy_rast CROSS JOIN
generate_series(1,1000) As x CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,1000) As y
WHERE rid = 2 AND x <= ST_Width(rast) AND y <= ST_Height(rast);
                           | b1val | b2val | b3val
           uplpt
POINT(3427929.25 5793245.5) | 253 | 78 | 70
POINT(3427929.25 5793247) | 253 |
                                      96 I
                                               80
POINT (3427929.25 5793248.5) | 250 | 99 |
--- Get a polygon formed by union of all pixels
 that fall in a particular value range and intersect particular polygon --
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Union(pixpolyg)) As shadow
FROM (SELECT ST_Translate(ST_MakeEnvelope(
   ST_UpperLeftX(rast), ST_UpperLeftY(rast),
     ST_UpperLeftX(rast) + ST_ScaleX(rast),
     ST_UpperLeftY(rast) + ST_ScaleY(rast), 0
     ), ST_ScaleX(rast) *x, ST_ScaleY(rast) *y
   ) As pixpolyg, ST_Value(rast, 2, x, y) As b2val
 FROM dummy_rast CROSS JOIN
generate_series(1,1000) As x CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,1000) As y
WHERE rid = 2
AND x <= ST_Width(rast) AND y <= ST_Height(rast)) As foo
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 488 / 791

```
WHERE
  ST_Intersects(
    pixpolyg,
    ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((3427928 5793244,3427927.75 5793243.75,3427928 ←
       5793243.75,3427928 5793244))',0)
    ) AND b2val != 254;
    shadow
 \texttt{MULTIPOLYGON}(((3427928\ 5793243.9,3427928\ 5793243.85,3427927.95\ 5793243.85,3427927.95\ \leftarrow
    5793243.9,
 3427927.95 5793243.95, 3427928 5793243.95, 3427928.05 5793243.95, 3427928.05 \leftrightarrow
     5793243.9,3427928 5793243.9)),((3427927.95 5793243.9,3427927.95 579324
3.85,3427927.9 5793243.85,3427927.85 5793243.85,3427927.85 5793243.9,3427927.9 \leftrightarrow
    5793243.9,3427927.9 5793243.95,
3427927.95\ 5793243.95, 3427927.95\ 5793243.9)),((3427927.85\ 5793243.75, 3427927.85\ \leftrightarrow
    5793243.7,3427927.8 5793243.7,3427927.8 5793243.75
,3427927.8 5793243.8,3427927.8 5793243.85,3427927.85 5793243.85,3427927.85 ↔
   5793243.8,3427927.85 5793243.75)),
((3427928.05\ 5793243.75,3427928.05\ 5793243.7,3427928\ 5793243.7,3427927.95\ \leftrightarrow
   5793243.7,3427927.95 5793243.75,3427927.95 5793243.8,3427
927.95 5793243.85,3427928 5793243.85,3427928 5793243.8,3427928.05 5793243.8,
3427928.05\ 5793243.75), ((3427927.95\ 5793243.75, 3427927.95\ 5793243.7, 3427927.9
   5793243.7,3427927.85 5793243.7,
3427927.85 5793243.75,3427927.85 5793243.8,3427927.85 5793243.85,3427927.9 5793243.85,
3427927.95 5793243.85,3427927.95 5793243.8,3427927.95 5793243.75)))
--- Checking all the pixels of a large raster tile can take a long time.
--- You can dramatically improve speed at some lose of precision by orders of magnitude
-- by sampling pixels using the step optional parameter of generate_series.
   This next example does the same as previous but by checking 1 for every 4 (2x2) pixels \leftrightarrow
   and putting in the last checked
   putting in the checked pixel as the value for subsequent 4
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Union(pixpolyg)) As shadow
FROM (SELECT ST_Translate(ST_MakeEnvelope(
    ST_UpperLeftX(rast), ST_UpperLeftY(rast),
      ST_UpperLeftX(rast) + ST_ScaleX(rast) *2,
      ST_UpperLeftY(rast) + ST_ScaleY(rast) *2, 0
      ), ST_ScaleX(rast) *x, ST_ScaleY(rast) *y
    ) As pixpolyg, ST_Value(rast, 2, x, y) As b2val
  FROM dummy_rast CROSS JOIN
generate_series(1,1000,2) As x CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,1000,2) As y
WHERE rid = 2
 AND x \le ST_Width(rast) AND y \le ST_Height(rast) ) As foo
WHERE
 ST_Intersects(
   pixpolyg,
    {\tt ST\_GeomFromText('POLYGON((3427928\ 5793244,3427927.75\ 5793243.75,3427928\ } \leftarrow
       5793243.75,3427928 5793244))',0)
    ) AND b2val != 254;
    shadow
 MULTIPOLYGON(((3427927.9 5793243.85,3427927.8 5793243.85,3427927.8 5793243.95,
 3427927.9 5793243.95, 3427928 5793243.95, 3427928.1 5793243.95, 3427928.1 5793243.85, 3427928 \leftrightarrow
    5793243.85,3427927.9 5793243.85)),
 ((3427927.95793243.65,3427927.85793243.65,3427927.85793243.75,3427927.8 \leftrightarrow
    5793243.85,3427927.9 5793243.85,
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 489 / 791

```
5793243.65,3427927.9 5793243.65)))
```

See Also

ST_SetValue, ST_DumpAsPolygons, ST_NumBands, ST_PixelAsPolygon, ST_ScaleX, ST_ScaleY, ST_UpperLeftX, ST_UpperLeftY, ST_SRID, ST_AsText, ST_Point, ST_MakeEnvelope, ST_Intersects, ST_Intersection

9.6.8 ST_NearestValue

ST_NearestValue — Returns the nearest non-NODATA value of a given band's pixel specified by a columnx and rowy or a geometric point expressed in the same spatial reference coordinate system as the raster.

Synopsis

double precision **ST_NearestValue**(raster rast, integer bandnum, geometry pt, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true); double precision **ST_NearestValue**(raster rast, geometry pt, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true); double precision **ST_NearestValue**(raster rast, integer bandnum, integer columnx, integer rowy, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true); double precision **ST_NearestValue**(raster rast, integer columnx, integer rowy, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true);

Description

Returns the nearest non-NODATA value of a given band in a given columnx, rowy pixel or at a specific geometric point. If the columnx, rowy pixel or the pixel at the specified geometric point is NODATA, the function will find the nearest pixel to the columnx, rowy pixel or geometric point whose value is not NODATA.

Band numbers start at 1 and bandnum is assumed to be 1 if not specified. If exclude_nodata_value is set to false, then all pixels include nodata pixels are considered to intersect and return value. If exclude_nodata_value is not passed in then reads it from metadata of raster.

Availability: 2.1.0



Note

ST NearestValue is a drop-in replacement for ST Value.

```
-- pixel 2x2 has value
SELECT
  ST_Value(rast, 2, 2) AS value,
  ST_NearestValue(rast, 2, 2) AS nearestvalue
FROM (
  SELECT
    ST_SetValue(
      ST_SetValue(
        ST_SetValue(
          ST_SetValue(
            ST_SetValue(
              ST_AddBand(
                ST_MakeEmptyRaster(5, 5, -2, 2, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
                 '8BUI'::text, 1, 0
              ),
              1, 1, 0.
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 490 / 791

```
-- pixel 2x3 is NODATA
SELECT
  ST_Value(rast, 2, 3) AS value,
  ST_NearestValue(rast, 2, 3) AS nearestvalue
FROM (
  SELECT
   ST_SetValue(
     ST_SetValue(
       ST_SetValue(
          ST_SetValue(
            ST_SetValue(
              ST\_AddBand (
                ST_MakeEmptyRaster(5, 5, -2, 2, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
                '8BUI'::text, 1, 0
              ),
              1, 1, 0.
            ),
            2, 3, 0.
          3, 5, 0.
        ),
        4, 2, 0.
      ),
      5, 4, 0.
    ) AS rast
) AS foo
 value | nearestvalue
```

See Also

ST_Neighborhood, ST_Value

9.6.9 ST_Neighborhood

ST_Neighborhood — Returns a 2-D double precision array of the non-NODATA values around a given band's pixel specified by either a columnX and rowY or a geometric point expressed in the same spatial reference coordinate system as the raster.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 491 / 791

Synopsis

double precision[][] **ST_Neighborhood**(raster rast, integer bandnum, integer columnX, integer rowY, integer distanceX, integer distanceY, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true);

double precision[][] **ST_Neighborhood**(raster rast, integer columnX, integer rowY, integer distanceX, integer distanceY, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true);

double precision[][] **ST_Neighborhood**(raster rast, integer bandnum, geometry pt, integer distanceX, integer distanceY, boolean exclude nodata value=true);

exclude_nodata_value=true); double precision[][] **ST_Neighborhood**(raster rast, geometry pt, integer distanceX, integer distanceY, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true);

Description

Returns a 2-D double precision array of the non-NODATA values around a given band's pixel specified by either a columnX and rowY or a geometric point expressed in the same spatial reference coordinate system as the raster. The distanceX and distanceY parameters define the number of pixels around the specified pixel in the X and Y axes, e.g. I want all values within 3 pixel distance along the X axis and 2 pixel distance along the Y axis around my pixel of interest. The center value of the 2-D array will be the value at the pixel specified by the columnX and rowY or the geometric point.

Band numbers start at 1 and bandnum is assumed to be 1 if not specified. If exclude_nodata_value is set to false, then all pixels include nodata pixels are considered to intersect and return value. If exclude_nodata_value is not passed in then reads it from metadata of raster.



Note

The number of elements along each axis of the returning 2-D array is 2 * (distanceX|distanceY) + 1. So for a distanceX and distanceY of 1, the returning array will be 3x3.



Note

The 2-D array output can be passed to any of the raster processing builtin functions, e.g. ST_Min4ma, ST_Sum4ma, ST Mean4ma.

Availability: 2.1.0

```
-- pixel 2x2 has value
SELECT
  ST_Neighborhood(rast, 2, 2, 1, 1)
FROM (
  SELECT
    ST_SetValues(
      ST_AddBand(
        ST_MakeEmptyRaster(5, 5, -2, 2, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
        '8BUI'::text, 1, 0
      ),
      1, 1, 1, ARRAY[
         [0, 1, 1, 1, 1],
         [1, 1, 1, 0, 1],
        [1, 0, 1, 1, 1],
        [1, 1, 1, 1, 0],
        [1, 1, 0, 1, 1]
      ]::double precision[],
      1
    ) AS rast
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 492 / 791

```
-- pixel 2x3 is NODATA
SELECT
 ST_Neighborhood(rast, 2, 3, 1, 1)
FROM (
 SELECT
    ST_SetValues(
      ST_AddBand(
        ST_MakeEmptyRaster(5, 5, -2, 2, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
        '8BUI'::text, 1, 0
      ),
      1, 1, 1, ARRAY[
        [0, 1, 1, 1, 1],
        [1, 1, 1, 0, 1],
        [1, 0, 1, 1, 1],
        [1, 1, 1, 1, 0],
        [1, 1, 0, 1, 1]
      ]::double precision[],
      1
    ) AS rast
) AS foo
       st_neighborhood
 {{1,1,1},{1,NULL,1},{1,1,1}}
```

```
-- pixel 3x3 has value
-- exclude_nodata_value = FALSE
SELECT
  ST_Neighborhood(rast, 3, 3, 1, 1, false)
FROM (
    ST_SetValues(
      ST_AddBand(
        ST_MakeEmptyRaster(5, 5, -2, 2, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
        '8BUI'::text, 1, 0
      ),
      1, 1, 1, ARRAY[
        [0, 1, 1, 1, 1],
        [1, 1, 1, 0, 1],
        [1, 0, 1, 1, 1],
        [1, 1, 1, 1, 0],
        [1, 1, 0, 1, 1]
      ]::double precision[],
    ) AS rast
) AS foo
      st_neighborhood
 \{\{1,0,1\},\{1,1,1\},\{0,1,1\}\}
```

See Also

ST_NearestValue, ST_Min4ma, ST_Max4ma, ST_Sum4ma, ST_Mean4ma, ST_Range4ma, ST_Distinct4ma, ST_StdDev4ma

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 493 / 791

9.6.10 ST_SetValue

ST_SetValue — Returns modified raster resulting from setting the value of a given band in a given columnx, rowy pixel or the pixels that intersect a particular geometry. Band numbers start at 1 and assumed to be 1 if not specified.

Synopsis

```
raster ST_SetValue(raster rast, integer bandnum, geometry geom, double precision newvalue); raster ST_SetValue(raster rast, geometry geom, double precision newvalue); raster ST_SetValue(raster rast, integer bandnum, integer columnx, integer rowy, double precision newvalue); raster ST_SetValue(raster rast, integer columnx, integer rowy, double precision newvalue);
```

Description

Returns modified raster resulting from setting the specified pixels' values to new value for the designed band given the raster's row and column or a geometry. If no band is specified, then band 1 is assumed.

Enhanced: 2.1.0 Geometry variant of ST_SetValue() now supports any geometry type, not just point. The geometry variant is a wrapper around the geomval[] variant of ST_SetValues()

Examples

```
-- Store the changed raster --
UPDATE dummy_rast SET rast = ST_SetValue(rast,1, ST_Point(3427927.75, 5793243.95),100)
WHERE rid = 2 ;
```

See Also

ST_Value, ST_DumpAsPolygons

9.6.11 ST_SetValues

ST_SetValues — Returns modified raster resulting from setting the values of a given band.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 494 / 791

Synopsis

raster **ST_SetValues**(raster rast, integer nband, integer columnx, integer rowy, double precision[][] newvalueset, boolean[][] noset=NULL, boolean keepnodata=FALSE);

raster **ST_SetValues**(raster rast, integer nband, integer columnx, integer rowy, double precision[][] newvalueset, double precision nosetvalue, boolean keepnodata=FALSE);

raster **ST_SetValues**(raster rast, integer nband, integer columnx, integer rowy, integer width, integer height, double precision newvalue, boolean keepnodata=FALSE);

raster **ST_SetValues**(raster rast, integer columnx, integer rowy, integer width, integer height, double precision newvalue, boolean keepnodata=FALSE);

raster ST_SetValues(raster rast, integer nband, geomval[] geomvalset, boolean keepnodata=FALSE);

Description

Returns modified raster resulting from setting specified pixels to new value(s) for the designated band.

If keepnodata is TRUE, those pixels whose values are NODATA will not be set with the corresponding value in newvalue set.

For Variant 1, the specific pixels to be set are determined by the columnx, rowy pixel coordinates and the dimensions of the newvalueset array. noset can be used to prevent pixels with values present in newvalueset from being set (due to PostgreSQL not permitting ragged/jagged arrays). See example Variant 1.

Variant 2 is like Variant 1 but with a simple double precision nosetvalue instead of a boolean noset array. Elements in newvalueset with the nosetvalue value with be skipped. See example Variant 2.

For Variant 3, the specific pixels to be set are determined by the columnx, rowy pixel coordinates, width and height. See example Variant 3.

Variant 4 is the same as Variant 3 with the exception that it assumes that the first band's pixels of rast will be set.

For Variant 5, an array of geomval is used to determine the specific pixels to be set. If all the geometries in the array are of type POINT or MULTIPOINT, the function uses a shortcut where the longitude and latitude of each point is used to set a pixel directly. Otherwise, the geometries are converted to rasters and then iterated through in one pass. See example Variant 5.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples: Variant 1

```
The ST_SetValues() does the following...
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                        | 1 | 1 | 1 |
+ - + - + - +
                        + - + - + - +
                        | 1 | 9 | 9 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
+ - + - + - +
                        + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                        | 1 | 9 | 9 |
+ -
      - + - +
*/
SELECT
  (poly).x,
  (poly).y,
  (poly).val
FROM (
SELECT
  ST_PixelAsPolygons (
    ST_SetValues(
      ST AddBand (
        ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
        1, '8BUI', 1, 0
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 495 / 791

```
1, 2, 2, ARRAY[[9, 9], [9, 9]]::double precision[][]
 ) AS poly
) foo
ORDER BY 1, 2;
x | y | val
1 | 1 | 1
1 | 2 | 1
1 | 3 | 1
2 | 1 |
2 | 2 |
         9
2 | 3 |
         9
3 | 1 |
         1
         9
3 | 2 |
3 | 3 |
        9
```

```
/*
The ST_SetValues() does the following...
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                      | 9 | 9 | 9 |
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
                     | 9 | | 9 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | =>
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                      | 9 | 9 | 9 |
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
*/
SELECT
(poly).x,
 (poly).y,
 (poly).val
FROM (
SELECT
 ST_PixelAsPolygons(
   ST_SetValues(
     ST_AddBand(
       ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
       1, '8BUI', 1, 0
     ),
     1, 1, 1, ARRAY[[9, 9, 9], [9, NULL, 9], [9, 9, 9]]::double precision[][]
   )
 ) AS poly
) foo
ORDER BY 1, 2;
x \mid y \mid val
1 | 1 | 9
1 | 2 |
          9
1 | 3 |
          9
 2 | 1 |
          9
 2 | 2 |
 2 | 3 |
         9
 3 | 1 | 9
 3 | 2 |
          9
 3 | 3 |
```

/*

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 496 / 791

The ST_SetValues() does the following...

+ - + - + - +

+ - + - + - +

```
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                     | 9 | 9 | 9 |
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
                     | 1 | | 9 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | =>
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                     | 9 | 9 | 9 |
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
*/
SELECT
 (poly).x,
 (poly).y,
  (poly).val
FROM (
SELECT
 ST_PixelAsPolygons(
   ST_SetValues(
     ST_AddBand(
       ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
       1, '8BUI', 1, 0
     ),
     1, 1, 1,
       ARRAY[[9, 9, 9], [9, NULL, 9], [9, 9, 9]]::double precision[][],
       ARRAY[[false], [true]]::boolean[][]
   )
 ) AS poly
) foo
ORDER BY 1, 2;
x \mid y \mid val
 1 | 1 | 9
1 | 2 |
1 | 3 |
          9
 2 | 1 |
         9
 2 | 2 |
         9
 2 | 3 |
 3 | 1 | 9
 3 | 2 | 9
 3 | 3 |
The ST_SetValues() does the following...
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
| | 1 | 1 |
                      | | 9 | 9 |
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                     | 1 | | 9 |
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                      | 9 | 9 | 9 |
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
*/
SELECT
(poly).x,
 (poly).y,
 (poly).val
FROM (
SELECT
 ST_PixelAsPolygons(
  ST_SetValues(
  ST_SetValue(
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 497 / 791

```
ST_AddBand(
         ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
         1, '8BUI', 1, 0
       1, 1, 1, NULL
     ),
     1, 1, 1,
       ARRAY[[9, 9, 9], [9, NULL, 9], [9, 9, 9]]::double precision[][],
       ARRAY[[false], [true]]::boolean[][],
   )
 ) AS poly
) foo
ORDER BY 1, 2;
x \mid y \mid val
1 | 1 |
1 | 2 |
         1
1 | 3 | 9
2 | 1 |
         9
2 | 2 |
2 | 3 | 9
3 | 1 | 9
3 | 2 | 9
3 | 3 |
          9
```

Examples: Variant 2

```
The ST_SetValues() does the following...
+ - + - + - +
                       + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                       | 1 | 1 | 1 |
+ - + - + - +
                       + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                       | 1 | 9 | 9 |
                 =>
+ - + - + - +
                       + - + - + - +
                       | 1 | 9 | 9 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
+ - + - + - +
*/
SELECT
 (poly).x,
  (poly).y,
  (poly).val
FROM (
SELECT
 ST_PixelAsPolygons(
    ST_SetValues(
      ST_AddBand(
        ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
        1, '8BUI', 1, 0
      ),
      1, 1, 1, ARRAY[[-1, -1, -1], [-1, 9, 9], [-1, 9, 9]]::double precision[][], -1
   )
  ) AS poly
) foo
ORDER BY 1, 2;
x \mid y \mid val
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 498 / 791

```
      1 | 1 | 1 | 1

      1 | 2 | 1

      1 | 3 | 1

      2 | 1 | 1

      2 | 2 | 9

      2 | 3 | 9

      3 | 1 | 1

      3 | 2 | 9

      3 | 3 | 9
```

```
This example is like the previous one. Instead of nosetvalue = -1, nosetvalue = NULL
The ST_SetValues() does the following...
+ - + - + - +
                       + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                      | 1 | 1 | 1 |
+ - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                      | 1 | 9 | 9 |
+ - + - + - +
                       + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                       | 1 | 9 | 9 |
+ - + - + - +
                       + - + - + - +
*/
SELECT
 (poly).x,
  (poly).y,
  (poly).val
FROM (
SELECT
  ST_PixelAsPolygons(
    ST_SetValues(
      ST_AddBand(
       ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
       1, '8BUI', 1, 0
     ),
      1, 1, 1, ARRAY[[NULL, NULL], [NULL, 9, 9], [NULL, 9, 9]]::double precision[][], \leftarrow
          NULL::double precision
   )
 ) AS poly
) foo
ORDER BY 1, 2;
x \mid y \mid val
---+---+----
 1 | 1 | 1
 1 | 2 | 1
 1 | 3 | 1
 2 | 1 | 1
 2 | 2 |
 2 | 3 |
          9
 2 | 2 | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 9
 3 | 3 |
```

Examples: Variant 3

```
/*
The ST_SetValues() does the following...
+ - + - + - + - + - +
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 499 / 791

```
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                      | 1 | 1 | 1 |
+ - + - + - +
                     + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                      | 1 | 9 | 9 |
+ - + - + - +
                       + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                      | 1 | 9 | 9 |
+ - + - + - +
                       + - + - + - +
*/
SELECT
 (poly).x,
  (poly).y,
  (poly).val
FROM (
SELECT
  ST_PixelAsPolygons(
    ST_SetValues(
      ST_AddBand(
       ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
       1, '8BUI', 1, 0
      ),
      1, 2, 2, 2, 2, 9
   )
 ) AS poly
) foo
ORDER BY 1, 2;
x \mid y \mid val
___+__
 1 | 1 | 1
 1 | 2 | 1
 1 | 3 | 1
 2 | 1 | 1
 2 | 2 |
          9
 2 | 3 | 9
 3 | 1 | 1
3 | 2 | 9
 3 | 3 |
           9
```

```
The ST_SetValues() does the following...
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
                      | 1 | 1 | 1 |
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
| 1 | | 1 |
                      | 1 | | 9 |
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
                      | 1 | 9 | 9 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 |
+ - + - + - +
                      + - + - + - +
*/
SELECT
 (poly).x,
 (poly).y,
 (poly).val
FROM (
SELECT
 ST_PixelAsPolygons(
   ST_SetValues(
      ST_SetValue(
        ST_AddBand(
          ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0),
          1, '8BUI', 1, 0
       ),
       1, 2, 2, NULL
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 500 / 791

```
1, 2, 2, 2, 2, 9, TRUE
 ) AS poly
) foo
ORDER BY 1, 2;
x \mid y \mid val
 1 | 1 |
           1
 1 | 2 |
 1 | 3 |
 2 | 1 |
 2 | 2 |
 2 | 3 |
           9
 3 | 1 |
           1
 3 | 2 |
           9
 3 | 3 |
           9
```

Examples: Variant 5

```
WITH foo AS (
     SELECT 1 AS rid, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(5, 5, 0, 0, 1, ^{-1}, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI', 0, \leftrightarrow
                 0) AS rast
), bar AS (
     SELECT 1 AS gid, 'SRID=0; POINT(2.5 -2.5)'::geometry geom UNION ALL
     SELECT 2 AS gid, 'SRID=0; POLYGON((1 -1, 4 -1, 4 -4, 1 -4, 1 -1))':: geometry geom UNION \leftrightarrow
             ALL
     SELECT 3 AS gid, 'SRID=0; POLYGON((0 0, 5 0, 5 -1, 1 -1, 1 -4, 0 -4, 0 0))'::geometry geom \leftrightarrow
                UNION ALL
     SELECT 4 AS gid, 'SRID=0; MULTIPOINT(0 0, 4 4, 4 -4)'::geometry
SELECT
    rid, gid, ST_DumpValues(ST_SetValue(rast, 1, geom, gid))
FROM foo t1
CROSS JOIN bar t2
ORDER BY rid, gid;
 rid | gid |
                                                                                                                                                                                                            st dumpvalues
       1 | 1 | (1,"{{NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL}, {NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL}, {NULL, NULL, 1, NULL, ←
                  NULL}, {NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL}, {NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL}}")
        ,2,2,2,NULL}, {NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL}}")
        1 | 3 | (1,"{\{3,3,3,3,3\},\{3,NULL,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL\},\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],\{3,NULL,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NULL],[3,NU
                  NULL } , {NULL , NULL , NULL , NULL } , {NULL , NULL , NULL , NULL , 4 } } ")
 (4 rows)
```

The following shows that geomvals later in the array can overwrite prior geomvals

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 501 / 791

```
SELECT 3 AS gid, 'SRID=0; POLYGON((0 0, 5 0, 5 -1, 1 -1, 1 -4, 0 -4, 0 0))':: geometry geom \leftrightarrow
                         UNION ALL
         SELECT 4 AS gid, 'SRID=0; MULTIPOINT(0 0, 4 4, 4 -4)'::geometry
SELECT
         t1.rid, t2.gid, t3.gid, ST_DumpValues(ST_SetValues(rast, 1, ARRAY[ROW(t2.geom, t2.gid), ↔
                      ROW(t3.geom, t3.gid)]::geomval[]))
FROM foo t1
CROSS JOIN bar t2
CROSS JOIN bar t3
WHERE t2.qid = 1
       AND t3.qid = 2
ORDER BY t1.rid, t2.gid, t3.gid;
   rid | gid | gid |
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               st_dumpvalues
   ----+
                                1 | 2 | (1,"{\{NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL\}, \{NULL, 2, 2, 2, NULL\}, \{NULL, 2, 2, 2, NULL\}, \{COMBARCA, COMBARCA, CO
                            NULL, 2, 2, 2, NULL | , { NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL | } } ")
 (1 row)
```

This example is the opposite of the prior example

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT 1 AS rid, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(5, 5, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI', 0, \leftrightarrow
      0) AS rast
), bar AS (
  SELECT 1 AS gid, 'SRID=0; POINT(2.5 -2.5)'::geometry geom UNION ALL
  SELECT 2 AS gid, 'SRID=0; POLYGON((1 -1, 4 -1, 4 -4, 1 -4, 1 -1))':: geometry geom UNION \leftrightarrow
     ALL
  SELECT 3 AS gid, 'SRID=0; POLYGON((0 0, 5 0, 5 -1, 1 -1, 1 -4, 0 -4, 0 0))'::geometry geom \leftrightarrow
     UNION ALL
 SELECT 4 AS gid, 'SRID=0; MULTIPOINT(0 0, 4 4, 4 -4)'::geometry
)
SELECT
  t1.rid, t2.gid, t3.gid, ST_DumpValues(ST_SetValues(rast, 1, ARRAY[ROW(t2.geom, t2.gid), ↔
     ROW(t3.geom, t3.gid)]::geomval[]))
FROM foo t1
CROSS JOIN bar t2
CROSS JOIN bar t3
WHERE t2.gid = 2
 AND t3.gid = 1
ORDER BY t1.rid, t2.gid, t3.gid;
rid | gid | gid |
                                                                       st dumpvalues
       2 | 1 | (1, "{{NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL}, {NULL, 2, 2, 2, 2, NULL}, {NULL, 2, 1, 2, NULL}, { ↔
      (1 row)
```

See Also

ST_Value, ST_SetValue, ST_PixelAsPolygons

9.6.12 ST_DumpValues

ST_DumpValues — Get the values of the specified band as a 2-dimension array.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 502 / 791

Synopsis

setof record **ST_DumpValues**(raster rast , integer[] nband=NULL , boolean exclude_nodata_value=true); double precision[][] **ST_DumpValues**(raster rast , integer nband , boolean exclude_nodata_value=true);

Description

Get the values of the specified band as a 2-dimension array (first index is row, second is column). If nband is NULL or not provided, all raster bands are processed.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), \leftrightarrow
     1, '8BUI', 1, 0), 2, '32BF', 3, -9999), 3, '16BSI', 0, 0) AS rast
SELECT
  (ST_DumpValues(rast)).*
FROM foo;
nband |
                                valarray
     1 | {{1,1,1},{1,1,1},{1,1,1}}
     2 | {{3,3,3},{3,3,3},{3,3,3}}
     3 | {{NULL, NULL}, {NULL, NULL}, {NULL, NULL}, {NULL, NULL}}}
(3 rows)
WITH foo AS (
 SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
     1, '8BUI', 1, 0), 2, '32BF', 3, -9999), 3, '16BSI', 0, 0) AS rast
SELECT
  (ST_DumpValues(rast, ARRAY[3, 1])).*
FROM foo;
nband |
                                valarray
     3 | {{NULL, NULL}, {NULL, NULL}, {NULL, NULL}, {NULL, NULL}}}
    1 | {{1,1,1},{1,1,1},{1,1,1}}
(2 rows)
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT ST_SetValue(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(3, 3, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '8BUI', \leftrightarrow
     1, 0), 1, 2, 5) AS rast
)
SELECT
  (ST_DumpValues(rast, 1))[2][1]
FROM foo;
 st_dumpvalues
```

See Also

(1 row)

ST_Value, ST_SetValue, ST_SetValues

5

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 503 / 791

9.6.13 ST_PixelOfValue

ST_PixelOfValue — Get the columnx, rowy coordinates of the pixel whose value equals the search value.

Synopsis

```
setof record ST_PixelOfValue( raster rast , integer nband , double precision[] search , boolean exclude_nodata_value=true ); setof record ST_PixelOfValue( raster rast , double precision[] search , boolean exclude_nodata_value=true ); setof record ST_PixelOfValue( raster rast , integer nband , double precision search , boolean exclude_nodata_value=true ); setof record ST_PixelOfValue( raster rast , double precision search , boolean exclude_nodata_value=true );
```

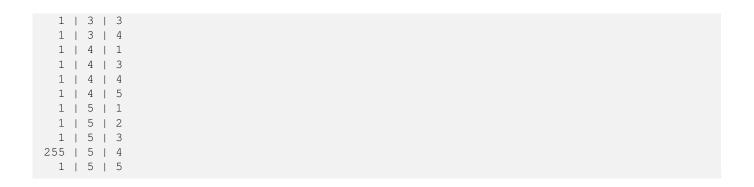
Description

Get the columnx, rowy coordinates of the pixel whose value equals the search value. If no band is specified, then band 1 is assumed.

Availability: 2.1.0

```
SELECT
  (pixels).*
FROM (
  SELECT
    ST_PixelOfValue(
      ST_SetValue(
        ST_SetValue(
          ST_SetValue(
            ST_SetValue(
              ST_SetValue(
                ST_AddBand(
                  ST_MakeEmptyRaster(5, 5, -2, 2, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
                   '8BUI'::text, 1, 0
                ),
                1, 1, 0
              ),
              2, 3, 0
            ),
            3, 5, 0
             2, 0
          4,
        ),
        5, 4, 255
    , 1, ARRAY[1, 255]) AS pixels
) AS foo
 val \mid x \mid y
  1 | 1 | 2
  1 | 1 | 3
  1 | 1 | 4
  1 | 1 | 5
  1 | 2 | 1
  1 | 2 | 2
  1 | 2 | 4
  1 | 2 | 5
  1 | 3 | 1
 1 | 3 | 2
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 504 / 791



9.7 Raster Editors

9.7.1 ST_SetGeoReference

ST_SetGeoReference — Set Georeference 6 georeference parameters in a single call. Numbers should be separated by white space. Accepts inputs in GDAL or ESRI format. Default is GDAL.

Synopsis

 $raster \ \textbf{ST_SetGeoReference} (raster \ rast, \ text \ georef coords, \ text \ format=GDAL);$

raster **ST_SetGeoReference**(raster rast, double precision upperleftx, double precision upperlefty, double precision scalex, double precision skewx, double precision skewy);

Description

Set Georeference 6 georeference parameters in a single call. Accepts inputs in 'GDAL' or 'ESRI' format. Default is GDAL. If 6 coordinates are not provided will return null.

Difference between format representations is as follows:

GDAL:

```
scalex skewy skewx scaley upperleftx upperlefty
```

ESRI:

```
scalex skewy skewx scaley upperleftx + scalex\star0.5 upperlefty + scaley\star0.5
```



Note

If the raster has out-db bands, changing the georeference may result in incorrect access of the band's externally stored data.

Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of ST_SetGeoReference(raster, double precision, ...) variant

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 505 / 791

```
WITH foo AS (
 SELECT ST_MakeEmptyRaster(5, 5, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0) AS rast
SELECT
 0 AS rid, (ST_Metadata(rast)).*
FROM foo
UNION ALL
SELECT
 1, (ST_Metadata(ST_SetGeoReference(rast, '10 0 0 -10 0.1 0.1', 'GDAL'))).*
FROM foo
UNION ALL
SELECT
 2, (ST_Metadata(ST_SetGeoReference(rast, '10 0 0 -10 5.1 -4.9', 'ESRI'))).*
FROM foo
UNION ALL
SELECT
 3, (ST_Metadata(ST_SetGeoReference(rast, 1, 1, 10, -10, 0.001, 0.001))).*
FROM foo
rid |
       upperleftx
                   upperlefty
                                    | width | height | scalex | scaley | skewx | ←
    skewy | srid | numbands
              0 |
                                         5 |
                                                5 |
                                                       1 |
  0 |
                  0 |
                                                              -1 |
                                                                      0 | ↔
         0 |
            0 |
                       0
                                         5 |
                                                5 |
                                  0.1 |
                                                      10 |
                                                             -10 |
                 0.1 |
                                                                      0 | ←
        0 1 0 1
                       0
  5 |
                                                5 |
                                                      10 |
                                                             -10 I
                                                                     0 | ←
        0 | 0 |
                       0
  3 |
                                         5 I
                                                 5 |
                                                      10 |
                                                             -10 | 0.001 | ↔
                  1 |
                                   1 |
      0.001 |
              0 |
```

See Also

ST_GeoReference, ST_ScaleX, ST_ScaleY, ST_UpperLeftX, ST_UpperLeftY

9.7.2 ST SetRotation

ST_SetRotation — Set the rotation of the raster in radian.

Synopsis

float8 **ST_SetRotation**(raster rast, float8 rotation);

Description

Uniformly rotate the raster. Rotation is in radian. Refer to World File for more details.

```
SELECT
  ST_ScaleX(rast1), ST_ScaleY(rast1), ST_SkewX(rast1), ST_SkewY(rast1),
  ST_ScaleX(rast2), ST_ScaleY(rast2), ST_SkewX(rast2), ST_SkewY(rast2)
FROM (
  SELECT ST_SetRotation(rast, 15) AS rast1, rast as rast2 FROM dummy_rast
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 506 / 791

See Also

ST_Rotation, ST_ScaleX, ST_ScaleY, ST_SkewX, ST_SkewY

9.7.3 ST_SetScale

ST_SetScale — Sets the X and Y size of pixels in units of coordinate reference system. Number units/pixel width/height.

Synopsis

```
raster ST_SetScale(raster rast, float8 xy);
raster ST_SetScale(raster rast, float8 x, float8 y);
```

Description

Sets the X and Y size of pixels in units of coordinate reference system. Number units/pixel width/height. If only one unit passed in, assumed X and Y are the same number.



Note

ST_SetScale is different from ST_Rescale in that ST_SetScale do not resample the raster to match the raster extent. It only changes the metadata (or georeference) of the raster to correct an originally mis-specified scaling. ST_Rescale results in a raster having different width and height computed to fit the geographic extent of the input raster. ST_SetScale do not modify the width, nor the height of the raster.

Changed: 2.0.0 In WKTRaster versions this was called ST_SetPixelSize. This was changed in 2.0.0.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 507 / 791

See Also

ST_ScaleX, ST_ScaleY, Box3D

9.7.4 ST_SetSkew

ST_SetSkew — Sets the georeference X and Y skew (or rotation parameter). If only one is passed in, sets X and Y to the same value.

Synopsis

```
raster ST_SetSkew(raster rast, float8 skewxy);
raster ST_SetSkew(raster rast, float8 skewx, float8 skewy);
```

Description

Sets the georeference X and Y skew (or rotation parameter). If only one is passed in, sets X and Y to the same value. Refer to World File for more details.

```
-- Example 2 set both to same number:

UPDATE dummy_rast SET rast = ST_SetSkew(rast,0) WHERE rid = 1;

SELECT rid, ST_SkewX(rast) As skewx, ST_SkewY(rast) As skewy,

ST_GeoReference(rast) as georef

FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid = 1;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 508 / 791

See Also

ST_GeoReference, ST_SteWX, ST_SkewY

9.7.5 ST_SetSRID

ST_SetSRID — Sets the SRID of a raster to a particular integer srid defined in the spatial_ref_sys table.

Synopsis

raster ST_SetSRID(raster rast, integer srid);

Description

Sets the SRID on a raster to a particular integer value.



Note

This function does not transform the raster in any way - it simply sets meta data defining the spatial ref of the coordinate reference system that it's currently in. Useful for transformations later.

See Also

Section 4.3.1, ST_SRID

9.7.6 ST_SetUpperLeft

ST_SetUpperLeft — Sets the value of the upper left corner of the pixel to projected X and Y coordinates.

Synopsis

raster **ST_SetUpperLeft**(raster rast, double precision x, double precision y);

Description

Set the value of the upper left corner of raster to the projected X coordinates

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 509 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_SetUpperLeft(rast, -71.01, 42.37)
FROM dummy_rast
WHERE rid = 2;
```

See Also

ST_UpperLeftX, ST_UpperLeftY

9.7.7 ST_Resample

ST_Resample — Resample a raster using a specified resampling algorithm, new dimensions, an arbitrary grid corner and a set of raster georeferencing attributes defined or borrowed from another raster.

Synopsis

raster **ST_Resample**(raster rast, integer width, integer height, double precision gridx=NULL, double precision gridy=NULL, double precision skewx=0, double precision skewy=0, text algorithm=NearestNeighbour, double precision maxerr=0.125); raster **ST_Resample**(raster rast, double precision scalex=0, double precision scaley=0, double precision gridy=NULL, double precision gridy=NULL, double precision skewx=0, double precision skewy=0, text algorithm=NearestNeighbor, double precision maxerr=0.125);

raster **ST_Resample**(raster rast, raster ref, text algorithm=NearestNeighbour, double precision maxerr=0.125, boolean usescale=true); raster **ST_Resample**(raster rast, raster ref, boolean usescale, text algorithm=NearestNeighbour, double precision maxerr=0.125);

Description

Resample a raster using a specified resampling algorithm, new dimensions (width & height), a grid corner (gridx & gridy) and a set of raster georeferencing attributes (scalex, scaley, skewx & skewy) defined or borrowed from another raster. If using a reference raster, the two rasters must have the same SRID.

New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (English or American spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. Default is NearestNeighbor which is the fastest but produce the worst interpolation.

A maxerror percent of 0.125 is used if no maxerr is specified.



Note

Refer to: GDAL Warp resampling methods for more details.

Availability: 2.0.0 Requires GDAL 1.6.1+

Changed: 2.1.0 Parameter srid removed. Variants with a reference raster no longer applies the reference raster's SRID. Use ST_Transform() to reproject raster. Works on rasters with no SRID.

```
SELECT
ST_Width(orig) AS orig_width,
ST_Width(reduce_100) AS new_width
FROM (
SELECT
rast AS orig,
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 510 / 791

See Also

ST_Rescale, ST_Resize, ST_Transform

9.7.8 ST_Rescale

ST_Rescale — Resample a raster by adjusting only its scale (or pixel size). New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. Default is NearestNeighbor.

Synopsis

raster **ST_Rescale**(raster rast, double precision scalexy, text algorithm=NearestNeighbour, double precision maxerr=0.125); raster **ST_Rescale**(raster rast, double precision scalex, double precision scaley, text algorithm=NearestNeighbour, double precision maxerr=0.125);

Description

Resample a raster by adjusting only its scale (or pixel size). New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. The default is NearestNeighbor which is the fastest but results in the worst interpolation.

scalex and scaley define the new pixel size. scaley must often be negative to get well oriented raster.

When the new scalex or scaley is not a divisor of the raster width or height, the extent of the resulting raster is expanded to encompass the extent of the provided raster. If you want to be sure to retain exact input extent see ST_Resize

A maxerror percent of 0.125 is used if no maxerr is specified.



Note

Refer to: GDAL Warp resampling methods for more details.



Note

ST_Rescale is different from ST_SetScale in that ST_SetScale do not resample the raster to match the raster extent. ST_SetScale only changes the metadata (or georeference) of the raster to correct an originally mis-specified scaling.

ST_Rescale results in a raster having different width and height computed to fit the geographic extent of the input raster.

ST_SetScale do not modify the width, nor the height of the raster.

Availability: 2.0.0 Requires GDAL 1.6.1+

Changed: 2.1.0 Works on rasters with no SRID

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 511 / 791

Examples

A simple example rescaling a raster from a pixel size of 0.001 degree to a pixel size of 0.0015 degree.

```
-- the original raster pixel size

SELECT ST_PixelWidth(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(100, 100, 0, 0, 0.001, -0.001, 0, 0, ←
4269), '8BUI'::text, 1, 0)) width

width
------
0.001

-- the rescaled raster raster pixel size

SELECT ST_PixelWidth(ST_Rescale(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(100, 100, 0, 0, 0.001, ←
-0.001, 0, 0, 4269), '8BUI'::text, 1, 0), 0.0015)) width

width
------
0.0015
```

See Also

ST_Resize, ST_Resample, ST_SetScale, ST_ScaleX, ST_ScaleY, ST_Transform

9.7.9 ST_Reskew

ST_Reskew — Resample a raster by adjusting only its skew (or rotation parameters). New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. Default is NearestNeighbor.

Synopsis

raster **ST_Reskew**(raster rast, double precision skewxy, text algorithm=NearestNeighbour, double precision maxerr=0.125); raster **ST_Reskew**(raster rast, double precision skewx, double precision skewy, text algorithm=NearestNeighbour, double precision maxerr=0.125);

Description

Resample a raster by adjusting only its skew (or rotation parameters). New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. The default is NearestNeighbor which is the fastest but results in the worst interpolation.

skewx and skewy define the new skew.

The extent of the new raster will encompass the extent of the provided raster.

A maxerror percent of 0.125 if no maxerr is specified.



Note

Refer to: GDAL Warp resampling methods for more details.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 512 / 791



Note

ST_Reskew is different from ST_SetSkew in that ST_SetSkew do not resample the raster to match the raster extent. ST_SetSkew only changes the metadata (or georeference) of the raster to correct an originally mis-specified skew. ST_Reskew results in a raster having different width and height computed to fit the geographic extent of the input raster. ST_SetSkew do not modify the width, nor the height of the raster.

Availability: 2.0.0 Requires GDAL 1.6.1+

Changed: 2.1.0 Works on rasters with no SRID

Examples

A simple example reskewing a raster from a skew of 0.0 to a skew of 0.0015.

See Also

ST_Resample, ST_Rescale, ST_SetSkew, ST_SetRotation, ST_SkewX, ST_SkewY, ST_Transform

9.7.10 ST_SnapToGrid

ST_SnapToGrid — Resample a raster by snapping it to a grid. New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. Default is NearestNeighbor.

Synopsis

raster **ST_SnapToGrid**(raster rast, double precision gridx, double precision gridy, text algorithm=NearestNeighbour, double precision maxerr=0.125, double precision scalex=DEFAULT 0, double precision scaley=DEFAULT 0);

raster **ST_SnapToGrid**(raster rast, double precision gridx, double precision gridy, double precision scalex, double precision scaley, text algorithm=NearestNeighbour, double precision maxerr=0.125);

raster **ST_SnapToGrid**(raster rast, double precision gridx, double precision gridy, double precision scalexy, text algorithm=NearestNeig double precision maxerr=0.125);

Description

Resample a raster by snapping it to a grid defined by an arbitrary pixel corner (gridx & gridy) and optionally a pixel size (scalex & scaley). New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. The default is NearestNeighbor which is the fastest but results in the worst interpolation.

gridx and gridy define any arbitrary pixel corner of the new grid. This is not necessarily the upper left corner of the new raster and it does not have to be inside or on the edge of the new raster extent.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 513 / 791

You can optionnal define the pixel size of the new grid with scalex and scaley.

The extent of the new raster will encompass the extent of the provided raster.

A maxerror percent of 0.125 if no maxerr is specified.



Note

Refer to: GDAL Warp resampling methods for more details.



Note

Use ST Resample if you need more control over the grid parameters.

Availability: 2.0.0 Requires GDAL 1.6.1+

Changed: 2.1.0 Works on rasters with no SRID

Examples

A simple example snapping a raster to a slightly different grid.

See Also

ST_Resample, ST_Rescale, ST_UpperLeftX, ST_UpperLeftY

9.7.11 ST_Resize

ST_Resize — Resize a raster to a new width/height

Synopsis

raster **ST_Resize**(raster rast, integer width, integer height, text algorithm=NearestNeighbor, double precision maxerr=0.125); raster **ST_Resize**(raster rast, double precision percentwidth, double precision percentheight, text algorithm=NearestNeighbor, double precision maxerr=0.125);

raster **ST_Resize**(raster rast, text width, text height, text algorithm=NearestNeighbor, double precision maxerr=0.125);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 514 / 791

Description

Resize a raster to a new width/height. The new width/height can be specified in exact number of pixels or a percentage of the raster's width/height. The extent of the new raster will be the same as the extent of the provided raster.

New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. The default is NearestNeighbor which is the fastest but results in the worst interpolation.

Variant 1 expects the actual width/height of the output raster.

Variant 2 expects decimal values between zero (0) and one (1) indicating the percentage of the input raster's width/height.

Variant 3 takes either the actual width/height of the output raster or a textual percentage ("20%") indicating the percentage of the input raster's width/height.

Availability: 2.1.0 Requires GDAL 1.6.1+

Examples

```
WITH foo AS (
SELECT
 1 AS rid,
 ST_Resize(
   ST_AddBand(
    ST_MakeEmptyRaster(1000, 1000, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0)
     , 1, '8BUI', 255, 0
 , '50%', '500') AS rast
UNION ALL
SELECT
 2 AS rid,
 ST_Resize(
   ST_AddBand(
    ST_MakeEmptyRaster(1000, 1000, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0)
     , 1, '8BUI', 255, 0
 , 500, 100) AS rast
UNION ALL
SELECT
 3 AS rid,
 ST_Resize(
   ST_AddBand(
     ST_MakeEmptyRaster(1000, 1000, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0)
     , 1, '8BUI', 255, 0
 , 0.25, 0.9) AS rast
), bar AS (
 SELECT rid, ST_Metadata(rast) AS meta, rast FROM foo
SELECT rid, (meta) .* FROM bar
rid | upperleftx | upperlefty | width | height | scalex | scaley | skewx | skewy | srid |
   numbands
 0 |
                                                                0 |
                                                                       0 |
                                       500 |
                                                1 |
                                                       -1 |
                                                                             0 | ←
  1 |
             0 |
                              500 |
            1
                         0 |
                                                1 |
                              500 |
                                       100 |
                                                        -1 |
                                                                0 1
                                                                       0 1
                                                                             0 | \
  2 |
              0 |
            1
  3 |
                                       900 |
              0 |
                         0 |
                               250 |
                                                 1 |
                                                        -1 |
                                                                0 |
                                                                       0 |
                                                                             0 | ↔
            1
(3 rows)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 515 / 791

See Also

ST_Resample, ST_Rescale, ST_Reskew, ST_SnapToGrid

9.7.12 ST_Transform

ST_Transform — Reprojects a raster in a known spatial reference system to another known spatial reference system using specified resampling algorithm. Options are NearestNeighbor, Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline, Lanczos defaulting to NearestNeighbor.

Synopsis

raster **ST_Transform**(raster rast, integer srid, text algorithm=NearestNeighbor, double precision maxerr=0.125, double precision scalex, double precision scaley);

raster **ST_Transform**(raster rast, integer srid, double precision scalex, double precision scaley, text algorithm=NearestNeighbor, double precision maxerr=0.125);

raster **ST_Transform**(raster rast, raster alignto, text algorithm=NearestNeighbor, double precision maxerr=0.125);

Description

Reprojects a raster in a known spatial reference system to another known spatial reference system using specified pixel warping algorithm. Uses 'NearestNeighbor' if no algorithm is specified and maxerror percent of 0.125 if no maxerr is specified.

Algorithm options are: 'NearestNeighbor', 'Bilinear', 'Cubic', 'CubicSpline', and 'Lanczos'. Refer to: GDAL Warp resampling methods for more details.

ST_Transform is often confused with ST_SetSRID(). ST_Transform actually changes the coordinates of a raster (and resamples the pixel values) from one spatial reference system to another, while ST_SetSRID() simply changes the SRID identifier of the raster.

Unlike the other variants, Variant 3 requires a reference raster as alignto. The transformed raster will be transformed to the spatial reference system (SRID) of the reference raster and be aligned (ST_SameAlignment = TRUE) to the reference raster.

Note



If you find your transformation support is not working right, you may need to set the environment variable PROJSO to the .so or .dll projection library your PostGIS is using. This just needs to have the name of the file. So for example on windows, you would in Control Panel -> System -> Environment Variables add a system variable called PROJSO and set it to libproj.dll (if you are using proj 4.6.1). You'll have to restart your PostgreSQL service/daemon after this change.

Availability: 2.0.0 Requires GDAL 1.6.1+

Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of ST_Transform(rast, alignto) variant

Examples

```
SELECT ST_Width(mass_stm) As w_before, ST_Width(wgs_84) As w_after,
   ST_Height(mass_stm) As h_before, ST_Height(wgs_84) As h_after
   FROM
   ( SELECT rast As mass_stm, ST_Transform(rast, 4326) As wgs_84
   , ST_Transform(rast, 4326, 'Bilinear') AS wgs_84_bilin
   FROM aerials.o_2_boston
   WHERE ST_Intersects(rast,
        ST_Transform(ST_MakeEnvelope(-71.128, 42.2392,-71.1277, 42.2397, 4326),26986) )
   LIMIT 1) As foo;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 516 / 791



original mass state plane meters (mass_stm)



After transform to wgs 84 long lat (wgs_84)



After transform to wgs 84 long lat with bilinear algorithm instead of NN default (wgs_84_bilin)

Examples: Variant 3

The following shows the difference between using ST_Transform(raster, srid) and ST_Transform(raster, alignto)

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT 0 AS rid, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, -500000, 600000, 100, -100, 0, 0, \leftrightarrow
      2163), 1, '16BUI', 1, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 1, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, -499800, 600000, 100, -100, 0, 0, 2163), 1, ↔
       '16BUI', 2, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 2, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, -499600, 600000, 100, -100, 0, 0, 2163), 1, \leftarrow
       '16BUI', 3, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 3, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, -500000, 599800, 100, -100, 0, 0, 2163), 1, \leftarrow
       '16BUI', 10, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 4, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, -499800, 599800, 100, -100, 0, 0, 2163), 1, \leftrightarrow
       '16BUI', 20, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 5, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, -499600, 599800, 100, -100, 0, 0, 2163), 1, \leftrightarrow
       '16BUI', 30, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 6, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, -500000, 599600, 100, -100, 0, 0, 2163), 1, \leftarrow
       '16BUI', 100, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 7, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, -499800, 599600, 100, -100, 0, 0, 2163), 1, ↔
       '16BUI', 200, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 8, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, -499600, 599600, 100, -100, 0, 0, 2163), 1, \leftarrow
       '16BUI', 300, 0) AS rast
), bar AS (
  SELECT
    ST_Transform(rast, 4269) AS alignto
  FROM foo
  LIMIT 1
), baz AS (
  SELECT
    rid,
    ST_Transform(rast, 4269) AS not_aligned,
 ST_Transform(rast, alignto) AS aligned
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 517 / 791

See Also

ST_Transform, ST_SetSRID

9.8 Raster Band Editors

9.8.1 ST_SetBandNoDataValue

ST_SetBandNoDataValue — Sets the value for the given band that represents no data. Band 1 is assumed if no band is specified. To mark a band as having no nodata value, set the nodata value = NULL.

Synopsis

raster **ST_SetBandNoDataValue**(raster rast, double precision nodatavalue); raster **ST_SetBandNoDataValue**(raster rast, integer band, double precision nodatavalue, boolean forcechecking=false);

Description

Sets the value that represents no data for the band. Band 1 is assumed if not specified. This will affect results from ST_Polygon, ST_DumpAsPolygons, and the ST_PixelAs...() functions.

Examples

```
-- change just first band no data value
UPDATE dummy_rast
 SET rast = ST_SetBandNoDataValue(rast,1, 254)
WHERE rid = 2;
-- change no data band value of bands 1,2,3
UPDATE dummy_rast
  SET rast =
   ST_SetBandNoDataValue(
      ST_SetBandNoDataValue(
        ST_SetBandNoDataValue(
         rast,1, 254)
        ,2,99),
        3,108)
   WHERE rid = 2;
-- wipe out the nodata value this will ensure all pixels are considered for all processing
   functions
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 518 / 791

```
UPDATE dummy_rast
   SET rast = ST_SetBandNoDataValue(rast,1, NULL)
WHERE rid = 2;
```

See Also

ST_BandNoDataValue, ST_NumBands

9.8.2 ST_SetBandIsNoData

ST_SetBandIsNoData — Sets the isnodata flag of the band to TRUE.

Synopsis

raster ST_SetBandIsNoData(raster rast, integer band=1);

Description

Sets the isnodata flag for the band to true. Band 1 is assumed if not specified. This function should be called only when the flag is considered dirty. That is, when the result calling ST_BandIsNoData is different using TRUE as last argument and without using it

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
-- Create dummy table with one raster column
create table dummy_rast (rid integer, rast raster);
-- Add raster with two bands, one pixel/band. In the first band, nodatavalue = pixel value
-- In the second band, nodatavalue = 13, pixel value = 4
insert into dummy_rast values(1,
'01' -- little endian (uint8 ndr)
'0000' -- version (uint16 0)
'0200' -- nBands (uint16 0)
'17263529ED684A3F' -- scaleX (float64 0.000805965234044584)
'F9253529ED684ABF' -- scaleY (float64 -0.00080596523404458)
'1C9F33CE69E352C0' -- ipX (float64 -75.5533328537098)
'718F0E9A27A44840' -- ipY (float64 49.2824585505576)
'ED50EB853EC32B3F' -- skewX (float64 0.000211812383858707)
| \cdot |
'7550EB853EC32B3F' -- skewY (float64 0.000211812383858704)
II
'E6100000' -- SRID (int32 4326)
| \cdot |
'0100' -- width (uint16 1)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 519 / 791

```
'0100' -- height (uint16 1)
| \cdot |
'4' -- hasnodatavalue set to true, isnodata value set to false (when it should be true)
'2' -- first band type (4BUI)
\perp
'03' -- novalue==3
\perp
'03' -- pixel(0,0)==3 (same that nodata)
\prod
'0' -- hasnodatavalue set to false
II
'5' -- second band type (16BSI)
| \cdot |
'OD00' -- novalue==13
'0400' -- pixel(0,0)==4
)::raster
);
select st_bandisnodata(rast, 1) from dummy_rast where rid = 1; -- Expected false
select st_bandisnodata(rast, 1, TRUE) from dummy_rast where rid = 1; -- Expected true
-- The isnodata flag is dirty. We are going to set it to true
update dummy_rast set rast = st_setbandisnodata(rast, 1) where rid = 1;
select st_bandisnodata(rast, 1) from dummy_rast where rid = 1; -- Expected true
```

See Also

 $ST_BandNoDataValue, ST_NumBands, ST_SetBandNoDataValue, ST_BandIsNoDataValue, ST_BandI$

9.9 Raster Band Statistics and Analytics

9.9.1 ST_Count

ST_Count — Returns the number of pixels in a given band of a raster or raster coverage. If no band is specified defaults to band 1. If exclude_nodata_value is set to true, will only count pixels that are not equal to the nodata value.

Synopsis

```
bigint ST_Count(raster rast, integer nband=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true); bigint ST_Count(raster rast, boolean exclude_nodata_value); bigint ST_Count(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, integer nband=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true); bigint ST_Count(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, boolean exclude_nodata_value);
```

Description

Returns the number of pixels in a given band of a raster or raster coverage. If no band is specified nband defaults to 1.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 520 / 791



Note

If exclude_nodata_value is set to true, will only count pixels with value not equal to the nodata value of the raster. Set exclude_nodata_value to false to get count all pixels

Availability: 2.0.0



Warning

The ST Count(rastertable, rastercolumn, ...) variants are deprecated as of 2.2.0. Use ST CountAgg instead.

Examples

See Also

ST_CountAgg, ST_SummaryStats, ST_SetBandNoDataValue

9.9.2 ST_CountAgg

ST_CountAgg — Aggregate. Returns the number of pixels in a given band of a set of rasters. If no band is specified defaults to band 1. If exclude_nodata_value is set to true, will only count pixels that are not equal to the NODATA value.

Synopsis

bigint **ST_CountAgg**(raster rast, integer nband, boolean exclude_nodata_value, double precision sample_percent); bigint **ST_CountAgg**(raster rast, integer nband, boolean exclude_nodata_value); bigint **ST_CountAgg**(raster rast, boolean exclude_nodata_value);

Description

Returns the number of pixels in a given band of a set of rasters. If no band is specified nband defaults to 1.

If exclude_nodata_value is set to true, will only count pixels with value not equal to the NODATA value of the raster. Set exclude_nodata_value to false to get count all pixels

By default will sample all pixels. To get faster response, set sample_percent to value between zero (0) and one (1)

Availability: 2.2.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 521 / 791

Examples

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT
    rast.rast
  FROM (
    SELECT ST_SetValue (
      ST_SetValue(
        ST_SetValue(
          ST_AddBand(
            ST_MakeEmptyRaster(10, 10, 10, 10, 2, 2, 0, 0,0)
            , 1, '64BF', 0, 0
            1, 1, 1, -10
        , 1, 5, 4, 0
      , 1, 5, 5, 3.14159
    ) AS rast
  ) AS rast
  FULL JOIN (
    SELECT generate_series(1, 10) AS id
  ) AS id
    ON 1 = 1
SELECT
  ST_CountAgg(rast, 1, TRUE)
FROM foo;
 st_countagg
          2.0
(1 row)
```

See Also

ST_Count, ST_SummaryStats, ST_SetBandNoDataValue

9.9.3 ST_Histogram

ST_Histogram — Returns a set of record summarizing a raster or raster coverage data distribution separate bin ranges. Number of bins are autocomputed if not specified.

Synopsis

SETOF record **ST_Histogram**(raster rast, integer nband=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true, integer bins=autocomputed, double precision[] width=NULL, boolean right=false);

SETOF record **ST_Histogram**(raster rast, integer nband, integer bins, double precision[] width=NULL, boolean right=false);

SETOF record **ST_Histogram**(raster rast, integer nband, boolean exclude_nodata_value, integer bins, boolean right);

SETOF record **ST_Histogram**(raster rast, integer nband, integer bins, boolean right);

SETOF record **ST_Histogram**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, integer nband, integer bins, boolean right);

SETOF record **ST_Histogram**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, integer nband, boolean exclude_nodata_value, integer bins, boolean right);

SETOF record **ST_Histogram**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, integer nband=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true, integer bins=autocomputed, double precision[] width=NULL, boolean right=false);

SETOF record **ST_Histogram**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, integer nband=1, integer bins, double precision[] width=NULL, boolean right=false);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 522 / 791

Description

Returns set of records consisting of min, max, count, percent for a given raster band for each bin. If no band is specified nband defaults to 1.



Note

By default only considers pixel values not equal to the nodata value. Set exclude_nodata_value to false to get count all pixels.

width double precision[] width: an array indicating the width of each category/bin. If the number of bins is greater than the number of widths, the widths are repeated.

Example: 9 bins, widths are [a, b, c] will have the output be [a, b, c, a, b, c, a, b, c]

bins integer Number of breakouts -- this is the number of records you'll get back from the function if specified. If not specified then the number of breakouts is autocomputed.

right boolean compute the histogram from the right rather than from the left (default). This changes the criteria for evaluating a value x from [a, b) to (a, b]

Availability: 2.0.0

Example: Single raster tile - compute histograms for bands 1, 2, 3 and autocompute bins

```
SELECT band, (stats).*
FROM (SELECT rid, band, ST_Histogram(rast, band) As stats
   FROM dummy_rast CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,3) As band
    WHERE rid=2) As foo;
band | min | max | count | percent
   1 | 249 | 250 | 2 | 0.08
1 | 250 | 251 | 2 | 0.08
   1 | 251 | 252 |
                          1 |
                                  0.04
   1 |
         252 | 253 |
                          2 |
                                  0.08
   1 | 253 | 254 | 18 |
                                  0.72
         78 | 113.2 |
   2 |
                         11 |
                                  0.44
   2 | 113.2 | 148.4 |
                                  0.16
                          4 |
   2 | 148.4 | 183.6 |
                           4 |
                                  0.16
   2 | 183.6 | 218.8 |
                           1 |
                                  0.04
   2 | 218.8 | 254 |
                           5 |
                                  0.2
          62 | 100.4 |
                         11 |
                                  0.44
   3 | 100.4 | 138.8 |
                           5 |
                                   0.2
   3 | 138.8 | 177.2 |
                           4 |
                                  0.16
   3 | 177.2 | 215.6 |
                           1 |
                                  0.04
   3 | 215.6 |
                 254 |
                           4 |
                                  0.16
```

Example: Just band 2 but for 6 bins

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 523 / 791

```
78 | 107.333333 |
                            9 |
107.333333 | 136.666667 |
                            6 |
                                  0.24
136.666667 |
                  166 |
                            0 |
                                     0
      166 | 195.333333 |
                            4 |
                                  0.16
195.333333 | 224.666667 |
                            1 |
                                  0.04
224.666667 |
              254 I
                            5 |
                                   0.2
(6 rows)
-- Same as previous but we explicitly control the pixel value range of each bin.
SELECT (stats).*
FROM (SELECT rid, ST_Histogram(rast, 2,6,ARRAY[0.5,1,4,100,5]) As stats
   FROM dummy_rast
    WHERE rid=2) As foo;
 min | max | count | percent
   78 | 78.5 |
                 1 |
                         0.08
 78.5 | 79.5 |
                  1 |
                          0.04
                 0 |
 79.5 | 83.5 |
                         0
 83.5 | 183.5 | 17 |
                       0.0068
                 0 |
183.5 | 188.5 |
                       0
                 6 | 0.003664
188.5 | 254 |
(6 rows)
```

See Also

ST_Count, ST_SummaryStats, ST_SummaryStatsAgg

9.9.4 ST Quantile

ST_Quantile — Compute quantiles for a raster or raster table coverage in the context of the sample or population. Thus, a value could be examined to be at the raster's 25%, 50%, 75% percentile.

Synopsis

SETOF record **ST_Quantile**(raster rast, integer nband=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true, double precision[] quantiles=NULL); SETOF record **ST_Quantile**(raster rast, double precision[] quantiles);

SETOF record **ST Quantile**(raster rast, integer nband, double precision[] quantiles);

double precision **ST Quantile**(raster rast, double precision quantile);

double precision **ST_Quantile**(raster rast, boolean exclude_nodata_value, double precision quantile=NULL);

double precision **ST_Quantile**(raster rast, integer nband, double precision quantile);

double precision ST_Quantile(raster rast, integer nband, boolean exclude_nodata_value, double precision quantile);

double precision **ST_Quantile**(raster rast, integer nband, double precision quantile);

SETOF record **ST_Quantile**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, integer nband=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true, double precision[] quantiles=NULL);

SETOF record **ST_Quantile**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, integer nband, double precision[] quantiles);

Description

Compute quantiles for a raster or raster table coverage in the context of the sample or population. Thus, a value could be examined to be at the raster's 25%, 50%, 75% percentile.



Note

If exclude nodata value is set to false, will also count pixels with no data.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 524 / 791

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
UPDATE dummy_rast SET rast = ST_SetBandNoDataValue(rast,249) WHERE rid=2;
--Example will consider only pixels of band 1 that are not 249 and in named quantiles --
SELECT (pvq).*
FROM (SELECT ST_Quantile(rast, ARRAY[0.25,0.75]) As pvq
   FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2) As foo
   ORDER BY (pvq).quantile;
quantile | value
    0.25 | 253
    0.75 | 254
SELECT ST_Quantile(rast, 0.75) As value
   FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2;
value
 254
--real live example. Quantile of all pixels in band 2 intersecting a geometry
SELECT rid, (ST_Quantile(rast,2)).* As pvc
  FROM o_4_boston
       WHERE ST_Intersects(rast,
           ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((224486 892151,224486 892200,224706 892200,224706 ←
              892151,224486 892151))',26986)
           )
ORDER BY value, quantile, rid
;
rid | quantile | value
         0 | 0
  1 |
  2 |
           0 |
                   0
           0 |
                  1
 14 I
           0 |
                  2
 15 I
        0.25 |
 14 |
                  37
  1 |
        0.25 |
                  42
        0.25 |
 15 I
                  47
  2 |
        0.25 |
 14 |
         0.5 |
                  56
  1 |
         0.5 |
                  64
 15 |
         0.5 |
                  66
  2 |
          0.5 |
                  77
        0.75 |
                  81
 14 |
 15 |
        0.75 | 87
  1 |
         0.75 |
                  94
        0.75 |
  2 |
                  106
          1 |
 14 |
                  199
            1 |
  1 |
                  244
            1 |
  2 |
                  255
        1 | 255
 15 |
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 525 / 791

See Also

ST_Count, ST_SummaryStats, ST_SummaryStatsAgg, ST_SetBandNoDataValue

9.9.5 ST_SummaryStats

ST_SummaryStats — Returns summarystats consisting of count, sum, mean, stddev, min, max for a given raster band of a raster or raster coverage. Band 1 is assumed is no band is specified.

Synopsis

summarystats **ST_SummaryStats**(raster rast, boolean exclude_nodata_value); summarystats **ST_SummaryStats**(raster rast, integer nband, boolean exclude_nodata_value); summarystats **ST_SummaryStats**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, boolean exclude_nodata_value); summarystats **ST_SummaryStats**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, integer nband=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true);

Description

Returns summarystats consisting of count, sum, mean, stddev, min, max for a given raster band of a raster or raster coverage. If no band is specified nband defaults to 1.



Note

By default only considers pixel values not equal to the nodata value. Set exclude_nodata_value to false to get count of all pixels.



Note

By default will sample all pixels. To get faster response, set sample_percent to lower than 1

Availability: 2.0.0



Warning

The ST_SummaryStats(rastertable, rastercolumn, ...) variants are deprecated as of 2.2.0. Use ST_SummaryStatsAgg instead.

Example: Single raster tile

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 526 / 791

Example: Summarize pixels that intersect buildings of interest

This example took 574ms on PostGIS windows 64-bit with all of Boston Buildings and aerial Tiles (tiles each 150x150 pixels ~ 134,000 tiles), ~102,000 building records

```
WITH
-- our features of interest
   feat AS (SELECT gid As building_id, geom_26986 As geom FROM buildings AS b
   WHERE gid IN(100, 103,150)
  ),
-- clip band 2 of raster tiles to boundaries of builds
-- then get stats for these clipped regions
  b_stats AS
  (SELECT building_id, (stats).*
FROM (SELECT building_id, ST_SummaryStats(ST_Clip(rast,2,geom)) As stats
   FROM aerials.boston
   INNER JOIN feat
 ON ST_Intersects (feat.geom, rast)
) As foo
)
-- finally summarize stats
SELECT building_id, SUM(count) As num_pixels
 , MIN(min) As min_pval
  , MAX(max) As max_pval
  , SUM(mean*count)/SUM(count) As avg_pval
 FROM b stats
WHERE count > 0
 GROUP BY building_id
 ORDER BY building_id;
building_id | num_pixels | min_pval | max_pval |
                                                     avq_pval
                            1 | 255 | 61.0697247706422
7 | 182 | 70.5038167938931
        100 | 1090 |
         103 |
                     655 |
                                        252 | 185.642458100559
         150 |
                      895 |
                                   2 |
```

Example: Raster coverage

```
-- stats for each band --
SELECT band, (stats).*
FROM (SELECT band, ST_SummaryStats('o_4_boston', 'rast', band) As stats
   FROM generate_series(1,3) As band) As foo;
band | count | sum |
                              mean
                                        stddev
                                                          | min | max
   1 | 8450000 | 725799 | 82.7064349112426 | 45.6800222638537 | 0 | 255
   2 | 8450000 | 700487 | 81.4197705325444 | 44.2161184161765 | 0 | 255
   3 | 8450000 | 575943 | 74.682739408284 | 44.2143885481407 | 0 | 255
-- For a table -- will get better speed if set sampling to less than 100%
-- Here we set to 25% and get a much faster answer
SELECT band, (stats).*
FROM (SELECT band, ST_SummaryStats('o_4_boston','rast', band,true,0.25) As stats
   FROM generate_series(1,3) As band) As foo;
band | count | sum |
                              mean |
                                              st.ddev
                                                          | min | max
  1 | 2112500 | 180686 | 82.6890480473373 | 45.6961043857248 | 0 | 255
   2 | 2112500 | 174571 | 81.448503668639 | 44.2252623171821 | 0 | 255
   3 | 2112500 | 144364 | 74.6765884023669 | 44.2014869384578 | 0 | 255
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 527 / 791

See Also

summarystats, ST_SummaryStatsAgg, ST_Count, ST_Clip

9.9.6 ST_SummaryStatsAgg

ST_SummaryStatsAgg — Aggregate. Returns summarystats consisting of count, sum, mean, stddev, min, max for a given raster band of a set of raster. Band 1 is assumed is no band is specified.

Synopsis

summarystats **ST_SummaryStatsAgg**(raster rast, integer nband, boolean exclude_nodata_value, double precision sample_percent); summarystats **ST_SummaryStatsAgg**(raster rast, boolean exclude_nodata_value, double precision sample_percent); summarystats **ST_SummaryStatsAgg**(raster rast, integer nband, boolean exclude_nodata_value);

Description

Returns summarystats consisting of count, sum, mean, stddev, min, max for a given raster band of a raster or raster coverage. If no band is specified nband defaults to 1.



Note

By default only considers pixel values not equal to the NODATA value. Set <code>exclude_nodata_value</code> to False to get count of all pixels.



Note

By default will sample all pixels. To get faster response, set sample_percent to value between 0 and 1

Availability: 2.2.0

Examples

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT
    rast.rast
  FROM (
    SELECT ST_SetValue(
      ST_SetValue(
        ST_SetValue(
          ST_AddBand(
            ST_MakeEmptyRaster(10, 10, 10, 10, 2, 2, 0, 0,0)
            , 1, '64BF', 0, 0
            1, 1, 1, -10
        )
        , 1, 5, 4, 0
      , 1, 5, 5, 3.14159
    ) AS rast
  ) AS rast
  FULL JOIN (
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 528 / 791

```
SELECT generate_series(1, 10) AS id
 ) AS id
   ON 1 = 1
SELECT
  (stats).count,
 round((stats).sum::numeric, 3),
 round((stats).mean::numeric, 3),
 round((stats).stddev::numeric, 3),
 round((stats).min::numeric, 3),
 round((stats).max::numeric, 3)
FROM (
  SELECT
   ST_SummaryStatsAgg(rast, 1, TRUE, 1) AS stats
 FROM foo
) bar;
count | round | round | round | round
   20 | -68.584 | -3.429 | 6.571 | -10.000 | 3.142
(1 row)
```

See Also

 $summary Stats, ST_Summary Stats, ST_Count, ST_Clip$

9.9.7 ST_ValueCount

ST_ValueCount — Returns a set of records containing a pixel band value and count of the number of pixels in a given band of a raster (or a raster coverage) that have a given set of values. If no band is specified defaults to band 1. By default nodata value pixels are not counted. and all other values in the pixel are output and pixel band values are rounded to the nearest integer.

Synopsis

SETOF record **ST_ValueCount**(raster rast, integer nband=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true, double precision[] searchvalues=NULL, double precision roundto=0, double precision OUT value, integer OUT count);

SETOF record **ST_ValueCount**(raster rast, integer nband, double precision[] searchvalues, double precision roundto=0, double precision OUT value, integer OUT count);

SETOF record **ST_ValueCount**(raster rast, double precision[] searchvalues, double precision roundto=0, double precision OUT value, integer OUT count);

bigint **ST_ValueCount**(raster rast, double precision searchvalue, double precision roundto=0);

bigint **ST_ValueCount**(raster rast, integer nband, boolean exclude_nodata_value, double precision searchvalue, double precision roundto=0);

bigint **ST_ValueCount**(raster rast, integer nband, double precision searchvalue, double precision roundto=0);

SETOF record **ST_ValueCount**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, integer nband=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=true, double precision[] searchvalues=NULL, double precision roundto=0, double precision OUT value, integer OUT count);

SETOF record **ST_ValueCount**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, double precision[] searchvalues, double precision roundto=0, double precision OUT value, integer OUT count);

SETOF record **ST_ValueCount**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, integer nband, double precision[] searchvalues, double precision roundto=0, double precision OUT value, integer OUT count);

bigint**ST_ValueCount**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, integer nband, boolean exclude_nodata_value, double precision search-value, double precision roundto=0);

bigint **ST_ValueCount**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, double precision searchvalue, double precision roundto=0);

bigint **ST_ValueCount**(text rastertable, text rastercolumn, integer nband, double precision searchvalue, double precision roundto=0);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 529 / 791

Description

Returns a set of records with columns value count which contain the pixel band value and count of pixels in the raster tile or raster coverage of selected band.

If no band is specified nband defaults to 1. If no searchvalues are specified, will return all pixel values found in the raster or raster coverage. If one searchvalue is given, will return an integer instead of records denoting the count of pixels having that pixel band value



Note

If exclude_nodata_value is set to false, will also count pixels with no data.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
UPDATE dummy_rast SET rast = ST_SetBandNoDataValue(rast,249) WHERE rid=2;
--Example will count only pixels of band 1 that are not 249. --
SELECT (pvc).*
FROM (SELECT ST_ValueCount(rast) As pvc
   FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2) As foo
   ORDER BY (pvc).value;
value | count
  250 |
  251 |
            1
  252 |
   253 |
           12
-- Example will coount all pixels of band 1 including 249 --
SELECT (pvc).*
FROM (SELECT ST_ValueCount(rast,1,false) As pvc
   FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2) As foo
   ORDER BY (pvc).value;
value | count
  249 |
  250 |
  251 |
           1
  252 |
           2
  253 I
            6
           12
  254 |
-- Example will count only non-nodata value pixels of band 2
SELECT (pvc).*
FROM (SELECT ST_ValueCount(rast, 2) As pvc
   FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2) As foo
   ORDER BY (pvc).value;
value | count
   78 |
            1
    79 |
             1
   88 |
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 530 / 791

```
89 | 1

96 | 1

97 | 1

98 | 1

99 | 2

112 | 2
```

```
--real live example. Count all the pixels in an aerial raster tile band 2 intersecting a
   geometry
-- and return only the pixel band values that have a count > 500
SELECT (pvc).value, SUM((pvc).count) As total
FROM (SELECT ST_ValueCount(rast,2) As pvc
    FROM o_4_boston
        WHERE ST_Intersects(rast,
            {\tt ST\_GeomFromText('POLYGON((224486~892151,224486~892200,224706~892200,224706~} \leftarrow \\
                892151,224486 892151))',26986)
        ) As foo
    GROUP BY (pvc).value
    HAVING SUM((pvc).count) > 500
    ORDER BY (pvc).value;
 value | total
-----+----
    51 | 502
    54 | 521
```

```
-- Just return count of pixels in each raster tile that have value of 100 of tiles that \leftrightarrow
   intersect a specific geometry --
SELECT rid, ST_ValueCount(rast, 2, 100) As count
   FROM o_4_boston
        WHERE ST_Intersects(rast,
            {\tt ST\_GeomFromText('POLYGON((224486~892151,224486~892200,224706~892200,224706~} \leftarrow \\
                892151,224486 892151))',26986)
             ) ;
rid | count
  1 |
         56
  2 |
         95
 14 |
          37
 15 |
          64
```

See Also

ST_Count, ST_SetBandNoDataValue

9.10 Raster Outputs

9.10.1 ST_AsBinary

ST_AsBinary — Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the raster.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 531 / 791

Synopsis

bytea **ST_AsBinary**(raster rast, boolean outasin=FALSE);

Description

Returns the Binary representation of the raster. If outasin is TRUE, out-db bands are treated as in-db. Refer to raster/doc/RFC2-WellKnownBinaryFormat located in the PostGIS source folder for details of the representation.

This is useful in binary cursors to pull data out of the database without converting it to a string representation.



Note

By default, WKB output contains the external file path for out-db bands. If the client does not have access to the raster file underlying an out-db band, set outasin to TRUE.

Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of outasin

Examples

9.10.2 ST_AsGDALRaster

ST_AsGDALRaster — Return the raster tile in the designated GDAL Raster format. Raster formats are one of those supported by your compiled library. Use ST_GDALRasters() to get a list of formats supported by your library.

Synopsis

bytea **ST_AsGDALRaster**(raster rast, text format, text[] options=NULL, integer srid=sameassource);

Description

Returns the raster tile in the designated format. Arguments are itemized below:

- format format to output. This is dependent on the drivers compiled in your libgdal library. Generally available are 'JPEG', 'GTIff', 'PNG'. Use ST_GDALDrivers to get a list of formats supported by your library.
- options text array of GDAL options. Valid options are dependent on the format. Refer to GDAL Raster format options for more details.
- srs The proj4text or srtext (from spatial_ref_sys) to embed in the image

Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GDAL >= 1.6.0.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 532 / 791

JPEG Output Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsGDALRaster(rast, 'JPEG') As rastjpg
FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=1;

SELECT ST_AsGDALRaster(rast, 'JPEG', ARRAY['QUALITY=50']) As rastjpg
FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2;
```

GTIFF Output Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsgDALRaster(rast, 'GTiff') As rastjpg
FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2;

-- Out GeoTiff with jpeg compression, 90% quality
SELECT ST_AsgDALRaster(rast, 'GTiff',
   ARRAY['COMPRESS=JPEG', 'JPEG_QUALITY=90'],
   4269) As rasttiff
FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2;
```

See Also

Section 5.3, ST_GDALDrivers, ST_SRID

9.10.3 ST_AsJPEG

ST_AsJPEG — Return the raster tile selected bands as a single Joint Photographic Exports Group (JPEG) image (byte array). If no band is specified and 1 or more than 3 bands, then only the first band is used. If only 3 bands then all 3 bands are used and mapped to RGB.

Synopsis

```
bytea ST_AsJPEG(raster rast, text[] options=NULL);
bytea ST_AsJPEG(raster rast, integer nband, integer quality);
bytea ST_AsJPEG(raster rast, integer nband, text[] options=NULL);
bytea ST_AsJPEG(raster rast, integer[] nbands, text[] options=NULL);
bytea ST_AsJPEG(raster rast, integer[] nbands, integer quality);
```

Description

Returns the selected bands of the raster as a single Joint Photographic Exports Group Image (JPEG). Use ST_AsGDALRaster if you need to export as less common raster types. If no band is specified and 1 or more than 3 bands, then only the first band is used. If 3 bands then all 3 bands are used. There are many variants of the function with many options. These are itemized below:

- nband is for single band exports.
- nbands is an array of bands to export (note that max is 3 for JPEG) and the order of the bands is RGB. e.g ARRAY[3,2,1] means map band 3 to Red, band 2 to green and band 1 to blue
- quality number from 0 to 100. The higher the number the crisper the image.
- options text Array of GDAL options as defined for JPEG (look at create_options for JPEG ST_GDALDrivers). For JPEG valid ones are PROGRESSIVE ON or OFF and QUALITY a range from 0 to 100 and default to 75. Refer to GDAL Raster format options for more details.

Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GDAL >= 1.6.0.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 533 / 791

Examples: Output

```
-- output first 3 bands 75% quality
SELECT ST_AsJPEG(rast) As rastjpg
   FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2;
-- output only first band as 90% quality
SELECT ST_AsJPEG(rast,1,90) As rastjpg
   FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2;
-- output first 3 bands (but make band 2 Red, band 1 green, and band 3 blue, progressive ← and 90% quality
SELECT ST_AsJPEG(rast,ARRAY[2,1,3],ARRAY['QUALITY=90','PROGRESSIVE=ON']) As rastjpg
   FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2;
```

See Also

Section 5.3, ST_GDALDrivers, ST_AsGDALRaster, ST_AsPNG, ST_AsTIFF

9.10.4 ST AsPNG

ST_AsPNG — Return the raster tile selected bands as a single portable network graphics (PNG) image (byte array). If 1, 3, or 4 bands in raster and no bands are specified, then all bands are used. If more 2 or more than 4 bands and no bands specified, then only band 1 is used. Bands are mapped to RGB or RGBA space.

Synopsis

```
bytea ST_AsPNG(raster rast, text[] options=NULL);
bytea ST_AsPNG(raster rast, integer nband, integer compression);
bytea ST_AsPNG(raster rast, integer nband, text[] options=NULL);
bytea ST_AsPNG(raster rast, integer[] nbands, integer compression);
bytea ST_AsPNG(raster rast, integer[] nbands, text[] options=NULL);
```

Description

Returns the selected bands of the raster as a single Portable Network Graphics Image (PNG). Use ST_AsGDALRaster if you need to export as less common raster types. If no band is specified, then the first 3 bands are exported. There are many variants of the function with many options. If no srid is specified then then srid of the raster is used. These are itemized below:

- nband is for single band exports.
- nbands is an array of bands to export (note that max is 4 for PNG) and the order of the bands is RGBA. e.g ARRAY[3,2,1] means map band 3 to Red, band 2 to green and band 1 to blue
- compression number from 1 to 9. The higher the number the greater the compression.
- options text Array of GDAL options as defined for PNG (look at create_options for PNG of ST_GDALDrivers). For PNG valid one is only ZLEVEL (amount of time to spend on compression -- default 6) e.g. ARRAY['ZLEVEL=9']. WORLDFILE is not allowed since the function would have to output two outputs. Refer to GDAL Raster format options for more details.

Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GDAL >= 1.6.0.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 534 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT ST_AsPNG(rast) As rastpng
FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2;

-- export the first 3 bands and map band 3 to Red, band 1 to Green, band 2 to blue
SELECT ST_AsPNG(rast, ARRAY[3,1,2]) As rastpng
FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2;
```

See Also

ST_AsGDALRaster, ST_ColorMap, ST_GDALDrivers, Section 5.3

9.10.5 ST_AsTIFF

ST_AsTIFF — Return the raster selected bands as a single TIFF image (byte array). If no band is specified, then will try to use all bands.

Synopsis

```
bytea ST_AsTIFF(raster rast, text[] options=", integer srid=sameassource);
bytea ST_AsTIFF(raster rast, text compression=", integer srid=sameassource);
bytea ST_AsTIFF(raster rast, integer[] nbands, text compression=", integer srid=sameassource);
bytea ST_AsTIFF(raster rast, integer[] nbands, text[] options, integer srid=sameassource);
```

Description

Returns the selected bands of the raster as a single Tagged Image File Format (TIFF). If no band is specified, will try to use all bands. This is a wrapper around ST_AsGDALRaster. Use ST_AsGDALRaster if you need to export as less common raster types. There are many variants of the function with many options. If no spatial reference SRS text is present, the spatial reference of the raster is used. These are itemized below:

- nbands is an array of bands to export (note that max is 3 for PNG) and the order of the bands is RGB. e.g ARRAY[3,2,1] means map band 3 to Red, band 2 to green and band 1 to blue
- compression Compression expression -- JPEG90 (or some other percent), LZW, JPEG, DEFLATE9.
- options text Array of GDAL create options as defined for GTiff (look at create_options for GTiff of ST_GDALDrivers). or refer to GDAL Raster format options for more details.
- srid srid of spatial_ref_sys of the raster. This is used to populate the georeference information

Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GDAL >= 1.6.0.

Examples: Use jpeg compression 90%

```
SELECT ST_AsTIFF(rast, 'JPEG90') As rasttiff
FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=2;
```

See Also

ST_GDALDrivers, ST_AsGDALRaster, ST_SRID

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 535 / 791

9.11 Raster Processing

9.11.1 Map Algebra

9.11.1.1 ST_Clip

ST_Clip — Returns the raster clipped by the input geometry. If band number not is specified, all bands are processed. If crop is not specified or TRUE, the output raster is cropped.

Synopsis

```
raster ST_Clip(raster rast, integer[] nband, geometry geom, double precision[] nodataval=NULL, boolean crop=TRUE); raster ST_Clip(raster rast, integer nband, geometry geom, double precision nodataval, boolean crop=TRUE); raster ST_Clip(raster rast, integer nband, geometry geom, boolean crop); raster ST_Clip(raster rast, geometry geom, double precision[] nodataval=NULL, boolean crop=TRUE); raster ST_Clip(raster rast, geometry geom, double precision nodataval, boolean crop=TRUE); raster ST_Clip(raster rast, geometry geom, boolean crop);
```

Description

Returns a raster that is clipped by the input geometry geom. If band index is not specified, all bands are processed.

Rasters resulting from ST_Clip must have a nodata value assigned for areas clipped, one for each band. If none are provided and the input raster do not have a nodata value defined, nodata values of the resulting raster are set to ST_MinPossibleValue(ST_BandPixelTypband)). When the number of nodata value in the array is smaller than the number of band, the last one in the array is used for the remaining bands. If the number of nodata value is greater than the number of band, the extra nodata values are ignored. All variants accepting an array of nodata values also accept a single value which will be assigned to each band.

If crop is not specified, true is assumed meaning the output raster is cropped to the intersection of the geomand rast extents. If crop is set to false, the new raster gets the same extent as rast.

Availability: 2.0.0

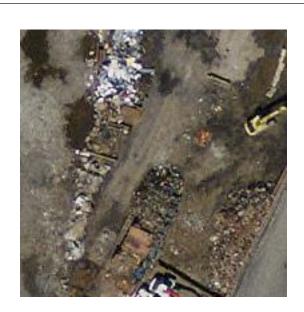
Enhanced: 2.1.0 Rewritten in C

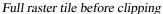
Examples here use Massachusetts aerial data available on MassGIS site MassGIS Aerial Orthos. Coordinates are in Massachusetts State Plane Meters.

Examples: 1 band clipping

```
-- Clip the first band of an aerial tile by a 20 meter buffer.
SELECT ST_Clip(rast, 1,
   ST_Buffer(ST_Centroid(ST_Envelope(rast)),20)
 ) from aerials.boston
WHERE rid = 4;
-- Demonstrate effect of crop on final dimensions of raster
-- Note how final extent is clipped to that of the geometry
-- if crop = true
SELECT ST_XMax(ST_Envelope(ST_Clip(rast, 1, clipper, true))) As xmax_w_trim,
 ST_XMax(clipper) As xmax_clipper,
  ST_XMax(ST_Envelope(ST_Clip(rast, 1, clipper, false))) As xmax_wo_trim,
  ST_XMax(ST_Envelope(rast)) As xmax_rast_orig
FROM (SELECT rast, ST_Buffer(ST_Centroid(ST_Envelope(rast)),6) As clipper
 FROM aerials.boston
WHERE rid = 6) As foo;
                | xmax_clipper | xmax_wo_trim | xmax_rast_orig
  xmax w trim
 230657.436173996 | 230657.436173996 | 230666.436173996 | 230666.436173996
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 536 / 791





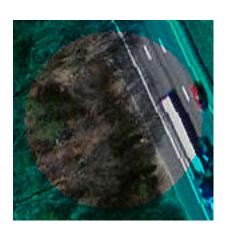


After Clipping

Examples: 1 band clipping with no crop and add back other bands unchanged



Full raster tile before clipping



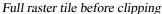
After Clipping - surreal

Examples: Clip all bands

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 537 / 791

```
false
) from aerials.boston
WHERE rid = 4;
```







After Clipping

See Also

ST_AddBand, ST_MapAlgebra, ST_Intersection

9.11.1.2 ST_ColorMap

ST_ColorMap — Creates a new raster of up to four 8BUI bands (grayscale, RGB, RGBA) from the source raster and a specified band. Band 1 is assumed if not specified.

Synopsis

raster **ST_ColorMap**(raster rast, integer nband=1, text colormap=grayscale, text method=INTERPOLATE); raster **ST_ColorMap**(raster rast, text colormap, text method=INTERPOLATE);

Description

Apply a colormap to the band at nband of rast resulting a new raster comprised of up to four 8BUI bands. The number of 8BUI bands in the new raster is determined by the number of color components defined in colormap.

If nband is not specified, then band 1 is assumed.

colormap can be a keyword of a pre-defined colormap or a set of lines defining the value and the color components.

Valid pre-defined colormap keyword:

- grayscale or greyscale for a one 8BUI band raster of shades of gray.
- pseudocolor for a four 8BUI (RGBA) band raster with colors going from blue to green to red.
- fire for a four 8BUI (RGBA) band raster with colors going from black to red to pale yellow.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 538 / 791

bluered for a four 8BUI (RGBA) band raster with colors going from blue to pale white to red.

Users can pass a set of entries (one per line) to colormap to specify custom colormaps. Each entry generally consists of five values: the pixel value and corresponding Red, Green, Blue, Alpha components (color components between 0 and 255). Percent values can be used instead of pixel values where 0% and 100% are the minimum and maximum values found in the raster band. Values can be separated with commas (','), tabs, colons (':') and/or spaces. The pixel value can be set to *nv*, *null* or *nodata* for the NODATA value. An example is provided below.

```
5 0 0 0 255
4 100:50 55 255
1 150,100 150 255
0% 255 255 255 255
nv 0 0 0 0
```

The syntax of colormap is similar to that of the color-relief mode of GDAL gdaldem.

Valid keywords for method:

- INTERPOLATE to use linear interpolation to smoothly blend the colors between the given pixel values
- EXACT to strictly match only those pixels values found in the colormap. Pixels whose value does not match a colormap entry will be set to 0 0 0 0 (RGBA)
- NEAREST to use the colormap entry whose value is closest to the pixel value



Note

A great reference for colormaps is ColorBrewer.



Warning

The resulting bands of new raster will have no NODATA value set. Use ST_SetBandNoDataValue to set a NODATA value if one is needed.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

This is a junk table to play with

```
-- setup test raster table --
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS funky_shapes;
CREATE TABLE funky_shapes(rast raster);

INSERT INTO funky_shapes(rast)
WITH ref AS (
    SELECT ST_MakeEmptyRaster( 200, 200, 0, 200, 1, -1, 0, 0) AS rast
)
SELECT
ST_Union(rast)
FROM (
    SELECT
ST_AsRaster(
    ST_Rotate(
    ST_Buffer(
    ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(0 2,50 50,150 150,125 50)'),
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 539 / 791

```
pi() * i * 0.125, ST_Point(50,50)
      ref.rast, '8BUI'::text, i * 5
    ) AS rast
  FROM ref
 CROSS JOIN generate_series(1, 10, 3) AS i
) AS shapes;
SELECT
  ST_NumBands(rast) As n_orig,
 ST_NumBands(ST_ColorMap(rast,1, 'greyscale')) As ngrey,
ST_NumBands(ST_ColorMap(rast,1, 'pseudocolor')) As npseudo,
  ST_NumBands(ST_ColorMap(rast,1, 'fire')) As nfire,
 ST_NumBands(ST_ColorMap(rast,1, 'bluered')) As nbluered,
 ST_NumBands(ST_ColorMap(rast,1, '
100% 255 0 0
 80% 160 0 0
 50% 130 0 0
 30% 30 0 0
 20% 60 0 0
 0% 0 0 0
```

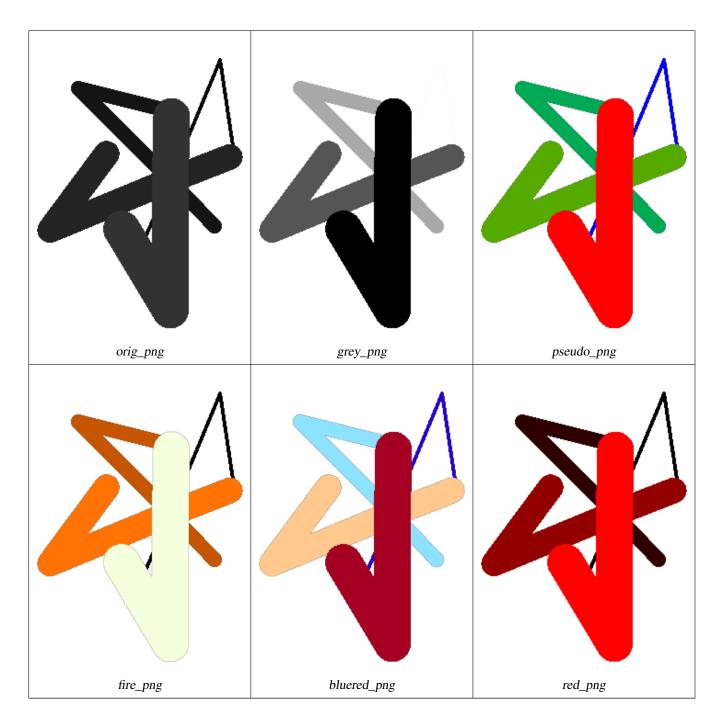
```
n_orig | ngrey | npseudo | nfire | nbluered | nred | nred | 1 | 1 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 3
```

Examples: Compare different color map looks using ST AsPNG

nv 255 255 255
')) As nred
FROM funky_shapes;

```
SELECT
 ST_AsPNG(rast) As orig_png,
  ST_AsPNG(ST_ColorMap(rast,1,'greyscale')) As grey_png,
 ST_AsPNG(ST_ColorMap(rast,1, 'pseudocolor')) As pseudo_png,
ST_AsPNG(ST_ColorMap(rast,1, 'nfire')) As fire_png,
  ST_AsPNG(ST_ColorMap(rast,1, 'bluered')) As bluered_png,
 ST_AsPNG(ST_ColorMap(rast,1, '
100% 255 0 0
          0 0
 80% 160
 50% 130
          0 0
 30% 30 0 0
 20% 60 0 0
 0% 0 0 0
 nv 255 255 255
 ')) As red_png
FROM funky_shapes;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 540 / 791



See Also

 $ST_AsPNG, ST_AsRaster \ ST_Map Algebra, \ ST_NumBands, \ ST_Reclass, \ ST_SetBandNoData Value, \ ST_Union$

9.11.1.3 ST_Intersection

ST_Intersection — Returns a raster or a set of geometry-pixelvalue pairs representing the shared portion of two rasters or the geometrical intersection of a vectorization of the raster and a geometry.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 541 / 791

Synopsis

 $set of \ geomval\ \textbf{ST_Intersection} (geometry\ geom,\ raster\ rast,\ integer\ band_num=1);$

setof geomval **ST_Intersection**(raster rast, geometry geom);

set of geomval **ST_Intersection**(raster rast, integer band, geometry geomin);

raster **ST_Intersection**(raster rast1, raster rast2, double precision[] nodataval);

raster **ST_Intersection**(raster rast1, raster rast2, text returnband, double precision[] nodataval);

raster **ST_Intersection**(raster rast1, integer band1, raster rast2, integer band2, double precision[] nodataval);

raster **ST_Intersection**(raster rast1, integer band1, raster rast2, integer band2, text returnband, double precision[] nodataval);

Description

Returns a raster or a set of geometry-pixelvalue pairs representing the shared portion of two rasters or the geometrical intersection of a vectorization of the raster and a geometry.

The first three variants, returning a setof geomval, works in vector space. The raster is first vectorized (using ST_DumpAsPolygon) into a set of geomval rows and those rows are then intersected with the geometry using the ST_Intersection(geometry, geometry) PostGIS function. Geometries intersecting only with a nodata value area of a raster returns an empty geometry. They are normally excluded from the results by the proper usage of ST_Intersect in the WHERE clause.

You can access the geometry and the value parts of the resulting set of geomval by surrounding them with parenthesis and adding '.geom' or '.val' at the end of the expression. e.g. (ST_Intersection(rast, geom)).geom

The other variants, returning a raster, works in raster space. They are using the two rasters version of ST_MapAlgebraExpr to perform the intersection.

The extent of the resulting raster corresponds to the geometrical intersection of the two raster extents. The resulting raster includes 'BAND1', 'BAND2' or 'BOTH' bands, following what is passed as the returnband parameter. Nodata value areas present in any band results in nodata value areas in every bands of the result. In other words, any pixel intersecting with a nodata value pixel becomes a nodata value pixel in the result.

Rasters resulting from ST_Intersection must have a nodata value assigned for areas not intersecting. You can define or replace the nodata value for any resulting band by providing a nodataval[] array of one or two nodata values depending if you request 'BAND1', 'BAND2' or 'BOTH' bands. The first value in the array replace the nodata value in the first band and the second value replace the nodata value in the second band. If one input band do not have a nodata value defined and none are provided as an array, one is chosen using the ST_MinPossibleValue function. All variant accepting an array of nodata value can also accept a single value which will be assigned to each requested band.

In all variants, if no band number is specified band 1 is assumed. If you need an intersection between a raster and geometry that returns a raster, refer to ST_Clip.



Note

To get more control on the resulting extent or on what to return when encountering a nodata value, use the two rasters version of ST_MapAlgebraExpr.



Note

To compute the intersection of a raster band with a geometry in raster space, use ST_Clip. ST_Clip works on multiple bands rasters and does not return a band corresponding to the rasterized geometry.



Note

ST_Intersection should be used in conjunction with ST_Intersects and an index on the raster column and/or the geometry column.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 - Intersection in the raster space was introduced. In earlier pre-2.0.0 versions, only intersection performed in vector space were supported.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 542 / 791

Examples: Geometry, Raster -- resulting in geometry vals

```
SELECT
  foo.rid,
  foo.gid,
  ST_AsText((foo.geomval).geom) As geomwkt,
  (foo.geomval).val
FROM (
  SELECT
   A.rid.
   g.gid,
    ST_Intersection(A.rast, g.geom) As geomval
  FROM dummy_rast AS A
  CROSS JOIN (
    VALUES
      (1, ST_Point(3427928, 5793243.85)),
      (2, ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(3427927.85 5793243.75,3427927.8 5793243.75,3427927.8 ←
          5793243.8)')),
      (3, ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4)'))
  ) As q(qid, qeom)
  WHERE A.rid = 2
) As foo;
 rid | gid |
                  aeomwkt
                                                 I val
                                                         | 249
   2 | 1 | POINT(3427928 5793243.85)
   2 | 1 | POINT(3427928 5793243.85)
                                                         | 253
        2 | POINT(3427927.85 5793243.75)
                                                         1 254
        2 | POINT(3427927.8 5793243.8)
                                                         1 251
        2 | POINT(3427927.8 5793243.8)
                                                         1 253
        2 | LINESTRING(3427927.8 5793243.75,3427927.8 5793243.8) | 252
   2 |
        2 | MULTILINESTRING((3427927.8 5793243.8,3427927.8 5793243.75),...) | 250
        3 | GEOMETRYCOLLECTION EMPTY
```

See Also

geomval, ST_Intersects, ST_MapAlgebraExpr, ST_Clip, ST_AsText

9.11.1.4 ST_MapAlgebra

ST_MapAlgebra — Callback function version - Returns a one-band raster given one or more input rasters, band indexes and one user-specified callback function.

Synopsis

raster **ST_MapAlgebra**(rastbandarg[] rastbandargset, regprocedure callbackfunc, text pixeltype=NULL, text extenttype=INTERSECTIO raster customextent=NULL, integer distancex=0, integer distancey=0, text[] VARIADIC userargs=NULL); raster **ST_MapAlgebra**(raster rast, integer[] nband, regprocedure callbackfunc, text pixeltype=NULL, text extenttype=FIRST, raster customextent=NULL, integer distancex=0, integer distancey=0, text[] VARIADIC userargs=NULL); raster **ST_MapAlgebra**(raster rast, integer nband, regprocedure callbackfunc, text pixeltype=NULL, text extenttype=FIRST, raster customextent=NULL, integer distancex=0, integer distancey=0, text[] VARIADIC userargs=NULL); raster **ST_MapAlgebra**(raster rast1, integer nband1, raster rast2, integer nband2, regprocedure callbackfunc, text pixeltype=NULL, text extenttype=INTERSECTION, raster customextent=NULL, integer distancex=0, integer distancey=0, text[] VARIADIC userargs=NULL);

raster **ST_MapAlgebra**(nband integer, regprocedure callbackfunc, float8[] mask, boolean weighted, text pixeltype=NULL, text extenttype=INTERSECTION, raster customextent=NULL, text[] VARIADIC userargs=NULL);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 543 / 791

Description

Returns a one-band raster given one or more input rasters, band indexes and one user-specified callback function.

rast, rast1, rast2, rastbandargset Rasters on which the map algebra process is evaluated.

rastbandargset allows the use of a map algebra operation on many rasters and/or many bands. See example Variant 1.

nband1, nband2 Band numbers of the raster to be evaluated. nband can be an integer or integer[] denoting the bands. nband1 is band on rast1 and nband2 is band on rast2 for hte 2 raster/2band case.

callbackfunc The callbackfunc parameter must be the name and signature of an SQL or PL/pgSQL function, cast to a regprocedure. An example PL/pgSQL function example is:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION sample_callbackfunc(value double precision[][][], position ← integer[][], VARIADIC userargs text[])

RETURNS double precision

AS $$
BEGIN

RETURN 0;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql' IMMUTABLE;
```

The callbackfunc must have three arguments: a 3-dimension double precision array, a 2-dimension integer array and a variadic 1-dimension text array. The first argument value is the set of values (as double precision) from all input rasters. The three dimensions (where indexes are 1-based) are: raster #, row y, column x. The second argument position is the set of pixel positions from the output raster and input rasters. The outer dimension (where indexes are 0-based) is the raster #. The position at outer dimension index 0 is the output raster's pixel position. For each outer dimension, there are two elements in the inner dimension for X and Y. The third argument userargs is for passing through any user-specified arguments.

Passing a regprocedure argument to a SQL function requires the full function signature to be passed, then cast to a regprocedure type. To pass the above example PL/pgSQL function as an argument, the SQL for the argument is:

```
'sample_callbackfunc(double precision[], integer[], text[])'::regprocedure
```

Note that the argument contains the name of the function, the types of the function arguments, quotes around the name and argument types, and a cast to a regprocedure.

mask An n-dimenional array (matrix) of numbers used to filter what cells get passed to map algebra call-back function. 0 means a neighbor cell value should be treated as no-data and 1 means value should be treated as data. If weight is set to true, then the values, are used as multipliers to multiple the pixel value of that value in the neighborhood position.

weighted boolean (true/false) to denote if a mask value should be weighted (multiplied by original value) or not (only applies to proto that takes a mask).

pixeltype If pixeltype is passed in, the one band of the new raster will be of that pixeltype. If pixeltype is passed NULL or left out, the new raster band will have the same pixeltype as the specified band of the first raster (for extent types: INTERSECTION, UNION, FIRST, CUSTOM) or the specified band of the appropriate raster (for extent types: SECOND, LAST). If in doubt, always specify pixeltype.

The resulting pixel type of the output raster must be one listed in ST BandPixelType or left out or set to NULL.

extenttype Possible values are INTERSECTION (default), UNION, FIRST (default for one raster variants), SECOND, LAST, CUSTOM.

customextent If extentype is CUSTOM, a raster must be provided for customextent. See example 4 of Variant 1.

distancex The distance in pixels from the reference cell. So width of resulting matrix would be 2*distancex + 1.If not specified only the reference cell is considered (neighborhood of 0).

distancey The distance in pixels from reference cell in y direction. Height of resulting matrix would be 2*distancey + 1. If not specified only the reference cell is considered (neighborhood of 0).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 544 / 791

userargs The third argument to the callbackfunc is a variadic text array. All trailing text arguments are passed through to the specified callbackfunc, and are contained in the userargs argument.



Note

For more information about the VARIADIC keyword, please refer to the PostgreSQL documentation and the "SQL Functions with Variable Numbers of Arguments" section of Query Language (SQL) Functions.



Note

The text[] argument to the callbackfunc is required, regardless of whether you choose to pass any arguments to the callback function for processing or not.

Variant 1 accepts an array of rastbandarg allowing the use of a map algebra operation on many rasters and/or many bands. See example Variant 1.

Variants 2 and 3 operate upon one or more bands of one raster. See example Variant 2 and 3.

Variant 4 operate upon two rasters with one band per raster. See example Variant 4.

Availability: 2.2.0: Ability to add a mask

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples: Variant 1

One raster, one band

One raster, several bands

Several rasters, several bands

```
WITH foo AS (

SELECT 1 AS rid, ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 0, 0, 1, -1, ←

0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 1, 0), 2, '8BUI', 10, 0), 3, '32BUI', 100, 0) AS rast UNION ALL

SELECT 2 AS rid, ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 0, 1, 1, -1, ←

0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 2, 0), 2, '8BUI', 20, 0), 3, '32BUI', 300, 0) AS rast
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 545 / 791

```
SELECT
ST_MapAlgebra(
    ARRAY[ROW(t1.rast, 3), ROW(t2.rast, 1), ROW(t2.rast, 3), ROW(t1.rast, 2)]::rastbandarg ←
        [],
        'sample_callbackfunc(double precision[], int[], text[])'::regprocedure
) AS rast
FROM foo t1
CROSS JOIN foo t2
WHERE t1.rid = 1
AND t2.rid = 2
```

Complete example of tiles of a coverage with neighborhood. This query only works with PostgreSQL 9.1 or higher.

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT 0 AS rid, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', \leftrightarrow
      1, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 1, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 2, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 2, 0) AS \leftrightarrow
       rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 2, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 4, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 3, 0) AS \leftrightarrow
       rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 3, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 0, -2, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 10, 0) \leftrightarrow
     AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 4, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 2, -2, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 20, 0)
     AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 5, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 4, -2, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 30, 0)
     AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 6, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 0, -4, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 100, 0) ↔
      AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 7, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 2, -4, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 200, 0) ↔
      AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 8, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 4, -4, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 300, 0) ↔
      AS rast
SELECT
  t1.rid,
  ST_MapAlgebra(
    ARRAY[ROW(ST_Union(t2.rast), 1)]::rastbandarg[],
    'sample_callbackfunc(double precision[], int[], text[])'::regprocedure,
    '32BUI',
    'CUSTOM', t1.rast,
    1, 1
  ) AS rast
FROM foo t1
CROSS JOIN foo t2
WHERE t1.rid = 4
 AND t2.rid BETWEEN 0 AND 8
 AND ST_Intersects(t1.rast, t2.rast)
GROUP BY tl.rid, tl.rast
```

Example like the prior one for tiles of a coverage with neighborhood but works with PostgreSQL 9.0.

```
WITH src AS (
    SELECT 0 AS rid, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', ←
    1, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
    SELECT 1, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 2, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 2, 0) AS ←
    rast UNION ALL
    SELECT 2, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 4, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 3, 0) AS ←
    rast UNION ALL
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 546 / 791

```
SELECT 3, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 0, -2, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 10, 0) ↔
     AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 4, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 2, -2, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 20, 0)
     AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 5, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 4, -2, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 30, 0) ↔
     AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 6, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 0, -4, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 100, 0) ↔
      AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 7, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 2, -4, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 200, 0) \leftarrow
      AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 8, ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 4, -4, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 300, 0) ↔
      AS rast
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT
   t1.rid,
   ST_Union(t2.rast) AS rast
 FROM src t1
 JOIN src t2
   ON ST_Intersects(t1.rast, t2.rast)
   AND t2.rid BETWEEN 0 AND 8
  WHERE t1.rid = 4
 GROUP BY t1.rid
), bar AS (
  SELECT
   t1.rid,
   ST_MapAlgebra(
     ARRAY[ROW(t2.rast, 1)]::rastbandarg[],
      'raster_nmapalgebra_test(double precision[], int[], text[])'::regprocedure,
      '32BUI',
      'CUSTOM', t1.rast,
     1, 1
   ) AS rast
  FROM src t1
  JOIN foo t2
   ON t1.rid = t2.rid
SELECT
 rid.
 (ST_Metadata(rast)),
  (ST_BandMetadata(rast, 1)),
 ST_Value(rast, 1, 1, 1)
FROM bar;
```

Examples: Variants 2 and 3

One raster, several bands

One raster, one band

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 547 / 791

Examples: Variant 4

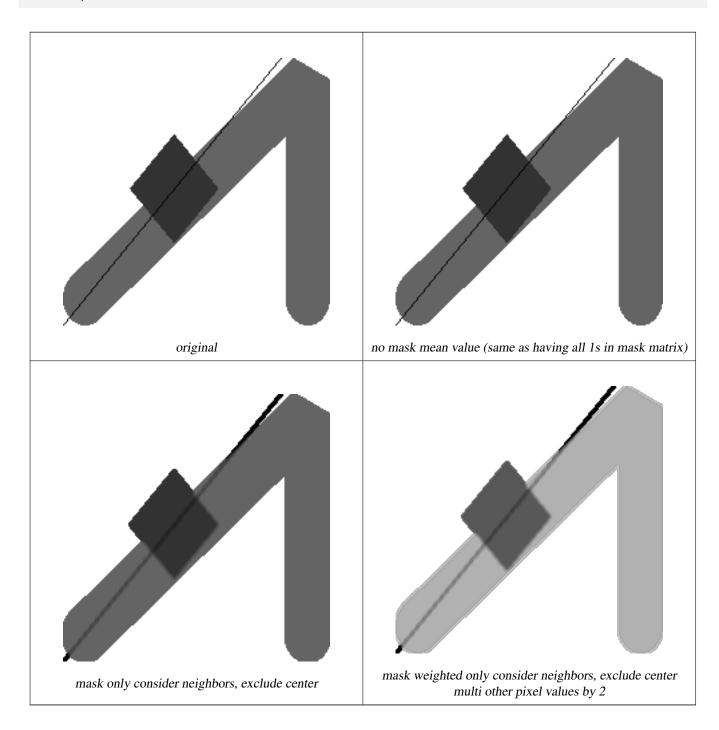
Two rasters, two bands

Examples: Using Masks

```
WITH foo AS (SELECT
  ST_SetBandNoDataValue(
ST_SetValue(ST_SetValue(ST_AsRaster(
    ST_Buffer(
      ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(50 50,100 90,100 50)'), 5,'join=bevel'),
      200,200,ARRAY['8BUI'], ARRAY[100], ARRAY[0]), ST_Buffer('POINT(70 70)'::geometry,10,' \leftarrow
          quad_segs=1') ,50),
  'LINESTRING(20 20, 100 100, 150 98)'::geometry,1),0) AS rast )
SELECT 'original' AS title, rast
FROM foo
UNION ALL
SELECT 'no mask mean value' AS title, ST_MapAlgebra(rast,1,'ST_mean4ma(double precision[],
    int[], text[])'::regprocedure) AS rast
FROM foo
UNTON ALL
SELECT 'mask only consider neighbors, exclude center' AS title, ST_MapAlgebra(rast,1,' \leftarrow
   ST_mean4ma(double precision[], int[], text[])'::regprocedure,
    \{\{1,1,1\}, \{1,0,1\}, \{1,1,1\}\}'::double precision[], false) As rast
FROM foo
UNTON ALL
SELECT 'mask weighted only consider neighbors, exclude center multi otehr pixel values by \leftrightarrow
   2' AS title, ST_MapAlgebra(rast,1,'ST_mean4ma(double precision[], int[], text[])':: ←
 regprocedure,
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 548 / 791

' $\{\{2,2,2\}, \{2,0,2\}, \{2,2,2\}\}$ '::double precision[], true) As rast FROM foo;



See Also

rastbandarg, ST_Union, ST_MapAlgebra

9.11.1.5 ST_MapAlgebra

ST_MapAlgebra — Expression version - Returns a one-band raster given one or two input rasters, band indexes and one or more user-specified SQL expressions.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 549 / 791

Synopsis

raster **ST_MapAlgebra**(raster rast, integer nband, text pixeltype, text expression, double precision nodataval=NULL); raster **ST_MapAlgebra**(raster rast, text pixeltype, text expression, double precision nodataval=NULL);

raster **ST_MapAlgebra**(raster rast1, integer nband1, raster rast2, integer nband2, text expression, text pixeltype=NULL, text extenttype=INTERSECTION, text nodata1expr=NULL, text nodata2expr=NULL, double precision nodatanodataval=NULL); raster **ST_MapAlgebra**(raster rast1, raster rast2, text expression, text pixeltype=NULL, text extenttype=INTERSECTION, text nodata1expr=NULL, text nodata2expr=NULL, double precision nodatanodataval=NULL);

Description

Expression version - Returns a one-band raster given one or two input rasters, band indexes and one or more user-specified SQL expressions.

Availability: 2.1.0

Description: Variants 1 and 2 (one raster)

Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL algebraic operation defined by the expression on the input raster (rast). If nband is not provided, band 1 is assumed. The new raster will have the same georeference, width, and height as the original raster but will only have one band.

If pixeltype is passed in, then the new raster will have a band of that pixeltype. If pixeltype is passed NULL, then the new raster band will have the same pixeltype as the input rast band.

- Keywords permitted for expression
 - 1. [rast] Pixel value of the pixel of interest
 - 2. [rast.val] Pixel value of the pixel of interest
 - 3. [rast.x] 1-based pixel column of the pixel of interest
 - 4. [rast.y] 1-based pixel row of the pixel of interest

Description: Variants 3 and 4 (two raster)

Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL algebraic operation to the two bands defined by the expression on the two input raster bands rast1, (rast2). If no band1, band2 is specified band 1 is assumed. The resulting raster will be aligned (scale, skew and pixel corners) on the grid defined by the first raster. The resulting raster will have the extent defined by the extenttype parameter.

expression A PostgreSQL algebraic expression involving the two rasters and PostgreSQL defined functions/operators that will define the pixel value when pixels intersect. e.g. (([rast1] + [rast2])/2.0)::integer

pixeltype The resulting pixel type of the output raster. Must be one listed in ST_BandPixelType, left out or set to NULL. If not passed in or set to NULL, will default to the pixeltype of the first raster.

extenttype Controls the extent of resulting raster

- 1. INTERSECTION The extent of the new raster is the intersection of the two rasters. This is the default.
- 2. UNION The extent of the new raster is the union of the two rasters.
- 3. FIRST The extent of the new raster is the same as the one of the first raster.
- 4. SECOND The extent of the new raster is the same as the one of the second raster.

nodata1expr An algebraic expression involving only rast2 or a constant that defines what to return when pixels of rast1 are nodata values and spatially corresponding rast2 pixels have values.

nodata2expr An algebraic expression involving only rast1 or a constant that defines what to return when pixels of rast2 are nodata values and spatially corresponding rast1 pixels have values.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 550 / 791

nodatanodataval A numeric constant to return when spatially corresponding rast1 and rast2 pixels are both nodata values.

• Keywords permitted in expression, nodatalexpr and nodata2expr

```
1. [rast1] - Pixel value of the pixel of interest from rast1
```

- 2. [rast1.val] Pixel value of the pixel of interest from rast1
- 3. [rast1.x] 1-based pixel column of the pixel of interest from rast1
- 4. [rast1.y] 1-based pixel row of the pixel of interest from rast1
- 5. [rast2] Pixel value of the pixel of interest from rast2
- 6. [rast2.val] Pixel value of the pixel of interest from rast2
- 7. [rast2.x] 1-based pixel column of the pixel of interest from rast2
- 8. [rast2.y] 1-based pixel row of the pixel of interest from rast2

Examples: Variants 1 and 2

```
WITH foo AS (
   SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(10, 10, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0), '32BF', 1, -1) AS rast
)
SELECT
  ST_MapAlgebra(rast, 1, NULL, 'ceil([rast]*[rast.x]/[rast.y]+[rast.val])')
FROM foo
```

Examples: Variant 3 and 4

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT 1 AS rid, ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 0, 0, 1, -1,
     0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 1, 0), 2, '8BUI', 10, 0), 3, '32BUI', 100, 0) AS rast UNION ALL
  SELECT 2 AS rid, ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(2, 2, 0, 1, 1, -1,
     0, 0, 0), 1, '16BUI', 2, 0), 2, '8BUI', 20, 0), 3, '32BUI', 300, 0) AS rast
)
SELECT
  ST_MapAlgebra(
   t1.rast, 2,
   t2.rast, 1,
    '([rast2] + [rast1.val]) / 2'
  ) AS rast
FROM foo t1
CROSS JOIN foo t2
WHERE t1.rid = 1
 AND t2.rid = 2
```

See Also

rastbandarg, ST_Union, ST_MapAlgebra

9.11.1.6 ST_MapAlgebraExpr

ST_MapAlgebraExpr — 1 raster band version: Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL algebraic operation on the input raster band and of pixeltype provided. Band 1 is assumed if no band is specified.

Synopsis

raster **ST_MapAlgebraExpr**(raster rast, integer band, text pixeltype, text expression, double precision nodataval=NULL); raster **ST_MapAlgebraExpr**(raster rast, text pixeltype, text expression, double precision nodataval=NULL);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 551 / 791

Description



Warning

ST_MapAlgebraExpr is deprecated as of 2.1.0. Use ST_MapAlgebra instead.

Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL algebraic operation defined by the expression on the input raster (rast). If no band is specified band 1 is assumed. The new raster will have the same georeference, width, and height as the original raster but will only have one band.

If pixeltype is passed in, then the new raster will have a band of that pixeltype. If pixeltype is passed NULL, then the new raster band will have the same pixeltype as the input rast band.

In the expression you can use the term [rast] to refer to the pixel value of the original band, [rast.x] to refer to the 1-based pixel column index, [rast.y] to refer to the 1-based pixel row index.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

Create a new 1 band raster from our original that is a function of modulo 2 of the original raster band.

```
ALTER TABLE dummy_rast ADD COLUMN map_rast raster;
UPDATE dummy_rast SET map_rast = ST_MapAlgebraExpr(rast, NULL, 'mod([rast], 2)') WHERE rid =
   2;
SELECT
  ST_Value(rast,1,i,j) As origval,
  ST_Value(map_rast, 1, i, j) As mapval
FROM dummy_rast
CROSS JOIN generate_series(1, 3) AS i
CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,3) AS j
WHERE rid = 2;
 origval | mapval
    253 |
    254 |
                0
    253 |
                1
    253 |
                1
     254 I
                Ω
                0
     254 I
     250 I
                Ω
     254 |
                0
     254 |
```

Create a new 1 band raster of pixel-type 2BUI from our original that is reclassified and set the nodata value to be 0.

```
ALTER TABLE dummy_rast ADD COLUMN map_rast2 raster;

UPDATE dummy_rast SET

map_rast2 = ST_MapAlgebraExpr(rast,'2BUI','CASE WHEN [rast] BETWEEN 100 and 250 THEN 1 
WHEN [rast] = 252 THEN 2 WHEN [rast] BETWEEN 253 and 254 THEN 3 ELSE 0 END', '0')

WHERE rid = 2;

SELECT DISTINCT

ST_Value(rast,1,i,j) As origval,

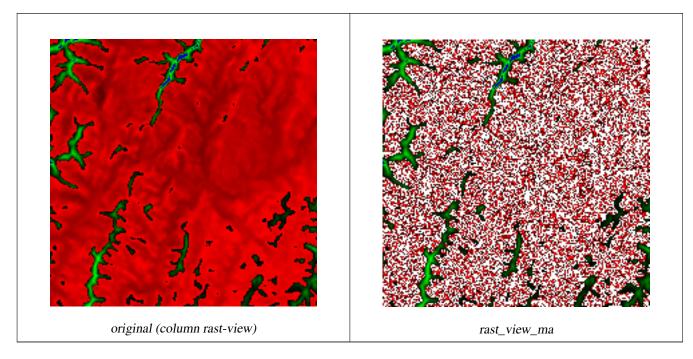
ST_Value(map_rast2, 1, i, j) As mapval

FROM dummy_rast

CROSS JOIN generate_series(1, 5) AS i
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 552 / 791

```
CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,5) AS j
WHERE rid = 2;
 origval | mapval
     249 |
                1
     250 |
                1
    251 |
                2
     252 |
                3
     253 |
     254 |
SELECT
  ST_BandPixelType(map_rast2) As b1pixtyp
FROM dummy_rast
WHERE rid = 2;
b1pixtyp
 2BUI
```



Create a new 3 band raster same pixel type from our original 3 band raster with first band altered by map algebra and remaining 2 bands unaltered.

```
SELECT
ST_AddBand(
ST_AddBand(
ST_AddBand(
ST_MakeEmptyRaster(rast_view),
ST_MapAlgebraExpr(rast_view,1,NULL,'tan([rast])*[rast]')
),
ST_Band(rast_view,2)
),
ST_Band(rast_view, 3) As rast_view_ma
)
FROM wind
WHERE rid=167;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 553 / 791

See Also

ST_MapAlgebraExpr, ST_MapAlgebraFct, ST_BandPixelType, ST_GeoReference, ST_Value

9.11.1.7 ST_MapAlgebraExpr

ST_MapAlgebraExpr — 2 raster band version: Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL algebraic operation on the two input raster bands and of pixeltype provided. band 1 of each raster is assumed if no band numbers are specified. The resulting raster will be aligned (scale, skew and pixel corners) on the grid defined by the first raster and have its extent defined by the "extenttype" parameter. Values for "extenttype" can be: INTERSECTION, UNION, FIRST, SECOND.

Synopsis

raster **ST_MapAlgebraExpr**(raster rast1, raster rast2, text expression, text pixeltype=same_as_rast1_band, text extenttype=INTERSEC text nodata1expr=NULL, text nodata2expr=NULL, double precision nodatanodataval=NULL);

raster **ST_MapAlgebraExpr**(raster rast1, integer band1, raster rast2, integer band2, text expression, text pixeltype=same_as_rast1_band text extenttype=INTERSECTION, text nodata1expr=NULL, text nodata2expr=NULL, double precision nodatanodataval=NULL);

Description



Warning

ST MapAlgebraExpr is deprecated as of 2.1.0. Use ST MapAlgebra instead.

Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL algebraic operation to the two bands defined by the expression on the two input raster bands rast1, (rast2). If no band1, band2 is specified band 1 is assumed. The resulting raster will be aligned (scale, skew and pixel corners) on the grid defined by the first raster. The resulting raster will have the extent defined by the extenttype parameter.

expression A PostgreSQL algebraic expression involving the two rasters and PostgreSQL defined functions/operators that will define the pixel value when pixels intersect. e.g. (([rast1] + [rast2])/2.0)::integer

pixeltype The resulting pixel type of the output raster. Must be one listed in ST_BandPixelType, left out or set to NULL. If not passed in or set to NULL, will default to the pixeltype of the first raster.

extenttype Controls the extent of resulting raster

- 1. INTERSECTION The extent of the new raster is the intersection of the two rasters. This is the default.
- 2. UNION The extent of the new raster is the union of the two rasters.
- 3. FIRST The extent of the new raster is the same as the one of the first raster.
- 4. SECOND The extent of the new raster is the same as the one of the second raster.

nodata1expr An algebraic expression involving only rast2 or a constant that defines what to return when pixels of rast1 are nodata values and spatially corresponding rast2 pixels have values.

nodata2expr An algebraic expression involving only rast1 or a constant that defines what to return when pixels of rast2 are nodata values and spatially corresponding rast1 pixels have values.

nodatanodataval A numeric constant to return when spatially corresponding rast1 and rast2 pixels are both nodata values.

If pixeltype is passed in, then the new raster will have a band of that pixeltype. If pixeltype is passed NULL or no pixel type specified, then the new raster band will have the same pixeltype as the input rast1 band.

Use the term [rast1.val] [rast2.val] to refer to the pixel value of the original raster bands and [rast1.x], [rast1.y] etc. to refer to the column / row positions of the pixels.

Availability: 2.0.0

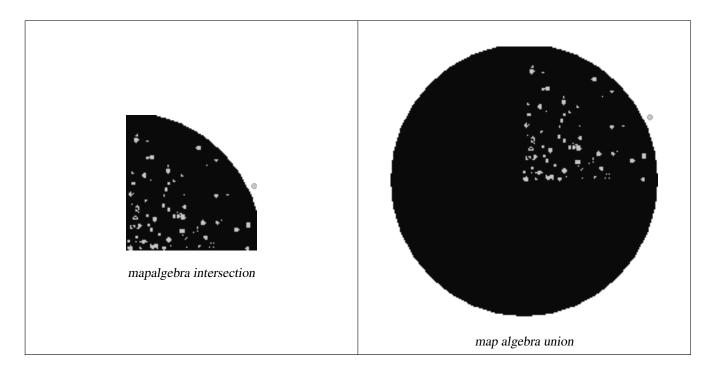
PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 554 / 791

Example: 2 Band Intersection and Union

Create a new 1 band raster from our original that is a function of modulo 2 of the original raster band.

```
--Create a cool set of rasters --
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS fun_shapes;
CREATE TABLE fun_shapes(rid serial PRIMARY KEY, fun_name text, rast raster);
-- Insert some cool shapes around Boston in Massachusetts state plane meters --
INSERT INTO fun_shapes(fun_name, rast)
VALUES ('ref', ST_AsRaster(ST_MakeEnvelope(235229, 899970, 237229, 901930,26986),200,200,'8 ↔
   BUI', 0, 0));
INSERT INTO fun_shapes(fun_name, rast)
WITH ref(rast) AS (SELECT rast FROM fun_shapes WHERE fun_name = 'ref' )
SELECT 'area' AS fun_name, ST_AsRaster(ST_Buffer(ST_SetSRID(ST_Point(236229, 900930),26986) ↔
   , 1000),
     ref.rast, '8BUI', 10, 0) As rast
FROM ref
UNION ALL
SELECT 'rand bubbles',
      ST_AsRaster(
      (SELECT ST_Collect (geom)
  FROM (SELECT ST_Buffer(ST_SetSRID(ST_Point(236229 + i*random()*100, 900930 + j*random() \leftarrow
     *100),26986), random()*20) As geom
      FROM generate_series(1,10) As i, generate_series(1,10) As j
      ) As foo ), ref.rast, '8BUI', 200, 0)
FROM ref;
--map them -
SELECT ST_MapAlgebraExpr(
    area.rast, bub.rast, '[rast2.val]', '8BUI', 'INTERSECTION', '[rast2.val]', '[rast1.val ↔
       ]') As interrast,
    ST_MapAlgebraExpr(
      area.rast, bub.rast, '[rast2.val]', '8BUI', 'UNION', '[rast2.val]', '[rast1.val]') As ↔
          unionrast
FROM
  (SELECT rast FROM fun_shapes WHERE
 fun_name = 'area') As area
CROSS JOIN (SELECT rast
FROM fun_shapes WHERE
 fun_name = 'rand bubbles') As bub
```

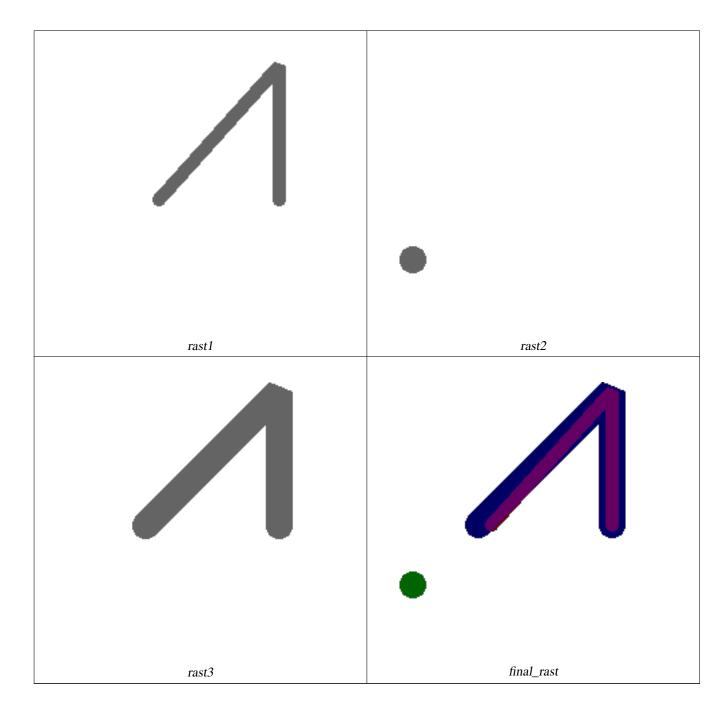
PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 555 / 791



Example: Overlaying rasters on a canvas as separate bands

```
-- we use ST_AsPNG to render the image so all single band ones look grey --
WITH mygeoms
    AS ( SELECT 2 As bnum, ST_Buffer(ST_Point(1,5),10) As geom
            UNION ALL
            SELECT 3 AS bnum,
                ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(50 50,150 150,150 50)'), 10,'join= \leftrightarrow
                    bevel') As geom
            UNION ALL
            SELECT 1 As bnum,
                 ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(60 50,150 150,150 50)'), 5,'join= \leftrightarrow
                    bevel') As geom
            ),
   -- define our canvas to be 1 to 1 pixel to geometry
   canvas
    AS (SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(200,
        ST_XMin(e)::integer, ST_YMax(e)::integer, 1, -1, 0, 0) , '8BUI'::text,0) As rast
        FROM (SELECT ST_Extent (geom) As e,
                    Max(ST_SRID(geom)) As srid
                     from mygeoms
                     ) As foo
            ),
   rbands AS (SELECT ARRAY(SELECT ST_MapAlgebraExpr(canvas.rast, ST_AsRaster(m.geom, canvas \leftrightarrow
       .rast, '8BUI', 100),
                  '[rast2.val]', '8BUI', 'FIRST', '[rast2.val]', '[rast1.val]') As rast
                 FROM mygeoms AS m CROSS JOIN canvas
                ORDER BY m.bnum) As rasts
          SELECT rasts[1] As rast1 , rasts[2] As rast2, rasts[3] As rast3, ST_AddBand(
                     ST_AddBand(rasts[1],rasts[2]), rasts[3]) As final_rast
            FROM rbands;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 556 / 791



Example: Overlay 2 meter boundary of select parcels over an aerial imagery

```
-- Create new 3 band raster composed of first 2 clipped bands, and overlay of 3rd band with ←
    our geometry
-- This query took 3.6 seconds on PostGIS windows 64-bit install
WITH pr AS
-- Note the order of operation: we clip all the rasters to dimensions of our region
(SELECT ST_Clip(rast,ST_Expand(geom,50) ) As rast, g.geom
    FROM aerials.o_2_boston AS r INNER JOIN
-- union our parcels of interest so they form a single geometry we can later intersect with
    (SELECT ST_Union(ST_Transform(the_geom,26986)) AS geom
        FROM landparcels WHERE pid IN('0303890000', '0303900000')) As g
    ON ST_Intersects(rast::geometry, ST_Expand(g.geom,50))
),
-- we then union the raster shards together
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 557 / 791

```
-- ST_Union on raster is kinda of slow but much faster the smaller you can get the rasters
-- therefore we want to clip first and then union
prunion AS

(SELECT ST_AddBand(NULL, ARRAY[ST_Union(rast,1),ST_Union(rast,2),ST_Union(rast,3)]) As ←
    clipped,geom

FROM pr

GROUP BY geom)
-- return our final raster which is the unioned shard with
-- with the overlay of our parcel boundaries
-- add first 2 bands, then mapalgebra of 3rd band + geometry

SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_Band(clipped,ARRAY[1,2])

, ST_MapAlgebraExpr(ST_Band(clipped,3), ST_AsRaster(ST_Buffer(ST_Boundary(geom),2), ←
    clipped, '8BUI',250),
    '[rast2.val]', '8BUI', 'FIRST', '[rast2.val]', '[rast1.val]') ) As rast

FROM prunion;
```



The blue lines are the boundaries of select parcels

See Also

ST_MapAlgebraExpr, ST_AddBand, ST_AsPNG, ST_AsRaster, ST_MapAlgebraFct, ST_BandPixelType, ST_GeoReference, ST_Value, ST_Union, ST_Union

9.11.1.8 ST_MapAlgebraFct

 $ST_MapAlgebraFct - 1$ band version - Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL function on the input raster band and of pixeltype prodived. Band 1 is assumed if no band is specified.

Synopsis

raster **ST_MapAlgebraFct**(raster rast, regprocedure onerasteruserfunc); raster **ST_MapAlgebraFct**(raster rast, regprocedure onerasteruserfunc, text[] VARIADIC args);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 558 / 791

raster **ST_MapAlgebraFct**(raster rast, text pixeltype, regprocedure onerasteruserfunc);

raster **ST_MapAlgebraFct**(raster rast, text pixeltype, regprocedure onerasteruserfunc, text[] VARIADIC args);

raster **ST_MapAlgebraFct**(raster rast, integer band, regprocedure onerasteruserfunc);

raster **ST_MapAlgebraFct**(raster rast, integer band, regprocedure onerasteruserfunc, text[] VARIADIC args);

raster **ST_MapAlgebraFct**(raster rast, integer band, text pixeltype, regprocedure onerasteruserfunc);

raster ST_MapAlgebraFct(raster rast, integer band, text pixeltype, regprocedure onerasteruserfunc, text[] VARIADIC args);

Description



Warning

ST_MapAlgebraFct is deprecated as of 2.1.0. Use ST_MapAlgebra instead.

Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL function specified by the onerasteruserfunc on the input raster (rast). If no band is specified, band 1 is assumed. The new raster will have the same georeference, width, and height as the original raster but will only have one band.

If pixeltype is passed in, then the new raster will have a band of that pixeltype. If pixeltype is passed NULL, then the new raster band will have the same pixeltype as the input rast band.

The onerasteruserfunc parameter must be the name and signature of a SQL or PL/pgSQL function, cast to a regprocedure. A very simple and quite useless PL/pgSQL function example is:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION simple_function(pixel FLOAT, pos INTEGER[], VARIADIC args TEXT ←

[])

RETURNS FLOAT

AS $$ BEGIN

RETURN 0.0;

END; $$

LANGUAGE 'plpgsql' IMMUTABLE;
```

The userfunction may accept two or three arguments: a float value, an optional integer array, and a variadic text array. The first argument is the value of an individual raster cell (regardless of the raster datatype). The second argument is the position of the current processing cell in the form $\{x,y\}$. The third argument indicates that all remaining parameters to $ST_MapAlgebraFct$ shall be passed through to the userfunction.

Passing a regprodedure argument to a SQL function requires the full function signature to be passed, then cast to a regprocedure type. To pass the above example PL/pgSQL function as an argument, the SQL for the argument is:

```
'simple_function(float,integer[],text[])'::regprocedure
```

Note that the argument contains the name of the function, the types of the function arguments, quotes around the name and argument types, and a cast to a regprocedure.

The third argument to the userfunction is a variadic text array. All trailing text arguments to any ST_MapAlgebraFct call are passed through to the specified userfunction, and are contained in the args argument.



Note

For more information about the VARIADIC keyword, please refer to the PostgreSQL documentation and the "SQL Functions with Variable Numbers of Arguments" section of Query Language (SQL) Functions.



Note

The text[] argument to the userfunction is required, regardless of whether you choose to pass any arguments to your user function for processing or not.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 559 / 791

Examples

Create a new 1 band raster from our original that is a function of modulo 2 of the original raster band.

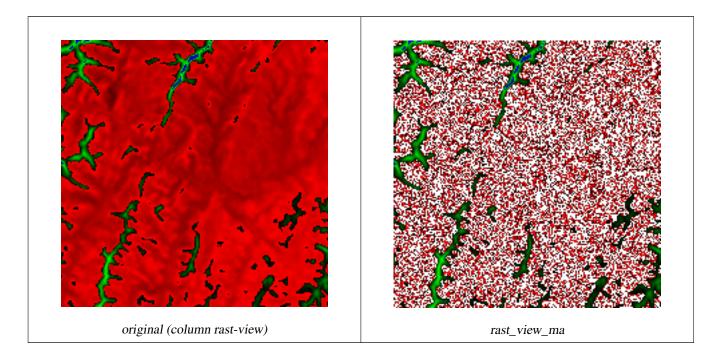
```
ALTER TABLE dummy_rast ADD COLUMN map_rast raster;
CREATE FUNCTION mod_fct(pixel float, pos integer[], variadic args text[])
RETURNS float
AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN pixel::integer % 2;
END;
$$
LANGUAGE 'plpgsql' IMMUTABLE;
UPDATE dummy_rast SET map_rast = ST_MapAlgebraFct(rast, NULL, 'mod_fct(float,integer[],text ↔
    []) '::regprocedure) WHERE rid = 2;
SELECT ST_Value(rast,1,i,j) As origval, ST_Value(map_rast, 1, i, j) As mapval
FROM dummy_rast CROSS JOIN generate_series(1, 3) AS i CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,3) AS j
WHERE rid = 2;
 origval | mapval
    253 |
    254 |
                0
    253 |
                1
    253 I
                1
    254 |
                0
    254 |
    250 |
     254 |
                0
     254 |
```

Create a new 1 band raster of pixel-type 2BUI from our original that is reclassified and set the nodata value to a passed parameter to the user function (0).

```
ALTER TABLE dummy_rast ADD COLUMN map_rast2 raster;
CREATE FUNCTION classify_fct(pixel float, pos integer[], variadic args text[])
RETURNS float
AS
$$
DECLARE
   nodata float := 0;
BEGIN
   IF NOT args[1] IS NULL THEN
       nodata := args[1];
   END IF;
    IF pixel < 251 THEN
       RETURN 1;
    ELSIF pixel = 252 THEN
       RETURN 2;
    ELSIF pixel > 252 THEN
       RETURN 3;
    ELSE
       RETURN nodata;
    END IF;
END;
LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';
UPDATE dummy_rast SET map_rast2 = ST_MapAlgebraFct(rast,'2BUI','classify_fct(float,integer ↔
   [],text[])'::regprocedure, '0') WHERE rid = 2;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 560 / 791

```
SELECT DISTINCT ST_Value(rast,1,i,j) As origval, ST_Value(map_rast2, 1, i, j) As mapval
FROM dummy_rast CROSS JOIN generate_series(1, 5) AS i CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,5) AS j
WHERE rid = 2;
origval | mapval
    249 |
                1
    250 |
                1
    251 |
    252 |
                2
     253 |
                3
     254 |
SELECT ST_BandPixelType(map_rast2) As b1pixtyp
FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid = 2;
b1pixtyp
 2BUI
```



Create a new 3 band raster same pixel type from our original 3 band raster with first band altered by map algebra and remaining 2 bands unaltered.

```
CREATE FUNCTION rast_plus_tan(pixel float, pos integer[], variadic args text[])
RETURNS float
AS
$$

BEGIN

RETURN tan(pixel) * pixel;
END;
$$

LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';

SELECT ST_AddBand(
ST_AddBand(
ST_AddBand(
ST_AddBand(
ST_AddBand(
ST_MakeEmptyRaster(rast_view),
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 561 / 791

See Also

ST_MapAlgebraExpr, ST_BandPixelType, ST_GeoReference, ST_SetValue

9.11.1.9 ST_MapAlgebraFct

ST_MapAlgebraFct — 2 band version - Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL function on the 2 input raster bands and of pixeltype prodived. Band 1 is assumed if no band is specified. Extent type defaults to INTERSECTION if not specified.

Synopsis

raster **ST_MapAlgebraFct**(raster rast1, raster rast2, regprocedure tworastuserfunc, text pixeltype=same_as_rast1, text extent-type=INTERSECTION, text[] VARIADIC userargs);

raster **ST_MapAlgebraFct**(raster rast1, integer band1, raster rast2, integer band2, regprocedure tworastuserfunc, text pixel-type=same_as_rast1, text extenttype=INTERSECTION, text[] VARIADIC userargs);

Description



Warning

ST_MapAlgebraFct is deprecated as of 2.1.0. Use ST_MapAlgebra instead.

Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL function specified by the two rastuser func on the input raster rast1, rast2. If no band1 or band2 is specified, band 1 is assumed. The new raster will have the same georeference, width, and height as the original rasters but will only have one band.

If pixeltype is passed in, then the new raster will have a band of that pixeltype. If pixeltype is passed NULL or left out, then the new raster band will have the same pixeltype as the input rast1 band.

The two rastuser func parameter must be the name and signature of an SQL or PL/pgSQL function, cast to a regprocedure. An example PL/pgSQL function example is:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION simple_function_for_two_rasters(pixel1 FLOAT, pixel2 FLOAT, pos 
INTEGER[], VARIADIC args TEXT[])

RETURNS FLOAT

AS $$ BEGIN

RETURN 0.0;

END; $$

LANGUAGE 'plpgsql' IMMUTABLE;
```

The tworastuserfunc may accept three or four arguments: a double precision value, a double precision value, an optional integer array, and a variadic text array. The first argument is the value of an individual raster cell in rast1 (regardless of the raster datatype). The second argument is an individual raster cell value in rast2. The third argument is the position of the

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 562 / 791

current processing cell in the form $\{x,y\}$. The fourth argument indicates that all remaining parameters to $ST_MapAlgebraFct$ shall be passed through to the two rastuser func.

Passing a regprodedure argument to a SQL function requires the full function signature to be passed, then cast to a regprocedure type. To pass the above example PL/pgSQL function as an argument, the SQL for the argument is:

```
'simple_function(double precision, double precision, integer[], text[])'::regprocedure
```

Note that the argument contains the name of the function, the types of the function arguments, quotes around the name and argument types, and a cast to a regprocedure.

The fourst argument to the two rastuser func is a variadic text array. All trailing text arguments to any ST_MapAlgebraFct call are passed through to the specified two rastuser func, and are contained in the userargs argument.



Note

For more information about the VARIADIC keyword, please refer to the PostgreSQL documentation and the "SQL Functions with Variable Numbers of Arguments" section of Query Language (SQL) Functions.



Note

The text[] argument to the tworastuserfunc is required, regardless of whether you choose to pass any arguments to your user function for processing or not.

Availability: 2.0.0

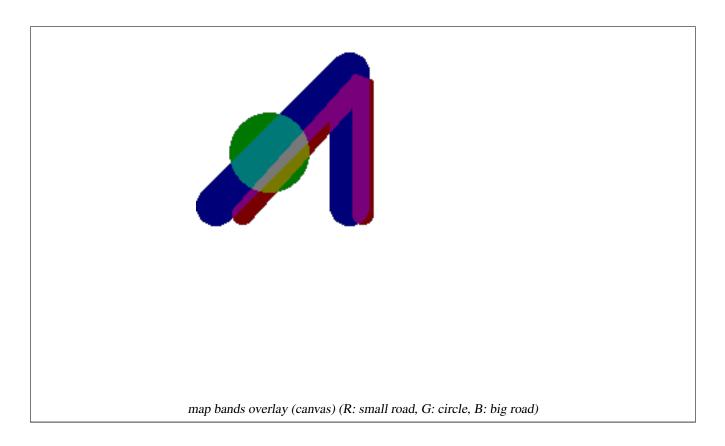
Example: Overlaying rasters on a canvas as separate bands

```
-- define our user defined function --
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION raster_mapalgebra_union(
  rast1 double precision,
  rast2 double precision,
    pos integer[],
  VARIADIC userargs text[]
  RETURNS double precision
  AS $$
  DECLARE
  BEGIN
    CASE
      WHEN rast1 IS NOT NULL AND rast2 IS NOT NULL THEN
        RETURN ((rast1 + rast2)/2.);
      WHEN rast1 IS NULL AND rast2 IS NULL THEN
       RETURN NULL;
      WHEN rast1 IS NULL THEN
        RETURN rast2;
      ELSE
        RETURN rast1;
    END CASE;
    RETURN NULL;
  END;
  $$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql' IMMUTABLE COST 1000;
-- prep our test table of rasters
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS map_shapes;
CREATE TABLE map_shapes(rid serial PRIMARY KEY, rast raster, bnum integer, descrip text);
INSERT INTO map_shapes(rast,bnum, descrip)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 563 / 791

```
WITH mygeoms
    AS ( SELECT 2 As bnum, ST_Buffer(ST_Point(90,90),30) As geom, 'circle' As descrip
            UNION ALL
            SELECT 3 AS bnum,
                ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(50 50,150 150,150 50)'), 15) As geom, \leftrightarrow
                     'big road' As descrip
            UNION ALL
            SELECT 1 As bnum,
                ST_Translate(ST_Buffer(ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(60 50,150 150,150 50)'), \leftarrow
                     8, 'join=bevel'), 10,-6) As geom, 'small road' As descrip
            ) .
   -- define our canvas to be 1 to 1 pixel to geometry
    AS ( SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(250,
        ST_XMin(e)::integer, ST_YMax(e)::integer, 1, -1, 0, 0 ) , '8BUI'::text,0) As rast
        FROM (SELECT ST_Extent (geom) As e,
                    Max(ST_SRID(geom)) As srid
                    from mygeoms
                     ) As foo
-- return our rasters aligned with our canvas
SELECT ST_AsRaster(m.geom, canvas.rast, '8BUI', 240) As rast, bnum, descrip
                FROM mygeoms AS m CROSS JOIN canvas
UNION ALL
SELECT canvas.rast, 4, 'canvas'
FROM canvas;
-- Map algebra on single band rasters and then collect with ST_AddBand
INSERT INTO map_shapes(rast,bnum,descrip)
SELECT ST_AddBand(ST_AddBand(rasts[1], rasts[2]), rasts[3]), 4, 'map bands overlay fct union \leftrightarrow
    (canvas)'
  FROM (SELECT ARRAY (SELECT ST_MapAlgebraFct (m1.rast, m2.rast,
      'raster_mapalgebra_union(double precision, double precision, integer[], text[])':: \leftarrow
          regprocedure, '8BUI', 'FIRST')
                FROM map_shapes As m1 CROSS JOIN map_shapes As m2
  WHERE m1.descrip = 'canvas' AND m2.descrip <> 'canvas' ORDER BY m2.bnum) As rasts) As foo ↔
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 564 / 791



User Defined function that takes extra args

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION raster_mapalgebra_userargs(
  rast1 double precision,
  rast2 double precision,
    pos integer[],
  VARIADIC userargs text[]
 RETURNS double precision
  AS $$
  DECLARE
  BEGIN
    CASE
      WHEN rast1 IS NOT NULL AND rast2 IS NOT NULL THEN
        RETURN least(userargs[1]::integer, (rast1 + rast2)/2.);
      WHEN rast1 IS NULL AND rast2 IS NULL THEN
       RETURN userargs[2]::integer;
      WHEN rast1 IS NULL THEN
       RETURN greatest(rast2, random() *userargs[3]::integer)::integer;
        RETURN greatest(rast1, random()*userargs[4]::integer)::integer;
    END CASE;
    RETURN NULL;
  END;
  $$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql' VOLATILE COST 1000;
SELECT ST_MapAlgebraFct(m1.rast, 1, m1.rast, 3,
      "raster\_mapalgebra\_userargs(double\ precision,\ double\ precision,\ integer[],\ text[])":: \ \hookleftarrow
         regprocedure,
        '8BUI', 'INTERSECT', '100','200','200','0')
                FROM map_shapes As m1
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 565 / 791

WHERE ml.descrip = 'map bands overlay fct union (canvas)';



user defined with extra args and different bands from same raster

See Also

ST_MapAlgebraExpr, ST_BandPixelType, ST_GeoReference, ST_SetValue

9.11.1.10 ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb

ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb — 1-band version: Map Algebra Nearest Neighbor using user-defined PostgreSQL function. Return a raster which values are the result of a PLPGSQL user function involving a neighborhood of values from the input raster band.

Synopsis

raster **ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb**(raster rast, integer band, text pixeltype, integer ngbwidth, integer ngbheight, regprocedure onerastngbuserfunc, text nodatamode, text[] VARIADIC args);

Description



Warning

ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb is deprecated as of 2.1.0. Use ST_MapAlgebra instead.

(one raster version) Return a raster which values are the result of a PLPGSQL user function involving a neighborhood of values from the input raster band. The user function takes the neighborhood of pixel values as an array of numbers, for each pixel, returns the result from the user function, replacing pixel value of currently inspected pixel with the function result.

rast Raster on which the user function is evaluated.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 566 / 791

band Band number of the raster to be evaluated. Default to 1.

pixeltype The resulting pixel type of the output raster. Must be one listed in ST_BandPixelType or left out or set to NULL. If not passed in or set to NULL, will default to the pixeltype of the rast. Results are truncated if they are larger than what is allowed for the pixeltype.

ngbwidth The width of the neighborhood, in cells.

ngbheight The height of the neighborhood, in cells.

onerastngbuserfunc PLPGSQL/psql user function to apply to neighborhood pixels of a single band of a raster. The first element is a 2-dimensional array of numbers representing the rectangular pixel neighborhood

nodatamode Defines what value to pass to the function for a neighborhood pixel that is nodata or NULL

'ignore': any NODATA values encountered in the neighborhood are ignored by the computation -- this flag must be sent to the user callback function, and the user function decides how to ignore it.

'NULL': any NODATA values encountered in the neighborhood will cause the resulting pixel to be NULL -- the user callback function is skipped in this case.

'value': any NODATA values encountered in the neighborhood are replaced by the reference pixel (the one in the center of the neighborhood). Note that if this value is NODATA, the behavior is the same as 'NULL' (for the affected neighborhood)

args Arguments to pass into the user function.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

Examples utilize the katrina raster loaded as a single tile described in http://trac.osgeo.org/gdal/wiki/frmts_wtkraster.html and then prepared in the ST_Rescale examples

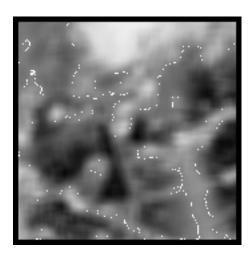
```
-- A simple 'callback' user function that averages up all the values in a neighborhood.
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION rast_avg(matrix float[][], nodatamode text, variadic args text ←
   [])
    RETURNS float AS
    $$
    DECLARE
    _matrix float[][];
       x1 integer;
       x2 integer;
       y1 integer;
        y2 integer;
        sum float;
    BEGIN
    _matrix := matrix;
        sum := 0;
        FOR x in array_lower(matrix, 1)..array_upper(matrix, 1) LOOP
            FOR y in array_lower(matrix, 2)..array_upper(matrix, 2) LOOP
                sum := sum + _matrix[x][y];
            END LOOP;
        END LOOP:
        RETURN (sum*1.0/(array_upper(matrix,1)*array_upper(matrix,2) ))::integer ;
    END:
    $$
LANGUAGE 'plpgsql' IMMUTABLE COST 1000;
-- now we apply to our raster averaging pixels within 2 pixels of each other in X and Y
   direction --
SELECT ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb(rast, 1, '8BUI', 4,4,
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 567 / 791

'rast_avg(float[][], text, text[])'::regprocedure, 'NULL', NULL) As nn_with_border
FROM katrinas_rescaled
limit 1;



First band of our raster



new raster after averaging pixels withing 4x4 pixels of each other

See Also

ST_MapAlgebraFct, ST_MapAlgebraExpr, ST_Rescale

9.11.1.11 ST_Reclass

ST_Reclass — Creates a new raster composed of band types reclassified from original. The nband is the band to be changed. If nband is not specified assumed to be 1. All other bands are returned unchanged. Use case: convert a 16BUI band to a 8BUI and so forth for simpler rendering as viewable formats.

Synopsis

raster **ST_Reclass**(raster rast, integer nband, text reclassexpr, text pixeltype, double precision nodataval=NULL); raster **ST_Reclass**(raster rast, reclassarg[] VARIADIC reclassargset);

raster **ST_Reclass**(raster rast, text reclassexpr, text pixeltype);

Description

Creates a new raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL algebraic operation defined by the reclassexpr on the input raster (rast). If no band is specified band 1 is assumed. The new raster will have the same georeference, width, and height as the original raster. Bands not designated will come back unchanged. Refer to reclassarg for description of valid reclassification expressions.

The bands of the new raster will have pixel type of pixeltype. If reclassargset is passed in then each reclassarg defines behavior of each band generated.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 568 / 791

Examples Basic

Create a new raster from the original where band 2 is converted from 8BUI to 4BUI and all values from 101-254 are set to nodata value

```
ALTER TABLE dummy_rast ADD COLUMN reclass_rast raster;
UPDATE dummy_rast SET reclass_rast = ST_Reclass(rast,2,'0-87:1-10, 88-100:11-15, \leftrightarrow
   101-254:0-0', '4BUI',0) WHERE rid = 2;
SELECT i as col, j as row, ST_Value(rast,2,i,j) As origval,
   ST_Value(reclass_rast, 2, i, j) As reclassval,
    ST_Value(reclass_rast, 2, i, j, false) As reclassval_include_nodata
FROM dummy_rast CROSS JOIN generate_series(1, 3) AS i CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,3) AS j
WHERE rid = 2;
col | row | origval | reclassval | reclassval_include_nodata
                  78 |
                                                            9
  1 | 1 |
                               9 |
                 98 |
                               14 I
  2 | 1 |
                                                           14
  3 |
        1 |
               122 |
                                                            0
  1 |
                 96 |
                               14 |
                                                           14
        2. 1
   2 |
        2 |
                 118 |
                                                            0
                                  3 1
         2 |
                 180 |
                                                            0
  1 |
        3 |
                 99 |
                               15 |
                                                           15
  2 |
        3 |
                 112 |
                                                            0
   3 |
         3 |
                 169 |
                                                            0
```

Example: Advanced using multiple reclassargs

Create a new raster from the original where band 1,2,3 is converted to 1BB,4BUI, 4BUI respectively and reclassified. Note this uses the variadic reclassarg argument which can take as input an indefinite number of reclassargs (theoretically as many bands as you have)

```
UPDATE dummy_rast SET reclass_rast =
   ST_Reclass (rast,
       ROW(2,'0-87]:1-10, (87-100]:11-15, (101-254]:0-0', '4BUI', NULL)::reclassarg,
       ROW(1,'0-253]:1, 254:0', '1BB', NULL)::reclassarg,
       ROW(3,'0-70]:1, (70-86:2, [86-150):3, [150-255:4', '4BUI', NULL)::reclassarg
       ) WHERE rid = 2;
SELECT i as col, j as row, ST_Value(rast,1,i,j) As ov1, ST_Value(reclass_rast, 1, i, j) As \leftrightarrow
   ST_Value(rast,2,i,j) As ov2, ST_Value(reclass_rast, 2, i, j) As rv2,
   ST_Value(rast,3,i,j) As ov3, ST_Value(reclass_rast, 3, i, j) As rv3
FROM dummy_rast CROSS JOIN generate_series(1, 3) AS i CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,3) AS j
WHERE rid = 2;
col | row | ov1 | rv1 | ov2 | rv2 | ov3 | rv3
       1 | 253 | 1 | 78 |
                             9 | 70 |
       1 | 254 | 0 | 98 | 14 | 86 |
       1 | 253 |
                  1 | 122 |
                              0 | 100 |
 3 |
       2 | 253 |
                  1 | 96 | 14 | 80 |
 1 |
 2 |
       2 | 254 | 0 | 118 |
                             0 | 108 |
 3 |
       2 | 254 |
                  0 | 180 |
                             0 | 162 |
 1 |
       3 | 250 |
                  1 | 99 | 15 | 90 |
 2 | 3 | 254 |
                  0 | 112 | 0 | 108 |
 3 |
       3 | 254 |
                  0 | 169 | 0 | 175 |
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 569 / 791

Example: Advanced Map a single band 32BF raster to multiple viewable bands

Create a new 3 band (8BUI,8BUI,8BUI viewable raster) from a raster that has only one 32bf band

```
ALTER TABLE wind ADD COLUMN rast_view raster;

UPDATE wind

set rast_view = ST_AddBand( NULL,

ARRAY[

ST_Reclass(rast, 1,'0.1-10]:1-10,9-10]:11,(11-33:0'::text, '8BUI'::text,0),

ST_Reclass(rast,1, '11-33):0-255,[0-32:0,(34-1000:0'::text, '8BUI'::text,0),

ST_Reclass(rast,1,'0-32]:0,(32-100:100-255'::text, '8BUI'::text,0)

]

);
```

See Also

ST_AddBand, ST_Band, ST_BandPixelType, ST_MakeEmptyRaster, reclassarg, ST_Value

9.11.1.12 ST_Union

ST_Union — Returns the union of a set of raster tiles into a single raster composed of 1 or more bands.

Synopsis

```
raster ST_Union(setof raster rast);
raster ST_Union(setof raster rast, unionarg[] unionargset);
raster ST_Union(setof raster rast, integer nband);
raster ST_Union(setof raster rast, text uniontype);
raster ST_Union(setof raster rast, integer nband, text uniontype);
```

Description

Returns the union of a set of raster tiles into a single raster composed of at least one band. The resulting raster's extent is the extent of the whole set. In the case of intersection, the resulting value is defined by uniontype which is one of the following: LAST (default), FIRST, MIN, MAX, COUNT, SUM, MEAN, RANGE.



Note

In order for rasters to be unioned, they most all have the same alignment. Use ST_SameAlignment and ST_NotSameAlignmentReason for more details and help. One way to fix alignment issues is to use ST_Resample and use the same reference raster for alignment.

Availability: 2.0.0

Enhanced: 2.1.0 Improved Speed (fully C-Based).

Availability: 2.1.0 ST_Union(rast, unionarg) variant was introduced.

Enhanced: 2.1.0 ST_Union(rast) (variant 1) unions all bands of all input rasters. Prior versions of PostGIS assumed the first band.

Enhanced: 2.1.0 ST_Union(rast, uniontype) (variant 4) unions all bands of all input rasters.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 570 / 791

Examples: Reconstitute a single band chunked raster tile

```
-- this creates a single band from first band of raster tiles
-- that form the original file system tile
SELECT filename, ST_Union(rast,1) As file_rast
FROM sometable WHERE filename IN('dem01', 'dem02') GROUP BY filename;
```

Examples: Return a multi-band raster that is the union of tiles intersecting geometry

```
-- this creates a multi band raster collecting all the tiles that intersect a line
-- Note: In 2.0, this would have just returned a single band raster
-- , new union works on all bands by default
-- this is equivalent to unionarg: ARRAY[ROW(1, 'LAST'), ROW(2, 'LAST'), ROW(3, 'LAST')]:: 
unionarg[]
SELECT ST_Union(rast)
FROM aerials.boston
WHERE ST_Intersects(rast, ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(230486 887771, 230500 88772)',26986) 
);
```

Examples: Return a multi-band raster that is the union of tiles intersecting geometry

Here we use the longer syntax if we only wanted a subset of bands or we want to change order of bands

```
-- this creates a multi band raster collecting all the tiles that intersect a line SELECT ST_Union(rast,ARRAY[ROW(2, 'LAST'), ROW(1, 'LAST'), ROW(3, 'LAST')]::unionarg[]) FROM aerials.boston WHERE ST_Intersects(rast, ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(230486 887771, 230500 88772)',26986) \(\rightarrow\);
```

See Also

unionarg, ST_Envelope, ST_ConvexHull, ST_Clip, ST_Union

9.11.2 Built-in Map Algebra Callback Functions

9.11.2.1 ST_Distinct4ma

ST_Distinct4ma — Raster processing function that calculates the number of unique pixel values in a neighborhood.

Synopsis

```
float8 ST_Distinct4ma(float8[][] matrix, text nodatamode, text[] VARIADIC args); double precision ST_Distinct4ma(double precision[][][] value, integer[][] pos, text[] VARIADIC userargs);
```

Description

Calculate the number of unique pixel values in a neighborhood of pixels.



Note

Variant 1 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 571 / 791



Note

Variant 2 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebra.



Warning

Use of Variant 1 is discouraged since ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb has been deprecated as of 2.1.0.

Availability: 2.0.0

Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of Variant 2

Examples

See Also

ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb, ST_MapAlgebra, ST_Min4ma, ST_Max4ma, ST_Sum4ma, ST_Mean4ma, ST_Distinct4ma, ST_StdDev4ma

9.11.2.2 ST_InvDistWeight4ma

ST_InvDistWeight4ma — Raster processing function that interpolates a pixel's value from the pixel's neighborhood.

Synopsis

double precision ST_InvDistWeight4ma(double precision[][][] value, integer[][] pos, text[] VARIADIC userargs);

Description

Calculate an interpolated value for a pixel using the Inverse Distance Weighted method.

There are two optional parameters that can be passed through userargs. The first parameter is the power factor (variable k in the equation below) between 0 and 1 used in the Inverse Distance Weighted equation. If not specified, default value is 1. The second parameter is the weight percentage applied only when the value of the pixel of interest is included with the interpolated value from the neighborhood. If not specified and the pixel of interest has a value, that value is returned.

The basic inverse distance weight equation is:

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 572 / 791

$$\hat{z}(x_o) = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^{m} z(x_j) d_{ij}^{-k}}{\sum_{j=1}^{m} d_{ij}^{-k}}$$

k = power factor, a real number between 0 and 1



Note

This function is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebra.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

-- NEEDS EXAMPLE

See Also

ST_MapAlgebra, ST_MinDist4ma

9.11.2.3 ST_Max4ma

ST_Max4ma — Raster processing function that calculates the maximum pixel value in a neighborhood.

Synopsis

float8 **ST_Max4ma**(float8[][] matrix, text nodatamode, text[] VARIADIC args); double precision **ST_Max4ma**(double precision[][][] value, integer[][] pos, text[] VARIADIC userargs);

Description

Calculate the maximum pixel value in a neighborhood of pixels.

For Variant 2, a substitution value for NODATA pixels can be specified by passing that value to userargs.



Note

Variant 1 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb.



Note

Variant 2 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebra.



Warning

Use of Variant 1 is discouraged since ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb has been deprecated as of 2.1.0.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 573 / 791

Examples

See Also

 $ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb, ST_MapAlgebra, ST_Min4ma, ST_Sum4ma, ST_Mean4ma, ST_Range4ma, ST_Distinct4ma, ST_StdDev4ma, ST_NapAlgebraFctNgb, ST_MapAlgebra, ST_Min4ma, ST_StdDev4ma, ST_NapAlgebra, ST_NapAlge$

9.11.2.4 ST_Mean4ma

ST_Mean4ma — Raster processing function that calculates the mean pixel value in a neighborhood.

Synopsis

float8 **ST_Mean4ma**(float8[][] matrix, text nodatamode, text[] VARIADIC args); double precision **ST_Mean4ma**(double precision[][][] value, integer[][] pos, text[] VARIADIC userargs);

Description

Calculate the mean pixel value in a neighborhood of pixels.

For Variant 2, a substitution value for NODATA pixels can be specified by passing that value to userargs.



Note

Variant 1 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST MapAlgebraFctNgb.



Note

Variant 2 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebra.



Warning

Use of Variant 1 is discouraged since ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb has been deprecated as of 2.1.0.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 574 / 791

Examples: Variant 1

Examples: Variant 2

See Also

ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb, ST_MapAlgebra, ST_Min4ma, ST_Max4ma, ST_Sum4ma, ST_Range4ma, ST_StdDev4ma

9.11.2.5 ST_Min4ma

ST_Min4ma — Raster processing function that calculates the minimum pixel value in a neighborhood.

Synopsis

float8 **ST_Min4ma**(float8[][] matrix, text nodatamode, text[] VARIADIC args); double precision **ST_Min4ma**(double precision[][][] value, integer[][] pos, text[] VARIADIC userargs);

Description

Calculate the minimum pixel value in a neighborhood of pixels.

For Variant 2, a substitution value for NODATA pixels can be specified by passing that value to userargs.



Note

Variant 1 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 575 / 791



Note

Variant 2 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebra.



Warning

Use of Variant 1 is discouraged since ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb has been deprecated as of 2.1.0.

Availability: 2.0.0

Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of Variant 2

Examples

See Also

ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb, ST_MapAlgebra, ST_Max4ma, ST_Sum4ma, ST_Mean4ma, ST_Range4ma, ST_Distinct4ma, ST_StdDev4ma, ST_NapAlgebraFctNgb, ST_MapAlgebra, ST_Max4ma, ST_StdDev4ma, ST_Max4ma, ST_NapAlgebra, S

9.11.2.6 ST_MinDist4ma

ST_MinDist4ma — Raster processing function that returns the minimum distance (in number of pixels) between the pixel of interest and a neighboring pixel with value.

Synopsis

double precision **ST_MinDist4ma**(double precision[][][] value, integer[][] pos, text[] VARIADIC userargs);

Description

Return the shortest distance (in number of pixels) between the pixel of interest and the closest pixel with value in the neighborhood.



Note

The intent of this function is to provide an informative data point that helps infer the usefulness of the pixel of interest's interpolated value from ST_InvDistWeight4ma. This function is particularly useful when the neighborhood is sparsely populated.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 576 / 791



Note

This function is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebra.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

-- NEEDS EXAMPLE

See Also

ST_MapAlgebra, ST_InvDistWeight4ma

9.11.2.7 ST_Range4ma

ST_Range4ma — Raster processing function that calculates the range of pixel values in a neighborhood.

Synopsis

float8 **ST_Range4ma**(float8[][] matrix, text nodatamode, text[] VARIADIC args); double precision **ST_Range4ma**(double precision[][][] value, integer[][] pos, text[] VARIADIC userargs);

Description

Calculate the range of pixel values in a neighborhood of pixels.

For Variant 2, a substitution value for NODATA pixels can be specified by passing that value to userargs.



Note

Variant 1 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb.



Note

Variant 2 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebra.



Warning

Use of Variant 1 is discouraged since ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb has been deprecated as of 2.1.0.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 577 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb, ST_MapAlgebra, ST_Min4ma, ST_Max4ma, ST_Sum4ma, ST_Mean4ma, ST_Distinct4ma, ST_StdDev4ma

9.11.2.8 ST_StdDev4ma

ST_StdDev4ma — Raster processing function that calculates the standard deviation of pixel values in a neighborhood.

Synopsis

float8 **ST_StdDev4ma**(float8[][] matrix, text nodatamode, text[] VARIADIC args); double precision **ST_StdDev4ma**(double precision[][][] value, integer[][] pos, text[] VARIADIC userargs);

Description

Calculate the standard deviation of pixel values in a neighborhood of pixels.



Note

Variant 1 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb.



Note

Variant 2 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebra.



Warning

Use of Variant 1 is discouraged since ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb has been deprecated as of 2.1.0.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 578 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb, ST_MapAlgebra, ST_Min4ma, ST_Max4ma, ST_Sum4ma, ST_Mean4ma, ST_Distinct4ma, ST_StdDev4ma

9.11.2.9 ST_Sum4ma

ST_Sum4ma — Raster processing function that calculates the sum of all pixel values in a neighborhood.

Synopsis

float8 **ST_Sum4ma**(float8[][] matrix, text nodatamode, text[] VARIADIC args); double precision **ST_Sum4ma**(double precision[][][] value, integer[][] pos, text[] VARIADIC userargs);

Description

Calculate the sum of all pixel values in a neighborhood of pixels.

For Variant 2, a substitution value for NODATA pixels can be specified by passing that value to userargs.



Note

Variant 1 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST MapAlgebraFctNgb.



Note

Variant 2 is a specialized callback function for use as a callback parameter to ST_MapAlgebra.



Warning

Use of Variant 1 is discouraged since ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb has been deprecated as of 2.1.0.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 579 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb, ST_MapAlgebra, ST_Min4ma, ST_Max4ma, ST_Mean4ma, ST_Range4ma, ST_Distinct4ma, ST_StdDev4m

9.11.3 DEM (Elevation)

9.11.3.1 ST_Aspect

ST_Aspect — Returns the aspect (in degrees by default) of an elevation raster band. Useful for analyzing terrain.

Synopsis

raster **ST_Aspect**(raster rast, integer band=1, text pixeltype=32BF, text units=DEGREES, boolean interpolate_nodata=FALSE); raster **ST_Aspect**(raster rast, integer band, raster customextent, text pixeltype=32BF, text units=DEGREES, boolean interpolate_nodata=FALSE);

Description

Returns the aspect (in degrees by default) of an elevation raster band. Utilizes map algebra and applies the aspect equation to neighboring pixels.

units indicates the units of the aspect. Possible values are: RADIANS, DEGREES (default).

When units = RADIANS, values are between 0 and 2 * pi radians measured clockwise from North.

When units = DEGREES, values are between 0 and 360 degrees measured clockwise from North.

If slope of pixel is zero, aspect of pixel is -1.



Note

For more information about Slope, Aspect and Hillshade, please refer to ESRI - How hillshade works and ERDAS Field Guide - Aspect Images.

Availability: 2.0.0

Enhanced: 2.1.0 Uses ST_MapAlgebra() and added optional interpolate_nodata function parameter

Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, return values were in radians. Now, return values default to degrees

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 580 / 791

Examples: Variant 1

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT ST_SetValues(
    ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(5, 5, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '32BF', 0, -9999),
    1, 1, 1, ARRAY[
      [1, 1, 1, 1, 1],
      [1, 2, 2, 2, 1],
      [1, 2, 3, 2, 1],
      [1, 2, 2, 2, 1],
     [1, 1, 1, 1, 1]
    ]::double precision[][]
  ) AS rast
SELECT
  ST_DumpValues(ST_Aspect(rast, 1, '32BF'))
FROM foo
 (1, "{{315,341.565063476562,0,18.4349479675293,45},{288.434936523438,315,0,45,71.5650482177734},{270
2227, 180, 161.565048217773, 135}}")
(1 row)
```

Examples: Variant 2

Complete example of tiles of a coverage. This query only works with PostgreSQL 9.1 or higher.

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT ST_Tile(
    ST_SetValues(
      ST_AddBand(
        ST_MakeEmptyRaster(6, 6, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
        1, '32BF', 0, -9999
      ),
      1, 1, 1, ARRAY[
        [1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1],
        [1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1],
        [1, 2, 2, 3, 3, 1],
        [1, 1, 3, 2, 1, 1],
        [1, 2, 2, 1, 2, 1],
        [1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1]
      ]::double precision[]
    ),
    2, 2
  ) AS rast
SELECT
  t1.rast,
 ST_Aspect(ST_Union(t2.rast), 1, t1.rast)
FROM foo t1
CROSS JOIN foo t2
WHERE ST_Intersects(t1.rast, t2.rast)
GROUP BY t1.rast;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 581 / 791

See Also

ST_MapAlgebra, ST_TRI, ST_TPI, ST_Roughness, ST_HillShade, ST_Slope

9.11.3.2 ST_HillShade

ST_HillShade — Returns the hypothetical illumination of an elevation raster band using provided azimuth, altitude, brightness and scale inputs.

Synopsis

raster **ST_HillShade**(raster rast, integer band=1, text pixeltype=32BF, double precision azimuth=315, double precision altitude=45, double precision max_bright=255, double precision scale=1.0, boolean interpolate_nodata=FALSE); raster **ST_HillShade**(raster rast, integer band, raster customextent, text pixeltype=32BF, double precision azimuth=315, double precision altitude=45, double precision max_bright=255, double precision scale=1.0, boolean interpolate_nodata=FALSE);

Description

Returns the hypothetical illumination of an elevation raster band using the azimuth, altitude, brightness, and scale inputs. Utilizes map algebra and applies the hill shade equation to neighboring pixels. Return pixel values are between 0 and 255.

azimuth is a value between 0 and 360 degrees measured clockwise from North.

altitude is a value between 0 and 90 degrees where 0 degrees is at the horizon and 90 degrees is directly overhead.

max_bright is a value between 0 and 255 with 0 as no brightness and 255 as max brightness.

scale is the ratio of vertical units to horizontal. For Feet:LatLon use scale=370400, for Meters:LatLon use scale=111120.

If interpolate_nodata is TRUE, values for NODATA pixels from the input raster will be interpolated using ST_InvDistWeight4ma before computing the hillshade illumination.



Note

For more information about Hillshade, please refer to How hillshade works.

Availability: 2.0.0

Enhanced: 2.1.0 Uses ST MapAlgebra() and added optional interpolate nodata function parameter

Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, azimuth and altitude were expressed in radians. Now, azimuth and altitude are expressed in degrees

Examples: Variant 1

```
WITH foo AS (
    SELECT ST_SetValues(
    ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(5, 5, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '32BF', 0, -9999),
    1, 1, 1, ARRAY[
       [1, 1, 1, 1],
       [1, 2, 2, 2, 1],
       [1, 2, 3, 2, 1],
       [1, 1, 1, 1, 1]
    ]::double precision[][]
) AS rast
)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 582 / 791

```
SELECT
ST_DumpValues(ST_Hillshade(rast, 1, '32BF'))
FROM foo

(1,"{{NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL}, {NULL, 251.32763671875, 220.749786376953, 147.224319458008, ←
NULL}, {NULL, 220.749786376953, 180.312225341797, 67.7497863769531, NULL}, {NULL ←
,147.224319458008
,67.7497863769531, 43.1210060119629, NULL}, {NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL}}")
(1 row)
```

Examples: Variant 2

Complete example of tiles of a coverage. This query only works with PostgreSQL 9.1 or higher.

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT ST_Tile(
    ST_SetValues(
      ST_AddBand(
        ST_MakeEmptyRaster(6, 6, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
        1, '32BF', 0, -9999
      ),
      1, 1, 1, ARRAY[
        [1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1],
        [1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1],
        [1, 2, 2, 3, 3, 1],
        [1, 1, 3, 2, 1, 1],
        [1, 2, 2, 1, 2, 1],
        [1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1]
      ]::double precision[]
    ),
    2, 2
  ) AS rast
SELECT
  t1.rast,
  ST_Hillshade(ST_Union(t2.rast), 1, t1.rast)
FROM foo t1
CROSS JOIN foo t2
WHERE ST_Intersects(t1.rast, t2.rast)
GROUP BY t1.rast;
```

See Also

ST_MapAlgebra, ST_TRI, ST_TPI, ST_Roughness, ST_Aspect, ST_Slope

9.11.3.3 ST_Roughness

ST Roughness — Returns a raster with the calculated "roughness" of a DEM.

Synopsis

raster **ST_Roughness**(raster rast, integer nband, raster customextent, text pixeltype="32BF", boolean interpolate_nodata=FALSE);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 583 / 791

Description

Calculates the "roughness" of a DEM, by subtracting the maximum from the minimum for a given area.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

-- needs examples

See Also

ST_MapAlgebra, ST_TRI, ST_TPI, ST_Slope, ST_HillShade, ST_Aspect

9.11.3.4 ST_Slope

ST_Slope — Returns the slope (in degrees by default) of an elevation raster band. Useful for analyzing terrain.

Synopsis

raster **ST_Slope**(raster rast, integer nband=1, text pixeltype=32BF, text units=DEGREES, double precision scale=1.0, boolean interpolate_nodata=FALSE);

raster **ST_Slope**(raster rast, integer nband, raster customextent, text pixeltype=32BF, text units=DEGREES, double precision scale=1.0, boolean interpolate_nodata=FALSE);

Description

Returns the slope (in degrees by default) of an elevation raster band. Utilizes map algebra and applies the slope equation to neighboring pixels.

units indicates the units of the slope. Possible values are: RADIANS, DEGREES (default), PERCENT.

scale is the ratio of vertical units to horizontal. For Feet:LatLon use scale=370400, for Meters:LatLon use scale=111120.

If interpolate_nodata is TRUE, values for NODATA pixels from the input raster will be interpolated using ST_InvDistWeight4ma before computing the surface slope.



Note

For more information about Slope, Aspect and Hillshade, please refer to ESRI - How hillshade works and ERDAS Field Guide - Slope Images.

Availability: 2.0.0

Enhanced: 2.1.0 Uses ST_MapAlgebra() and added optional units, scale, interpolate_nodata function parameters

Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, return values were in radians. Now, return values default to degrees

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 584 / 791

Examples: Variant 1

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT ST_SetValues(
    ST_AddBand(ST_MakeEmptyRaster(5, 5, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0), 1, '32BF', 0, -9999),
    1, 1, 1, ARRAY[
      [1, 1, 1, 1, 1],
      [1, 2, 2, 2, 1],
      [1, 2, 3, 2, 1],
      [1, 2, 2, 2, 1],
      [1, 1, 1, 1, 1]
    ]::double precision[][]
  ) AS rast
SELECT
  ST_DumpValues(ST_Slope(rast, 1, '32BF'))
FROM foo
                            st_dumpvalues
 (1, "{{10.0249881744385,21.5681285858154,26.5650520324707,21.5681285858154,10.0249881744385},{21.568
{26.5650520324707,36.8698959350586,0,36.8698959350586,26.5650520324707},{21.5681285858154,35.2643890
5681285858154,26.5650520324707,21.5681285858154,10.0249881744385}}")
(1 row)
```

Examples: Variant 2

Complete example of tiles of a coverage. This query only works with PostgreSQL 9.1 or higher.

```
WITH foo AS (
  SELECT ST_Tile(
    ST_SetValues(
      ST_AddBand(
        ST_MakeEmptyRaster(6, 6, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0),
        1, '32BF', 0, -9999
      ),
      1, 1, 1, ARRAY[
        [1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1],
        [1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1],
        [1, 2, 2, 3, 3, 1],
        [1, 1, 3, 2, 1, 1],
        [1, 2, 2, 1, 2, 1],
        [1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1]
      ]::double precision[]
    ),
    2, 2
  ) AS rast
)
SELECT
 t1.rast,
  ST_Slope(ST_Union(t2.rast), 1, t1.rast)
FROM foo t1
CROSS JOIN foo t2
WHERE ST_Intersects(t1.rast, t2.rast)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 585 / 791

GROUP BY t1.rast;

See Also

 $ST_MapAlgebra, ST_TRI, ST_TPI, ST_Roughness, ST_HillShade, ST_Aspect$

9.11.3.5 ST_TPI

ST_TPI — Returns a raster with the calculated Topographic Position Index.

Synopsis

raster **ST_TPI**(raster rast, integer nband, raster customextent, text pixeltype="32BF", boolean interpolate_nodata=FALSE);

Description

Calculates the Topographic Position Index, which is defined as the folcal mean with radius of one minus the center cell.



Note

This function only supports a focalmean radius of one.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

-- needs examples

See Also

ST_MapAlgebra, ST_TRI, ST_Roughness, ST_Slope, ST_HillShade, ST_Aspect

9.11.3.6 ST_TRI

ST_TRI — Returns a raster with the calculated Terrain Ruggedness Index.

Synopsis

raster **ST_TRI**(raster rast, integer nband, raster customextent, text pixeltype="32BF", boolean interpolate_nodata=FALSE);

Description

Terrain Ruggedness Index is calculated by comparing a central pixel with its neighbors, taking the absolute values of the differences, and averaging the result.



Note

This function only supports a focalmean radius of one.

Availability: 2.1.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 586 / 791

Examples

```
-- needs examples
```

See Also

```
ST_MapAlgebra, ST_Roughness, ST_TPI, ST_Slope, ST_HillShade, ST_Aspect
```

9.11.4 Raster to Geometry

9.11.4.1 Box3D

Box3D — Returns the box 3d representation of the enclosing box of the raster.

Synopsis

box3d **Box3D**(raster rast);

Description

Returns the box representing the extent of the raster.

The polygon is defined by the corner points of the bounding box ((MINX, MINY), (MAXX, MAXY))

Changed: 2.0.0 In pre-2.0 versions, there used to be a box2d instead of box3d. Since box2d is a deprecated type, this was changed to box3d.

Examples

See Also

ST_Envelope

9.11.4.2 ST_ConvexHull

ST_ConvexHull — Return the convex hull geometry of the raster including pixel values equal to BandNoDataValue. For regular shaped and non-skewed rasters, this gives the same result as ST_Envelope so only useful for irregularly shaped or skewed rasters.

Synopsis

geometry ST_ConvexHull(raster rast);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 587 / 791

Description

Return the convex hull geometry of the raster including the NoDataBandValue band pixels. For regular shaped and non-skewed rasters, this gives more or less the same result as ST_Envelope so only useful for irregularly shaped or skewed rasters.



Note

ST_Envelope floors the coordinates and hence add a little buffer around the raster so the answer is subtly different from ST_ConvexHull which does not floor.

Examples

Refer to PostGIS Raster Specification for a diagram of this.

```
-- Note envelope and convexhull are more or less the same

SELECT ST_ASText(ST_ConvexHull(rast)) As convhull,

ST_ASText(ST_Envelope(rast)) As env

FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=1;

convhull | env

POLYGON((0.5 0.5,20.5 0.5,20.5 60.5,0.5 60.5,0.5 0.5)) | POLYGON((0 0,20 0,20 60,0 60,0 0) \( \to \) \)

-- now we skew the raster
-- note how the convex hull and envelope are now different

SELECT ST_ASText(ST_ConvexHull(rast)) As convhull,

ST_ASText(ST_Envelope(rast)) As env

FROM (SELECT ST_SetRotation(rast, 0.1, 0.1) As rast

FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid=1) As foo;

convhull | env
```

See Also

ST_Envelope, ST_MinConvexHull, ST_ConvexHull, ST_AsText

9.11.4.3 ST_DumpAsPolygons

ST_DumpAsPolygons — Returns a set of geomval (geom,val) rows, from a given raster band. If no band number is specified, band num defaults to 1.

 $\texttt{POLYGON((0.5\ 0.5,20.5\ 1.5,22.5\ 61.5,2.5\ 60.5,0.5\ 0.5))} \ | \ \texttt{POLYGON((0\ 0,22\ 0,22\ 61,0\ 61,0\ 0))} \ \leftrightarrow \ \texttt{POLYGON((0\ 0,22\ 0,22\ 61,0\ 61,0\ 0))}$

Synopsis

setof geomval **ST_DumpAsPolygons**(raster rast, integer band_num=1, boolean exclude_nodata_value=TRUE);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 588 / 791

Description

This is a set-returning function (SRF). It returns a set of geomval rows, formed by a geometry (geom) and a pixel band value (val). Each polygon is the union of all pixels for that band that have the same pixel value denoted by val.

ST_DumpAsPolygon is useful for polygonizing rasters. It is the reverse of a GROUP BY in that it creates new rows. For example it can be used to expand a single raster into multiple POLYGONS/MULTIPOLYGONS.

Availability: Requires GDAL 1.7 or higher.



Note

If there is a no data value set for a band, pixels with that value will not be returned except in the case of exclude_nodata_value=false.



Note

If you only care about count of pixels with a given value in a raster, it is faster to use ST ValueCount.



Note

This is different than ST_PixelAsPolygons where one geometry is returned for each pixel regardless of pixel value.

Examples

```
SELECT val, ST_AsText (geom) As geomwkt
FROM (
SELECT (ST_DumpAsPolygons(rast)).*
FROM dummy_rast
WHERE rid = 2
) As foo
WHERE val BETWEEN 249 and 251
ORDER BY val;
 val |
                                                              geomwkt
 249 | POLYGON((3427927.95 5793243.95,3427927.95 5793243.85,3427928 5793243.85,
    3427928 5793243.95,3427927.95 5793243.95))
 250 | POLYGON((3427927.75 5793243.9,3427927.75 5793243.85,3427927.8 5793243.85,
    3427927.8 5793243.9, 3427927.75 5793243.9))
 250 | POLYGON((3427927.8 5793243.8,3427927.8 5793243.75,3427927.85 5793243.75,
    3427927.85 5793243.8, 3427927.8 5793243.8))
 251 | POLYGON((3427927.75 5793243.85,3427927.75 5793243.8,3427927.8 5793243.8,
    3427927.8 5793243.85, 3427927.75 5793243.85))
```

See Also

geomval, ST_Value, ST_Polygon, ST_ValueCount

9.11.4.4 ST_Envelope

ST_Envelope — Returns the polygon representation of the extent of the raster.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 589 / 791

Synopsis

geometry ST_Envelope(raster rast);

Description

Returns the polygon representation of the extent of the raster in spatial coordinate units defined by srid. It is a float8 minimum bounding box represented as a polygon.

The polygon is defined by the corner points of the bounding box ((MINX, MINY), (MINX, MAXY), (MAXX, MAXY), (MAXX, MINY), (MINX, MINY))

Examples

See Also

ST_Envelope, ST_AsText, ST_SRID

9.11.4.5 ST_MinConvexHull

ST_MinConvexHull — Return the convex hull geometry of the raster excluding NODATA pixels.

Synopsis

geometry ST_MinConvexHull(raster rast, integer nband=NULL);

Description

Return the convex hull geometry of the raster excluding NODATA pixels. If nband is NULL, all bands of the raster are considered.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 590 / 791

```
[0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1],
         [0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0],
         [0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
         [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
         [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
         [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0]
       ]::double precision[][]
     ),
     2, 1, 1,
     ARRAY[
       [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
       [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
       [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
          Ο,
             0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0],
       [0,
          Ο,
             0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0],
       [0,
          0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0],
       [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
       [0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0],
       [0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0]
     ]::double precision[][]
   ) AS rast
SELECT
 ST_AsText(ST_ConvexHull(rast)) AS hull,
 ST_AsText(ST_MinConvexHull(rast)) AS mhull,
 ST_AsText(ST_MinConvexHull(rast, 1)) AS mhull_1,
 ST_AsText(ST_MinConvexHull(rast, 2)) AS mhull_2
FROM foo
             hull1
                                              mhull
              mhull_1
                                              mhull_2
-3,9 -6,3 -6,3 -3)) | POLYGON((0 <math>-3,6 -3,6 -9,0 -9,0 -3))
```

See Also

ST_Envelope, ST_ConvexHull, ST_ConvexHull, ST_AsText

9.11.4.6 ST_Polygon

ST_Polygon — Returns a multipolygon geometry formed by the union of pixels that have a pixel value that is not no data value. If no band number is specified, band num defaults to 1.

Synopsis

geometry **ST_Polygon**(raster rast, integer band_num=1);

Description

Availability: 0.1.6 Requires GDAL 1.7 or higher.

Enhanced: 2.1.0 Improved Speed (fully C-Based) and the returning multipolygon is ensured to be valid.

Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions would sometimes return a polygon, changed to always return multipolygon.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 591 / 791

Examples

```
-- by default no data band value is 0 or not set, so polygon will return a square polygon
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Polygon(rast)) As geomwkt
FROM dummy_rast
WHERE rid = 2;
geomwkt
5793243.75,3427927.75 5793244)))
-- now we change the no data value of first band
UPDATE dummy_rast SET rast = ST_SetBandNoDataValue(rast,1,254)
WHERE rid = 2;
SELECt rid, ST_BandNoDataValue(rast)
from dummy_rast where rid = 2;
-- ST_Polygon excludes the pixel value 254 and returns a multipolygon
SELECT ST_AsText(ST_Polygon(rast)) As geomwkt
FROM dummy_rast
WHERE rid = 2;
geomwkt
5793244,3427927.9 5793243.95)),((3427928 5793243.85,3427928 5793243.8,3427927.95 \leftrightarrow
   5793243.8,3427927.95 5793243.85,3427927.9 5793243.85,3427927.9 5793243.9,3427927.9 \leftrightarrow
   5793243.95,3427927.95 5793243.95,3427928 5793243.95,3427928 5793243.85)),((3427927.8
   5793243.75,3427927.75 \ 5793243.75,3427927.75 \ 5793243.8,3427927.75 \ 5793243.85,3427927.75 \ \leftrightarrow
   5793243.9,3427927.75 5793244,3427927.8 5793244,3427927.8 5793243.9,3427927.8
   5793243.85,3427927.85 5793243.85,3427927.85 5793243.8,3427927.85 5793243.75,3427927.8 \leftrightarrow
   5793243.75)))
-- Or if you want the no data value different for just one time
SELECT ST_AsText (
 ST_Polygon(
   ST_SetBandNoDataValue (rast, 1, 252)
 ) As geomwkt
FROM dummy rast
WHERE rid =2;
geomwkt
5793243.75,3427927.8 5793243.75,3427927.8 5793243.8,3427927.75 5793243.8,3427927.75
   5793243.85,3427927.75 5793243.9,3427927.75 5793244,3427927.8 5793244,3427927.85 \longleftrightarrow
   5793244,3427927.9\ 5793244,3427928\ 5793244,3427928\ 5793243.95,3427928\ 5793243.85)\ \hookleftarrow
   , (3427927.95793243.9, 3427927.95793243.85, 3427927.955793243.85, 3427927.95 \leftrightarrow
   5793243.9,3427927.9 5793243.9)))
```

See Also

ST_Value, ST_DumpAsPolygons

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 592 / 791

9.12 Raster Operators

9.12.1 &&

&& — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box intersects B's bounding box.

Synopsis

```
boolean &&( raster A , raster B );
boolean &&( raster A , geometry B );
boolean &&( geometry B , raster A );
```

Description

The && operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of raster/geometr A intersects the bounding box of raster/geometr B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

9.12.2 &<

 $\mbox{\&}\mbox{<}$ — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is to the left of B's.

Synopsis

boolean &<(raster A , raster B);

Description

The &< operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of raster A overlaps or is to the left of the bounding box of raster B, or more accurately, overlaps or is NOT to the right of the bounding box of raster B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 593 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT A.rid As a_rid, B.rid As b_rid, A.rast &< B.rast As overleft
FROM dummy_rast AS A CROSS JOIN dummy_rast AS B;
a_rid | b_rid | overleft
----+----
   2 |
         2 | t
         3 | f
   2 |
   2 |
         1 | f
   3 |
         2 | t
   3 |
         3 | t
   3 |
         1 | f
   1 |
         2 | t
          3 | t
   1 |
   1 | 1 | t
```

9.12.3 &>

&> — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is to the right of B's.

Synopsis

boolean &>(raster A , raster B);

Description

The &> operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of raster A overlaps or is to the right of the bounding box of raster B, or more accurately, overlaps or is NOT to the left of the bounding box of raster B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the geometries.

Examples

```
SELECT A.rid As a_rid, B.rid As b_rid, A.rast &> B.rast As overright
FROM dummy_rast AS A CROSS JOIN dummy_rast AS B;
a_rid | b_rid | overright
           2 | t
    2 |
          3 | t
    2 |
    2 |
           1 | t
    3 |
           2 | f
    3 |
           3 | t
    3 |
           1 | f
    1 |
            2 | f
    1 |
            3 | t
    1 |
            1 | t
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 594 / 791

9.12.4 =

= — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is the same as B's. Uses double precision bounding box.

Synopsis

```
boolean = ( raster A , raster B );
```

Description

The = operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of raster A is the same as the bounding box of raster B. PostgreSQL uses the =, <, and > operators defined for rasters to perform internal orderings and comparison of rasters (ie. in a GROUP BY or ORDER BY clause).



Caution

This operand will NOT make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters. Use ~= instead. This operator exists mostly so one can group by the raster column.

Availability: 2.1.0

See Also

~=

9.12.5 @

@ — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is contained by B's. Uses double precision bounding box.

Synopsis

```
boolean @( raster A , raster B );
boolean @( geometry A , raster B );
boolean @( raster B , geometry A );
```

Description

The @ operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of raster/geometry A is contained by bounding box of raster/geometr B.



Note

This operand will use spatial indexes on the rasters.

Availability: 2.0.0 raster @ raster, raster @ geometry introduced

Availability: 2.0.5 geometry @ raster introduced

See Also

~

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 595 / 791

9.12.6 ~=

~= — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is the same as B's.

Synopsis

```
boolean ~=( raster A , raster B );
```

Description

The ~= operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of raster A is the same as the bounding box of raster B.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

Very useful usecase is for taking two sets of single band rasters that are of the same chunk but represent different themes and creating a multi-band raster

```
SELECT ST_AddBand(prec.rast, alt.rast) As new_rast
FROM prec INNER JOIN alt ON (prec.rast ~= alt.rast);
```

See Also

ST_AddBand, =

9.12.7 ~

~ — Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is contains B's. Uses double precision bounding box.

Synopsis

```
boolean ~( raster A , raster B );
boolean ~( geometry A , raster B );
boolean ~( raster B , geometry A );
```

Description

The ~ operator returns TRUE if the bounding box of raster/geometry A is contains bounding box of raster/geometr B.



Note

This operand will use spatial indexes on the rasters.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 596 / 791

See Also

(a)

9.13 Raster and Raster Band Spatial Relationships

9.13.1 ST Contains

ST_Contains — Return true if no points of raster rastB lie in the exterior of raster rastA and at least one point of the interior of rastB lies in the interior of rastA.

Synopsis

```
boolean ST\_Contains( raster rastA , integer nbandA , raster rastB , integer nbandB ); boolean ST\_Contains( raster rastA , raster rastB );
```

Description

Raster rastA contains rastB if and only if no points of rastB lie in the exterior of rastA and at least one point of the interior of rastB lies in the interior of rastA. If the band number is not provided (or set to NULL), only the convex hull of the raster is considered in the test. If the band number is provided, only those pixels with value (not NODATA) are considered in the test.



Note

This function will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.



Note

To test the spatial relationship of a raster and a geometry, use ST_Polygon on the raster, e.g ST_Contains(ST_Polygon(raster), geometry) or ST_Contains(geometry, ST_Polygon(raster)).



Note

ST_Contains() is the inverse of ST_Within(). So, ST_Contains(rastA, rastB) implies ST_Within(rastB, rastA).

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 597 / 791

See Also

ST_Intersects, ST_Within

9.13.2 ST ContainsProperly

ST_ContainsProperly — Return true if rastB intersects the interior of rastA but not the boundary or exterior of rastA.

Synopsis

```
boolean ST_ContainsProperly( raster rastA , integer nbandA , raster rastB , integer nbandB ); boolean ST_ContainsProperly( raster rastA , raster rastB );
```

Description

Raster rastA contains properly rastB if rastB intersects the interior of rastA but not the boundary or exterior of rastA. If the band number is not provided (or set to NULL), only the convex hull of the raster is considered in the test. If the band number is provided, only those pixels with value (not NODATA) are considered in the test.

Raster rastA does not contain properly itself but does contain itself.



Note

This function will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.



Note

To test the spatial relationship of a raster and a geometry, use ST_Polygon on the raster, e.g. ST_ContainsProperly(ST_Polygon(raster)), geometry) or ST_ContainsProperly(geometry, ST_Polygon(raster)).

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 598 / 791

See Also

ST_Intersects, ST_Contains

9.13.3 ST_Covers

ST_Covers — Return true if no points of raster rastB lie outside raster rastA.

Synopsis

```
boolean ST\_Covers( raster rastA , integer nbandA , raster rastB , integer nbandB ); boolean ST\_Covers( raster rastA , raster rastB );
```

Description

Raster rastA covers rastB if and only if no points of rastB lie in the exterior of rastA. If the band number is not provided (or set to NULL), only the convex hull of the raster is considered in the test. If the band number is provided, only those pixels with value (not NODATA) are considered in the test.



Note

This function will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.



Note

To test the spatial relationship of a raster and a geometry, use ST_Polygon on the raster, e.g. ST_Covers(ST_Polygon(raster), geometry) or ST_Covers(geometry, ST_Polygon(raster)).

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

```
SELECT r1.rid, r2.rid, ST_Covers(r1.rast, 1, r2.rast, 1) FROM dummy_rast r1 CROSS JOIN ←
    dummy_rast r2 WHERE r1.rid = 2;

rid | rid | st_covers
----+----+
2 | 1 | f
2 | 2 | t
```

See Also

ST_Intersects, ST_CoveredBy

9.13.4 ST_CoveredBy

ST_CoveredBy — Return true if no points of raster rastA lie outside raster rastB.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 599 / 791

Synopsis

boolean **ST_CoveredBy**(raster rastA , integer nbandA , raster rastB , integer nbandB); boolean **ST_CoveredBy**(raster rastA , raster rastB);

Description

Raster rastA is covered by rastB if and only if no points of rastA lie in the exterior of rastB. If the band number is not provided (or set to NULL), only the convex hull of the raster is considered in the test. If the band number is provided, only those pixels with value (not NODATA) are considered in the test.



Note

This function will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.



Note

To test the spatial relationship of a raster and a geometry, use ST_Polygon on the raster, e.g. ST_CoveredBy(ST_Polygon(raster), geometry) or ST_CoveredBy(geometry, ST_Polygon(raster)).

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

See Also

ST_Intersects, ST_Covers

9.13.5 ST Disjoint

ST_Disjoint — Return true if raster rastA does not spatially intersect rastB.

Synopsis

```
boolean ST_Disjoint( raster rastA , integer nbandA , raster rastB , integer nbandB ); boolean ST_Disjoint( raster rastA , raster rastB );
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 600 / 791

Description

Raster rastA and rastB are disjointed if they do not share any space together. If the band number is not provided (or set to NULL), only the convex hull of the raster is considered in the test. If the band number is provided, only those pixels with value (not NODATA) are considered in the test.



Note

This function does NOT use any indexes.



Note

To test the spatial relationship of a raster and a geometry, use ST_Polygon on the raster, e.g. ST_Disjoint(ST_Polygon(raster), geometry).

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

See Also

ST_Intersects

9.13.6 ST Intersects

 $ST_Intersects -- Return\ true\ if\ raster\ rastA\ spatially\ intersects\ raster\ rastB.$

Synopsis

```
boolean ST_Intersects( raster rastA , integer nbandA , raster rastB , integer nbandB ); boolean ST_Intersects( raster rastA , raster rastB ); boolean ST_Intersects( raster rast , integer nband , geometry geommin ); boolean ST_Intersects( raster rast , geometry geommin , integer nband=NULL ); boolean ST_Intersects( geometry geommin , raster rast , integer nband=NULL );
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 601 / 791

Description

Return true if raster rastA spatially intersects raster rastB. If the band number is not provided (or set to NULL), only the convex hull of the raster is considered in the test. If the band number is provided, only those pixels with value (not NODATA) are considered in the test.



Note

This function will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 support raster/raster intersects was introduced.



Warning

Changed: 2.1.0 The behavior of the ST_Intersects(raster, geometry) variants changed to match that of ST_Intersects(geometry, raster).

Examples

```
-- different bands of same raster
SELECT ST_Intersects(rast, 2, rast, 3) FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid = 2;
st_intersects
-----
t
```

See Also

ST_Intersection, ST_Disjoint

9.13.7 ST_Overlaps

ST_Overlaps — Return true if raster rastA and rastB intersect but one does not completely contain the other.

Synopsis

```
boolean \mathbf{ST\_Overlaps}( raster rastA , integer nbandA , raster rastB , integer nbandB ); boolean \mathbf{ST\_Overlaps}( raster rastA , raster rastB );
```

Description

Return true if raster rastA spatially overlaps raster rastB. This means that rastA and rastB intersect but one does not completely contain the other. If the band number is not provided (or set to NULL), only the convex hull of the raster is considered in the test. If the band number is provided, only those pixels with value (not NODATA) are considered in the test.



Note

This function will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 602 / 791



Note

To test the spatial relationship of a raster and a geometry, use ST_Polygon on the raster, e.g. ST_Overlaps(ST_Polygon(raster), geometry).

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

```
-- comparing different bands of same raster

SELECT ST_Overlaps(rast, 1, rast, 2) FROM dummy_rast WHERE rid = 2;

st_overlaps
-----
f
```

See Also

ST_Intersects

9.13.8 ST Touches

ST_Touches — Return true if raster rastA and rastB have at least one point in common but their interiors do not intersect.

Synopsis

```
boolean ST_Touches( raster rastA , integer nbandA , raster rastB , integer nbandB ); boolean ST_Touches( raster rastA , raster rastB );
```

Description

Return true if raster rastA spatially touches raster rastB. This means that rastA and rastB have at least one point in common but their interiors do not intersect. If the band number is not provided (or set to NULL), only the convex hull of the raster is considered in the test. If the band number is provided, only those pixels with value (not NODATA) are considered in the test.



Note

This function will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.



Note

To test the spatial relationship of a raster and a geometry, use ST_Polygon on the raster, e.g. ST_Touches(ST_Polygon(raster), geometry).

Availability: 2.1.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 603 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST Intersects

9.13.9 ST_SameAlignment

ST_SameAlignment — Returns true if rasters have same skew, scale, spatial ref, and offset (pixels can be put on same grid without cutting into pixels) and false if they don't with notice detailing issue.

Synopsis

boolean ST_SameAlignment(raster rastA , raster rastB);

boolean **ST_SameAlignment**(double precision ulx1, double precision uly1, double precision scalex1, double precision scalex1, double precision skewx1, double precision skewy1, double precision ulx2, double precision uly2, double precision scalex2, double precision scaley2, double precision skewx2, double precision skewy2);

 $boolean \ \textbf{ST_SameAlignment} (\ raster\ set\ rastfield\);$

Description

Non-Aggregate version (Variants 1 and 2): Returns true if the two rasters (either provided directly or made using the values for upperleft, scale, skew and srid) have the same scale, skew, srid and at least one of any of the four corners of any pixel of one raster falls on any corner of the grid of the other raster. Returns false if they don't and a NOTICE detailing the alignment issue.

Aggregate version (Variant 3): From a set of rasters, returns true if all rasters in the set are aligned. The ST_SameAlignment() function is an "aggregate" function in the terminology of PostgreSQL. That means that it operates on rows of data, in the same way the SUM() and AVG() functions do.

Availability: 2.0.0

Enhanced: 2.1.0 addition of Aggegrate variant

Examples: Rasters

```
SELECT ST_SameAlignment(
    ST_MakeEmptyRaster(1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0),
    ST_MakeEmptyRaster(1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0)
) as sm;
sm
______t
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 604 / 791

```
SELECT ST_SameAlignment (A.rast,b.rast)
FROM dummy_rast AS A CROSS JOIN dummy_rast AS B;

NOTICE: The two rasters provided have different SRIDs
NOTICE: The two rasters provided have different SRIDs
st_samealignment
-----
t
f
f
f
f
```

See Also

Section 5.1, ST_NotSameAlignmentReason, ST_MakeEmptyRaster

9.13.10 ST_NotSameAlignmentReason

ST_NotSameAlignmentReason — Returns text stating if rasters are aligned and if not aligned, a reason why.

Synopsis

text **ST_NotSameAlignmentReason**(raster rastA, raster rastB);

Description

Returns text stating if rasters are aligned and if not aligned, a reason why.



Note

If there are several reasons why the rasters are not aligned, only one reason (the first test to fail) will be returned.

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 605 / 791

See Also

Section 5.1, ST_SameAlignment

9.13.11 ST_Within

ST_Within — Return true if no points of raster rastA lie in the exterior of raster rastB and at least one point of the interior of rastA lies in the interior of rastB.

Synopsis

```
boolean ST_Within( raster rastA , integer nbandA , raster rastB , integer nbandB ); boolean ST_Within( raster rastA , raster rastB );
```

Description

Raster rastA is within rastB if and only if no points of rastA lie in the exterior of rastB and at least one point of the interior of rastA lies in the interior of rastB. If the band number is not provided (or set to NULL), only the convex hull of the raster is considered in the test. If the band number is provided, only those pixels with value (not NODATA) are considered in the test.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.



Note

To test the spatial relationship of a raster and a geometry, use ST_Polygon on the raster, e.g. ST_Within(ST_Polygon(raster), geometry) or ST_Within(geometry, ST_Polygon(raster)).



Note

ST_Within() is the inverse of ST_Contains(). So, ST_Within(rastA, rastB) implies ST_Contains(rastB, rastA).

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

See Also

ST_Intersects, ST_Contains, ST_DWithin, ST_DFullyWithin

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 606 / 791

9.13.12 ST_DWithin

ST_DWithin — Return true if rasters rastA and rastB are within the specified distance of each other.

Synopsis

 $boolean \begin{tabular}{l} \textbf{ST_DWithin} (\ raster\ rastA\ ,\ integer\ nbandA\ ,\ raster\ rastB\ ,\ integer\ nbandB\ ,\ double\ precision\ distance_of_srid\);\\ boolean \begin{tabular}{l} \textbf{ST_DWithin} (\ raster\ rastA\ ,\ raster\ rastB\ ,\ double\ precision\ distance_of_srid\);\\ \end{tabular}$

Description

Return true if rasters rastA and rastB are within the specified distance of each other. If the band number is not provided (or set to NULL), only the convex hull of the raster is considered in the test. If the band number is provided, only those pixels with value (not NODATA) are considered in the test.

The distance is specified in units defined by the spatial reference system of the rasters. For this function to make sense, the source rasters must both be of the same coordinate projection, having the same SRID.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.



Note

To test the spatial relationship of a raster and a geometry, use ST_Polygon on the raster, e.g. ST_DWithin(ST_Polygon(raster), geometry).

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

See Also

ST_Within, ST_DFullyWithin

9.13.13 ST_DFullyWithin

ST_DFullyWithin — Return true if rasters rastA and rastB are fully within the specified distance of each other.

Synopsis

boolean **ST_DFullyWithin**(raster rastA , integer nbandA , raster rastB , integer nbandB , double precision distance_of_srid); boolean **ST_DFullyWithin**(raster rastA , raster rastB , double precision distance_of_srid);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 607 / 791

Description

Return true if rasters rastA and rastB are fully within the specified distance of each other. If the band number is not provided (or set to NULL), only the convex hull of the raster is considered in the test. If the band number is provided, only those pixels with value (not NODATA) are considered in the test.

The distance is specified in units defined by the spatial reference system of the rasters. For this function to make sense, the source rasters must both be of the same coordinate projection, having the same SRID.



Note

This operand will make use of any indexes that may be available on the rasters.



Note

To test the spatial relationship of a raster and a geometry, use ST_Polygon on the raster, e.g. ST_DFullyWithin(ST_Polygon(raster), geometry).

Availability: 2.1.0

Examples

See Also

ST_Within, ST_DWithin

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 608 / 791

Chapter 10

PostGIS Raster Frequently Asked Questions

1. I'm getting error ERROR:RASTER_fromGDALRaster:Could not open bytea with GDAL.Check that the bytea is of a GDAL supported format. when using ST_FromGDALRaster or ERROR:rt_raster _to_gdal:Could not load the output GDAL driver when trying to use ST_AsPNG or other raster input functions.

As of PostGIS 2.1.3 and 2.0.5, a security change was made to by default disable all GDAL drivers and out of db rasters. The release notes are at PostGIS 2.0.6, 2.1.3 security release. In order to reenable specific drivers or all drivers and reenable out of database support, refer to Section 2.1.

- 2. Where can I find out more about the PostGIS Raster Project? Refer to the PostGIS Raster home page.
- 3. Are there any books or tutorials to get me started with this wonderful invention?

There is a full length beginner tutorial Intersecting vector buffers with large raster coverage using PostGIS Raster. Jorge has a series of blog articles on PostGIS Raster that demonstrate how to load raster data as well as cross compare to same tasks in Oracle GeoRaster. Check out Jorge's PostGIS Raster / Oracle GeoRaster Series. There is a whole chapter (more than 35 pages of content) dedicated to PostGIS Raster with free code and data downloads at PostGIS in Action - Raster chapter. You can buy PostGIS in Action now from Manning in hard-copy (significant discounts for bulk purchases) or just the E-book format. You can also buy from Amazon and various other book distributors. All hard-copy books come with a free coupon to download the E-book version. Here is a review from a PostGIS Raster user PostGIS raster applied to land classification urban forestry

4. How do I install Raster support in my PostGIS database?

The easiest is to download binaries for PostGIS and Raster which are currently available for windows and latest versions of Mac OSX. First you need a working PostGIS 2.0.0 or above and be running PostgreSQL 8.4, 9.0, or 9.1. Note in PostGIS 2.0 PostGIS Raster is fully integrated, so it will be compiled when you compile PostGIS.Instructions for installing and running under windows are available at How to Install and Configure PostGIS raster on windows If you are on windows, you can compile yourself, or use the pre-compiled PostGIS Raster windows binaries. If you are on Mac OSX Leopard or Snow Leopard, there are binaries available at Kyng Chaos Mac OSX PostgreSQL/GIS binaries. Then to enable raster support in your database, run the rtpostgis.sql file in your database. To upgrade an existing install use rtpostgis_upgrade_minor..sql instead of rtpostgis.sqlFor other platforms, you generally need to compile yourself. Dependencies are PostGIS and GDAL. For more details about compiling from source, please refer to Installing PostGIS Raster from source (in prior versions of PostGIS)

5. I get error could not load library "C:/Program Files/PostgreSQL/8.4/lib/rtpostgis.dll": The specified module could not be found. or could not load library on Linux when trying to run rtpostgis.sql

rtpostgis.so/dll is built with dependency on libgdal.dll/so. Make sure for Windows you have libgdal-1.dll in the bin folder of your PostgreSQL install. For Linux libgdal has to be in your path or bin folder. You may also run into different errors if you don't have PostGIS installed in your database. Make sure to install PostGIS first in your database before trying to install the raster support.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 609 / 791

6. How do I load Raster data into PostGIS?

The latest version of PostGIS comes packaged with a raster2pgsql raster loader executable capable of loading many kinds of rasters and also generating lower resolution overviews without any additional software. Please refer to Section 5.1.1 for more details. Pre-2.0 versions came with a raster2pgsql.py that required python with numpy and GDAL. This is no longer needed.

7. What kind of raster file formats can I load into my database?

Any that your GDAL library supports. GDAL supported formats are documented GDAL File Formats. Your particular GDAL install may not support all formats. To verify the ones supported by your particular GDAL install, you can use

```
raster2pgsql -G
```

8. Can I export my PostGIS raster data to other raster formats?

YesGDAL 1.7+ has a PostGIS raster driver, but is only compiled in if you choose to compile with PostgreSQL support. The driver currently doesn't support irregularly blocked rasters, although you can store irregularly blocked rasters in PostGIS raster data type. If you are compiling from source, you need to include in your configure

```
--with-pg=path/to/pg_config
```

to enable the driver. Refer to GDAL Build Hints for tips on building GDAL against in various OS platforms. If your version of GDAL is compiled with the PostGIS Raster driver you should see PostGIS Raster in list when you do

```
gdalinfo --formats
```

To get a summary about your raster via GDAL use gdalinfo:

```
gdalinfo "PG:host=localhost port=5432 dbname='mygisdb' user='postgres' password=' \leftrightarrow whatever' schema='someschema' table=sometable"
```

To export data to other raster formats, use gdal_translate the below will export all data from a table to a PNG file at 10% size. Depending on your pixel band types, some translations may not work if the export format does not support that Pixel type. For example floating point band types and 32 bit unsigned ints will not translate easily to JPG or some others. Here is an example simple translation

```
gdal_translate -of PNG -outsize 10% 10% "PG:host=localhost port=5432 dbname='mygisdb' ← user='postgres' password='whatever' schema='someschema' table=sometable" C:\ ← somefile.png
```

You can also use SQL where clauses in your export using the where=... in your driver connection string. Below are some using a where clause

```
gdal_translate -of PNG -outsize 10% 10% "PG:host=localhost port=5432 dbname='mygisdb' \leftrightarrow user='postgres' password='whatever' schema='someschema' table=sometable where=' \leftrightarrow filename=\'abcd.sid\''" " C:\somefile.png
```

```
gdal_translate -of PNG -outsize 10% 10% "PG:host=localhost port=5432 dbname='mygisdb' \( \to \) user='postgres' password='whatever' schema='someschema' table=sometable where=' \( \to \) ST_Intersects(rast, ST_SetSRID(ST_Point(-71.032,42.3793),4326) )' " C:\ \( \to \) intersectregion.png
```

To see more examples and syntax refer to Reading Raster Data of PostGIS Raster section

9. Are their binaries of GDAL available already compiled with PostGIS Raster suppport?

Yes. Check out the page GDAL Binaries page. Any compiled with PostgreSQL support should have PostGIS Raster in them. PostGIS Raster is undergoing many changes. If you want to get the latest nightly build for Windows -- then check out the Tamas Szekeres nightly builds built with Visual Studio which contain GDAL trunk, Python Bindings and MapServer executables and PostGIS Raster driver built-in. Just click the SDK bat and run your commands from there. http://www.gisinternals.com. Also available are VS project files.FWTools latest stable version for Windows is compiled with Raster support.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 610 / 791

10. What tools can I use to view PostGIS raster data?

You can use MapServer compiled with GDAL 1.7+ and PostGIS Raster driver support to view Raster data. QuantumGIS (QGIS) now supports viewing of PostGIS Raster if you have PostGIS raster driver installed. In theory any tool that renders data using GDAL can support PostGIS raster data or support it with fairly minimal effort. Again for Windows, Tamas' binaries http://www.gisinternals.com are a good choice if you don't want the hassle of having to setup to compile your own.

11. How can I add a PostGIS raster layer to my MapServer map?

First you need GDAL 1.7 or higher compiled with PostGIS raster support. GDAL 1.8 or above is preferred since many issues have been fixed in 1.8 and more PostGIS raster issues fixed in trunk version. You can much like you can with any other raster. Refer to MapServer Raster processing options for list of various processing functions you can use with MapServer raster layers. What makes PostGIS raster data particularly interesting, is that since each tile can have various standard database columns, you can segment it in your data sourceBelow is an example of how you would define a PostGIS raster layer in MapServer.



Note

The mode=2 is required for tiled rasters and was added in PostGIS 2.0 and GDAL 1.8 drivers. This does not exist in GDAL 1.7 drivers.

```
-- displaying raster with standard raster options
LAYER
  NAME coolwktraster
  TYPE raster
  DATA "PG:host=localhost port=5432 dbname='somedb' user='someuser' password='whatever'
    schema='someschema' table='cooltable' mode='2'"
  PROCESSING "NODATA=0"
  PROCESSING "SCALE=AUTO"
  #... other standard raster processing functions here
  #... classes are optional but useful for 1 band data
  CLASS
    NAME "boring"
    EXPRESSION ([pixel] < 20)
    COLOR 250 250 250
  END
  CLASS
    NAME "mildly interesting"
    EXPRESSION ([pixel] > 20 AND [pixel] < 1000)
    COLOR 255 0 0
  END
  CLASS
    NAME "very interesting"
    EXPRESSION ([pixel] >= 1000)
    COLOR 0 255 0
  END
END
```

```
-- displaying raster with standard raster options and a where clause

LAYER

NAME soil_survey2009

TYPE raster

STATUS ON

DATA "PG:host=localhost port=5432 dbname='somedb' user='someuser' password='whatever'

schema='someschema' table='cooltable' where='survey_year=2009' mode='2'"

PROCESSING "NODATA=0"

#... other standard raster processing functions here

#... classes are optional but useful for 1 band data

END
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 611 / 791

12. What functions can I currently use with my raster data?

Refer to the list of Chapter 9. There are more, but this is still a work in progress.Refer to the PostGIS Raster roadmap page for details of what you can expect in the future.

13. I am getting error ERROR: function st_intersects(raster, unknown) is not unique or st_union(geometry,text) is not unique. How do I fix?

The function is not unique error happens if one of your arguments is a textual representation of a geometry instead of a geometry. In these cases, PostgreSQL marks the textual representation as an unknown type, which means it can fall into the st_intersects(raster, geometry) or st_intersects(raster, raster) thus resulting in a non-unique case since both functions can in theory support your request. To prevent this, you need to cast the textual representation of the geometry to a geometry. For example if your code looks like this:

```
SELECT rast
FROM my_raster
WHERE ST_Intersects(rast, 'SRID=4326;POINT(-10 10)');
```

Cast the textual geometry representation to a geometry by changing your code to this:

```
SELECT rast
FROM my_raster
WHERE ST_Intersects(rast, 'SRID=4326;POINT(-10 10)'::geometry);
```

14. How is PostGIS Raster different from Oracle GeoRaster (SDO_GEORASTER) and SDO_RASTER types?

For a more extensive discussion on this topic, check out Jorge Arévalo Oracle GeoRaster and PostGIS Raster: First impressions The major advantage of one-georeference-by-raster over one-georeference-by-layer is to allow:* coverages to be not necessarily rectangular (which is often the case of raster coverage covering large extents. See the possible raster arrangements in the documentation)* rasters to overlaps (which is necessary to implement lossless vector to raster conversion) These arrangements are possible in Oracle as well, but they imply the storage of multiple SDO_GEORASTER objects linked to as many SDO_RASTER tables. A complex coverage can lead to hundreds of tables in the database. With PostGIS Raster you can store a similar raster arrangement into a unique table. It's a bit like if PostGIS would force you to store only full rectangular vector coverage without gaps or overlaps (a perfect rectangular topological layer). This is very practical in some applications but practice has shown that it is not realistic or desirable for most geographical coverages. Vector structures needs the flexibility to store discontinuous and non-rectangular coverages. We think it is a big advantage that raster structure should benefit as well.

15. raster2pgsql load of large file fails with String of N bytes is too long for encoding conversion?

raster2pgsql doesn't make any connections to your database when generating the file to load. If your database has set an explicit client encoding different from your database encoding, then when loading large raster files (above 30 MB in size), you may run into a bytes is too long for encoding conversion. This generally happens if for example you have your database in UTF8, but to support windows apps, you have the client encoding set to WIN1252. To work around this make sure the client encoding is the same as your database encoding during load. You can do this by explicitly setting the encoding in your load script. Example, if you are on windows:

```
set PGCLIENTENCODING=UTF8
```

If you are on Unix/Linux

```
export PGCLIENTENCODING=UTF8
```

Gory details of this issue are detailed in http://trac.osgeo.org/postgis/ticket/2209

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 612 / 791

Chapter 11

Topology

The PostGIS Topology types and functions are used to manage topological objects such as faces, edges and nodes.

Sandro Santilli's presentation at PostGIS Day Paris 2011 conference gives a good synopsis of PostGIS Topology and where it is headed Topology with PostGIS 2.0 slide deck.

Vincent Picavet provides a good synopsis and overview of what is Topology, how is it used, and various FOSS4G tools that support it in PostGIS Topology PGConf EU 2012.

An example of a topologically based GIS database is the US Census Topologically Integrated Geographic Encoding and Referencing System (TIGER) database. If you want to experiment with PostGIS topology and need some data, check out Topology_Load_Tiger.

The PostGIS topology module has existed in prior versions of PostGIS but was never part of the Official PostGIS documentation. In PostGIS 2.0.0 major cleanup is going on to remove use of all deprecated functions in it, fix known usability issues, better document the features and functions, add new functions, and enhance to closer conform to SQL-MM standards.

Details of this project can be found at PostGIS Topology Wiki

All functions and tables associated with this module are installed in a schema called topology.

Functions that are defined in SQL/MM standard are prefixed with ST_ and functions specific to PostGIS are not prefixed.

To build PostGIS 2.0 with topology support, compile with the --with-topology option as described in Chapter 2. Some functions depend on GEOS 3.3+ so you should compile with GEOS 3.3+ to fully utilize the topology support.

11.1 Topology Types

11.1.1 getfaceedges_returntype

getfaceedges_returntype — A composite type that consists of a sequence number and edge number. This is the return type for $ST_GetFaceEdges$

Description

A composite type that consists of a sequence number and edge number. This is the return type for ST_GetFaceEdges function.

- 1. sequence is an integer: Refers to a topology defined in the topology.topology table which defines the topology schema and srid.
- 2. edge is an integer: The identifier of an edge.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 613 / 791

11.1.2 TopoGeometry

TopoGeometry — A composite type representing a topologically defined geometry

Description

A composite type that refers to a topology geometry in a specific topology layer, having a specific type and a specific id. The elements of a TopoGeometry are the properties: topology_id, layer_id, id integer, type integer.

- 1. topology_id is an integer: Refers to a topology defined in the topology.topology table which defines the topology schema and srid.
- 2. layer_id is an integer: The layer_id in the layers table that the TopoGeometry belongs to. The combination of topology_id, layer_id provides a unique reference in the topology.layers table.
- 3. id is an integer: The id is the autogenerated sequence number that uniquely defines the topogeometry in the respective topology layer.
- 4. type integer between 1 4 that defines the geometry type: 1:[multi]point, 2:[multi]line, 3:[multi]poly, 4:collection

Casting Behavior

This section lists the automatic as well as explicit casts allowed for this data type

Cast To	Behavior
geometry	automatic

See Also

CreateTopoGeom

11.1.3 validatetopology_returntype

validatetopology_returntype — A composite type that consists of an error message and id1 and id2 to denote location of error. This is the return type for ValidateTopology

Description

A composite type that consists of an error message and two integers. The ValidateTopology function returns a set of these to denote validation errors and the id1 and id2 to denote the ids of the topology objects involved in the error.

- 1. error is varchar: Denotes type of error.
 - Current error descriptors are: coincident nodes, edge crosses node, edge not simple, edge end node geometry mis-match, edge start node geometry mismatch, face overlaps face, face within face,
- 2. idl is an integer: Denotes identifier of edge / face / nodes in error.
- 3. id2 is an integer: For errors that involve 2 objects denotes the secondary edge / or node

See Also

ValidateTopology

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 614 / 791

11.2 Topology Domains

11.2.1 TopoElement

TopoElement — An array of 2 integers generally used to identify a TopoGeometry component.

Description

An array of 2 integers used to represent one component of a simple or hierarchical TopoGeometry.

In the case of a simple TopoGeometry the first element of the array represents the identifier of a topological primitive and the second element represents its type (1:node, 2:edge, 3:face). In the case of a hierarchical TopoGeometry the first element of the array represents the identifier of a child TopoGeometry and the second element represents its layer identifier.



Note

For any given hierarchical TopoGeometry all child TopoGeometry elements will come from the same child layer, as specified in the topology.layer record for the layer of the TopoGeometry being defined.

Examples

```
SELECT te[1] AS id, te[2] AS type FROM
( SELECT ARRAY[1,2]::topology.topoelement AS te ) f;
id | type
----+----
1 | 2
```

```
SELECT ARRAY[1,2]::topology.topoelement;
te
-----
{1,2}
```

```
--Example of what happens when you try to case a 3 element array to topoelement
-- NOTE: topoement has to be a 2 element array so fails dimension check
SELECT ARRAY[1,2,3]::topology.topoelement;
ERROR: value for domain topology.topoelement violates check constraint "dimensions"
```

See Also

GetTopoGeomElements, TopoElementArray, TopoGeometry, TopoGeom_addElement, TopoGeom_remElement

11.2.2 TopoElementArray

TopoElementArray — An array of TopoElement objects

Description

An array of 1 or more TopoElement objects, generally used to pass around components of TopoGeometry objects.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 615 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT '{{1,2,4},{3,4,5}}'::topology.topoelementarray As tea;
ERROR: value for domain topology.topoelementarray violates check constraint "dimensions"
```

See Also

TopoElement, GetTopoGeomElementArray, TopoElementArray_Agg

11.3 Topology and TopoGeometry Management

11.3.1 AddTopoGeometryColumn

AddTopoGeometryColumn — Adds a topogeometry column to an existing table, registers this new column as a layer in topology.layer and returns the new layer_id.

Synopsis

integer **AddTopoGeometryColumn**(varchar topology_name, varchar schema_name, varchar table_name, varchar column_name, varchar feature_type);

integer **AddTopoGeometryColumn**(varchar topology_name, varchar schema_name, varchar table_name, varchar column_name, varchar feature_type, integer child_layer);

Description

Each TopoGeometry object belongs to a specific Layer of a specific Topology. Before creating a TopoGeometry object you need to create its TopologyLayer. A Topology Layer is an association of a feature-table with the topology. It also contain type and hierarchy information. We create a layer using the AddTopoGeometryColumn() function:

This function will both add the requested column to the table and add a record to the topology.layer table with all the given info.

If you don't specify [child_layer] (or set it to NULL) this layer would contain Basic TopoGeometries (composed by primitive topology elements). Otherwise this layer will contain hierarchical TopoGeometries (composed by TopoGeometries from the child_layer).

Once the layer is created (its id is returned by the AddTopoGeometryColumn function) you're ready to construct TopoGeometry objects in it

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 616 / 791

Valid feature_types are: POINT, LINE, POLYGON, COLLECTION

Availability: 1.?

Examples

SELECT topology.AddTopoGeometryColumn('ri_topo', 'ri', 'roads', 'topo', 'LINE');

See Also

CreateTopology, CreateTopoGeom

11.3.2 DropTopology

DropTopology — Use with caution: Drops a topology schema and deletes its reference from topology.topology table and references to tables in that schema from the geometry_columns table.

Synopsis

integer DropTopology(varchar topology_schema_name);

Description

Drops a topology schema and deletes its reference from topology.topology table and references to tables in that schema from the geometry_columns table. This function should be USED WITH CAUTION, as it could destroy data you care about. If the schema does not exist, it just removes reference entries the named schema.

Availability: 1.?

Examples

Cascade drops the ma_topo schema and removes all references to it in topology.topology and geometry_columns.

```
SELECT topology.DropTopology('ma_topo');
```

See Also

11.3.3 DropTopoGeometryColumn

DropTopoGeometryColumn — Drops the topogeometry column from the table named table_name in schema schema_name and unregisters the columns from topology.layer table.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 617 / 791

Synopsis

text **DropTopoGeometryColumn**(varchar schema_name, varchar table_name, varchar column_name);

Description

Drops the topogeometry column from the table named table_name in schema schema_name and unregisters the columns from topology.layer table. Returns summary of drop status. NOTE: it first sets all values to NULL before dropping to bypass referential integrity checks.

Availability: 1.?

Examples

```
SELECT topology.DropTopoGeometryColumn('ma_topo', 'parcel_topo', 'topo');
```

See Also

AddTopoGeometryColumn

11.3.4 Populate_Topology_Layer

Populate_Topology_Layer — Adds missing entries to topology.layer table by reading metadata from topo tables.

Synopsis

setof record Populate_Topology_Layer();

Description

Adds missing entries to the topology.layer table by inspecting topology constraints on tables. This function is useful for fixing up entries in topology catalog after restores of schemas with topo data.

It returns the list of entries created. Returned columns are schema_name, table_name, feature_column.

Availability: 2.3.0

Examples

```
SELECT CreateTopology('strk_topo');
CREATE SCHEMA strk;
CREATE TABLE strk.parcels(gid serial, parcel_id varchar(20) PRIMARY KEY, address text);
SELECT topology.AddTopoGeometryColumn('strk_topo', 'strk', 'parcels', 'topo', 'POLYGON');
-- this will return no records because this feature is already registered
SELECT *
FROM topology.Populate_Topology_Layer();

-- let's rebuild
TRUNCATE TABLE topology.layer;

SELECT *
FROM topology.Populate_Topology_Layer();

SELECT topology_id,layer_id, schema_name As sn, table_name As tn, feature_column As fc
FROM topology.layer;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 618 / 791

See Also

AddTopoGeometryColumn

11.3.5 TopologySummary

TopologySummary — Takes a topology name and provides summary totals of types of objects in topology

Synopsis

text **TopologySummary**(varchar topology_schema_name);

Description

Takes a topology name and provides summary totals of types of objects in topology.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
SELECT topology.topologysummary('city_data');
               topologysummary
Topology city_data (329), SRID 4326, precision: 0
 22 nodes, 24 edges, 10 faces, 29 topogeoms in 5 layers
Layer 1, type Polygonal (3), 9 topogeoms
 Deploy: features.land_parcels.feature
Layer 2, type Puntal (1), 8 topogeoms
 Deploy: features.traffic_signs.feature
Layer 3, type Lineal (2), 8 topogeoms
 Deploy: features.city_streets.feature
Layer 4, type Polygonal (3), 3 topogeoms
 Hierarchy level 1, child layer 1
 Deploy: features.big_parcels.feature
Layer 5, type Puntal (1), 1 topogeoms
 Hierarchy level 1, child layer 2
 Deploy: features.big_signs.feature
```

See Also

Topology_Load_Tiger

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 619 / 791

11.3.6 ValidateTopology

ValidateTopology — Returns a set of validatetopology_returntype objects detailing issues with topology

Synopsis

setof validatetopology_returntype **ValidateTopology**(varchar topology_schema_name);

Description

Returns a set of validatetopology_returntype objects detailing issues with topology. List of possible errors and what the returned ids represent are displayed below:

Error	id1	id2
edge crosses node	edge_id	node_id
invalid edge	edge_id	null
edge not simple	edge_id	null
edge crosses edge	edge_id	edge_id
edge start node geometry mis-match	edge_id	node_id
edge end node geometry mis-match	edge_id	node_id
face without edges	face_id	null
face has no rings	face_id	null
face overlaps face	face_id	face_id
face within face	inner face_id	outer face_id

Availability: 1.0.0

Enhanced: 2.0.0 more efficient edge crossing detection and fixes for false positives that were existent in prior versions.

Changed: 2.2.0 values for id1 and id2 were swapped for 'edge crosses node' to be consistent with error description.

Examples

See Also

 $validate topology_return type, Topology_Load_Tiger$

11.4 Topology Constructors

11.4.1 CreateTopology

CreateTopology — Creates a new topology schema and registers this new schema in the topology.topology table.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 620 / 791

Synopsis

```
integer\ \textbf{CreateTopology}(varchar\ topology\_schema\_name);
```

integer **CreateTopology**(varchar topology_schema_name, integer srid);

integer CreateTopology(varchar topology_schema_name, integer srid, double precision prec);

integer CreateTopology(varchar topology_schema_name, integer srid, double precision prec, boolean hasz);

Description

Creates a new schema with name topology_name consisting of tables (edge_data,face,node, relation and registers this new topology in the topology table. It returns the id of the topology in the topology table. The srid is the spatial reference identified as defined in spatial_ref_sys table for that topology. Topologies must be uniquely named. The tolerance is measured in the units of the spatial reference system. If the tolerance (prec) is not specified defaults to 0.

This is similar to the SQL/MM ST_InitTopoGeo but a bit more functional. hasz defaults to false if not specified.

Availability: 1.?

Examples

This example creates a new schema called ma_topo that will store edges, faces, and relations in Massachusetts State Plane meters. The tolerance represents 1/2 meter since the spatial reference system is a meter based spatial reference system

```
SELECT topology.CreateTopology('ma_topo',26986, 0.5);
```

Create Rhode Island topology in State Plane ft

```
SELECT topology.CreateTopology('ri_topo',3438) As topoid;
topoid
-----
2
```

See Also

Section 4.3.1, ST_InitTopoGeo, Topology_Load_Tiger

11.4.2 CopyTopology

CopyTopology — Makes a copy of a topology structure (nodes, edges, faces, layers and TopoGeometries).

Synopsis

integer CopyTopology(varchar existing_topology_name, varchar new_name);

Description

Creates a new topology with name new_topology_name and SRID and precision taken from existing_topology_name, copies all nodes, edges and faces in there, copies layers and their TopoGeometries too.



Note

The new rows in topology.layer will contain synthesized values for schema_name, table_name and feature_column. This is because the TopoGeometry will only exist as a definition but won't be available in any user-level table yet.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 621 / 791

Examples

This example makes a backup of a topology called ma_topo

```
SELECT topology.CopyTopology('ma_topo', 'ma_topo_bakup');
```

See Also

Section 4.3.1, CreateTopology

11.4.3 ST_InitTopoGeo

ST_InitTopoGeo — Creates a new topology schema and registers this new schema in the topology.topology table and details summary of process.

Synopsis

text **ST_InitTopoGeo**(varchar topology_schema_name);

Description

This is an SQL-MM equivalent of CreateTopology but lacks the spatial reference and tolerance options of CreateTopology and outputs a text description of creation instead of topology id.

Availability: 1.?



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3 Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.17

Examples

```
SELECT topology.ST_InitTopoGeo('topo_schema_to_create') AS topocreation;
astopocreation

Topology-Geometry 'topo_schema_to_create' (id:7) created.
```

See Also

CreateTopology

11.4.4 ST_CreateTopoGeo

ST_CreateTopoGeo — Adds a collection of geometries to a given empty topology and returns a message detailing success.

Synopsis

text **ST_CreateTopoGeo**(varchar atopology, geometry acollection);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 622 / 791

Description

Adds a collection of geometries to a given empty topology and returns a message detailing success.

Useful for populating an empty topology.

Availability: 2.0



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details -- X.3.18

Examples

```
-- Populate topology --
SELECT topology.ST_CreateTopoGeo('ri_topo',
 {\tt ST\_GeomFromText('MULTILINESTRING((384744~236928,384750~236923,384769~236911,384799~} \leftarrow
    236895,384811 236890,384833 236884,
  384844 236882,384866 236881,384879 236883,384954 236898,385087 236932,385117 236938,
  385167 236938,385203 236941,385224 236946,385233 236950,385241 236956,385254 236971,
  385260 236979,385268 236999,385273 237018,385273 237037,385271 237047,385267 237057,
  385225 237125,385210 237144,385192 237161,385167 237192,385162 237202,385159 237214,
  385159 237227,385162 237241,385166 237256,385196 237324,385209 237345,385234 237375,
  385237 237383,385238 237399,385236 237407,385227 237419,385213 237430,385193 237439,
  385174 237451,385170 237455,385169 237460,385171 237475,385181 237503,385190 237521,
  385200 237533,385206 237538,385213 237541,385221 237542,385235 237540,385242 237541,
  385249 237544,385260 237555,385270 237570,385289 237584,385292 237589,385291 \leftrightarrow
     237596, 385284 237630))', 3438)
  );
     st createtopogeo
 Topology ri_topo populated
-- create tables and topo geometries --
CREATE TABLE ri.roads(gid serial PRIMARY KEY, road_name text);
SELECT topology.AddTopoGeometryColumn('ri_topo', 'ri', 'roads', 'topo', 'LINE');
```

See Also

AddTopoGeometryColumn, CreateTopology, DropTopology

11.4.5 TopoGeo AddPoint

TopoGeo_AddPoint — Adds a point to an existing topology using a tolerance and possibly splitting an existing edge.

Synopsis

integer TopoGeo_AddPoint(varchar toponame, geometry apoint, float8 tolerance);

Description

Adds a point to an existing topology and return its identifier. The given point will snap to existing nodes or edges within given tolerance. An existing edge may be split by the snapped point.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 623 / 791

See Also

TopoGeo_AddLineString, TopoGeo_AddPolygon, AddNode, CreateTopology

11.4.6 TopoGeo_AddLineString

TopoGeo_AddLineString — Adds a linestring to an existing topology using a tolerance and possibly splitting existing edges/faces. Returns edge identifiers

Synopsis

SETOF integer **TopoGeo_AddLineString**(varchar toponame, geometry aline, float8 tolerance);

Description

Adds a linestring to an existing topology and return a set of edge identifiers forming it up. The given line will snap to existing nodes or edges within given tolerance. Existing edges and faces may be split by the line.

Availability: 2.0.0

See Also

TopoGeo_AddPoint, TopoGeo_AddPolygon, AddEdge, CreateTopology

11.4.7 TopoGeo_AddPolygon

TopoGeo_AddPolygon — Adds a polygon to an existing topology using a tolerance and possibly splitting existing edges/faces.

Synopsis

integer TopoGeo_AddPolygon(varchar atopology, geometry apoly, float8 atolerance);

Description

Adds a polygon to an existing topology and return a set of face identifiers forming it up. The boundary of the given polygon will snap to existing nodes or edges within given tolerance. Existing edges and faces may be split by the boundary of the new polygon.

Availability: 2.0.0

See Also

TopoGeo_AddPoint, TopoGeo_AddLineString, AddFace, CreateTopology

11.5 Topology Editors

11.5.1 ST_AddIsoNode

ST_AddIsoNode — Adds an isolated node to a face in a topology and returns the nodeid of the new node. If face is null, the node is still created.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 624 / 791

Synopsis

integer ST_AddIsoNode(varchar atopology, integer aface, geometry apoint);

Description

Adds an isolated node with point location apoint to an existing face with faceid aface to a topology atopology and returns the nodeid of the new node.

If the spatial reference system (srid) of the point geometry is not the same as the topology, the apoint is not a point geometry, the point is null, or the point intersects an existing edge (even at the boundaries) then an exception is thrown. If the point already exists as a node, an exception is thrown.

If aface is not null and the apoint is not within the face, then an exception is thrown.

Availability: 1.?



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Net Routines: X+1.3.1

Examples

See Also

AddNode, CreateTopology, DropTopology, ST_Intersects

11.5.2 ST_AddIsoEdge

ST_AddIsoEdge — Adds an isolated edge defined by geometry alinestring to a topology connecting two existing isolated nodes anothernode and returns the edge id of the new edge.

Synopsis

integer **ST_AddIsoEdge**(varchar atopology, integer anode, integer anothernode, geometry alinestring);

Description

Adds an isolated edge defined by geometry alinestring to a topology connecting two existing isolated nodes anode and anothernode and returns the edge id of the new edge.

If the spatial reference system (srid) of the alinestring geometry is not the same as the topology, any of the input arguments are null, or the nodes are contained in more than one face, or the nodes are start or end nodes of an existing edge, then an exception is thrown.

If the alinestring is not within the face of the face the anode and anothernode belong to, then an exception is thrown.

If the anode and anothernode are not the start and end points of the alinestring then an exception is thrown.

Availability: 1.?



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.4

Examples

See Also

ST_AddIsoNode, ST_IsSimple, ST_Within

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 625 / 791

11.5.3 ST_AddEdgeNewFaces

ST_AddEdgeNewFaces — Add a new edge and, if in doing so it splits a face, delete the original face and replace it with two new faces.

Synopsis

integer ST_AddEdgeNewFaces(varchar atopology, integer anode, integer anothernode, geometry acurve);

Description

Add a new edge and, if in doing so it splits a face, delete the original face and replace it with two new faces. Returns the id of the newly added edge.

Updates all existing joined edges and relationships accordingly.

If any arguments are null, the given nodes are unknown (must already exist in the node table of the topology schema), the acurve is not a LINESTRING, the anode and anothernode are not the start and endpoints of acurve then an error is thrown.

If the spatial reference system (srid) of the acurve geometry is not the same as the topology an exception is thrown.

Availability: 2.0



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.12

Examples

See Also

ST_RemEdgeNewFace

ST_AddEdgeModFace

11.5.4 ST_AddEdgeModFace

ST_AddEdgeModFace — Add a new edge and, if in doing so it splits a face, modify the original face and add a new face.

Synopsis

integer ST_AddEdgeModFace(varchar atopology, integer anode, integer anothernode, geometry acurve);

Description

Add a new edge and, if doing so splits a face, modify the original face and add a new one.



Note

If possible, the new face will be created on left side of the new edge. This will not be possible if the face on the left side will need to be the Universe face (unbounded).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 626 / 791

Returns the id of the newly added edge.

Updates all existing joined edges and relationships accordingly.

If any arguments are null, the given nodes are unknown (must already exist in the node table of the topology schema), the acurve is not a LINESTRING, the anode and anothernode are not the start and endpoints of acurve then an error is thrown.

If the spatial reference system (srid) of the acurve geometry is not the same as the topology an exception is thrown.

Availability: 2.0



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.13

Examples

See Also

ST_RemEdgeModFace

ST_AddEdgeNewFaces

11.5.5 ST_RemEdgeNewFace

ST_RemEdgeNewFace — Removes an edge and, if the removed edge separated two faces, delete the original faces and replace them with a new face.

Synopsis

integer ST RemEdgeNewFace(varchar atopology, integer anedge);

Description

Removes an edge and, if the removed edge separated two faces, delete the original faces and replace them with a new face.

Returns the id of a newly created face or NULL, if no new face is created. No new face is created when the removed edge is dangling or isolated or confined with the universe face (possibly making the universe flood into the face on the other side).

Updates all existing joined edges and relationships accordingly.

Refuses to remove an edge partecipating in the definition of an existing TopoGeometry. Refuses to heal two faces if any Topo-Geometry is defined by only one of them (and not the other).

If any arguments are null, the given edge is unknown (must already exist in the edge table of the topology schema), the topology name is invalid then an error is thrown.

Availability: 2.0



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.14

Examples

See Also

ST_RemEdgeModFace

 $ST_AddEdgeNewFaces$

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 627 / 791

11.5.6 ST_RemEdgeModFace

ST_RemEdgeModFace — Removes an edge and, if the removed edge separated two faces, delete one of the them and modify the other to take the space of both.

Synopsis

integer **ST_RemEdgeModFace**(varchar atopology, integer anedge);

Description

Removes an edge and, if the removed edge separated two faces, delete one of the them and modify the other to take the space of both. Preferentially keeps the face on the right, to be symmetric with ST_AddEdgeModFace also keeping it. Returns the id of the face remaining in place of the removed edge.

Updates all existing joined edges and relationships accordingly.

Refuses to remove an edge partecipating in the definition of an existing TopoGeometry. Refuses to heal two faces if any Topo-Geometry is defined by only one of them (and not the other).

If any arguments are null, the given edge is unknown (must already exist in the edge table of the topology schema), the topology name is invalid then an error is thrown.

Availability: 2.0



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.15

Examples

See Also

ST_AddEdgeModFace

ST_RemEdgeNewFace

11.5.7 ST_ChangeEdgeGeom

ST_ChangeEdgeGeom — Changes the shape of an edge without affecting the topology structure.

Synopsis

integer **ST_ChangeEdgeGeom**(varchar atopology, integer anedge, geometry acurve);

Description

Changes the shape of an edge without affecting the topology structure.

If any arguments are null, the given edge does not exist in the edge table of the topology schema, the acurve is not a LINESTRING, the anode and anothernode are not the start and endpoints of acurve or the modification would change the underlying topology then an error is thrown.

If the spatial reference system (srid) of the acurve geometry is not the same as the topology an exception is thrown.

If the new acurve is not simple, then an error is thrown.

If moving the edge from old to new position would hit an obstacle then an error is thrown.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 628 / 791

Availability: 1.1.0

Enhanced: 2.0.0 adds topological consistency enforcement



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details X.3.6

Examples

See Also

 $ST_AddEdgeModFace$

ST_RemEdgeModFace

ST_ModEdgeSplit

11.5.8 ST_ModEdgeSplit

ST_ModEdgeSplit — Split an edge by creating a new node along an existing edge, modifying the original edge and adding a new edge.

Synopsis

integer ST_ModEdgeSplit(varchar atopology, integer anedge, geometry apoint);

Description

Split an edge by creating a new node along an existing edge, modifying the original edge and adding a new edge. Updates all existing joined edges and relationships accordingly. Returns the identifier of the newly added node.

Availability: 1.?

Changed: 2.0 - In prior versions, this was misnamed ST_ModEdgesSplit



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.9

Examples

```
-- Add an edge --
SELECT topology.AddEdge('ma_topo', ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(227592 893910, 227600 \cdot 893910)', 26986)) As edgeid;
-- edgeid-
3
-- Split the edge --
SELECT topology.ST_ModEdgeSplit('ma_topo', 3, ST_SetSRID(ST_Point(227594,893910),26986)) \cdot As node_id;
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 629 / 791

```
node_id
-----7
```

See Also

 $ST_NewEdgesSplit, ST_ModEdgeHeal, ST_NewEdgeHeal, AddEdge$

11.5.9 ST_ModEdgeHeal

ST_ModEdgeHeal — Heal two edges by deleting the node connecting them, modifying the first edge and deleting the second edge. Returns the id of the deleted node.

Synopsis

int **ST_ModEdgeHeal**(varchar atopology, integer anedge, integer anotheredge);

Description

Heal two edges by deleting the node connecting them, modifying the first edge and deleting the second edge. Returns the id of the deleted node. Updates all existing joined edges and relationships accordingly.

Availability: 2.0



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.9

See Also

ST_ModEdgeSplit ST_NewEdgesSplit

11.5.10 ST_NewEdgeHeal

ST_NewEdgeHeal — Heal two edges by deleting the node connecting them, deleting both edges, and replacing them with an edge whose direction is the same as the first edge provided.

Synopsis

int ST_NewEdgeHeal(varchar atopology, integer anedge, integer anotheredge);

Description

Heal two edges by deleting the node connecting them, deleting both edges, and replacing them with an edge whose direction is the same as the first edge provided. Returns the id of the new edge replacing the healed ones. Updates all existing joined edges and relationships accordingly.

Availability: 2.0



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.9

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 630 / 791

See Also

ST_ModEdgeHeal ST_ModEdgeSplit ST_NewEdgesSplit

11.5.11 ST_MovelsoNode

ST_MoveIsoNode — Moves an isolated node in a topology from one point to another. If new apoint geometry exists as a node an error is thrown. REturns description of move.

Synopsis

text **ST_MoveIsoNode**(varchar atopology, integer anedge, geometry apoint);

Description

Moves an isolated node in a topology from one point to another. If new apoint geometry exists as a node an error is thrown.

If any arguments are null, the apoint is not a point, the existing node is not isolated (is a start or end point of an existing edge), new node location intersects an existing edge (even at the end points) then an exception is thrown.

If the spatial reference system (srid) of the point geometry is not the same as the topology an exception is thrown.

Availability: 1.?



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Net Routines: X.3.2

Examples

See Also

ST AddIsoNode

11.5.12 ST NewEdgesSplit

ST_NewEdgesSplit — Split an edge by creating a new node along an existing edge, deleting the original edge and replacing it with two new edges. Returns the id of the new node created that joins the new edges.

Synopsis

integer ST_NewEdgesSplit(varchar atopology, integer anedge, geometry apoint);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 631 / 791

Description

Split an edge with edge id anedge by creating a new node with point location apoint along current edge, deleting the original edge and replacing it with two new edges. Returns the id of the new node created that joins the new edges. Updates all existing joined edges and relationships accordingly.

If the spatial reference system (srid) of the point geometry is not the same as the topology, the apoint is not a point geometry, the point is null, the point already exists as a node, the edge does not correspond to an existing edge or the point is not within the edge then an exception is thrown.

Availability: 1.?



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Net Routines: X.3.8

Examples

See Also

ST_ModEdgeSplit ST_ModEdgeHeal ST_NewEdgeHeal AddEdge

11.5.13 ST_RemovelsoNode

ST_RemoveIsoNode — Removes an isolated node and returns description of action. If the node is not isolated (is start or end of an edge), then an exception is thrown.

Synopsis

text **ST_RemoveIsoNode**(varchar atopology, integer anode);

Description

Removes an isolated node and returns description of action. If the node is not isolated (is start or end of an edge), then an exception is thrown.

Availability: 1.?



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X+1.3.3

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 632 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_AddIsoNode

11.5.14 ST_RemovelsoEdge

ST_RemoveIsoEdge — Removes an isolated edge and returns description of action. If the edge is not isolated, then an exception is thrown.

Synopsis

text **ST_RemoveIsoEdge**(varchar atopology, integer anedge);

Description

Removes an isolated edge and returns description of action. If the edge is not isolated, then an exception is thrown.

Availability: 1.?



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X+1.3.3

Examples

See Also

ST_AddIsoNode

11.6 Topology Accessors

11.6.1 GetEdgeByPoint

GetEdgeByPoint — Find the edge-id of an edge that intersects a given point

Synopsis

integer GetEdgeByPoint(varchar atopology, geometry apoint, float8 tol);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 633 / 791

Retrieve the id of an edge that intersects a Point

The function returns an integer (id-edge) given a topology, a POINT and a tolerance. If tolerance = 0 then the point has to intersect the edge.

If the point doesn't intersect an edge, returns 0 (zero).

If use tolerance > 0 and there is more than one edge near the point then an exception is thrown.



Note

If tolerance = 0, the function use ST_Intersects otherwise uses ST_DWithin.

Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.3.0.

Examples

These examples use edges we created in AddEdge

```
SELECT topology.GetEdgeByPoint('ma_topo',geom, 1) As nearnode FROM ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=26986;POINT(227591.9 893900.4)') As geom;

-- get error -- ERROR: Two or more edges found
```

See Also

AddEdge, GetNodeByPoint, GetFaceByPoint

11.6.2 GetFaceByPoint

GetFaceByPoint — Find the face-id of a face that intersects a given point

Synopsis

integer GetFaceByPoint(varchar atopology, geometry apoint, float8 tol);

Description

Retrieve the id of a face that intersects a Point.

The function returns an integer (id-face) given a topology, a POINT and a tolerance. If tolerance = 0 then the point has to intersect the face.

If the point doesn't intersect a face, returns 0 (zero).

If use tolerance > 0 and there is more than one face near the point then an exception is thrown.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 634 / 791



Note

If tolerance = 0, the function uses ST_Intersects otherwise uses ST_DWithin.

Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.3.0.

Examples

These examples use edges faces created in AddFace

```
SELECT topology.GetFaceByPoint('ma_topo',geom, 1) As nearnode
  FROM ST_GeomFromEWKT('POINT(227591.9 893900.4)') As geom;
-- get error --
ERROR: Two or more faces found
```

See Also

AddFace, GetNodeByPoint, GetEdgeByPoint

11.6.3 GetNodeByPoint

GetNodeByPoint — Find the id of a node at a point location

Synopsis

integer **GetNodeByPoint**(varchar atopology, geometry point, float8 tol);

Retrieve the id of a node at a point location

The function return an integer (id-node) given a topology, a POINT and a tolerance. If tolerance = 0 mean exactly intersection otherwise retrieve the node from an interval.

If there isn't a node at the point, it return 0 (zero).

If use tolerance > 0 and near the point there are more than one node it throw an exception.



Note

If tolerance = 0, the function use ST_Intersects otherwise will use ST_DWithin.

Availability: 2.0.0 - requires GEOS >= 3.3.0.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 635 / 791

Examples

These examples use edges we created in AddEdge

```
SELECT topology.GetNodeByPoint('ma_topo',geom, 1) As nearnode
FROM ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=26986;POINT(227591.9 893900.4)') As geom;
nearnode
------
2
```

```
SELECT topology.GetNodeByPoint('ma_topo',geom, 1000) As too_much_tolerance FROM ST_GeomFromEWKT('SRID=26986;POINT(227591.9 893900.4)') As geom;

---get error--
ERROR: Two or more nodes found
```

See Also

AddEdge, GetEdgeByPoint, GetFaceByPoint

11.6.4 GetTopologyID

GetTopologyID — Returns the id of a topology in the topology.topology table given the name of the topology.

Synopsis

integer **GetTopologyID**(varchar toponame);

Description

Returns the id of a topology in the topology.topology table given the name of the topology.

Availability: 1.?

Examples

See Also

CreateTopology, DropTopology, GetTopologyName, GetTopologySRID

11.6.5 GetTopologySRID

GetTopologySRID — Returns the SRID of a topology in the topology.topology table given the name of the topology.

Synopsis

integer GetTopologyID(varchar toponame);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 636 / 791

Description

Returns the spatial reference id of a topology in the topology table given the name of the topology.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
SELECT topology.GetTopologySRID('ma_topo') As SRID;
SRID
-----
4326
```

See Also

CreateTopology, DropTopology, GetTopologyName, GetTopologyID

11.6.6 GetTopologyName

GetTopologyName — Returns the name of a topology (schema) given the id of the topology.

Synopsis

varchar GetTopologyName(integer topology_id);

Description

Returns the topology name (schema) of a topology from the topology.topology table given the topology id of the topology. Availability: 1.?

Examples

```
SELECT topology.GetTopologyName(1) As topo_name;
topo_name
-----
ma_topo
```

See Also

Create Topology, Drop Topology, Get Topology SRID

11.6.7 ST_GetFaceEdges

ST_GetFaceEdges — Returns a set of ordered edges that bound aface.

Synopsis

getfaceedges_returntype **ST_GetFaceEdges**(varchar atopology, integer aface);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 637 / 791

Description

Returns a set of ordered edges that bound aface. Each output consists of a sequence and edgeid. Sequence numbers start with value 1.

Enumeration of each ring edges start from the edge with smallest identifier. Order of edges follows a left-hand-rule (bound face is on the left of each directed edge).

Availability: 2.0



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3 Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.5

Examples

```
-- Returns the sequence, edge id
-- and geometry of the edges that bound face 1
-- If you just need geom and seq, can use ST_GetFaceGeometry
SELECT t.seq, t.edge, geom
FROM topology.ST_GetFaceEdges('tt',1) As t(seq,edge)
INNER JOIN tt.edge AS e ON abs(t.edge) = e.edge_id;
```

See Also

GetRingEdges, AddFace, ST_GetFaceGeometry

11.6.8 ST_GetFaceGeometry

ST_GetFaceGeometry — Returns the polygon in the given topology with the specified face id.

Synopsis

geometry ST_GetFaceGeometry(varchar atopology, integer aface);

Description

Returns the polygon in the given topology with the specified face id. Builds the polygon from the edges making up the face. Availability: 1.?



This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3 Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.16

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 638 / 791

Examples

```
-- Returns the wkt of the polygon added with AddFace

SELECT ST_AsText(topology.ST_GetFaceGeometry('ma_topo', 1)) As facegeomwkt;

-- result --

facegeomwkt

POLYGON((234776.9 899563.7,234896.5 899456.7,234914 899436.4,234946.6 899356.9,
234872.5 899328.7,234891 899285.4,234992.5 899145,234890.6 899069,
234755.2 899255.4,234612.7 899379.4,234776.9 899563.7))
```

See Also

AddFace

11.6.9 GetRingEdges

GetRingEdges — Returns the ordered set of signed edge identifiers met by walking on an a given edge side.

Synopsis

getfaceedges_returntype **GetRingEdges**(varchar atopology, integer aring, integer max_edges=null);

Description

Returns the ordered set of signed edge identifiers met by walking on an a given edge side. Each output consists of a sequence and a signed edge id. Sequence numbers start with value 1.

If you pass a positive edge id, the walk starts on the left side of the corresponding edge and follows the edge direction. If you pass a negative edge id, the walk starts on the right side of it and goes backward.

If max_edges is not null no more than those records are returned by that function. This is meant to be a safety parameter when dealing with possibly invalid topologies.



Note

This function uses edge ring linking metadata.

Availability: 2.0.0

See Also

 $ST_GetFaceEdges, GetNodeEdges$

11.6.10 GetNodeEdges

GetNodeEdges — Returns an ordered set of edges incident to the given node.

Synopsis

getfaceedges_returntype GetNodeEdges(varchar atopology, integer anode);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 639 / 791

Description

Returns an ordered set of edges incident to the given node. Each output consists of a sequence and a signed edge id. Sequence numbers start with value 1. A positive edge starts at the given node. A negative edge ends into the given node. Closed edges will appear twice (with both signs). Order is clockwise starting from northbound.



Note

This function computes ordering rather than deriving from metadata and is thus usable to build edge ring linking.

Availability: 2.0

See Also

GetRingEdges, ST Azimuth

11.7 Topology Processing

11.7.1 Polygonize

Polygonize — Find and register all faces defined by topology edges

Synopsis

text Polygonize(varchar toponame);

Description

Register all faces that can be built out a topology edge primitives.

The target topology is assumed to contain no self-intersecting edges.



Note

Already known faces are recognized, so it is safe to call Polygonize multiple times on the same topology.



Note

This function does not use nor set the next_left_edge and next_right_edge fields of the edge table.

Availability: 2.0.0

See Also

AddFace, ST_Polygonize

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 640 / 791

11.7.2 AddNode

AddNode — Adds a point node to the node table in the specified topology schema and returns the nodeid of new node. If point already exists as node, the existing nodeid is returned.

Synopsis

integer AddNode(varchar toponame, geometry apoint, boolean allowEdgeSplitting=false, boolean computeContainingFace=false);

Description

Adds a point node to the node table in the specified topology schema. The AddEdge function automatically adds start and end points of an edge when called so not necessary to explicitly add nodes of an edge.

If any edge crossing the node is found either an exception is raised or the edge is split, depending on the allowEdgeSplitting parameter value.

If computeContainingFace is true a newly added node would get the correct containing face computed.



Note

If the apoint geometry already exists as a node, the node is not added but the existing nodeid is returned.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

See Also

AddEdge, CreateTopology

11.7.3 AddEdge

AddEdge — Adds a linestring edge to the edge table and associated start and end points to the point nodes table of the specified topology schema using the specified linestring geometry and returns the edgeid of the new (or existing) edge.

Synopsis

integer AddEdge(varchar toponame, geometry aline);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 641 / 791

Description

Adds an edge to the edge table and associated nodes to the nodes table of the specified toponame schema using the specified linestring geometry and returns the edgeid of the new or existing record. The newly added edge has "universe" face on both sides and links to itself.



Note

If the aline geometry crosses, overlaps, contains or is contained by an existing linestring edge, then an error is thrown and the edge is not added.



Note

The geometry of aline must have the same srid as defined for the topology otherwise an invalid spatial reference sys error will be thrown.

Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0.

Examples

```
SELECT topology.AddEdge('ma_topo', ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(227575.8 893917.2,227591.9 ← 893900.4)', 26986) ) As edgeid;
-- result-
edgeid
------

1

SELECT topology.AddEdge('ma_topo', ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(227591.9 893900.4,227622.6 ← 893844.2,227641.6 893816.5,
227704.5 893778.5)', 26986) ) As edgeid;
-- result --
edgeid
-------
2

SELECT topology.AddEdge('ma_topo', ST_GeomFromText('LINESTRING(227591.2 893900, 227591.9 ← 893900.4,
227704.5 893778.5)', 26986) ) As edgeid;
-- gives error --
ERROR: Edge intersects (not on endpoints) with existing edge 1
```

See Also

TopoGeo_AddLineString, CreateTopology, Section 4.3.1

11.7.4 AddFace

AddFace — Registers a face primitive to a topology and gets its identifier.

Synopsis

integer AddFace(varchar toponame, geometry apolygon, boolean force_new=false);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 642 / 791

Description

Registers a face primitive to a topology and gets its identifier.

For a newly added face, the edges forming its boundaries and the ones contained in the face will be updated to have correct values in the left_face and right_face fields. Isolated nodes contained in the face will also be updated to have a correct containing_face field value.



Note

This function does not use nor set the next left edge and next right edge fields of the edge table.

The target topology is assumed to be valid (containing no self-intersecting edges). An exception is raised if: The polygon boundary is not fully defined by existing edges or the polygon overlaps an existing face.

If the apolygon geometry already exists as a face, then: if force_new is false (the default) the face id of the existing face is returned; if force_new is true a new id will be assigned to the newly registered face.



Note

When a new registration of an existing face is performed (force_new=true), no action will be taken to resolve dangling references to the existing face in the edge, node an relation tables, nor will the MBR field of the existing face record be updated. It is up to the caller to deal with that.



Note

The apolygon geometry must have the same srid as defined for the topology otherwise an invalid spatial reference sys error will be thrown.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
-- first add the edges we use generate_series as an iterator (the below
  will only work for polygons with < 10000 points because of our max in gs)
SELECT topology.AddEdge('ma_topo', ST_MakeLine(ST_PointN(geom,i), ST_PointN(geom, i + 1))) \leftrightarrow
    As edgeid
    FROM (SELECT
                  ST_NPoints(geom) AS npt, geom
            FROM
                 (SELECT ST_Boundary(ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((234896.5 899456.7,234914 \leftrightarrow
                    899436.4,234946.6 899356.9,234872.5 899328.7,
                234891 899285.4,234992.5 899145, 234890.6 899069,234755.2 899255.4,
                234612.7 899379.4,234776.9 899563.7,234896.5 899456.7))', 26986) ) As geom
              As geoms) As facen CROSS JOIN generate_series(1,10000) As i
         WHERE i < npt;
-- result --
 edgeid
      3
      4
      5
      6
      7
      8
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 643 / 791

```
10
11
12
(10 rows)
-- then add the face -

SELECT topology.AddFace('ma_topo',
    ST_GeomFromText('POLYGON((234896.5 899456.7,234914 899436.4,234946.6 899356.9,234872.5 ↔
    899328.7,
    234891 899285.4,234992.5 899145, 234890.6 899069,234755.2 899255.4,
    234612.7 899379.4,234776.9 899563.7,234896.5 899456.7))', 26986)) As faceid;
-- result -- faceid
-------
1
```

See Also

AddEdge, CreateTopology, Section 4.3.1

11.7.5 ST_Simplify

ST_Simplify — Returns a "simplified" geometry version of the given TopoGeometry using the Douglas-Peucker algorithm.

Synopsis

geometry ST_Simplify(TopoGeometry geomA, float tolerance);

Description

Returns a "simplified" geometry version of the given TopoGeometry using the Douglas-Peucker algorithm on each component edge.



Note

The returned geometry may be non-simple or non-valid. Splitting component edges may help retaining simplicity/validity.

Performed by the GEOS module.

Availability: 2.1.0

See Also

Geometry ST_Simplify, ST_IsSimple, ST_IsValid, ST_ModEdgeSplit

11.8 TopoGeometry Constructors

11.8.1 CreateTopoGeom

CreateTopoGeom — Creates a new topo geometry object from topo element array - tg_type: 1:[multi]point, 2:[multi]line, 3:[multi]poly, 4:collection

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 644 / 791

Synopsis

topogeometry **CreateTopoGeom**(varchar toponame, integer tg_type, integer layer_id, topoelementarray tg_objs); topogeometry **CreateTopoGeom**(varchar toponame, integer tg_type, integer layer_id);

Description

Creates a topogeometry object for layer denoted by layer_id and registers it in the relations table in the toponame schema.

tg_type is an integer: 1:[multi]point (punctal), 2:[multi]line (lineal), 3:[multi]poly (areal), 4:collection. layer_id is the layer id in the topology.layer table.

punctal layers are formed from set of nodes, lineal layers are formed from a set of edges, areal layers are formed from a set of faces, and collections can be formed from a mixture of nodes, edges, and faces.

Omitting the array of components generates an empty TopoGeometry object.

Availability: 1.?

Examples: Form from existing edges

Create a topogeom in ri_topo schema for layer 2 (our ri_roads), of type (2) LINE, for the first edge (we loaded in ST_CreateT opoGeo.

```
INSERT INTO ri.ri_roads(road_name, topo) VALUES('Unknown', topology.CreateTopoGeom('ri_topo ←
    ',2,2,'{{1,2}}'::topology.topoelementarray);
```

Examples: Convert an areal geometry to best guess topogeometry

Lets say we have geometries that should be formed from a collection of faces. We have for example blockgroups table and want to know the topo geometry of each block group. If our data was perfectly aligned, we could do this:

```
-- create our topo geometry column --
SELECT topology.AddTopoGeometryColumn(
  'topo_boston',
  'boston', 'blockgroups', 'topo', 'POLYGON');
-- addtopgeometrycolumn --
-- update our column assuming
-- everything is perfectly aligned with our edges
UPDATE boston.blockgroups AS bg
  SET topo = topology.CreateTopoGeom('topo_boston'
        ,3,1
        , foo.bfaces)
FROM (SELECT b.gid, topology.TopoElementArray_Agg(ARRAY[f.face_id,3]) As bfaces
 FROM boston.blockgroups As b
            INNER JOIN topo_boston.face As f ON b.geom && f.mbr
        WHERE ST_Covers(b.geom, topology.ST_GetFaceGeometry('topo_boston', f.face_id))
            GROUP BY b.gid) As foo
WHERE foo.gid = bg.gid;
```

```
--the world is rarely perfect allow for some error
--count the face if 50% of it falls
-- within what we think is our blockgroup boundary
UPDATE boston.blockgroups AS bg
SET topo = topology.CreateTopoGeom('topo_boston'
,3,1
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 645 / 791

```
, foo.bfaces)
FROM (SELECT b.gid, topology.TopoElementArray_Agg(ARRAY[f.face_id,3]) As bfaces
 FROM boston.blockgroups As b
            INNER JOIN topo_boston.face As f ON b.geom && f.mbr
        WHERE ST_Covers(b.geom, topology.ST_GetFaceGeometry('topo_boston', f.face_id))
 OR
   ST_Intersects(b.geom, topology.ST_GetFaceGeometry('topo_boston', f.face_id))
            AND ST_Area(ST_Intersection(b.geom, topology.ST_GetFaceGeometry('topo_boston',
                f.face_id) ) > >
                ST\_Area (topology.ST\_GetFaceGeometry ('topo\_boston', f.face\_id)) * 0.5
            GROUP BY b.gid) As foo
WHERE foo.gid = bg.gid;
-- and if we wanted to convert our topogeometry back
-- to a denomalized geometry aligned with our faces and edges
-- cast the topo to a geometry
-- The really cool thing is my new geometries
-- are now aligned with my tiger street centerlines
UPDATE boston.blockgroups SET new_geom = topo::geometry;
```

See Also

AddTopoGeometryColumn, toTopoGeom ST_CreateTopoGeo, ST_GetFaceGeometry, TopoElementArray, TopoElementArray_Agg

11.8.2 toTopoGeom

toTopoGeom — Converts a simple Geometry into a topo geometry

Synopsis

topogeometry **toTopoGeom**(geometry geom, varchar toponame, integer layer_id, float8 tolerance); topogeometry **toTopoGeom**(geometry geom, topogeometry topogeom, float8 tolerance);

Description

Converts a simple Geometry into a TopoGeometry.

Topological primitives required to represent the input geometry will be added to the underlying topology, possibly splitting existing ones, and they will be associated with the output TopoGeometry in the relation table.

Existing TopoGeometry objects (with the possible exception of topogeom, if given) will retain their shapes.

When tolerance is given it will be used to snap the input geometry to existing primitives.

In the first form a new TopoGeometry will be created for the given layer (layer_id) of the given topology (toponame).

In the second form the primitives resulting from the conversion will be added to the pre-existing TopoGeometry (topogeom), possibly adding space to its final shape. To have the new shape completely replace the old one see clearTopoGeom.

Availability: 2.0

Enhanced: 2.1.0 adds the version taking an existing TopoGeometry.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 646 / 791

Examples

This is a full self-contained workflow

```
-- do this if you don't have a topology setup already
-- creates topology not allowing any tolerance
SELECT topology.CreateTopology('topo_boston_test', 2249);
-- create a new table
CREATE TABLE nei_topo(gid serial primary key, nei varchar(30));
--add a topogeometry column to it
SELECT topology.AddTopoGeometryColumn('topo_boston_test', 'public', 'nei_topo', 'topo', ' \leftrightarrow
   MULTIPOLYGON') As new_layer_id;
new_layer_id
--use new layer id in populating the new topogeometry column
-- we add the topogeoms to the new layer with 0 tolerance
INSERT INTO nei_topo(nei, topo)
SELECT nei, topology.toTopoGeom(geom, 'topo_boston_test', 1)
FROM neighborhoods
WHERE gid BETWEEN 1 and 15;
--use to verify what has happened --
SELECT * FROM
    topology.TopologySummary('topo_boston_test');
Topology topo_boston_test (5), SRID 2249, precision 0
61 nodes, 87 edges, 35 faces, 15 topogeoms in 1 layers
Layer 1, type Polygonal (3), 15 topogeoms
Deploy: public.nei_topo.topo
```

```
-- Shrink all TopoGeometry polygons by 10 meters
UPDATE nei_topo SET topo = ST_Buffer(clearTopoGeom(topo), -10);

-- Get the no-one-lands left by the above operation
-- I think GRASS calls this "polygon0 layer"
SELECT ST_GetFaceGeometry('topo_boston_test', f.face_id)
   FROM topo_boston_test.face f
   WHERE f.face_id > 0 -- don't consider the universe face
   AND NOT EXISTS ( -- check that no TopoGeometry references the face
   SELECT * FROM topo_boston_test.relation
   WHERE layer_id = 1 AND element_id = f.face_id
);
```

See Also

CreateTopology, AddTopoGeometryColumn, CreateTopoGeom, TopologySummary, clearTopoGeom

11.8.3 TopoElementArray_Agg

TopoElementArray_Agg — Returns a topoelementarray for a set of element_id, type arrays (topoelements)

Synopsis

topoelementarray TopoElementArray_Agg(topoelement set tefield);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 647 / 791

Description

Used to create a TopoElementArray from a set of TopoElement.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

See Also

TopoElement, TopoElementArray

11.9 TopoGeometry Editors

11.9.1 clearTopoGeom

clearTopoGeom — Clears the content of a topo geometry

Synopsis

topogeometry **clearTopoGeom**(topogeometry topogeom);

Description

Clears the content a TopoGeometry turning it into an empty one. Mostly useful in conjunction with toTopoGeom to replace the shape of existing objects and any dependent object in higher hierarchical levels.

Availability: 2.1

Examples

```
-- Shrink all TopoGeometry polygons by 10 meters
UPDATE nei_topo SET topo = ST_Buffer(clearTopoGeom(topo), -10);
```

See Also

toTopoGeom

11.9.2 TopoGeom_addElement

TopoGeom_addElement — Add an element to the definition of a TopoGeometry

Synopsis

topogeometry **TopoGeom_addElement**(topogeometry tg, topoelement el);

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 648 / 791

Description

Adds a TopoElement to the definition of a TopoGeometry object. Does not error out if the element is already part of the definition.

Availability: 2.3

Examples

```
-- Add edge 5 to TopoGeometry tg
UPDATE mylayer SET tg = TopoGeom_addElement(tg, '{5,2}');
```

See Also

TopoGeom_remElement, CreateTopoGeom

11.9.3 TopoGeom_remElement

TopoGeom_remElement — Remove an element from the definition of a TopoGeometry

Synopsis

topogeometry **TopoGeom_remElement**(topogeometry tg, topoelement el);

Description

Removes a TopoElement from the definition of a TopoGeometry object.

Availability: 2.3

Examples

```
-- Remove face 43 from TopoGeometry tg
UPDATE mylayer SET tg = TopoGeom_remElement(tg, '{43,3}');
```

See Also

TopoGeom_addElement, CreateTopoGeom

11.9.4 toTopoGeom

toTopoGeom — Adds a geometry shape to an existing topo geometry

Description

Refer to toTopoGeom

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 649 / 791

11.10 TopoGeometry Accessors

11.10.1 GetTopoGeomElementArray

GetTopoGeomElementArray — Returns a topoelementarray (an array of topoelements) containing the topological elements and type of the given TopoGeometry (primitive elements)

Synopsis

topoelementarray **GetTopoGeomElementArray**(varchar toponame, integer layer_id, integer tg_id); topoelementarray topoelement **GetTopoGeomElementArray**(topogeometry tg);

Description

Returns a TopoElementArray containing the topological elements and type of the given TopoGeometry (primitive elements). This is similar to GetTopoGeomElements except it returns the elements as an array rather than as a dataset.

tg_id is the topogeometry id of the topogeometry object in the topology in the layer denoted by layer_id in the topology.layer table.

Availability: 1.?

Examples

See Also

GetTopoGeomElements, TopoElementArray

11.10.2 GetTopoGeomElements

GetTopoGeomElements — Returns a set of topoelement objects containing the topological element_id,element_type of the given TopoGeometry (primitive elements)

Synopsis

set of topoelement **GetTopoGeomElements**(varchar toponame, integer layer_id, integer tg_id); set of topoelement **GetTopoGeomElements**(topogeometry tg);

Description

Returns a set of element_id, element_type (topoelements) for a given topogeometry object in toponame schema.

tg_id is the topogeometry id of the topogeometry object in the topology in the layer denoted by layer_id in the topology.layer table.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

See Also

GetTopoGeomElementArray, TopoElement, TopoGeom_addElement, TopoGeom_remElement

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 650 / 791

11.11 TopoGeometry Outputs

11.11.1 AsGML

AsGML — Returns the GML representation of a topogeometry.

Synopsis

```
text AsGML(topogeometry tg, text nsprefix_in);
text AsGML(topogeometry tg, regclass visitedTable);
text AsGML(topogeometry tg, regclass visitedTable);
text AsGML(topogeometry tg, regclass visitedTable, text nsprefix);
text AsGML(topogeometry tg, text nsprefix_in, integer precision, integer options);
text AsGML(topogeometry tg, text nsprefix_in, integer precision, integer options, regclass visitedTable);
text AsGML(topogeometry tg, text nsprefix_in, integer precision, integer options, regclass visitedTable, text idprefix);
text AsGML(topogeometry tg, text nsprefix_in, integer precision, integer options, regclass visitedTable, text idprefix, int gm-lversion);
```

Description

Returns the GML representation of a topogeometry in version GML3 format. If no nsprefix_in is specified then gml is used. Pass in an empty string for nsprefix to get a non-qualified name space. The precision (default: 15) and options (default 1) parameters, if given, are passed untouched to the underlying call to ST_AsGML.

The visitedTable parameter, if given, is used for keeping track of the visited Node and Edge elements so to use cross-references (xlink:xref) rather than duplicating definitions. The table is expected to have (at least) two integer fields: 'element_type' and 'element_id'. The calling user must have both read and write privileges on the given table. For best performance, an index should be defined on element_type and element_id, in that order. Such index would be created automatically by adding a unique constraint to the fields. Example:

```
CREATE TABLE visited (
  element_type integer, element_id integer,
  unique(element_type, element_id)
);
```

The idprefix parameter, if given, will be prepended to Edge and Node tag identifiers.

The gmlver parameter, if given, will be passed to the underlying ST_AsGML. Defaults to 3.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

This uses the topo geometry we created in CreateTopoGeom

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 651 / 791

```
<qml:Curve srsName="urn:oqc:def:crs:EPSG::3438">
                     <qml:segments>
                         <gml:LineStringSegment>
                             <gml:posList srsDimension="2">384744 236928 384750 236923 \leftrightarrow
                                 384769 236911 384799 236895 384811 236890
                             384833\ 236884\ 384844\ 236882\ 384866\ 236881\ 384879\ 236883\ 384954
                                 236898 385087 236932 385117 236938
                             385167 236938 385203 236941 385224 236946 385233 236950 385241
                                 236956 385254 236971
                             385260 236979 385268 236999 385273 237018 385273 237037 385271
                                 237047 385267 237057 385225 237125
                             385210 237144 385192 237161 385167 237192 385162 237202 385159
                                 237214 385159 237227 385162 237241
                             385166 237256 385196 237324 385209 237345 385234 237375 385237
                                 237383 385238 237399 385236 237407
                             385227 237419 385213 237430 385193 237439 385174 237451 385170
                                 237455 385169 237460 385171 237475
                             385181 237503 385190 237521 385200 237533 385206 237538 385213
                                 237541 385221 237542 385235 237540 385242 237541
                             385249 237544 385260 237555 385270 237570 385289 237584 385292 \leftrightarrow
                                 237589 385291 237596 385284 237630</pml:posList>
                         </gml:LineStringSegment>
                     </gml:segments>
                </gml:Curve>
            </gml:curveProperty>
        </gml:Edge>
    </gml:directedEdge>
</gml:TopoCurve>
```

Same exercise as previous without namespace

```
SELECT topology.AsGML(topo,'') As rdgml
 FROM ri.roads
  WHERE road_name = 'Unknown';
-- rdgml--
<TopoCurve>
    <directedEdge>
        <Edge id="E1">
            <directedNode orientation="-">
                <Node id="N1"/>
            </directedNode>
            <directedNode></directedNode>
            <curveProperty>
                <Curve srsName="urn:ogc:def:crs:EPSG::3438">
                    <segments>
                        <LineStringSegment>
                            <posList srsDimension="2">384744 236928 384750 236923 384769 ←
                                236911 384799 236895 384811 236890
                            384833 236884 384844 236882 384866 236881 384879 236883 384954
                                236898 385087 236932 385117 236938
                            385167 236938 385203 236941 385224 236946 385233 236950 385241
                                236956 385254 236971
                            385260 236979 385268 236999 385273 237018 385273 237037 385271
                                237047 385267 237057 385225 237125
                            385210 237144 385192 237161 385167 237192 385162 237202 385159
                                237214 385159 237227 385162 237241
                            385166 237256 385196 237324 385209 237345 385234 237375 385237
                                237383 385238 237399 385236 237407
                            385227 237419 385213 237430 385193 237439 385174 237451 385170
                                237455 385169 237460 385171 237475
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 652 / 791

```
385181 237503 385190 237521 385200 237533 385206 237538 385213 ↔
237541 385221 237542 385235 237540 385242 237541
385249 237544 385260 237555 385270 237570 385289 237584 385292 ↔
237589 385291 237596 385284 237630</posList>

<pre
```

See Also

CreateTopoGeom, ST_CreateTopoGeo

11.11.2 AsTopoJSON

AsTopoJSON — Returns the TopoJSON representation of a topogeometry.

Synopsis

text **AsTopoJSON**(topogeometry tg, regclass edgeMapTable);

Description

Returns the TopoJSON representation of a topogeometry. If edgeMapTable is not null, it will be used as a lookup/storage mapping of edge identifiers to arc indices. This is to be able to allow for a compact "arcs" array in the final document.

The table, if given, is expected to have an "arc_id" field of type "serial" and an "edge_id" of type integer; the code will query the table for "edge_id" so it is recommended to add an index on that field.



Note

Arc indices in the TopoJSON output are 0-based but they are 1-based in the "edgeMapTable" table.

A full TopoJSON document will be need to contain, in addition to the snippets returned by this function, the actual arcs plus some headers. See the TopoJSON specification.

Availability: 2.1.0

Enhanced: 2.2.1 added support for puntal inputs

See Also

ST_AsGeoJSON

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 653 / 791

Examples

```
CREATE TEMP TABLE edgemap(arc_id serial, edge_id int unique);
-- header
SELECT '{ "type": "Topology", "transform": { "scale": [1,1], "translate": [0,0] }, "objects \leftrightarrow
   ": {'
-- objects
UNION ALL SELECT '"' || feature_name || '": ' || AsTopoJSON(feature, 'edgemap')
FROM features.big_parcels WHERE feature_name = 'P3P4';
-- arcs
WITH edges AS (
  SELECT m.arc_id, e.geom FROM edgemap m, city_data.edge e
  WHERE e.edge_id = m.edge_id
), points AS (
  SELECT arc_id, (st_dumppoints(geom)).* FROM edges
), compare AS (
  SELECT p2.arc_id,
         CASE WHEN pl.path IS NULL THEN pl.geom
              ELSE ST_Translate(p2.geom, -ST_X(p1.geom), -ST_Y(p1.geom))
         END AS geom
  FROM points p2 LEFT OUTER JOIN points p1
  ON ( p1.arc_id = p2.arc_id AND p2.path[1] = p1.path[1]+1 )
 ORDER BY arc_id, p2.path
), arcsdump AS (
  SELECT arc_id, (regexp_matches( ST_AsGeoJSON(geom), '\[\cdot, \cdot\]'))[1] as t
 FROM compare
), arcs AS (
  SELECT arc_id, '[' || array_to_string(array_agg(t), ',') || ']' as a FROM arcsdump
  GROUP BY arc_id
  ORDER BY arc_id
SELECT '}, "arcs": [' UNION ALL
SELECT array_to_string(array_agg(a), E',\n') from arcs
-- footer
UNION ALL SELECT ']}'::text as t;
-- Result:
{ "type": "Topology", "transform": { "scale": [1,1], "translate": [0,0] }, "objects": {
"P3P4": { "type": "MultiPolygon", "arcs": [[[-1]],[[6,5,-5,-4,-3,1]]]}
}, "arcs": [
 [[25,30],[6,0],[0,10],[-14,0],[0,-10],[8,0]],
 [[35,6],[0,8]],
 [[35,6],[12,0]],
 [[47,6],[0,8]],
 [[47,14],[0,8]],
 [[35,22],[12,0]],
 [[35,14],[0,8]]
 ] }
```

11.12 Topology Spatial Relationships

11.12.1 Equals

Equals — Returns true if two topogeometries are composed of the same topology primitives.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 654 / 791

Synopsis

boolean **Equals**(topogeometry tg1, topogeometry tg2);

Description

Returns true if two topogeometries are composed of the same topology primitives: faces, edges, nodes.



Note

This function not supported for topogeometries that are geometry collections. It also can not compare topogeometries from different topologies.

Availability: 1.1.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

Examples

See Also

GetTopoGeomElements, ST_Equals

11.12.2 Intersects

Intersects — Returns true if any pair of primitives from the two topogeometries intersect.

Synopsis

boolean **Intersects**(topogeometry tg1, topogeometry tg2);

Description

Returns true if any pair of primitives from the two topogeometries intersect.



Note

This function not supported for topogeometries that are geometry collections. It also can not compare topogeometries from different topologies. Also not currently supported for hierarchichal topogeometries (topogeometries composed of other topogeometries).

Availability: 1.1.0



This function supports 3d and will not drop the z-index.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 655 / 791

Examples

See Also

ST_Intersects

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 656 / 791

Chapter 12

Address Standardizer

This is a fork of the PAGC standardizer (original code for this portion was PAGC PostgreSQL Address Standardizer).

The address standardizer is a single line address parser that takes an input address and normalizes it based on a set of rules stored in a table and helper lex and gaz tables.

The code is built into a single postgresql extension library called address_standardizer which can be installed with CRE ATE EXTENSION address_standardizer;. In addition to the address_standardizer extension, a sample data extension called address_standardizer_data_us extensions is built, which contains gaz, lex, and rules tables for US data. This extensions can be installed via: CREATE EXTENSION address_standardizer_data_us;

The code for this extension can be found in the PostGIS extensions/address_standardizer and is currently self-contained.

For installation instructions refer to: Section 2.7.

12.1 How the Parser Works

The parser works from right to left looking first at the macro elements for postcode, state/province, city, and then looks micro elements to determine if we are dealing with a house number street or intersection or landmark. It currently does not look for a country code or name, but that could be introduced in the future.

Country code Assumed to be US or CA based on: postcode as US or Canada state/province as US or Canada else US

Postcode/zipcode These are recognized using Perl compatible regular expressions. These regexs are currently in the parseaddress-api.c and are relatively simple to make changes to if needed.

State/province These are recognized using Perl compatible regular expressions. These regexs are currently in the parseaddress-api.c but could get moved into includes in the future for easier maintenance.

12.2 Address Standardizer Types

12.2.1 stdaddr

stdaddr — A composite type that consists of the elements of an address. This is the return type for standardize_address function.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 657 / 791

Description

A composite type that consists of elements of an address. This is the return type for standardize_address function. Some descriptions for elements are borrowed from PAGC Postal Attributes.

The token numbers denote the output reference number in the rules table.



This method needs address standardizer extension.

building is text (token number 0): Refers to building number or name. Unparsed building identifiers and types. Generally blank for most addresses.

house_num is a text (token number 1): This is the street number on a street. Example 75 in 75 State Street.

predir is text (token number 2): STREET NAME PRE-DIRECTIONAL such as North, South, East, West etc.

qual is text (token number 3): STREET NAME PRE-MODIFIER Example OLD in 3715 OLD HIGHWAY 99.

pretype is text (token number 4): STREET PREFIX TYPE

name is text (token number 5): STREET NAME

suftype is text (token number 6): STREET POST TYPE e.g. St, Ave, Cir. A street type following the root street name. Example *STREET* in 75 State Street.

sufdir is text (token number 7): STREET POST-DIRECTIONAL A directional modifier that follows the street name.. Example *WEST* in 3715 TENTH AVENUE WEST.

ruralroute is text (token number 8): RURAL ROUTE. Example 8 in RR 7.

extra is text: Extra information like Floor number.

city is text (token number 10): Example Boston.

state is text (token number 11): Example MASSACHUSETTS

country is text (token number 12): Example USA

postcode is text POSTAL CODE (ZIP CODE) (token number 13): Example 02109

box is text POSTAL BOX NUMBER (token number 14 and 15): Example 02109

unit is text Apartment number or Suite Number (token number 17): Example 3B in APT 3B.

12.3 Address Standardizer Tables

12.3.1 rules table

rules table — The rules table contains a set of rules that maps address input sequence tokens to standardized output sequence. A rule is defined as a set of input tokens followed by -1 (terminator) followed by set of output tokens followed by -1 followed by number denoting kind of rule followed by ranking of rule.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 658 / 791

Description

A rules table must have at least the following columns, though you are allowed to add more for your own uses.

id Primary key of table

rule text field denoting the rule. Details at PAGC Address Standardizer Rule records.

A rule consists of a set of non-negative integers representing input tokens, terminated by a -1, followed by an equal number of non-negative integers representing postal attributes, terminated by a -1, followed by an integer representing a rule type, followed by an integer representing the rank of the rule. The rules are ranked from 0 (lowest) to 17 (highest).

So for example the rule 2 0 2 22 3 -1 5 5 6 7 3 -1 2 6 maps to sequence of output tokens *TYPE NUMBER TYPE DIRECT QUALIF* to the output sequence *STREET STREET SUFTYP SUFDIR QUALIF*. The rule is an ARC_C rule of rank 6.

Numbers for corresponding output tokens are listed in stdaddr.

Input Tokens

Each rule starts with a set of input tokens followed by a terminator -1. Valid input tokens excerpted from PAGC Input Tokens are as follows:

Form-Based Input Tokens

AMPERS (13). The ampersand (&) is frequently used to abbreviate the word "and".

DASH (9). A punctuation character.

DOUBLE (21). A sequence of two letters. Often used as identifiers.

FRACT (25). Fractions are sometimes used in civic numbers or unit numbers.

MIXED (23). An alphanumeric string that contains both letters and digits. Used for identifiers.

NUMBER (0). A string of digits.

ORD (15). Representations such as First or 1st. Often used in street names.

ORD (18). A single letter.

WORD (1). A word is a string of letters of arbitrary length. A single letter can be both a SINGLE and a WORD.

Function-based Input Tokens

BOXH (14). Words used to denote post office boxes. For example *Box* or *PO Box*.

BUILDH (19). Words used to denote buildings or building complexes, usually as a prefix. For example: Tower in Tower 7A.

BUILDT (24). Words and abbreviations used to denote buildings or building complexes, usually as a suffix. For example: *Shopping Centre*.

DIRECT (22). Words used to denote directions, for example *North*.

MILE (20). Words used to denote milepost addresses.

ROAD (6). Words and abbreviations used to denote highways and roads. For example: the *Interstate* in *Interstate* 5

RR (8). Words and abbreviations used to denote rural routes. RR.

TYPE (2). Words and abbreviation used to denote street typess. For example: ST or AVE.

UNITH (16). Words and abbreviation used to denote internal subaddresses. For example, APT or UNIT.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 659 / 791

Postal Type Input Tokens

QUINT (28). A 5 digit number. Identifies a Zip Code

QUAD (29). A 4 digit number. Identifies ZIP4.

PCH (27). A 3 character sequence of letter number letter. Identifies an FSA, the first 3 characters of a Canadian postal code.

PCT (26). A 3 character sequence of number letter number. Identifies an LDU, the last 3 characters of a Canadian postal code.

Stopwords

STOPWORDS combine with WORDS. In rules a string of multiple WORDs and STOPWORDs will be represented by a single WORD token.

STOPWORD (7). A word with low lexical significance, that can be omitted in parsing. For example: *THE*.

Output Tokens

After the first -1 (terminator), follows the output tokens and their order, followed by a terminator -1. Numbers for corresponding output tokens are listed in stdaddr. What are allowed is dependent on kind of rule. Output tokens valid for each rule type are listed in the section called "Rule Types and Rank".

Rule Types and Rank

The final part of the rule is the rule type which is denoted by one of the following, followed by a rule rank. The rules are ranked from 0 (lowest) to 17 (highest).

MACRO C

(token number = "0"). The class of rules for parsing MACRO clauses such as PLACE STATE ZIP

MACRO_C output tokens (excerpted from http://www.pagcgeo.org/docs/html/pagc-12.html#--r-typ--.

CITY (token number "10"). Example "Albany"

STATE (token number "11"). Example "NY"

NATION (token number "12"). This attribute is not used in most reference files. Example "USA"

POSTAL (token number "13"). (SADS elements "ZIP CODE", "PLUS 4"). This attribute is used for both the US Zip and the Canadian Postal Codes.

MICRO_C

(token number = "1"). The class of rules for parsing full MICRO clauses (such as House, street, sufdir, predir, pretyp, suftype, qualif) (ie ARC_C plus CIVIC_C). These rules are not used in the build phase.

MICRO_C output tokens (excerpted from http://www.pagcgeo.org/docs/html/pagc-12.html#--r-typ--.

HOUSE is a text (token number 1): This is the street number on a street. Example 75 in 75 State Street.

predir is text (token number 2): STREET NAME PRE-DIRECTIONAL such as North, South, East, West etc.

qual is text (token number 3): STREET NAME PRE-MODIFIER Example OLD in 3715 OLD HIGHWAY 99.

pretype is text (token number 4): STREET PREFIX TYPE

street is text (token number 5): STREET NAME

suftype is text (token number 6): STREET POST TYPE e.g. St, Ave, Cir. A street type following the root street name. Example *STREET* in 75 State Street.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 660 / 791

sufdir is text (token number 7): STREET POST-DIRECTIONAL A directional modifier that follows the street name.. Example *WEST* in 3715 TENTH AVENUE WEST.

ARC_C

(token number = "2"). The class of rules for parsing MICRO clauses, excluding the HOUSE attribute. As such uses same set of output tokens as MICRO_C minus the HOUSE token.

CIVIC C

(token number = "3"). The class of rules for parsing the HOUSE attribute.

EXTRA C

(token number = "4"). The class of rules for parsing EXTRA attributes - attributes excluded from geocoding. These rules are not used in the build phase.

EXTRA_C output tokens (excerpted from http://www.pagcgeo.org/docs/html/pagc-12.html#--r-typ--.

BLDNG (token number 0): Unparsed building identifiers and types.

BOXH i(token number 14): The **BOX** in BOX 3B

BOXT (token number 15): The **3B** in BOX 3B

RR (token number 8): The **RR** in RR 7

UNITH (token number 16): The **APT** in APT 3B

UNITT (token number 17): The 3B in APT 3B

UNKNWN (token number 9): An otherwise unclassified output.

12.3.2 lex table

lex table — A lex table is used to classify alphanumeric input and associate that input with (a) input tokens (See the section called "Input Tokens") and (b) standardized representations.

Description

A lex (short for lexicon) table is used to classify alphanumeric input and associate that input with the section called "Input Tokens" and (b) standardized representations. Things you will find in these tables are ONE mapped to stdword: 1.

A lex has at least the following columns in the table. You may add

id Primary key of table

seq integer: definition number?

word text: the input word

stdword text: the standardized replacement word

token integer: the kind of word it is. Only if it is used in this context will it be replaced. Refer to PAGC Tokens.

12.3.3 gaz table

gaz table — A gaz table is used to standardize place names and associate that input with (a) input tokens (See the section called "Input Tokens") and (b) standardized representations.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 661 / 791

Description

A gaz (short for gazeteer) table is used to classify place names and associate that input with the section called "Input Tokens" and (b) standardized representations. For example if you are in US, you may load these with State Names and associated abbreviations.

A gaz table has at least the following columns in the table. You may add more columns if you wish for your own purposes.

id Primary key of table

seq integer: definition number? - identifer used for that instance of the word

word text: the input word

stdword text: the standardized replacement word

token integer: the kind of word it is. Only if it is used in this context will it be replaced. Refer to PAGC Tokens.

12.4 Address Standardizer Functions

12.4.1 parse address

parse_address — Takes a 1 line address and breaks into parts

Synopsis

record parse_address(text address);

Description

Returns takes as input an address, and returns a record output consisting of fields *num*, *street*, *street*2, *address*1, *city*, *state*, *zip*, *zipplus*, *country*.

Availability: 2.2.0



This method needs address standardizer extension.

Examples

Single Addresss

```
SELECT num, street, city, zip, zipplus FROM parse_address('1 Devonshire Place, Boston, MA 02109-1234') AS a;
```

Table of addresses

```
-- basic table
CREATE TABLE places(addid serial PRIMARY KEY, address text);

INSERT INTO places(address)
VALUES ('529 Main Street, Boston MA, 02129'),
('77 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139'),
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 662 / 791

```
('25 Wizard of Oz, Walaford, KS 99912323'),
('26 Capen Street, Medford, MA'),
('124 Mount Auburn St, Cambridge, Massachusetts 02138'),
('950 Main Street, Worcester, MA 01610');

-- parse the addresses
-- if you want all fields you can use (a).*
SELECT addid, (a).num, (a).street, (a).city, (a).state, (a).zip, (a).zipplus
FROM (SELECT addid, parse_address(address) As a
FROM places) AS p;
```

addid num			I	-				-	zipplus
1 529	İ	Main Street	İ	Boston	İ	MA	İ	02129	
		Massachusetts Avenue Wizard of Oz						02139 99912	323
4 26		Capen Street		Medford		MA		1	
5 124		Mount Auburn St		Cambridge	-	MA		02138	
6 950		Main Street		Worcester		MA		01610	
(6 rows)									

See Also

12.4.2 standardize address

standardize_address — Returns an stdaddr form of an input address utilizing lex, gaz, and rule tables.

Synopsis

stdaddr **standardize_address**(text lextab, text gaztab, text rultab, text address); stdaddr **standardize_address**(text lextab, text gaztab, text rultab, text micro, text macro);

Description

Returns an stdaddr form of an input address utilizing lex table table name, gaz table, and rules table table names and an address.

Variant 1: Takes an address as a single line.

Variant 2: Takes an address as 2 parts. A micro consisting of standard first line of postal address e.g. house_num street, and a macro consisting of standard postal second line of an address e.g city, state postal_code country.

Availability: 2.2.0



This method needs address standardizer extension.

Examples

Using address_standardizer_data_us extension

```
CREATE EXTENSION address_standardizer_data_us; -- only needs to be done once
```

Variant 1: Single line address. This doesn't work well with non-US addresses

```
SELECT house_num, name, suftype, city, country, state, unit FROM standardize_address(' ↔ us_lex', 'us_gaz', 'us_rules', 'One Devonshire Place, PH 301, Boston, MA 02109');
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 663 / 791

house_num	name	suftype	city	country	state		unit
	+ DEVONSHIRE	+	-+ BOSTON	+	+ MASSACHUSETTS	+ # PF	NTHOUSE 301

Using tables packaged with tiger geocoder. This example only works if you installed postgis_tiger_geocoder.

Make easier to read we'll dump output using hstore extension CREATE EXTENSION hstore; you need to install

```
SELECT (each(hstore(p))).*
FROM standardize_address('tiger.pagc_lex', 'tiger.pagc_gaz',
    'tiger.pagc_rules', 'One Devonshire Place, PH 301, Boston, MA 02109') As p;
```

```
value
box
         | BOSTON
city
         | DEVONSHIRE
name
qual
         | # PENTHOUSE 301
unit
extra
          | MA
state
predir
sufdir
country
        | USA
pretype
suftype | PL
building
postcode | 02109
house_num | 1
ruralroute |
(16 rows)
```

Variant 2: As a two part Address

```
SELECT (each(hstore(p))).*
FROM standardize_address('tiger.pagc_lex', 'tiger.pagc_gaz',
   'tiger.pagc_rules', 'One Devonshire Place, PH 301', 'Boston, MA 02109, US') As p;
```

```
key | value
          | BOSTON
city
          | DEVONSHIRE
name
qual
          | # PENTHOUSE 301
unit
extra
state
          | MA
predir
sufdir
country
         | USA
pretype
suftype | PL
building |
postcode | 02109
house_num | 1
ruralroute |
(16 rows)
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 664 / 791

See Also
stdaddr, rules table, lex table, gaz table, Pagc_Normalize_Address

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 665 / 791

Chapter 13

PostGIS Extras

This chapter documents features found in the extras folder of the PostGIS source tarballs and source repository. These are not always packaged with PostGIS binary releases, but are usually plpgsql based or standard shell scripts that can be run as is.

13.1 Tiger Geocoder

There are a couple other open source geocoders for PostGIS, that unlike tiger geocoder have the advantage of multi-country geocoding support

- Nominatim uses OpenStreetMap gazeteer formatted data. It requires osm2pgsql for loading the data, PostgreSQL 8.4+ and PostGIS 1.5+ to function. It is packaged as a webservice interface and seems designed to be called as a webservice. Just like the tiger geocoder, it has both a geocoder and a reverse geocoder component. From the documentation, it is unclear if it has a pure SQL interface like the tiger geocoder, or if a good deal of the logic is implemented in the web interface.
- GIS Graphy also utilizes PostGIS and like Nominatim works with OpenStreetMap (OSM) data. It comes with a loader to load OSM data and similar to Nominatim is capable of geocoding not just US. Much like Nominatim, it runs as a webservice and relies on Java 1.5, Servlet apps, Solr. GisGraphy is cross-platform and also has a reverse geocoder among some other neat features.

13.1.1 Drop_Indexes_Generate_Script

Drop_Indexes_Generate_Script — Generates a script that drops all non-primary key and non-unique indexes on tiger schema and user specified schema. Defaults schema to tiger_data if no schema is specified.

Synopsis

text **Drop_Indexes_Generate_Script**(text param_schema=tiger_data);

Description

Generates a script that drops all non-primary key and non-unique indexes on tiger schema and user specified schema. Defaults schema to tiger_data if no schema is specified.

This is useful for minimizing index bloat that may confuse the query planner or take up unnecessary space. Use in combination with Indexes to add just the indexes used by the geocoder.

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 666 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT drop_indexes_generate_script() As actionsql;
actionsql
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_countysub_lookup_lower_name;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_edges_countyfp;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_faces_countyfp;
DROP INDEX tiger.tiger_place_the_geom_gist;
DROP INDEX tiger_tiger_edges_the_geom_gist;
DROP INDEX tiger.tiger_state_the_geom_gist;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_addr_least_address;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_addr_tlid;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_addr_zip;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_county_countyfp;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_county_lookup_lower_name;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_county_lookup_snd_name;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_county_lower_name;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_county_snd_name;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_county_the_geom_gist;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_countysub_lookup_snd_name;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_cousub_countyfp;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_cousub_cousubfp;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_cousub_lower_name;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_cousub_snd_name;
DROP INDEX tiger.idx_tiger_cousub_the_geom_gist;
DROP INDEX tiger_data.idx_tiger_data_ma_addr_least_address;
DROP INDEX tiger_data.idx_tiger_data_ma_addr_tlid;
DROP INDEX tiger_data.idx_tiger_data_ma_addr_zip;
DROP INDEX tiger_data.idx_tiger_data_ma_county_countyfp;
DROP INDEX tiger_data.idx_tiger_data_ma_county_lookup_lower_name;
DROP INDEX tiger_data.idx_tiger_data_ma_county_lookup_snd_name;
DROP INDEX tiger_data.idx_tiger_data_ma_county_lower_name;
DROP INDEX tiger_data.idx_tiger_data_ma_county_snd_name;
```

See Also

Install_Missing_Indexes, Missing_Indexes_Generate_Script

13.1.2 Drop_Nation_Tables_Generate_Script

Drop_Nation_Tables_Generate_Script — Generates a script that drops all tables in the specified schema that start with county _all, state_all or state code followed by county or state.

Synopsis

text **Drop_Nation_Tables_Generate_Script**(text param_schema=tiger_data);

Description

Generates a script that drops all tables in the specified schema that start with county_all, state_all or stae code followed by county or state. This is needed if you are upgrading from tiger_2010 to tiger_2011 data.

Availability: 2.1.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 667 / 791

Examples

```
SELECT drop_nation_tables_generate_script();

DROP TABLE tiger_data.county_all;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.county_all_lookup;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.state_all;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.ma_county;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.ma_state;
```

See Also

Loader_Generate_Nation_Script

13.1.3 Drop_State_Tables_Generate_Script

Drop_State_Tables_Generate_Script — Generates a script that drops all tables in the specified schema that are prefixed with the state abbreviation. Defaults schema to tiger_data if no schema is specified.

Synopsis

text Drop_State_Tables_Generate_Script(text param_state, text param_schema=tiger_data);

Description

Generates a script that drops all tables in the specified schema that are prefixed with the state abbreviation. Defaults schema to tiger_data if no schema is specified. This function is useful for dropping tables of a state just before you reload a state in case something went wrong during your previous load.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
SELECT drop_state_tables_generate_script('PA');

DROP TABLE tiger_data.pa_addr;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.pa_county;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.pa_county_lookup;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.pa_cousub;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.pa_edges;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.pa_faces;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.pa_featnames;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.pa_place;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.pa_state;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.pa_zip_lookup_base;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.pa_zip_state;

DROP TABLE tiger_data.pa_zip_state_loc;
```

See Also

Loader_Generate_Script

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 668 / 791

13.1.4 Geocode

Geocode — Takes in an address as a string (or other normalized address) and outputs a set of possible locations which include a point geometry in NAD 83 long lat, a normalized address for each, and the rating. The lower the rating the more likely the match. Results are sorted by lowest rating first. Can optionally pass in maximum results, defaults to 10, and restrict_region (defaults to NULL)

Synopsis

setof record **geocode**(varchar address, integer max_results=10, geometry restrict_region=NULL, norm_addy OUT addy, geometry OUT geomout, integer OUT rating);

setof record **geocode**(norm_addy in_addy, integer max_results=10, geometry restrict_region=NULL, norm_addy OUT addy, geometry OUT geomout, integer OUT rating);

Description

Takes in an address as a string (or already normalized address) and outputs a set of possible locations which include a point geometry in NAD 83 long lat, a normalized_address (addy) for each, and the rating. The lower the rating the more likely the match. Results are sorted by lowest rating first. Uses Tiger data (edges,faces,addr), PostgreSQL fuzzy string matching (soundex,levenshtein) and PostGIS line interpolation functions to interpolate address along the Tiger edges. The higher the rating the less likely the geocode is right. The geocoded point is defaulted to offset 10 meters from center-line off to side (L/R) of street address is located on.

Enhanced: 2.0.0 to support Tiger 2010 structured data and revised some logic to improve speed, accuracy of geocoding, and to offset point from centerline to side of street address is located on. The new parameter max_results useful for specifying number of best results or just returning the best result.

Examples: Basic

The below examples timings are on a 3.0 GHZ single processor Windows 7 machine with 2GB ram running PostgreSQL 9.1rc1/PostGIS 2.0 loaded with all of MA,MN,CA, RI state Tiger data loaded.

Exact matches are faster to compute (61ms)

Even if zip is not passed in the geocoder can guess (took about 122-150 ms)

Can handle misspellings and provides more than one possible solution with ratings and takes longer (500ms).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 669 / 791

Using to do a batch geocode of addresses. Easiest is to set max_results=1. Only process those not yet geocoded (have no rating).

```
CREATE TABLE addresses_to_geocode(addid serial PRIMARY KEY, address text,
       lon numeric, lat numeric, new_address text, rating integer);
INSERT INTO addresses_to_geocode(address)
VALUES ('529 Main Street, Boston MA, 02129'),
 ('77 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139'),
 ('25 Wizard of Oz, Walaford, KS 99912323'),
 ('26 Capen Street, Medford, MA'),
 ('124 Mount Auburn St, Cambridge, Massachusetts 02138'),
 ('950 Main Street, Worcester, MA 01610');
-- only update the first 3 addresses (323-704 ms - there are caching and shared memory \leftrightarrow
   effects so first geocode you do is always slower) --
-- for large numbers of addresses you don't want to update all at once
-- since the whole geocode must commit at once
-- For this example we rejoin with LEFT JOIN
  and set to rating to -1 rating if no match
-- to ensure we don't regeocode a bad address
UPDATE addresses_to_geocode
 SET (rating, new_address, lon, lat)
   = ( COALESCE((g.geo).rating,-1), pprint_addy((g.geo).addy),
      ST_X((g.geo).geomout)::numeric(8,5), ST_Y((g.geo).geomout)::numeric(8,5))
FROM (SELECT addid
   FROM addresses_to_geocode
    WHERE rating IS NULL ORDER BY addid LIMIT 3) As a
   LEFT JOIN (SELECT addid, (geocode (address, 1)) As geo
    FROM addresses_to_geocode As ag
    WHERE ag.rating IS NULL ORDER BY addid LIMIT 3) As g ON a.addid = g.addid
WHERE a.addid = addresses_to_geocode.addid;
result
Query returned successfully: 3 rows affected, 480 ms execution time.
SELECT * FROM addresses_to_geocode WHERE rating is not null;
addid I
                           address
                                                      lon | lat | ←
                   new_address
                                              | rating
     1 | 529 Main Street, Boston MA, 02129
                                                      | -71.07181 | 42.38359 | 529 Main St, ↔
         Boston, MA 02129
                                            0
        77 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139 | 0
Massachusetts Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139 | 0
     2 | 77 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139 | -71.09428 | 42.35988 | 77 \,\leftrightarrow
     3 | 25 Wizard of Oz, Walaford, KS 99912323
                                                                  | ←
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 670 / 791

Examples: Using Geometry filter

See Also

Normalize_Address, Pprint_Addy, ST_AsText, ST_SnapToGrid, ST_X, ST_Y

13.1.5 Geocode_Intersection

Geocode_Intersection — Takes in 2 streets that intersect and a state, city, zip, and outputs a set of possible locations on the first cross street that is at the intersection, also includes a geomout as the point location in NAD 83 long lat, a normalized_addr ess (addy) for each location, and the rating. The lower the rating the more likely the match. Results are sorted by lowest rating first. Can optionally pass in maximum results, defaults to 10. Uses Tiger data (edges, faces, addr), PostgreSQL fuzzy string matching (soundex, levenshtein).

Synopsis

setof record **geocode_intersection**(text roadway1, text roadway2, text in_state, text in_city, text in_zip, integer num_results=10, norm_addy OUT addy, geometry OUT geomout, integer OUT rating);

Description

Takes in 2 streets that intersect and a state, city, zip, and outputs a set of possible locations on the first cross street that is at the intersection, also includes a point geometry in NAD 83 long lat, a normalized address for each location, and the rating. The lower the rating the more likely the match. Results are sorted by lowest rating first. Can optionally pass in maximum results, defaults to 10. Returns normalized_address (addy) for each, geomout as the point location in nad 83 long lat, and the rating. The lower the rating the more likely the match. Results are sorted by lowest rating first. Uses Tiger data (edges,faces,addr), PostgreSQL fuzzy string matching (soundex,levenshtein)

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples: Basic

The below examples timings are on a 3.0 GHZ single processor Windows 7 machine with 2GB ram running PostgreSQL 9.0/Post-GIS 1.5 loaded with all of MA state Tiger data loaded. Currently a bit slow (3000 ms)

Testing on Windows 2003 64-bit 8GB on PostGIS 2.0 PostgreSQL 64-bit Tiger 2011 data loaded -- (41ms)

```
SELECT pprint_addy(addy), st_astext(geomout), rating

FROM geocode_intersection( 'Haverford St', 'Germania St', 'MA', 'Boston', 
'02130',1);
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 671 / 791

Even if zip is not passed in the geocoder can guess (took about 3500 ms on the windows 7 box), on the windows 2003 64-bit 741 ms

See Also

Geocode, Pprint_Addy, ST_AsText

13.1.6 Get Geocode Setting

Get_Geocode_Setting — Returns value of specific setting stored in tiger.geocode_settings table.

Synopsis

text **Get Geocode Setting**(text setting name);

Description

Returns value of specific setting stored in tiger.geocode_settings table. Settings allow you to toggle debugging of functions. Later plans will be to control rating with settings. Current list of settings are as follows:

```
\mid setting \mid unit \mid category \mid \leftrightarrow
           name
                                                                   short_desc
               -----
debug_geocode_address
                          | false | boolean | debug | outputs debug information ↔
   in notice log such as queries when geocode_address is called if true
debug\_geocode\_intersection | false | boolean | debug | outputs debug information \leftrightarrow
   in notice log such as queries when geocode_intersection is called if true
debug_normalize_address | false | boolean | debug | outputs debug information ↔
   called if true
debug_reverse_geocode
                         | false | boolean | debug
                                                      | if true, outputs debug ←
  reverse_geocode
reverse_geocode_numbered_roads | 0
                                   | integer | rating
                                                       | For state and county \leftarrow
   highways, 0 - no preference in name,
                                                         1 - prefer the numbered \leftrightarrow
                                                            highway name, 2 - \leftarrow
                                                            prefer local state/ \leftarrow
                                                            county name
                                    | boolean | normalize | If set to true, will try \leftrightarrow
use_pagc_address_parser
                           | false
   to use the address_standardizer extension (via pagc_normalize_address)
                                                        instead of tiger \leftrightarrow
                                                           normalize\_address built \leftarrow
                                                            one
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 672 / 791

Changed: 2.2.0: default settings are now kept in a table called geocode_settings_default. Use customized settingsa are in geocode_settings and only contain those that have been set by user.

Availability: 2.1.0

Example return debugging setting

```
SELECT get_geocode_setting('debug_geocode_address) As result;
result
-----
false
```

See Also

Set_Geocode_Setting

13.1.7 Get_Tract

Get_Tract — Returns census tract or field from tract table of where the geometry is located. Default to returning short name of tract.

Synopsis

text get_tract(geometry loc_geom, text output_field=name);

Description

Given a geometry will return the census tract location of that geometry. NAD 83 long lat is assumed if no spatial ref sys is specified.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples: Basic

```
SELECT get_tract(ST_Point(-71.101375, 42.31376) ) As tract_name;
tract_name
------
1203.01

--this one returns the tiger geoid
SELECT get_tract(ST_Point(-71.101375, 42.31376), 'tract_id' ) As tract_id;
tract_id
-------
25025120301
```

See Also

Geocode>

13.1.8 Install_Missing_Indexes

Install_Missing_Indexes — Finds all tables with key columns used in geocoder joins and filter conditions that are missing used indexes on those columns and will add them.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 673 / 791

Synopsis

boolean Install_Missing_Indexes();

Description

Finds all tables in tiger and tiger_data schemas with key columns used in geocoder joins and filters that are missing indexes on those columns and will output the SQL DDL to define the index for those tables and then execute the generated script. This is a helper function that adds new indexes needed to make queries faster that may have been missing during the load process. This function is a companion to Missing_Indexes_Generate_Script that in addition to generating the create index script, also executes it. It is called as part of the update_geocode.sql upgrade script.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
SELECT install_missing_indexes();
install_missing_indexes
------
t
```

See Also

Loader_Generate_Script, Missing_Indexes_Generate_Script

13.1.9 Loader_Generate_Census_Script

Loader_Generate_Census_Script — Generates a shell script for the specified platform for the specified states that will download Tiger census state tract, bg, and tabblocks data tables, stage and load into tiger_data schema. Each state script is returned as a separate record.

Synopsis

setof text loader_generate_census_script(text[] param_states, text os);

Description

Generates a shell script for the specified platform for the specified states that will download Tiger data census state tract, block groups bg, and tabblocks data tables, stage and load into tiger_data schema. Each state script is returned as a separate record.

It uses unzip on Linux (7-zip on Windows by default) and wget to do the downloading. It uses Section 4.4.2 to load in the data. Note the smallest unit it does is a whole state. It will only process the files in the staging and temp folders.

It uses the following control tables to control the process and different OS shell syntax variations.

- 1. loader_variables keeps track of various variables such as census site, year, data and staging schemas
- 2. loader_platform profiles of various platforms and where the various executables are located. Comes with windows and linux. More can be added.
- 3. loader_lookuptables each record defines a kind of table (state, county), whether to process records in it and how to load them in. Defines the steps to import data, stage data, add, removes columns, indexes, and constraints for each. Each table is prefixed with the state and inherits from a table in the tiger schema. e.g. creates tiger_data.ma_faces which inherits from tiger.faces

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 674 / 791

Availability: 2.0.0



Note

Loader_Generate_Script includes this logic, but if you installed tiger geocoder prior to PostGIS 2.0.0 alpha5, you'll need to run this on the states you have already done to get these additional tables.

Examples

Generate script to load up data for select states in Windows shell script format.

```
SELECT loader_generate_census_script(ARRAY['MA'], 'windows');
-- result --
\verb|set STATEDIR="\gisdata\www2.census.gov\geo\pvs\tiger2010st\25\_Massachusetts"|
set TMPDIR=\gisdata\temp\
set UNZIPTOOL="C:\Program Files\7-Zip\7z.exe"
set WGETTOOL="C:\wget\wget.exe"
set PGBIN=C:\projects\pg\pg91win\bin\
set PGPORT=5432
set PGHOST=localhost
set PGUSER=postgres
set PGPASSWORD=yourpasswordhere
set PGDATABASE=tiger_postgis20
set PSQL="%PGBIN%psql"
set SHP2PGSQL="%PGBIN%shp2pgsql"
cd \gisdata
%WGETTOOL% http://www2.census.gov/geo/pvs/tiger2010st/25_Massachusetts/25/ --no-parent -- \leftarrow
   relative --accept=*bg10.zip,*tract10.zip,*tabblock10.zip --mirror --reject=html
del %TMPDIR%\*.* /Q
%PSQL% -c "DROP SCHEMA tiger_staging CASCADE;"
%PSQL% -c "CREATE SCHEMA tiger_staging;"
cd %STATEDIR%
for /r %%z in (*.zip) do %UNZIPTOOL% e %%z -o%TMPDIR%
cd %TMPDIR%
PSQL -c "CREATE TABLE tiger_data.MA_tract(CONSTRAINT pk_MA_tract PRIMARY KEY (tract_id) ) \leftrightarrow
    INHERITS(tiger.tract); "
%SHP2PGSQL% -c -s 4269 -g the_geom -W "latin1" tl_2010_25_tract10.dbf tiger_staging. \leftrightarrow
   ma_tract10 | %PSQL%
%PSQL% -c "ALTER TABLE tiger_staging.MA_tract10 RENAME geoid10 TO tract_id; SELECT \,\leftrightarrow
   loader_load_staged_data(lower('MA_tract10'), lower('MA_tract')); "
%PSQL% -c "CREATE INDEX tiger_data_MA_tract_the_geom_gist ON tiger_data.MA_tract USING gist \leftrightarrow
    (the_geom);"
%PSQL% -c "VACUUM ANALYZE tiger_data.MA_tract;"
PSQL - c "ALTER TABLE tiger_data.MA_tract ADD CONSTRAINT chk_statefp CHECK (statefp = \leftarrow
    '25');"
```

Generate sh script

```
STATEDIR="/gisdata/www2.census.gov/geo/pvs/tiger2010st/25_Massachusetts"

TMPDIR="/gisdata/temp/"
UNZIPTOOL=unzip
WGETTOOL="/usr/bin/wget"
export PGBIN=/usr/pgsql-9.0/bin
export PGPORT=5432
export PGHOST=localhost
export PGUSER=postgres
export PGPASSWORD=yourpasswordhere
export PGDATABASE=geocoder
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 675 / 791

See Also

Loader_Generate_Script

13.1.10 Loader_Generate_Script

Loader_Generate_Script — Generates a shell script for the specified platform for the specified states that will download Tiger data, stage and load into tiger_data schema. Each state script is returned as a separate record. Latest version supports Tiger 2010 structural changes and also loads census tract, block groups, and blocks tables.

Synopsis

setof text loader_generate_script(text[] param_states, text os);

Description

Generates a shell script for the specified platform for the specified states that will download Tiger data, stage and load into tiger_data schema. Each state script is returned as a separate record.

It uses unzip on Linux (7-zip on Windows by default) and wget to do the downloading. It uses Section 4.4.2 to load in the data. Note the smallest unit it does is a whole state, but you can overwrite this by downloading the files yourself. It will only process the files in the staging and temp folders.

It uses the following control tables to control the process and different OS shell syntax variations.

- 1. loader_variables keeps track of various variables such as census site, year, data and staging schemas
- 2. loader_platform profiles of various platforms and where the various executables are located. Comes with windows and linux. More can be added.
- 3. loader_lookuptables each record defines a kind of table (state, county), whether to process records in it and how to load them in. Defines the steps to import data, stage data, add, removes columns, indexes, and constraints for each. Each table is prefixed with the state and inherits from a table in the tiger schema. e.g. creates tiger_data.ma_faces which inherits from tiger.faces

Availability: 2.0.0 to support Tiger 2010 structured data and load census tract (tract), block groups (bg), and blocks (tabblocks) tables.



Note

If you are using pgAdmin 3, be warned that by default pgAdmin 3 truncates long text. To fix, change *File -> Options -> Query Tool -> Query Editor - > Max. characters per column* to larger than 50000 characters.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 676 / 791

Examples

Using psql where gistest is your database and /gisdata/data_load.sh is the file to create with the shell commands to run.

```
psql -U postgres -h localhost -d gistest -A -t \
  -c "SELECT Loader_Generate_Script(ARRAY['MA'], 'gistest')" > /gisdata/data_load.sh;
```

Generate script to load up data for 2 states in Windows shell script format.

```
SELECT loader_generate_script(ARRAY['MA','RI'], 'windows') AS result;
-- result --
set TMPDIR=\gisdata\temp\
set UNZIPTOOL="C:\Program Files\7-Zip\7z.exe"
set WGETTOOL="C:\wget\wget.exe"
set PGBIN=C:\Program Files\PostgreSQL\9.4\bin\
set PGPORT=5432
set PGHOST=localhost
set PGUSER=postgres
set PGPASSWORD=yourpasswordhere
set PGDATABASE=geocoder
set PSQL="%PGBIN%psql"
set SHP2PGSQL="%PGBIN%shp2pgsql"
cd \gisdata
cd \gisdata
%WGETTOOL% ftp://ftp2.census.gov/geo/tiger/TIGER2015/PLACE/tl_*_25_* --no-parent --relative ↔
    --recursive --level=2 --accept=zip --mirror --reject=html
cd \gisdata/ftp2.census.gov/geo/tiger/TIGER2015/PLACE
:
```

Generate sh script

```
SELECT loader_generate_script(ARRAY['MA','RI'], 'sh') AS result;
 -- result -
TMPDIR="/gisdata/temp/"
UNZIPTOOL=unzip
WGETTOOL="/usr/bin/wget"
export PGBIN=/usr/lib/postgresq1/9.4/bin
export PGPORT=5432
export PGHOST=localhost
export PGUSER=postgres
export PGPASSWORD=yourpasswordhere
export PGDATABASE=geocoder
PSQL=${PGBIN}/psql
SHP2PGSQL=${PGBIN}/shp2pgsql
cd /gisdata
cd /gisdata
wget ftp://ftp2.census.gov/geo/tiger/TIGER2015/PLACE/tl_\star_25_\star --no-parent --relative -- \leftrightarrow
   recursive --level=2 --accept=zip --mirror --reject=html
cd /gisdata/ftp2.census.gov/geo/tiger/TIGER2015/PLACE
rm -f ${TMPDIR}/*.*
:
:
```

See Also

Section 2.8.1, Loader_Generate_Nation_Script

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 677 / 791

13.1.11 Loader_Generate_Nation_Script

Loader_Generate_Nation_Script — Generates a shell script for the specified platform that loads in the county and state lookup tables.

Synopsis

text loader_generate_nation_script(text os);

Description

Generates a shell script for the specified platform that loads in the county_all, county_all_lookup, state_all tables into tiger_data schema. These inherit respectively from the county, county_lookup, state tables in tiger schema.

It uses unzip on Linux (7-zip on Windows by default) and wget to do the downloading. It uses Section 4.4.2 to load in the data.

It uses the following control tables tiger.loader_platform, tiger.loader_variables, and tiger.loader_l ookuptables to control the process and different OS shell syntax variations.

- 1. loader_variables keeps track of various variables such as census site, year, data and staging schemas
- loader_platform profiles of various platforms and where the various executables are located. Comes with windows and linux/unix. More can be added.
- 3. loader_lookuptables each record defines a kind of table (state, county), whether to process records in it and how to load them in. Defines the steps to import data, stage data, add, removes columns, indexes, and constraints for each. Each table is prefixed with the state and inherits from a table in the tiger schema. e.g. creates tiger_data.ma_faces which inherits from tiger.faces

Availability: 2.1.0



Note

If you were running $tiger_2010$ version and you want to reload as state with $tiger_2011$, you'll need to for the very first load generate and run drop statements $\frac{\text{Drop_Nation_Tables_Generate_Script}}{\text{Drop_Nation_Tables_Generate_Script}}$

Examples

Generate script script to load nation data Windows.

```
SELECT loader_generate_nation_script('windows');
```

Generate script to load up data for Linux/Unix systems.

```
SELECT loader_generate_nation_script('sh');
```

See Also

Loader_Generate_Script

13.1.12 Missing_Indexes_Generate_Script

Missing_Indexes_Generate_Script — Finds all tables with key columns used in geocoder joins that are missing indexes on those columns and will output the SQL DDL to define the index for those tables.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 678 / 791

Synopsis

text Missing_Indexes_Generate_Script();

Description

Finds all tables in tiger and tiger_data schemas with key columns used in geocoder joins that are missing indexes on those columns and will output the SQL DDL to define the index for those tables. This is a helper function that adds new indexes needed to make queries faster that may have been missing during the load process. As the geocoder is improved, this function will be updated to accommodate new indexes being used. If this function outputs nothing, it means all your tables have what we think are the key indexes already in place.

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

```
SELECT missing_indexes_generate_script();

-- output: This was run on a database that was created before many corrections were made to ← the loading script ---

CREATE INDEX idx_tiger_county_countyfp ON tiger.county USING btree(countyfp);

CREATE INDEX idx_tiger_cousub_countyfp ON tiger.cousub USING btree(countyfp);

CREATE INDEX idx_tiger_edges_tfidr ON tiger.edges USING btree(tfidr);

CREATE INDEX idx_tiger_edges_tfidl ON tiger.edges USING btree(tfidl);

CREATE INDEX idx_tiger_edges_tfidl ON tiger.zip_lookup_all USING btree(zip);

CREATE INDEX idx_tiger_data_ma_county_countyfp ON tiger_data.ma_county USING btree(countyfp ← );

CREATE INDEX idx_tiger_data_ma_cousub_countyfp ON tiger_data.ma_cousub USING btree(countyfp ← );

CREATE INDEX idx_tiger_data_ma_edges_countyfp ON tiger_data.ma_edges USING btree(countyfp);

CREATE INDEX idx_tiger_data_ma_faces_countyfp ON tiger_data.ma_faces USING btree(countyfp);
```

See Also

Loader_Generate_Script, Install_Missing_Indexes

13.1.13 Normalize_Address

Normalize_Address — Given a textual street address, returns a composite norm_addy type that has road suffix, prefix and type standardized, street, streetname etc. broken into separate fields. This function will work with just the lookup data packaged with the tiger_geocoder (no need for tiger census data).

Synopsis

norm_addy normalize_address(varchar in_address);

Description

Given a textual street address, returns a composite norm_addy type that has road suffix, prefix and type standardized, street, streetname etc. broken into separate fields. This is the first step in the geocoding process to get all addresses into normalized postal form. No other data is required aside from what is packaged with the geocoder.

This function just uses the various direction/state/suffix lookup tables preloaded with the tiger_geocoder and located in the tiger schema, so it doesn't need you to download tiger census data or any other additional data to make use of it. You may find the need to add more abbreviations or alternative namings to the various lookup tables in the tiger schema.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 679 / 791

It uses various control lookup tables located in tiger schema to normalize the input address.

Fields in the norm_addy type object returned by this function in this order where () indicates a field required by the geocoder, [] indicates an optional field:

(address) [predirAbbrev] (streetName) [streetTypeAbbrev] [postdirAbbrev] [internal] [location] [stateAbbrev] [zip]

- 1. address is an integer: The street number
- 2. predirAbbrev is varchar: Directional prefix of road such as N, S, E, W etc. These are controlled using the direction_lookup table.
- 3. streetName varchar
- 4. streetTypeAbbrev varchar abbreviated version of street type: e.g. St, Ave, Cir. These are controlled using the street_type_lookup table.
- 5. postdirAbbrev varchar abbreviated directional suffice of road N, S, E, W etc. These are controlled using the direction_lookup table.
- 6. internal varchar internal address such as an apartment or suite number.
- 7. location varchar usually a city or governing province.
- $8. \ \, {\tt stateAbbrev} \ \, {\tt varchar} \ \, {\tt two} \ \, {\tt character} \ \, {\tt US} \ \, {\tt State}. \ \, {\tt e.g} \ \, {\tt MA}, \, {\tt NY}, \, {\tt MI}. \, \, {\tt These} \ \, {\tt are} \ \, {\tt controlled} \ \, {\tt by} \ \, {\tt the} \ \, {\tt state_lookup} \ \, {\tt table}.$
- 9. zip varchar 5-digit zipcode. e.g. 02109.
- 10. parsed boolean denotes if addess was formed from normalize process. The normalize_address function sets this to true before returning the address.

Examples

Output select fields. Use Pprint_Addy if you want a pretty textual output.

```
SELECT address As orig, (g.na).streetname, (g.na).streettypeabbrev
FROM (SELECT address, normalize_address(address) As na
       FROM addresses_to_geocode) As g;
                                                    | streetname | streettypeabbrev
                      oria
28 Capen Street, Medford, MA
                                                    | Capen
                                                                    | St
124 Mount Auburn St, Cambridge, Massachusetts 02138 | Mount Auburn | St
950 Main Street, Worcester, MA 01610
                                                    | Main
                                                                   | St
529 Main Street, Boston MA, 02129
                                                    | Main
                                                                    | St
 77 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139
                                                    | Massachusetts | Ave
25 Wizard of Oz, Walaford, KS 99912323
                                                  | Wizard of Oz
```

See Also

Geocode, Pprint_Addy

13.1.14 Pagc_Normalize_Address

Pagc_Normalize_Address — Given a textual street address, returns a composite norm_addy type that has road suffix, prefix and type standardized, street, streetname etc. broken into separate fields. This function will work with just the lookup data packaged with the tiger_geocoder (no need for tiger census data). Requires address_standardizer extension.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 680 / 791

Synopsis

norm_addy pagc_normalize_address(varchar in_address);

Description

Given a textual street address, returns a composite norm_addy type that has road suffix, prefix and type standardized, street, streetname etc. broken into separate fields. This is the first step in the geocoding process to get all addresses into normalized postal form. No other data is required aside from what is packaged with the geocoder.

This function just uses the various pagc_* lookup tables preloaded with the tiger_geocoder and located in the tiger schema, so it doesn't need you to download tiger census data or any other additional data to make use of it. You may find the need to add more abbreviations or alternative namings to the various lookup tables in the tiger schema.

It uses various control lookup tables located in tiger schema to normalize the input address.

Fields in the norm_addy type object returned by this function in this order where () indicates a field required by the geocoder, [] indicates an optional field:

There are slight variations in casing and formatting over the Normalize_Address.

Availability: 2.1.0



This method needs address_standardizer extension.

(address) [predirAbbrev] (streetName) [streetTypeAbbrev] [postdirAbbrev] [internal] [location] [stateAbbrev] [zip]

The native standardaddr of address_standardizer extension is at this time a bit richer than norm_addy since its designed to support international addresses (including country). standardaddr equivalent fields are:

house_num,predir, name, suftype, sufdir, unit, city, state, postcode

- 1. address is an integer: The street number
- 2. predirAbbrev is varchar: Directional prefix of road such as N, S, E, W etc. These are controlled using the direction_lookup table.
- 3. streetName varchar
- 4. streetTypeAbbrev varchar abbreviated version of street type: e.g. St, Ave, Cir. These are controlled using the street_type_lookup table.
- 5. postdirAbbrev varchar abbreviated directional suffice of road N, S, E, W etc. These are controlled using the direction_lookup table.
- 6. internal varchar internal address such as an apartment or suite number.
- 7. location varchar usually a city or governing province.
- 8. stateAbbrev varchar two character US State. e.g MA, NY, MI. These are controlled by the state_lookup table.
- 9. zip varchar 5-digit zipcode. e.g. 02109.
- 10. parsed boolean denotes if addess was formed from normalize process. The normalize_address function sets this to true before returning the address.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 681 / 791

Examples

Single call example

Batch call. There are currently speed issues with the way postgis_tiger_geocoder wraps the address_standardizer. These will hopefully be resolved in later editions. To work around them, if you need speed for batch geocoding to call generate a normaddy in batch mode, you are encouraged to directly call the address_standardizer standardize_address function as shown below which is similar exercise to what we did in Normalize_Address that uses data created in Geocode.

```
WITH g AS (SELECT address, ROW((sa).house_num, (sa).predir, (sa).name
  , (sa).suftype, (sa).sufdir, (sa).unit , (sa).city, (sa).state, (sa).postcode, true):: \leftrightarrow
    norm addy As na
FROM (SELECT address, standardize_address('tiger.pagc_lex'
      , 'tiger.pagc_gaz'
      , 'tiger.pagc_rules', address) As sa
       FROM addresses_to_geocode) As g)
SELECT address As orig, (g.na).streetname, (g.na).streettypeabbrev
FROM g;
                                                  | streetname | streettypeabbrev
oriq
                                                ---+-
 529 Main Street, Boston MA, 02129
                                                 | MAIN | ST
 77 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139
                                                 | MASSACHUSETTS | AVE
25 Wizard of Oz, Walaford, KS 99912323
                                                 | WIZARD OF |
 26 Capen Street, Medford, MA
                                                  | CAPEN
                                                                  | ST
 124 Mount Auburn St, Cambridge, Massachusetts 02138 | MOUNT AUBURN | ST
 950 Main Street, Worcester, MA 01610
                                                  | MAIN
```

See Also

Normalize_Address, Geocode

13.1.15 Pprint_Addy

Pprint_Addy — Given a norm_addy composite type object, returns a pretty print representation of it. Usually used in conjunction with normalize_address.

Synopsis

varchar pprint_addy(norm_addy in_addy);

Description

Given a norm_addy composite type object, returns a pretty print representation of it. No other data is required aside from what is packaged with the geocoder.

Usually used in conjunction with Normalize_Address.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 682 / 791

Examples

Pretty print a single address

Pretty print address a table of addresses

```
SELECT address As orig, pprint_addy(normalize_address(address)) As pretty_address
      FROM addresses_to_geocode;
                                            pretty_address
                   oria
529 Main Street, Boston MA, 02129
                                            | 529 Main St, Boston MA, 02129
77 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139
                                            | 77 Massachusetts Ave, Cambridge, MA \leftrightarrow
   02139
28 Capen Street, Medford, MA
                                            | 28 Capen St, Medford, MA
02138
950 Main Street, Worcester, MA 01610
                                            | 950 Main St, Worcester, MA 01610
```

See Also

Normalize_Address

13.1.16 Reverse_Geocode

Reverse_Geocode — Takes a geometry point in a known spatial ref sys and returns a record containing an array of theoretically possible addresses and an array of cross streets. If include_strnum_range = true, includes the street range in the cross streets.

Synopsis

record **Reverse_Geocode**(geometry pt, boolean include_strnum_range=false, geometry[] OUT intpt, norm_addy[] OUT addy, varchar[] OUT street);

Description

Takes a geometry point in a known spatial ref and returns a record containing an array of theoretically possible addresses and an array of cross streets. If include_strnum_range = true, includes the street range in the cross streets. include_strnum_range defaults to false if not passed in. Addresses are sorted according to which road a point is closest to so first address is most likely the right one.

Why do we say theoretical instead of actual addresses. The Tiger data doesn't have real addresses, but just street ranges. As such the theoretical address is an interpolated address based on the street ranges. Like for example interpolating one of my addresses returns a 26 Court St. and 26 Court Sq., though there is no such place as 26 Court Sq. This is because a point may be at a corner of 2 streets and thus the logic interpolates along both streets. The logic also assumes addresses are equally spaced along a street, which of course is wrong since you can have a municipal building taking up a good chunk of the street range and the rest of the buildings are clustered at the end.

Note: Hmm this function relies on Tiger data. If you have not loaded data covering the region of this point, then hmm you will get a record filled with NULLS.

Returned elements of the record are as follows:

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 683 / 791

1. intpt is an array of points: These are the center line points on the street closest to the input point. There are as many points as there are addresses.

- 2. addy is an array of norm_addy (normalized addresses): These are an array of possible addresses that fit the input point. The first one in the array is most likely. Generally there should be only one, except in the case when a point is at the corner of 2 or 3 streets, or the point is somewhere on the road and not off to the side.
- 3. street an array of varchar: These are cross streets (or the street) (streets that intersect or are the street the point is projected to be on).

Availability: 2.0.0

Examples

Example of a point at the corner of two streets, but closest to one. This is approximate location of MIT: 77 Massachusetts Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139 Note that although we don't have 3 streets, PostgreSQL will just return null for entries above our upper bound so safe to use. This includes street ranges

Here we choose not to include the address ranges for the cross streets and picked a location really really close to a corner of 2 streets thus could be known by two different addresses.

For this one we reuse our geocoded example from Geocode and we only want the primary address and at most 2 cross streets.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 684 / 791

See Also

Pprint_Addy, Geocode

13.1.17 Topology Load Tiger

Topology_Load_Tiger — Loads a defined region of tiger data into a PostGIS Topology and transforming the tiger data to spatial reference of the topology and snapping to the precision tolerance of the topology.

Synopsis

text Topology_Load_Tiger(varchar topo_name, varchar region_type, varchar region_id);

Description

Loads a defined region of tiger data into a PostGIS Topology. The faces, nodes and edges are transformed to the spatial reference system of the target topology and points are snapped to the tolerance of the target topology. The created faces, nodes, edges maintain the same ids as the original Tiger data faces, nodes, edges so that datasets can be in the future be more easily reconciled with tiger data. Returns summary details about the process.

This would be useful for example for redistricting data where you require the newly formed polygons to follow the center lines of streets and for the resulting polygons not to overlap.



Note

This function relies on Tiger data as well as the installation of the PostGIS topology module. For more information, refer to Chapter 11 and Section 2.4.1. If you have not loaded data covering the region of interest, then no topology records will be created. This function will also fail if you have not created a topology using the topology functions.



Note

Most topology validation errors are a result of tolerance issues where after transformation the edges points don't quite line up or overlap. To remedy the situation you may want to increase or lower the precision if you get topology validation failures.

Required arguments:

- 1. topo_name The name of an existing PostGIS topology to load data into.
- 2. region_type The type of bounding region. Currently only place and county are supported. Plan is to have several more. This is the table to look into to define the region bounds. e.g tiger.place, tiger.county
- 3. region_id This is what TIGER calls the geoid. It is the unique identifier of the region in the table. For place it is the plcidfp column in tiger.place. For county it is the cntyidfp column in tiger.county

Availability: 2.0.0

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 685 / 791

Example: Boston, Massachusetts Topology

Create a topology for Boston, Massachusetts in Mass State Plane Feet (2249) with tolerance 0.25 feet and then load in Boston city tiger faces, edges, nodes.

```
SELECT topology.CreateTopology('topo_boston', 2249, 0.25);
createtopology
 15
-- 60,902 ms ~ 1 minute on windows 7 desktop running 9.1 (with 5 states tiger data loaded)
SELECT tiger.topology_load_tiger('topo_boston', 'place', '2507000');
-- topology_loader_tiger --
29722 edges holding in temporary. 11108 faces added. 1875 edges of faces added. 20576 \leftrightarrow
   nodes added.
19962 nodes contained in a face. O edge start end corrected. 31597 edges added.
-- 41 ms --
SELECT topology.TopologySummary('topo_boston');
-- topologysummary--
Topology topo_boston (15), SRID 2249, precision 0.25
20576 nodes, 31597 edges, 11109 faces, 0 topogeoms in 0 layers
-- 28,797 ms to validate yeh returned no errors --
SELECT * FROM
   topology.ValidateTopology('topo_boston');
                  | idl
                             error
                                  id2
```

Example: Suffolk, Massachusetts Topology

Create a topology for Suffolk, Massachusetts in Mass State Plane Meters (26986) with tolerance 0.25 meters and then load in Suffolk county tiger faces, edges, nodes.

```
SELECT topology.CreateTopology('topo_suffolk', 26986, 0.25);
-- this took 56,275 \text{ ms} \sim 1 \text{ minute on Windows } 7 \text{ } 32-\text{bit with } 5 \text{ states of tiger loaded}
-- must have been warmed up after loading boston
SELECT tiger.topology_load_tiger('topo_suffolk', 'county', '25025');
-- topology_loader_tiger --
 36003 edges holding in temporary. 13518 faces added. 2172 edges of faces added.
 24761 nodes added. 24075 nodes contained in a face. 0 edge start end corrected. 38175 \leftrightarrow
    edges added.
-- 31 ms --
SELECT topology.TopologySummary('topo_suffolk');
 -- topologysummary--
Topology topo_suffolk (14), SRID 26986, precision 0.25
24761 nodes, 38175 edges, 13519 faces, 0 topogeoms in 0 layers
-- 33,606 ms to validate --
SELECT * FROM
    topology.ValidateTopology('topo_suffolk');
                | id1 |
 coincident nodes | 81045651 | 81064553
 edge crosses node | 81045651 | 85737793
 edge crosses node | 81045651 | 85742215
 edge crosses node | 81045651 | 620628939
 edge crosses node | 81064553 | 85697815
 edge crosses node | 81064553 | 85728168
 edge crosses node | 81064553 | 85733413
```

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 686 / 791

See Also

CreateTopology, CreateTopoGeom, TopologySummary, ValidateTopology

13.1.18 Set_Geocode_Setting

Set_Geocode_Setting — Sets a setting that affects behavior of geocoder functions.

Synopsis

text **Set_Geocode_Setting**(text setting_name, text setting_value);

Description

Sets value of specific setting stored in tiger.geocode_settings table. Settings allow you to toggle debugging of functions. Later plans will be to control rating with settings. Current list of settings are listed in Get_Geocode_Setting.

Availability: 2.1.0

Example return debugging setting

If you run Geocode when this function is true, the NOTICE log will output timing and queries.

```
SELECT set_geocode_setting('debug_geocode_address', 'true') As result;
result
-----
true
```

See Also

Get_Geocode_Setting

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 687 / 791

Chapter 14

PostGIS Special Functions Index

14.1 PostGIS Aggregate Functions

The functions given below are spatial aggregate functions provided with PostGIS that can be used just like any other sql aggregate function such as sum, average.

- ST_3DExtent an aggregate function that returns the box3D bounding box that bounds rows of geometries.
- ST_Accum Aggregate. Constructs an array of geometries.
- ST_ClusterIntersecting Aggregate. Returns an array with the connected components of a set of geometries
- ST_ClusterWithin Aggregate. Returns an array of GeometryCollections, where each GeometryCollection represents a set of geometries separated by no more than the specified distance.
- ST_Collect Return a specified ST_Geometry value from a collection of other geometries.
- ST_Extent an aggregate function that returns the bounding box that bounds rows of geometries.
- ST_MakeLine Creates a Linestring from point, multipoint, or line geometries.
- ST_MemUnion Same as ST_Union, only memory-friendly (uses less memory and more processor time).
- ST_Polygonize Aggregate. Creates a GeometryCollection containing possible polygons formed from the constituent linework
 of a set of geometries.
- ST_SameAlignment Returns true if rasters have same skew, scale, spatial ref, and offset (pixels can be put on same grid without cutting into pixels) and false if they don't with notice detailing issue.
- ST_Union Returns a geometry that represents the point set union of the Geometries.
- TopoElementArray_Agg Returns a topoelementarray for a set of element_id, type arrays (topoelements)

14.2 PostGIS Window Functions

The functions given below are spatial window functions provided with PostGIS that can be used just like any other sql window function such as row_numer(), lead(), lag(). All these require an SQL OVER() clause.

- ST_ClusterDBSCAN Windowing function that returns integer id for the cluster each input geometry is in based on 2D implementation of Density-based spatial clustering of applications with noise (DBSCAN) algorithm.
- ST_ClusterKMeans Windowing function that returns integer id for the cluster each input geometry is in.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 688 / 791

14.3 PostGIS SQL-MM Compliant Functions

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that conform to the SQL/MM 3 standard



Note

SQL-MM defines the default SRID of all geometry constructors as 0. PostGIS uses a default SRID of -1.

• ST_3DDWithin - For 3d (z) geometry type Returns true if two geometries 3d distance is within number of units. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM?

- ST_3DDistance For geometry type Returns the 3-dimensional cartesian minimum distance (based on spatial ref) between two geometries in projected units. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM?
- ST_3DIntersects Returns TRUE if the Geometries "spatially intersect" in 3d only for points, linestrings, polygons, polyhedral surface (area). With SFCGAL backend enabled also supports TINS This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: ?
- ST_AddEdgeModFace Add a new edge and, if in doing so it splits a face, modify the original face and add a new face. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.13
- ST_AddEdgeNewFaces Add a new edge and, if in doing so it splits a face, delete the original face and replace it with two new faces. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.12
- ST_AddIsoEdge Adds an isolated edge defined by geometry alinestring to a topology connecting two existing isolated nodes anode and anothernode and returns the edge id of the new edge. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.4
- ST_AddIsoNode Adds an isolated node to a face in a topology and returns the node of the new node. If face is null, the node is still created. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Net Routines: X+1.3.1
- ST_Area Returns the area of the surface if it is a Polygon or MultiPolygon. For geometry, a 2D Cartesian area is determined with units specified by the SRID. For geography, area is determined on a curved surface with units in square meters. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.1.2, 9.5.3
- ST_AsBinary Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the geometry/geography without SRID meta data. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.37
- ST_AsText Return the Well-Known Text (WKT) representation of the geometry/geography without SRID metadata. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.25
- ST_Boundary Returns the closure of the combinatorial boundary of this Geometry. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.14
- ST_Buffer (T)Returns a geometry covering all points within a given distancefrom the input geometry. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.17
- ST_Centroid Returns the geometric center of a geometry. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.1.4, 9.5.5
- ST_ChangeEdgeGeom Changes the shape of an edge without affecting the topology structure. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details X.3.6
- ST_Contains Returns true if and only if no points of B lie in the exterior of A, and at least one point of the interior of B lies in the interior of A. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.31
- ST_ConvexHull The convex hull of a geometry represents the minimum convex geometry that encloses all geometries within the set. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.16

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 689 / 791

• ST_CoordDim - Return the coordinate dimension of the ST_Geometry value. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.3

- ST_CreateTopoGeo Adds a collection of geometries to a given empty topology and returns a message detailing success. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details -- X.3.18
- ST_Crosses Returns TRUE if the supplied geometries have some, but not all, interior points in common. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.29
- ST_CurveToLine Converts a CIRCULARSTRING/CURVEPOLYGON to a LINESTRING/POLYGON This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.1.7
- ST_Difference Returns a geometry that represents that part of geometry A that does not intersect with geometry B. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.20
- ST_Dimension The inherent dimension of this Geometry object, which must be less than or equal to the coordinate dimension. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.2
- ST_Disjoint Returns TRUE if the Geometries do not "spatially intersect" if they do not share any space together. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.26
- ST_Distance For geometry type Returns the 2D Cartesian distance between two geometries in projected units (based on spatial ref). For geography type defaults to return minimum geodesic distance between two geographies in meters. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.23
- ST_EndPoint Returns the last point of a LINESTRING or CIRCULARLINESTRING geometry as a POINT. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.1.4
- ST_Envelope Returns a geometry representing the double precision (float8) bounding box of the supplied geometry. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.15
- ST_Equals Returns true if the given geometries represent the same geometry. Directionality is ignored. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.24
- ST_ExteriorRing Returns a line string representing the exterior ring of the POLYGON geometry. Return NULL if the geometry is not a polygon. Will not work with MULTIPOLYGON This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.2.3, 8.3.3
- ST_GMLToSQL Return a specified ST_Geometry value from GML representation. This is an alias name for ST_GeomFromGML This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.50 (except for curves support).
- ST_GeomCollFromText Makes a collection Geometry from collection WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0. This method implements the SQL/MM specification.
- ST_GeomFromText Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Well-Known Text representation (WKT). This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.40
- ST_GeomFromWKB Creates a geometry instance from a Well-Known Binary geometry representation (WKB) and optional SRID. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.41
- ST_GeometryFromText Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Well-Known Text representation (WKT). This is an alias name for ST_GeomFromText This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.40
- ST_GeometryN Return the 1-based Nth geometry if the geometry is a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION, (MULTI)POINT, (MULTI)LINE MULTICURVE or (MULTI)POLYGON, POLYHEDRALSURFACE Otherwise, return NULL. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 9.1.5
- ST_GeometryType Return the geometry type of the ST_Geometry value. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.4
- ST_GetFaceEdges Returns a set of ordered edges that bound aface. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3 Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.5

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 690 / 791

• ST_GetFaceGeometry - Returns the polygon in the given topology with the specified face id. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3 Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.16

- ST_InitTopoGeo Creates a new topology schema and registers this new schema in the topology.topology table and details summary of process. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3 Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.17
- ST_InteriorRingN Return the Nth interior linestring ring of the polygon geometry. Return NULL if the geometry is not a polygon or the given N is out of range. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.2.6, 8.3.5
- ST_Intersection (T)Returns a geometry that represents the shared portion of geomA and geomB. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.18
- ST_Intersects Returns TRUE if the Geometries/Geography "spatially intersect in 2D" (share any portion of space) and FALSE if they don't (they are Disjoint). For geography -- tolerance is 0.00001 meters (so any points that close are considered to intersect) This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.27
- ST_IsClosed Returns TRUE if the LINESTRING's start and end points are coincident. For Polyhedral surface is closed (volumetric). This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.1.5, 9.3.3
- ST_IsEmpty Returns true if this Geometry is an empty geometrycollection, polygon, point etc. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.7
- ST_IsRing Returns TRUE if this LINESTRING is both closed and simple. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.1.6
- ST_IsSimple Returns (TRUE) if this Geometry has no anomalous geometric points, such as self intersection or self tangency. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.8
- ST_IsValid Returns true if the ST_Geometry is well formed. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.9
- ST_Length Returns the 2D length of the geometry if it is a LineString or MultiLineString. geometry are in units of spatial reference and geography are in meters (default spheroid) This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.1.2, 9.3.4
- ST_LineFromText Makes a Geometry from WKT representation with the given SRID. If SRID is not given, it defaults to 0. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.2.8
- ST_LineFromWKB Makes a LINESTRING from WKB with the given SRID This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.2.9
- ST_LinestringFromWKB Makes a geometry from WKB with the given SRID. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.2.9
- ST_M Return the M coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point. This method implements the SQL/MM specification.
- ST_MLineFromText Return a specified ST_MultiLineString value from WKT representation. This method implements the SQL/MM specification.SQL-MM 3: 9.4.4
- ST_MPointFromText Makes a Geometry from WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 9.2.4
- ST_MPolyFromText Makes a MultiPolygon Geometry from WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 9.6.4
- ST_ModEdgeHeal Heal two edges by deleting the node connecting them, modifying the first edgeand deleting the second edge. Returns the id of the deleted node. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.9
- ST_ModEdgeSplit Split an edge by creating a new node along an existing edge, modifying the original edge and adding a new edge. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.9

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 691 / 791

• ST_MoveIsoNode - Moves an isolated node in a topology from one point to another. If new apoint geometry exists as a node an error is thrown. REturns description of move. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Net Routines: X.3.2

- ST_NewEdgeHeal Heal two edges by deleting the node connecting them, deleting both edges, and replacing them with an edge whose direction is the same as the firstedge provided. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.9
- ST_NewEdgesSplit Split an edge by creating a new node along an existing edge, deleting the original edge and replacing it with two new edges. Returns the id of the new node created that joins the new edges. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Net Routines: X.3.8
- ST_NumGeometries If geometry is a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION (or MULTI*) return the number of geometries, for single geometries will return 1, otherwise return NULL. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 9.1.4
- ST_NumInteriorRings Return the number of interior rings of a polygon geometry. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.2.5
- ST_NumPatches Return the number of faces on a Polyhedral Surface. Will return null for non-polyhedral geometries. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: ?
- ST_NumPoints Return the number of points in an ST_LineString or ST_CircularString value. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.2.4
- ST_OrderingEquals Returns true if the given geometries represent the same geometry and points are in the same directional order. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.43
- ST_Overlaps Returns TRUE if the Geometries share space, are of the same dimension, but are not completely contained by each other. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.32
- ST_PatchN Return the 1-based Nth geometry (face) if the geometry is a POLYHEDRALSURFACE, POLYHEDRALSURFACEM. Otherwise, return NULL. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: ?
- ST_Perimeter Return the length measurement of the boundary of an ST_Surface or ST_MultiSurface geometry or geography. (Polygon, MultiPolygon). geometry measurement is in units of spatial reference and geography is in meters. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.1.3, 9.5.4
- ST_Point Returns an ST_Point with the given coordinate values. OGC alias for ST_MakePoint. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 6.1.2
- ST_PointFromText Makes a point Geometry from WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not given, it defaults to unknown. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 6.1.8
- ST_PointFromWKB Makes a geometry from WKB with the given SRID This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 6.1.9
- ST_PointN Return the Nth point in the first LineString or circular LineString in the geometry. Negative values are counted backwards from the end of the LineString. Returns NULL if there is no linestring in the geometry. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.2.5, 7.3.5
- ST_PointOnSurface Returns a POINT guaranteed to lie on the surface. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.1.5, 9.5.6. According to the specs, ST_PointOnSurface works for surface geometries (POLYGONs, MULTIPOLYGONS, CURVED POLYGONS). So PostGIS seems to be extending what the spec allows here. Most databases Oracle,DB II, ESRI SDE seem to only support this function for surfaces. SQL Server 2008 like PostGIS supports for all common geometries.
- ST_Polygon Returns a polygon built from the specified linestring and SRID. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.3.2
- ST_PolygonFromText Makes a Geometry from WKT with the given SRID. If SRID is not give, it defaults to 0. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 8.3.6

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 692 / 791

• ST_Relate - Returns true if this Geometry is spatially related to anotherGeometry, by testing for intersections between the Interior, Boundary and Exterior of the two geometries as specified by the values in the intersectionMatrixPattern. If no intersectionMatrixPattern is passed in, then returns the maximum intersectionMatrixPattern that relates the 2 geometries. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.25

- ST_RemEdgeModFace Removes an edge and, if the removed edge separated two faces, delete one of the them and modify the other to take the space of both. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.15
- ST_RemEdgeNewFace Removes an edge and, if the removed edge separated two faces, delete the original faces and replace them with a new face. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X.3.14
- ST_RemoveIsoEdge Removes an isolated edge and returns description of action. If the edge is not isolated, then an exception is thrown. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X+1.3.3
- ST_RemoveIsoNode Removes an isolated node and returns description of action. If the node is not isolated (is start or end of an edge), then an exception is thrown. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM: Topo-Geo and Topo-Net 3: Routine Details: X+1.3.3
- ST_SRID Returns the spatial reference identifier for the ST_Geometry as defined in spatial_ref_sys table. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.5
- ST_StartPoint Returns the first point of a LINESTRING geometry as a POINT. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 7.1.3
- ST_SymDifference Returns a geometry that represents the portions of A and B that do not intersect. It is called a symmetric difference because ST_SymDifference(A,B) = ST_SymDifference(B,A). This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.21
- ST_Touches Returns TRUE if the geometries have at least one point in common, but their interiors do not intersect. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.28
- ST_Transform Return a new geometry with its coordinates transformed to a different spatial reference. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.6
- ST_Union Returns a geometry that represents the point set union of the Geometries. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.19 the z-index (elevation) when polygons are involved.
- ST_WKBToSQL Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Well-Known Binary representation (WKB). This is an alias name for ST_GeomFromWKB that takes no srid This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.36
- ST_WKTToSQL Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Well-Known Text representation (WKT). This is an alias name for ST_GeomFromText This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.34
- ST_Within Returns true if the geometry A is completely inside geometry B This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 5.1.30
- ST_X Return the X coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 6.1.3
- ST_Y Return the Y coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point. This method implements the SQL/MM specification. SQL-MM 3: 6.1.4
- ST_Z Return the Z coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point. This method implements the SQL/MM specification.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 693 / 791

14.4 PostGIS Geography Support Functions

The functions and operators given below are PostGIS functions/operators that take as input or return as output a geography data type object.

Note!

Note

Functions with a (T) are not native geodetic functions, and use a ST_Transform call to and from geometry to do the operation. As a result, they may not behave as expected when going over dateline, poles, and for large geometries or geometry pairs that cover more than one UTM zone. Basic transform - (favoring UTM, Lambert Azimuthal (North/South), and falling back on mercator in worst case scenario)

- ST_Area Returns the area of the surface if it is a Polygon or MultiPolygon. For geometry, a 2D Cartesian area is determined with units specified by the SRID. For geography, area is determined on a curved surface with units in square meters.
- ST_AsBinary Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the geometry/geography without SRID meta data.
- ST_AsEWKT Return the Well-Known Text (WKT) representation of the geometry with SRID meta data.
- ST_AsGML Return the geometry as a GML version 2 or 3 element.
- ST_AsGeoJSON Return the geometry as a GeoJSON element.
- ST_AsKML Return the geometry as a KML element. Several variants. Default version=2, default precision=15
- ST_AsSVG Returns a Geometry in SVG path data given a geometry or geography object.
- ST_AsText Return the Well-Known Text (WKT) representation of the geometry/geography without SRID metadata.
- ST_Azimuth Returns the north-based azimuth as the angle in radians measured clockwise from the vertical on pointA to pointB.
- ST_Buffer (T)Returns a geometry covering all points within a given distance from the input geometry.
- ST_CoveredBy Returns 1 (TRUE) if no point in Geometry/Geography A is outside Geometry/Geography B
- ST_Covers Returns 1 (TRUE) if no point in Geometry B is outside Geometry A
- ST_DWithin Returns true if the geometries are within the specified distance of one another. For geometry units are in those of spatial reference and For geography units are in meters and measurement is defaulted to use_spheroid=true (measure around spheroid), for faster check, use_spheroid=false to measure along sphere.
- ST_Distance For geometry type Returns the 2D Cartesian distance between two geometries in projected units (based on spatial ref). For geography type defaults to return minimum geodesic distance between two geographies in meters.
- ST_GeogFromText Return a specified geography value from Well-Known Text representation or extended (WKT).
- ST_GeogFromWKB Creates a geography instance from a Well-Known Binary geometry representation (WKB) or extended Well Known Binary (EWKB).
- ST_GeographyFromText Return a specified geography value from Well-Known Text representation or extended (WKT).
- = Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is the same as B's. Uses double precision bounding box.
- ST_Intersection (T)Returns a geometry that represents the shared portion of geomA and geomB.
- ST_Intersects Returns TRUE if the Geometries/Geography "spatially intersect in 2D" (share any portion of space) and FALSE if they don't (they are Disjoint). For geography -- tolerance is 0.00001 meters (so any points that close are considered to intersect)
- ST_Length Returns the 2D length of the geometry if it is a LineString or MultiLineString. geometry are in units of spatial reference and geography are in meters (default spheroid)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 694 / 791

• ST_Perimeter - Return the length measurement of the boundary of an ST_Surface or ST_MultiSurface geometry or geography. (Polygon, MultiPolygon). geometry measurement is in units of spatial reference and geography is in meters.

- ST_Project Returns a POINT projected from a start point using a distance in meters and bearing (azimuth) in radians.
- ST_Segmentize Return a modified geometry/geography having no segment longer than the given distance.
- ST_Summary Returns a text summary of the contents of the geometry.
- <-> Returns the 2D distance between A and B.
- && Returns TRUE if A's 2D bounding box intersects B's 2D bounding box.

14.5 PostGIS Raster Support Functions

The functions and operators given below are PostGIS functions/operators that take as input or return as output a raster data type object. Listed in alphabetical order.

- Box3D Returns the box 3d representation of the enclosing box of the raster.
- @ Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is contained by B's. Uses double precision bounding box.
- ~ Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is contains B's. Uses double precision bounding box.
- = Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is the same as B's. Uses double precision bounding box.
- && Returns TRUE if A's bounding box intersects B's bounding box.
- &< Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is to the left of B's.
- &> Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is to the right of B's.
- ~= Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is the same as B's.
- ST_Retile Return a set of configured tiles from an arbitrarily tiled raster coverage.
- ST_AddBand Returns a raster with the new band(s) of given type added with given initial value in the given index location. If no index is specified, the band is added to the end.
- ST_AsBinary Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the raster.
- ST_AsGDALRaster Return the raster tile in the designated GDAL Raster format. Raster formats are one of those supported by your compiled library. Use ST_GDALRasters() to get a list of formats supported by your library.
- ST_AsJPEG Return the raster tile selected bands as a single Joint Photographic Exports Group (JPEG) image (byte array). If no band is specified and 1 or more than 3 bands, then only the first band is used. If only 3 bands then all 3 bands are used and mapped to RGB.
- ST_AsPNG Return the raster tile selected bands as a single portable network graphics (PNG) image (byte array). If 1, 3, or 4 bands in raster and no bands are specified, then all bands are used. If more 2 or more than 4 bands and no bands specified, then only band 1 is used. Bands are mapped to RGB or RGBA space.
- ST AsRaster Converts a PostGIS geometry to a PostGIS raster.
- ST_AsTIFF Return the raster selected bands as a single TIFF image (byte array). If no band is specified, then will try to use all bands.
- ST_Aspect Returns the aspect (in degrees by default) of an elevation raster band. Useful for analyzing terrain.
- ST_Band Returns one or more bands of an existing raster as a new raster. Useful for building new rasters from existing rasters.
- ST_BandIsNoData Returns true if the band is filled with only nodata values.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 695 / 791

- ST BandMetaData Returns basic meta data for a specific raster band, band num 1 is assumed if none-specified.
- ST_BandNoDataValue Returns the value in a given band that represents no data. If no band num 1 is assumed.
- ST_BandPath Returns system file path to a band stored in file system. If no bandnum specified, 1 is assumed.
- ST_BandPixelType Returns the type of pixel for given band. If no bandnum specified, 1 is assumed.
- ST_Clip Returns the raster clipped by the input geometry. If band number not is specified, all bands are processed. If crop is not specified or TRUE, the output raster is cropped.
- ST_ColorMap Creates a new raster of up to four 8BUI bands (grayscale, RGB, RGBA) from the source raster and a specified band. Band 1 is assumed if not specified.
- ST_Contains Return true if no points of raster rastB lie in the exterior of raster rastA and at least one point of the interior of rastB lies in the interior of rastA.
- ST_ContainsProperly Return true if rastB intersects the interior of rastA but not the boundary or exterior of rastA.
- ST_ConvexHull Return the convex hull geometry of the raster including pixel values equal to BandNoDataValue. For regular shaped and non-skewed rasters, this gives the same result as ST_Envelope so only useful for irregularly shaped or skewed rasters.
- ST_Count Returns the number of pixels in a given band of a raster or raster coverage. If no band is specified defaults to band 1. If exclude_nodata_value is set to true, will only count pixels that are not equal to the nodata value.
- ST_CountAgg Aggregate. Returns the number of pixels in a given band of a set of rasters. If no band is specified defaults to band 1. If exclude_nodata_value is set to true, will only count pixels that are not equal to the NODATA value.
- ST_CoveredBy Return true if no points of raster rastA lie outside raster rastB.
- ST_Covers Return true if no points of raster rastB lie outside raster rastA.
- ST_DFullyWithin Return true if rasters rastA and rastB are fully within the specified distance of each other.
- ST_DWithin Return true if rasters rastA and rastB are within the specified distance of each other.
- ST_Disjoint Return true if raster rastA does not spatially intersect rastB.
- ST_DumpAsPolygons Returns a set of geomval (geom,val) rows, from a given raster band. If no band number is specified, band num defaults to 1.
- ST_DumpValues Get the values of the specified band as a 2-dimension array.
- ST_Envelope Returns the polygon representation of the extent of the raster.
- ST_FromGDALRaster Returns a raster from a supported GDAL raster file.
- ST_GeoReference Returns the georeference meta data in GDAL or ESRI format as commonly seen in a world file. Default is GDAL.
- ST_HasNoBand Returns true if there is no band with given band number. If no band number is specified, then band number 1 is assumed.
- ST_Height Returns the height of the raster in pixels.
- ST_HillShade Returns the hypothetical illumination of an elevation raster band using provided azimuth, altitude, brightness and scale inputs.
- ST_Histogram Returns a set of record summarizing a raster or raster coverage data distribution separate bin ranges. Number of bins are autocomputed if not specified.
- ST_Intersection Returns a raster or a set of geometry-pixelvalue pairs representing the shared portion of two rasters or the geometrical intersection of a vectorization of the raster and a geometry.
- ST_Intersects Return true if raster rastA spatially intersects raster rastB.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 696 / 791

- ST IsEmpty Returns true if the raster is empty (width = 0 and height = 0). Otherwise, returns false.
- ST_MakeEmptyRaster Returns an empty raster (having no bands) of given dimensions (width & height), upperleft X and Y, pixel size and rotation (scalex, scaley, skewx & skewy) and reference system (srid). If a raster is passed in, returns a new raster with the same size, alignment and SRID. If srid is left out, the spatial ref is set to unknown (0).
- ST_MapAlgebra Callback function version Returns a one-band raster given one or more input rasters, band indexes and one user-specified callback function.
- ST_MapAlgebraExpr 1 raster band version: Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL algebraic operation on the input raster band and of pixeltype provided. Band 1 is assumed if no band is specified.
- ST_MapAlgebraExpr 2 raster band version: Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL algebraic operation on the two input raster bands and of pixeltype provided. band 1 of each raster is assumed if no band numbers are specified. The resulting raster will be aligned (scale, skew and pixel corners) on the grid defined by the first raster and have its extent defined by the "extenttype" parameter. Values for "extenttype" can be: INTERSECTION, UNION, FIRST, SECOND.
- ST_MapAlgebraFct 1 band version Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL function on the input raster band and of pixeltype prodived. Band 1 is assumed if no band is specified.
- ST_MapAlgebraFct 2 band version Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL function on the 2 input raster bands and of pixeltype prodived. Band 1 is assumed if no band is specified. Extent type defaults to INTERSECTION if not specified.
- ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb 1-band version: Map Algebra Nearest Neighbor using user-defined PostgreSQL function. Return a raster which values are the result of a PLPGSQL user function involving a neighborhood of values from the input raster band.
- ST_MapAlgebra Expression version Returns a one-band raster given one or two input rasters, band indexes and one or more user-specified SQL expressions.
- ST_MemSize Returns the amount of space (in bytes) the raster takes.
- ST_MetaData Returns basic meta data about a raster object such as pixel size, rotation (skew), upper, lower left, etc.
- ST_MinConvexHull Return the convex hull geometry of the raster excluding NODATA pixels.
- ST_NearestValue Returns the nearest non-NODATA value of a given band's pixel specified by a columnx and rowy or a geometric point expressed in the same spatial reference coordinate system as the raster.
- ST_Neighborhood Returns a 2-D double precision array of the non-NODATA values around a given band's pixel specified by either a columnX and rowY or a geometric point expressed in the same spatial reference coordinate system as the raster.
- ST_NotSameAlignmentReason Returns text stating if rasters are aligned and if not aligned, a reason why.
- ST NumBands Returns the number of bands in the raster object.
- ST_Overlaps Return true if raster rastA and rastB intersect but one does not completely contain the other.
- ST_PixelAsCentroid Returns the centroid (point geometry) of the area represented by a pixel.
- ST_PixelAsCentroids Returns the centroid (point geometry) for each pixel of a raster band along with the value, the X and the Y raster coordinates of each pixel. The point geometry is the centroid of the area represented by a pixel.
- ST_PixelAsPoint Returns a point geometry of the pixel's upper-left corner.
- ST_PixelAsPoints Returns a point geometry for each pixel of a raster band along with the value, the X and the Y raster coordinates of each pixel. The coordinates of the point geometry are of the pixel's upper-left corner.
- ST_PixelAsPolygon Returns the polygon geometry that bounds the pixel for a particular row and column.
- ST_PixelAsPolygons Returns the polygon geometry that bounds every pixel of a raster band along with the value, the X and the Y raster coordinates of each pixel.
- ST_PixelHeight Returns the pixel height in geometric units of the spatial reference system.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 697 / 791

- ST_PixelOfValue Get the columnx, rowy coordinates of the pixel whose value equals the search value.
- ST_PixelWidth Returns the pixel width in geometric units of the spatial reference system.
- ST_Polygon Returns a multipolygon geometry formed by the union of pixels that have a pixel value that is not no data value. If no band number is specified, band num defaults to 1.
- ST_Quantile Compute quantiles for a raster or raster table coverage in the context of the sample or population. Thus, a value could be examined to be at the raster's 25%, 50%, 75% percentile.
- ST_RasterToWorldCoord Returns the raster's upper left corner as geometric X and Y (longitude and latitude) given a column and row. Column and row starts at 1.
- ST_RasterToWorldCoordX Returns the geometric X coordinate upper left of a raster, column and row. Numbering of columns and rows starts at 1.
- ST_RasterToWorldCoordY Returns the geometric Y coordinate upper left corner of a raster, column and row. Numbering of columns and rows starts at 1.
- ST_Reclass Creates a new raster composed of band types reclassified from original. The nband is the band to be changed. If nband is not specified assumed to be 1. All other bands are returned unchanged. Use case: convert a 16BUI band to a 8BUI and so forth for simpler rendering as viewable formats.
- ST_Resample Resample a raster using a specified resampling algorithm, new dimensions, an arbitrary grid corner and a set of raster georeferencing attributes defined or borrowed from another raster.
- ST_Rescale Resample a raster by adjusting only its scale (or pixel size). New pixel values are computed using the Nearest-Neighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. Default is Nearest-Neighbor.
- ST_Resize Resize a raster to a new width/height
- ST_Reskew Resample a raster by adjusting only its skew (or rotation parameters). New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. Default is NearestNeighbor.
- ST_Rotation Returns the rotation of the raster in radian.
- ST_Roughness Returns a raster with the calculated "roughness" of a DEM.
- ST_SRID Returns the spatial reference identifier of the raster as defined in spatial_ref_sys table.
- ST_SameAlignment Returns true if rasters have same skew, scale, spatial ref, and offset (pixels can be put on same grid without cutting into pixels) and false if they don't with notice detailing issue.
- ST_ScaleX Returns the X component of the pixel width in units of coordinate reference system.
- ST_ScaleY Returns the Y component of the pixel height in units of coordinate reference system.
- ST_SetBandIsNoData Sets the isnodata flag of the band to TRUE.
- ST_SetBandNoDataValue Sets the value for the given band that represents no data. Band 1 is assumed if no band is specified. To mark a band as having no nodata value, set the nodata value = NULL.
- ST_SetGeoReference Set Georeference 6 georeference parameters in a single call. Numbers should be separated by white space. Accepts inputs in GDAL or ESRI format. Default is GDAL.
- ST SetRotation Set the rotation of the raster in radian.
- ST_SetSRID Sets the SRID of a raster to a particular integer srid defined in the spatial_ref_sys table.
- ST_SetScale Sets the X and Y size of pixels in units of coordinate reference system. Number units/pixel width/height.
- ST_SetSkew Sets the georeference X and Y skew (or rotation parameter). If only one is passed in, sets X and Y to the same value.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 698 / 791

- ST SetUpperLeft Sets the value of the upper left corner of the pixel to projected X and Y coordinates.
- ST_SetValue Returns modified raster resulting from setting the value of a given band in a given columnx, rowy pixel or the pixels that intersect a particular geometry. Band numbers start at 1 and assumed to be 1 if not specified.
- ST SetValues Returns modified raster resulting from setting the values of a given band.
- ST_SkewX Returns the georeference X skew (or rotation parameter).
- ST_SkewY Returns the georeference Y skew (or rotation parameter).
- ST_Slope Returns the slope (in degrees by default) of an elevation raster band. Useful for analyzing terrain.
- ST_SnapToGrid Resample a raster by snapping it to a grid. New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. Default is NearestNeighbor.
- ST_Summary Returns a text summary of the contents of the raster.
- ST_SummaryStats Returns summarystats consisting of count, sum, mean, stddev, min, max for a given raster band of a raster or raster coverage. Band 1 is assumed is no band is specified.
- ST_SummaryStatsAgg Aggregate. Returns summarystats consisting of count, sum, mean, stddev, min, max for a given raster band of a set of raster. Band 1 is assumed is no band is specified.
- ST_TPI Returns a raster with the calculated Topographic Position Index.
- ST_TRI Returns a raster with the calculated Terrain Ruggedness Index.
- ST_Tile Returns a set of rasters resulting from the split of the input raster based upon the desired dimensions of the output rasters.
- ST_Touches Return true if raster rastA and rastB have at least one point in common but their interiors do not intersect.
- ST_Transform Reprojects a raster in a known spatial reference system to another known spatial reference system using specified resampling algorithm. Options are NearestNeighbor, Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline, Lanczos defaulting to Nearest-Neighbor.
- ST_Union Returns the union of a set of raster tiles into a single raster composed of 1 or more bands.
- ST_UpperLeftX Returns the upper left X coordinate of raster in projected spatial ref.
- ST_UpperLeftY Returns the upper left Y coordinate of raster in projected spatial ref.
- ST_Value Returns the value of a given band in a given columnx, rowy pixel or at a particular geometric point. Band numbers start at 1 and assumed to be 1 if not specified. If exclude_nodata_value is set to false, then all pixels include nodata pixels are considered to intersect and return value. If exclude_nodata_value is not passed in then reads it from metadata of raster.
- ST_ValueCount Returns a set of records containing a pixel band value and count of the number of pixels in a given band of a raster (or a raster coverage) that have a given set of values. If no band is specified defaults to band 1. By default nodata value pixels are not counted, and all other values in the pixel are output and pixel band values are rounded to the nearest integer.
- ST Width Returns the width of the raster in pixels.
- ST_Within Return true if no points of raster rastA lie in the exterior of raster rastB and at least one point of the interior of rastA lies in the interior of rastB.
- ST_WorldToRasterCoord Returns the upper left corner as column and row given geometric X and Y (longitude and latitude) or a point geometry expressed in the spatial reference coordinate system of the raster.
- ST_WorldToRasterCoordX Returns the column in the raster of the point geometry (pt) or a X and Y world coordinate (xw, yw) represented in world spatial reference system of raster.
- ST_WorldToRasterCoordY Returns the row in the raster of the point geometry (pt) or a X and Y world coordinate (xw, yw) represented in world spatial reference system of raster.
- UpdateRasterSRID Change the SRID of all rasters in the user-specified column and table.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 699 / 791

14.6 PostGIS Geometry / Geography / Raster Dump Functions

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that take as input or return as output a set of or single geometry_dump or geomval data type object.

- ST_DumpAsPolygons Returns a set of geomval (geom,val) rows, from a given raster band. If no band number is specified, band num defaults to 1.
- ST_Intersection Returns a raster or a set of geometry-pixelvalue pairs representing the shared portion of two rasters or the geometrical intersection of a vectorization of the raster and a geometry.
- ST_Dump Returns a set of geometry_dump (geom,path) rows, that make up a geometry g1.
- ST_DumpPoints Returns a set of geometry_dump (geom,path) rows of all points that make up a geometry.
- ST_DumpRings Returns a set of geometry_dump rows, representing the exterior and interior rings of a polygon.

14.7 PostGIS Box Functions

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that take as input or return as output the box* family of PostGIS spatial types. The box family of types consists of box2d, and box3d

- Box2D Returns a BOX2D representing the maximum extents of the geometry.
- Box3D Returns a BOX3D representing the maximum extents of the geometry.
- Box3D Returns the box 3d representation of the enclosing box of the raster.
- ST_3DExtent an aggregate function that returns the box3D bounding box that bounds rows of geometries.
- ST_3DMakeBox Creates a BOX3D defined by the given 3d point geometries.
- ST_AsTWKB Returns the geometry as TWKB, aka "Tiny Well-Known Binary"
- ST_Box2dFromGeoHash Return a BOX2D from a GeoHash string.
- ST_ClipByBox2D Returns the portion of a geometry falling within a rectangle.
- ST_EstimatedExtent Return the 'estimated' extent of the given spatial table. The estimated is taken from the geometry column's statistics. The current schema will be used if not specified.
- ST_Expand Returns bounding box expanded in all directions from the bounding box of the input geometry. Uses double-precision
- ST Extent an aggregate function that returns the bounding box that bounds rows of geometries.
- ST_MakeBox2D Creates a BOX2D defined by the given point geometries.
- ST_XMax Returns X maxima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_XMin Returns X minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_YMax Returns Y maxima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_YMin Returns Y minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_ZMax Returns Z minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_ZMin Returns Z minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ~(box2df,box2df) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) contains another 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 700 / 791

• ~(box2df,geometry) - Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) contains a geometry's 2D bonding box.

- ~(geometry,box2df) Returns TRUE if a geometry's 2D bonding box contains a 2D float precision bounding box (GIDX).
- @(box2df,box2df) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) is contained into another 2D float precision bounding box.
- @(box2df,geometry) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) is contained into a geometry's 2D bounding box.
- @(geometry,box2df) Returns TRUE if a geometry's 2D bounding box is contained into a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).
- &&(box2df,box2df) Returns TRUE if two 2D float precision bounding boxes (BOX2DF) intersect each other.
- &&(box2df,geometry) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) intersects a geometry's (cached) 2D bounding box.
- &&(geometry,box2df) Returns TRUE if a geometry's (cached) 2D bounding box intersects a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).

14.8 PostGIS Functions that support 3D

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that do not throw away the Z-Index.

- AddGeometryColumn Adds a geometry column to an existing table of attributes. By default uses type modifier to define rather than constraints. Pass in false for use_typmod to get old check constraint based behavior
- Box3D Returns a BOX3D representing the maximum extents of the geometry.
- DropGeometryColumn Removes a geometry column from a spatial table.
- Geometry Type Returns the type of the geometry as a string. Eg: 'LINESTRING', 'POLYGON', 'MULTIPOINT', etc.
- ST_3DArea Computes area of 3D surface geometries. Will return 0 for solids.
- ST_3DClosestPoint Returns the 3-dimensional point on g1 that is closest to g2. This is the first point of the 3D shortest line.
- ST_3DDFullyWithin Returns true if all of the 3D geometries are within the specified distance of one another.
- ST_3DDWithin For 3d (z) geometry type Returns true if two geometries 3d distance is within number of units.
- ST_3DDifference Perform 3D difference
- ST_3DDistance For geometry type Returns the 3-dimensional cartesian minimum distance (based on spatial ref) between two geometries in projected units.
- ST_3DExtent an aggregate function that returns the box3D bounding box that bounds rows of geometries.
- ST_3DIntersection Perform 3D intersection
- ST_3DIntersects Returns TRUE if the Geometries "spatially intersect" in 3d only for points, linestrings, polygons, polyhedral surface (area). With SFCGAL backend enabled also supports TINS
- ST_3DLength Returns the 3-dimensional or 2-dimensional length of the geometry if it is a linestring or multi-linestring.
- ST_3DLongestLine Returns the 3-dimensional longest line between two geometries
- ST_3DMakeBox Creates a BOX3D defined by the given 3d point geometries.
- ST_3DMaxDistance For geometry type Returns the 3-dimensional cartesian maximum distance (based on spatial ref) between two geometries in projected units.
- ST_3DPerimeter Returns the 3-dimensional perimeter of the geometry, if it is a polygon or multi-polygon.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 701 / 791

- ST_3DShortestLine Returns the 3-dimensional shortest line between two geometries
- ST 3DUnion Perform 3D union
- ST_Accum Aggregate. Constructs an array of geometries.
- ST_AddMeasure Return a derived geometry with measure elements linearly interpolated between the start and end points.
- ST_AddPoint Add a point to a LineString.
- ST Affine Apply a 3d affine transformation to a geometry.
- ST_ApproximateMedialAxis Compute the approximate medial axis of an areal geometry.
- ST AsBinary Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the geometry/geography without SRID meta data.
- ST_AsEWKB Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the geometry with SRID meta data.
- ST_AsEWKT Return the Well-Known Text (WKT) representation of the geometry with SRID meta data.
- ST_AsGML Return the geometry as a GML version 2 or 3 element.
- ST_AsGeoJSON Return the geometry as a GeoJSON element.
- ST_AsHEXEWKB Returns a Geometry in HEXEWKB format (as text) using either little-endian (NDR) or big-endian (XDR) encoding.
- ST_AsKML Return the geometry as a KML element. Several variants. Default version=2, default precision=15
- ST_AsX3D Returns a Geometry in X3D xml node element format: ISO-IEC-19776-1.2-X3DEncodings-XML
- ST_Boundary Returns the closure of the combinatorial boundary of this Geometry.
- ST_BoundingDiagonal Returns the diagonal of the supplied geometry's bounding box.
- ST CPAWithin Returns true if the trajectories' closest points of approachare within the specified distance.
- ST ClosestPointOfApproach Returns the measure at which points interpolated along two lines are closest.
- ST Collect Return a specified ST Geometry value from a collection of other geometries.
- ST_ConvexHull The convex hull of a geometry represents the minimum convex geometry that encloses all geometries within the set.
- ST_CoordDim Return the coordinate dimension of the ST_Geometry value.
- ST_CurveToLine Converts a CIRCULARSTRING/CURVEPOLYGON to a LINESTRING/POLYGON
- ST_DelaunayTriangles Return a Delaunay triangulation around the given input points.
- ST Difference Returns a geometry that represents that part of geometry A that does not intersect with geometry B.
- ST DistanceCPA Returns the distance between closest points of approach in two trajectories.
- ST_Dump Returns a set of geometry_dump (geom,path) rows, that make up a geometry g1.
- ST_DumpPoints Returns a set of geometry_dump (geom,path) rows of all points that make up a geometry.
- ST_DumpRings Returns a set of geometry_dump rows, representing the exterior and interior rings of a polygon.
- ST_EndPoint Returns the last point of a LINESTRING or CIRCULARLINESTRING geometry as a POINT.
- ST_ExteriorRing Returns a line string representing the exterior ring of the POLYGON geometry. Return NULL if the geometry is not a polygon. Will not work with MULTIPOLYGON
- ST Extrude Extrude a surface to a related volume

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 702 / 791

• ST_FlipCoordinates - Returns a version of the given geometry with X and Y axis flipped. Useful for people who have built latitude/longitude features and need to fix them.

- ST Force2D Force the geometries into a "2-dimensional mode".
- ST_ForceCurve Upcast a geometry into its curved type, if applicable.
- ST_ForceLHR Force LHR orientation
- ST_ForceRHR Force the orientation of the vertices in a polygon to follow the Right-Hand-Rule.
- ST_ForceSFS Force the geometries to use SFS 1.1 geometry types only.
- ST Force 3D Force the geometries into XYZ mode. This is an alias for ST Force3DZ.
- ST_Force_3DZ Force the geometries into XYZ mode.
- ST_Force_4D Force the geometries into XYZM mode.
- ST_Force_Collection Convert the geometry into a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION.
- ST_GeomFromEWKB Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Extended Well-Known Binary representation (EWKB).
- ST_GeomFromEWKT Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Extended Well-Known Text representation (EWKT).
- ST_GeomFromGML Takes as input GML representation of geometry and outputs a PostGIS geometry object
- ST_GeomFromGeoJSON Takes as input a geojson representation of a geometry and outputs a PostGIS geometry object
- ST_GeomFromKML Takes as input KML representation of geometry and outputs a PostGIS geometry object
- ST GeometricMedian Returns the geometric median of a MultiPoint.
- ST_GeometryN Return the 1-based Nth geometry if the geometry is a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION, (MULTI)POINT, (MULTI)LINE MULTICURVE or (MULTI)POLYGON, POLYHEDRALSURFACE Otherwise, return NULL.
- ST_GeometryType Return the geometry type of the ST_Geometry value.
- ST_HasArc Returns true if a geometry or geometry collection contains a circular string
- ST_InteriorRingN Return the Nth interior linestring ring of the polygon geometry. Return NULL if the geometry is not a polygon or the given N is out of range.
- ST_InterpolatePoint Return the value of the measure dimension of a geometry at the point closed to the provided point.
- ST_IsClosed Returns TRUE if the LINESTRING's start and end points are coincident. For Polyhedral surface is closed (volumetric).
- ST IsCollection Returns TRUE if the argument is a collection (MULTI*, GEOMETRYCOLLECTION, ...)
- ST_IsPlanar Check if a surface is or not planar
- ST_IsSimple Returns (TRUE) if this Geometry has no anomalous geometric points, such as self intersection or self tangency.
- ST IsSolid Test if the geometry is a solid. No validity check is performed.
- ST IsValidTrajectory Returns true if the geometry is a valid trajectory.
- ST_Length_Spheroid Calculates the 2D or 3D length/perimeter of a geometry on an ellipsoid. This is useful if the coordinates of the geometry are in longitude/latitude and a length is desired without reprojection.
- ST_LineFromMultiPoint Creates a LineString from a MultiPoint geometry.
- ST_LineInterpolatePoint Returns a point interpolated along a line. Second argument is a float8 between 0 and 1 representing fraction of total length of linestring the point has to be located.
- ST_LineSubstring Return a linestring being a substring of the input one starting and ending at the given fractions of total 2d length. Second and third arguments are float8 values between 0 and 1.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 703 / 791

- ST LineToCurve Converts a LINESTRING/POLYGON to a CIRCULARSTRING, CURVEPOLYGON
- ST_LocateBetweenElevations Return a derived geometry (collection) value with elements that intersect the specified range of elevations inclusively. Only 3D, 4D LINESTRINGS and MULTILINESTRINGS are supported.
- ST_M Return the M coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point.
- ST_MakeLine Creates a Linestring from point, multipoint, or line geometries.
- ST_MakePoint Creates a 2D,3DZ or 4D point geometry.
- ST_MakePolygon Creates a Polygon formed by the given shell. Input geometries must be closed LINESTRINGS.
- ST_MakeSolid Cast the geometry into a solid. No check is performed. To obtain a valid solid, the input geometry must be a closed Polyhedral Surface or a closed TIN.
- ST MakeValid Attempts to make an invalid geometry valid without losing vertices.
- ST_MemSize Returns the amount of space (in bytes) the geometry takes.
- ST_MemUnion Same as ST_Union, only memory-friendly (uses less memory and more processor time).
- ST_NDims Returns coordinate dimension of the geometry as a small int. Values are: 2,3 or 4.
- ST_NPoints Return the number of points (vertexes) in a geometry.
- ST_NRings If the geometry is a polygon or multi-polygon returns the number of rings.
- ST_Node Node a set of linestrings.
- ST_NumGeometries If geometry is a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION (or MULTI*) return the number of geometries, for single geometries will return 1, otherwise return NULL.
- ST NumPatches Return the number of faces on a Polyhedral Surface. Will return null for non-polyhedral geometries.
- ST Orientation Determine surface orientation
- ST_PatchN Return the 1-based Nth geometry (face) if the geometry is a POLYHEDRALSURFACE, POLYHEDRALSURFACEM. Otherwise, return NULL.
- ST_PointFromWKB Makes a geometry from WKB with the given SRID
- ST_PointN Return the Nth point in the first LineString or circular LineString in the geometry. Negative values are counted backwards from the end of the LineString. Returns NULL if there is no linestring in the geometry.
- ST_PointOnSurface Returns a POINT guaranteed to lie on the surface.
- ST_Points Returns a MultiPoint containing all of the coordinates of a geometry.
- ST_Polygon Returns a polygon built from the specified linestring and SRID.
- ST RemovePoint Remove point from a linestring.
- ST_RemoveRepeatedPoints Returns a version of the given geometry with duplicated points removed.
- ST_Rotate Rotate a geometry rotRadians counter-clockwise about an origin.
- ST_RotateX Rotate a geometry rotRadians about the X axis.
- ST_RotateY Rotate a geometry rotRadians about the Y axis.
- ST_RotateZ Rotate a geometry rotRadians about the Z axis.
- ST_Scale Scale a geometry by given factors.
- ST_SetPoint Replace point of a linestring with a given point.
- ST_Shift_Longitude Toggle geometry coordinates between -180..180 and 0..360 ranges.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 704 / 791

- ST SnapToGrid Snap all points of the input geometry to a regular grid.
- ST_StartPoint Returns the first point of a LINESTRING geometry as a POINT.
- ST_StraightSkeleton Compute a straight skeleton from a geometry
- ST_SwapOrdinates Returns a version of the given geometry with given ordinate values swapped.
- ST_SymDifference Returns a geometry that represents the portions of A and B that do not intersect. It is called a symmetric difference because ST_SymDifference(A,B) = ST_SymDifference(B,A).
- ST_Tesselate Perform surface Tesselation of a polygon or polyhedral surface and returns as a TIN or collection of TINS
- ST_TransScale Translate a geometry by given factors and offsets.
- ST_Translate Translate a geometry by given offsets.
- ST_UnaryUnion Like ST_Union, but working at the geometry component level.
- ST_Volume Computes the volume of a 3D solid. If applied to surface (even closed) geometries will return 0.
- ST_WrapX Wrap a geometry around an X value.
- ST_X Return the X coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point.
- ST_XMax Returns X maxima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_XMin Returns X minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_Y Return the Y coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point.
- ST_YMax Returns Y maxima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_YMin Returns Y minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST Z Return the Z coordinate of the point, or NULL if not available. Input must be a point.
- ST_ZMax Returns Z minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST ZMin Returns Z minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_Zmflag Returns ZM (dimension semantic) flag of the geometries as a small int. Values are: 0=2d, 1=3dm, 2=3dz, 3=4d.
- TG_Equals Returns true if two topogeometries are composed of the same topology primitives.
- TG_Intersects Returns true if any pair of primitives from thetwo topogeometries intersect.
- UpdateGeometrySRID Updates the SRID of all features in a geometry column, geometry_columns metadata and srid. If it was enforced with constraints, the constraints will be updated with new srid constraint. If the old was enforced by type definition, the type definition will be changed.
- geometry_overlaps_nd Returns TRUE if A's n-D bounding box intersects B's n-D bounding box.
- overlaps_nd_geometry_gidx Returns TRUE if a geometry's (cached) n-D bounding box intersects a n-D float precision bounding box (GIDX).
- overlaps_nd_gidx_geometry Returns TRUE if a n-D float precision bounding box (GIDX) intersects a geometry's (cached) n-D bounding box.
- overlaps_nd_gidx_gidx Returns TRUE if two n-D float precision bounding boxes (GIDX) intersect each other.
- postgis_sfcgal_version Returns the version of SFCGAL in use

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 705 / 791

14.9 PostGIS Curved Geometry Support Functions

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that can use CIRCULARSTRING, CURVEPOLYGON, and other curved geometry types

- AddGeometryColumn Adds a geometry column to an existing table of attributes. By default uses type modifier to define rather than constraints. Pass in false for use_typmod to get old check constraint based behavior
- Box2D Returns a BOX2D representing the maximum extents of the geometry.
- Box3D Returns a BOX3D representing the maximum extents of the geometry.
- DropGeometryColumn Removes a geometry column from a spatial table.
- Geometry Type Returns the type of the geometry as a string. Eg: 'LINESTRING', 'POLYGON', 'MULTIPOINT', etc.
- PostGIS_AddBBox Add bounding box to the geometry.
- PostGIS_DropBBox Drop the bounding box cache from the geometry.
- PostGIS_HasBBox Returns TRUE if the bbox of this geometry is cached, FALSE otherwise.
- ST_3DExtent an aggregate function that returns the box3D bounding box that bounds rows of geometries.
- ST_Accum Aggregate. Constructs an array of geometries.
- ST_Affine Apply a 3d affine transformation to a geometry.
- ST_AsBinary Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the geometry/geography without SRID meta data.
- ST_AsEWKB Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the geometry with SRID meta data.
- ST_AsEWKT Return the Well-Known Text (WKT) representation of the geometry with SRID meta data.
- ST_AsHEXEWKB Returns a Geometry in HEXEWKB format (as text) using either little-endian (NDR) or big-endian (XDR) encoding.
- ST_AsText Return the Well-Known Text (WKT) representation of the geometry/geography without SRID metadata.
- ST_Collect Return a specified ST_Geometry value from a collection of other geometries.
- ST_CoordDim Return the coordinate dimension of the ST_Geometry value.
- ST_CurveToLine Converts a CIRCULARSTRING/CURVEPOLYGON to a LINESTRING/POLYGON
- ST_Distance For geometry type Returns the 2D Cartesian distance between two geometries in projected units (based on spatial ref). For geography type defaults to return minimum geodesic distance between two geographies in meters.
- ST_Dump Returns a set of geometry_dump (geom,path) rows, that make up a geometry g1.
- ST_DumpPoints Returns a set of geometry_dump (geom,path) rows of all points that make up a geometry.
- ST_EndPoint Returns the last point of a LINESTRING or CIRCULARLINESTRING geometry as a POINT.
- ST_EstimatedExtent Return the 'estimated' extent of the given spatial table. The estimated is taken from the geometry column's statistics. The current schema will be used if not specified.
- ST_FlipCoordinates Returns a version of the given geometry with X and Y axis flipped. Useful for people who have built latitude/longitude features and need to fix them.
- ST_Force2D Force the geometries into a "2-dimensional mode".
- ST_ForceCurve Upcast a geometry into its curved type, if applicable.
- ST_ForceSFS Force the geometries to use SFS 1.1 geometry types only.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 706 / 791

- ST Force3D Force the geometries into XYZ mode. This is an alias for ST Force3DZ.
- ST_Force3DM Force the geometries into XYM mode.
- ST_Force3DZ Force the geometries into XYZ mode.
- ST_Force4D Force the geometries into XYZM mode.
- ST ForceCollection Convert the geometry into a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION.
- ST_GeoHash Return a GeoHash representation of the geometry.
- ST_GeogFromWKB Creates a geography instance from a Well-Known Binary geometry representation (WKB) or extended Well Known Binary (EWKB).
- ST_GeomFromEWKB Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Extended Well-Known Binary representation (EWKB).
- ST_GeomFromEWKT Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Extended Well-Known Text representation (EWKT).
- ST_GeomFromText Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Well-Known Text representation (WKT).
- ST_GeomFromWKB Creates a geometry instance from a Well-Known Binary geometry representation (WKB) and optional SRID.
- ST_GeometryN Return the 1-based Nth geometry if the geometry is a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION, (MULTI)POINT, (MULTI)LINE
- = Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is the same as B's. Uses double precision bounding box.

MULTICURVE or (MULTI)POLYGON, POLYHEDRALSURFACE Otherwise, return NULL.

- &<| Returns TRUE if A's bounding box overlaps or is below B's.
- ST_HasArc Returns true if a geometry or geometry collection contains a circular string
- ST_IsClosed Returns TRUE if the LINESTRING's start and end points are coincident. For Polyhedral surface is closed (volumetric).
- ST_IsCollection Returns TRUE if the argument is a collection (MULTI*, GEOMETRYCOLLECTION, ...)
- ST_IsEmpty Returns true if this Geometry is an empty geometrycollection, polygon, point etc.
- ST_LineToCurve Converts a LINESTRING/POLYGON to a CIRCULARSTRING, CURVEPOLYGON
- ST_MemSize Returns the amount of space (in bytes) the geometry takes.
- ST_NPoints Return the number of points (vertexes) in a geometry.
- ST_NRings If the geometry is a polygon or multi-polygon returns the number of rings.
- ST_PointFromWKB Makes a geometry from WKB with the given SRID
- ST_PointN Return the Nth point in the first LineString or circular LineString in the geometry. Negative values are counted backwards from the end of the LineString. Returns NULL if there is no linestring in the geometry.
- ST_Points Returns a MultiPoint containing all of the coordinates of a geometry.
- ST_Rotate Rotate a geometry rotRadians counter-clockwise about an origin.
- ST_RotateZ Rotate a geometry rotRadians about the Z axis.
- ST_SRID Returns the spatial reference identifier for the ST_Geometry as defined in spatial_ref_sys table.
- ST_Scale Scale a geometry by given factors.
- ST_SetSRID Set the SRID on a geometry to a particular integer value.
- ST_StartPoint Returns the first point of a LINESTRING geometry as a POINT.
- ST_Summary Returns a text summary of the contents of the geometry.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 707 / 791

- ST SwapOrdinates Returns a version of the given geometry with given ordinate values swapped.
- ST_TransScale Translate a geometry by given factors and offsets.
- ST_Transform Return a new geometry with its coordinates transformed to a different spatial reference.
- ST_Translate Translate a geometry by given offsets.
- ST_XMax Returns X maxima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_XMin Returns X minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_YMax Returns Y maxima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_YMin Returns Y minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_ZMax Returns Z minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_ZMin Returns Z minima of a bounding box 2d or 3d or a geometry.
- ST_Zmflag Returns ZM (dimension semantic) flag of the geometries as a small int. Values are: 0=2d, 1=3dm, 2=3dz, 3=4d.
- UpdateGeometrySRID Updates the SRID of all features in a geometry column, geometry_columns metadata and srid. If
 it was enforced with constraints, the constraints will be updated with new srid constraint. If the old was enforced by type
 definition, the type definition will be changed.
- ~(box2df,box2df) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) contains another 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).
- ~(box2df,geometry) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) contains a geometry's 2D bonding box.
- ~(geometry,box2df) Returns TRUE if a geometry's 2D bonding box contains a 2D float precision bounding box (GIDX).
- && Returns TRUE if A's 2D bounding box intersects B's 2D bounding box.
- &&& Returns TRUE if A's n-D bounding box intersects B's n-D bounding box.
- @(box2df,box2df) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) is contained into another 2D float precision bounding box.
- @(box2df,geometry) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) is contained into a geometry's 2D bounding box.
- @(geometry,box2df) Returns TRUE if a geometry's 2D bounding box is contained into a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).
- &&(box2df,box2df) Returns TRUE if two 2D float precision bounding boxes (BOX2DF) intersect each other.
- &&(box2df,geometry) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) intersects a geometry's (cached) 2D bounding box.
- &&(geometry,box2df) Returns TRUE if a geometry's (cached) 2D bounding box intersects a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).
- &&&(geometry,gidx) Returns TRUE if a geometry's (cached) n-D bounding box intersects a n-D float precision bounding box (GIDX).
- &&&(gidx,geometry) Returns TRUE if a n-D float precision bounding box (GIDX) intersects a geometry's (cached) n-D bounding box.
- &&&(gidx,gidx) Returns TRUE if two n-D float precision bounding boxes (GIDX) intersect each other.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 708 / 791

14.10 PostGIS Polyhedral Surface Support Functions

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that can use POLYHEDRALSURFACE, POLYHEDRALSURFACEM geometries

- Box2D Returns a BOX2D representing the maximum extents of the geometry.
- Box3D Returns a BOX3D representing the maximum extents of the geometry.
- GeometryType Returns the type of the geometry as a string. Eg: 'LINESTRING', 'POLYGON', 'MULTIPOINT', etc.
- ST_3DArea Computes area of 3D surface geometries. Will return 0 for solids.
- ST_3DClosestPoint Returns the 3-dimensional point on g1 that is closest to g2. This is the first point of the 3D shortest line.
- ST_3DDFullyWithin Returns true if all of the 3D geometries are within the specified distance of one another.
- ST_3DDWithin For 3d (z) geometry type Returns true if two geometries 3d distance is within number of units.
- ST_3DDifference Perform 3D difference
- ST_3DDistance For geometry type Returns the 3-dimensional cartesian minimum distance (based on spatial ref) between two geometries in projected units.
- ST_3DExtent an aggregate function that returns the box3D bounding box that bounds rows of geometries.
- ST_3DIntersection Perform 3D intersection
- ST_3DIntersects Returns TRUE if the Geometries "spatially intersect" in 3d only for points, linestrings, polygons, polyhedral surface (area). With SFCGAL backend enabled also supports TINS
- ST_3DLongestLine Returns the 3-dimensional longest line between two geometries
- ST_3DMaxDistance For geometry type Returns the 3-dimensional cartesian maximum distance (based on spatial ref) between two geometries in projected units.
- ST 3DShortestLine Returns the 3-dimensional shortest line between two geometries
- ST 3DUnion Perform 3D union
- ST_Accum Aggregate. Constructs an array of geometries.
- ST_Affine Apply a 3d affine transformation to a geometry.
- ST_ApproximateMedialAxis Compute the approximate medial axis of an areal geometry.
- ST_Area Returns the area of the surface if it is a Polygon or MultiPolygon. For geometry, a 2D Cartesian area is determined with units specified by the SRID. For geography, area is determined on a curved surface with units in square meters.
- ST_AsBinary Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the geometry/geography without SRID meta data.
- ST_AsEWKB Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the geometry with SRID meta data.
- ST_AsEWKT Return the Well-Known Text (WKT) representation of the geometry with SRID meta data.
- ST_AsGML Return the geometry as a GML version 2 or 3 element.
- ST_AsX3D Returns a Geometry in X3D xml node element format: ISO-IEC-19776-1.2-X3DEncodings-XML
- ST_CoordDim Return the coordinate dimension of the ST_Geometry value.
- ST_Dimension The inherent dimension of this Geometry object, which must be less than or equal to the coordinate dimension.
- ST_Dump Returns a set of geometry_dump (geom,path) rows, that make up a geometry g1.
- ST_DumpPoints Returns a set of geometry_dump (geom,path) rows of all points that make up a geometry.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 709 / 791

• ST_Expand - Returns bounding box expanded in all directions from the bounding box of the input geometry. Uses double-precision

- ST_Extent an aggregate function that returns the bounding box that bounds rows of geometries.
- ST Extrude Extrude a surface to a related volume
- ST_FlipCoordinates Returns a version of the given geometry with X and Y axis flipped. Useful for people who have built latitude/longitude features and need to fix them.
- ST_Force2D Force the geometries into a "2-dimensional mode".
- ST ForceLHR Force LHR orientation
- ST_ForceRHR Force the orientation of the vertices in a polygon to follow the Right-Hand-Rule.
- ST ForceSFS Force the geometries to use SFS 1.1 geometry types only.
- ST_Force3D Force the geometries into XYZ mode. This is an alias for ST_Force3DZ.
- ST_Force3DZ Force the geometries into XYZ mode.
- ST_ForceCollection Convert the geometry into a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION.
- ST_GeomFromEWKB Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Extended Well-Known Binary representation (EWKB).
- ST_GeomFromEWKT Return a specified ST_Geometry value from Extended Well-Known Text representation (EWKT).
- ST_GeomFromGML Takes as input GML representation of geometry and outputs a PostGIS geometry object
- ST_GeometryN Return the 1-based Nth geometry if the geometry is a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION, (MULTI)POINT, (MULTI)LINE MULTICURVE or (MULTI)POLYGON, POLYHEDRALSURFACE Otherwise, return NULL.
- ST_GeometryType Return the geometry type of the ST_Geometry value.
- = Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is the same as B's. Uses double precision bounding box.
- &<| Returns TRUE if A's bounding box overlaps or is below B's.
- ~= Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is the same as B's.
- ST_IsClosed Returns TRUE if the LINESTRING's start and end points are coincident. For Polyhedral surface is closed (volumetric).
- ST_IsPlanar Check if a surface is or not planar
- ST IsSolid Test if the geometry is a solid. No validity check is performed.
- ST_MakeSolid Cast the geometry into a solid. No check is performed. To obtain a valid solid, the input geometry must be a closed Polyhedral Surface or a closed TIN.
- ST_MemSize Returns the amount of space (in bytes) the geometry takes.
- ST_NPoints Return the number of points (vertexes) in a geometry.
- ST_NumGeometries If geometry is a GEOMETRYCOLLECTION (or MULTI*) return the number of geometries, for single geometries will return 1, otherwise return NULL.
- ST_NumPatches Return the number of faces on a Polyhedral Surface. Will return null for non-polyhedral geometries.
- ST_PatchN Return the 1-based Nth geometry (face) if the geometry is a POLYHEDRALSURFACE, POLYHEDRALSURFACEM. Otherwise, return NULL.
- ST RemoveRepeatedPoints Returns a version of the given geometry with duplicated points removed.
- ST_Rotate Rotate a geometry rotRadians counter-clockwise about an origin.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 710 / 791

- ST RotateX Rotate a geometry rotRadians about the X axis.
- ST_RotateY Rotate a geometry rotRadians about the Y axis.
- ST_RotateZ Rotate a geometry rotRadians about the Z axis.
- ST_Scale Scale a geometry by given factors.
- ST_ShiftLongitude Toggle geometry coordinates between -180..180 and 0..360 ranges.
- ST_StraightSkeleton Compute a straight skeleton from a geometry
- ST_Summary Returns a text summary of the contents of the geometry.
- ST_SwapOrdinates Returns a version of the given geometry with given ordinate values swapped.
- ST_Tesselate Perform surface Tesselation of a polygon or polyhedralsurface and returns as a TIN or collection of TINS
- ST_Transform Return a new geometry with its coordinates transformed to a different spatial reference.
- ST_Volume Computes the volume of a 3D solid. If applied to surface (even closed) geometries will return 0.
- ~(box2df,box2df) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) contains another 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).
- ~(box2df,geometry) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) contains a geometry's 2D bonding box.
- ~(geometry,box2df) Returns TRUE if a geometry's 2D bonding box contains a 2D float precision bounding box (GIDX).
- && Returns TRUE if A's 2D bounding box intersects B's 2D bounding box.
- &&& Returns TRUE if A's n-D bounding box intersects B's n-D bounding box.
- @(box2df,box2df) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) is contained into another 2D float precision bounding box.
- @(box2df,geometry) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) is contained into a geometry's 2D bounding box.
- @(geometry,box2df) Returns TRUE if a geometry's 2D bounding box is contained into a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).
- &&(box2df,box2df) Returns TRUE if two 2D float precision bounding boxes (BOX2DF) intersect each other.
- &&(box2df,geometry) Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) intersects a geometry's (cached) 2D bounding box.
- &&(geometry,box2df) Returns TRUE if a geometry's (cached) 2D bounding box intersects a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).
- &&&(geometry,gidx) Returns TRUE if a geometry's (cached) n-D bounding box intersects a n-D float precision bounding box (GIDX).
- &&&(gidx,geometry) Returns TRUE if a n-D float precision bounding box (GIDX) intersects a geometry's (cached) n-D bounding box.
- &&&(gidx,gidx) Returns TRUE if two n-D float precision bounding boxes (GIDX) intersect each other.
- postgis_sfcgal_version Returns the version of SFCGAL in use

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 711 / 791

14.11 PostGIS Function Support Matrix

Below is an alphabetical listing of spatial specific functions in PostGIS and the kinds of spatial types they work with or OGC/SQL compliance they try to conform to.

- A means the function works with the type or subtype natively.
- A means it works but with a transform cast built-in using cast to geometry, transform to a "best srid" spatial ref and then cast back. Results may not be as expected for large areas or areas at poles and may accumulate floating point junk.
- A means the function works with the type because of a auto-cast to another such as to box3d rather than direct type support.
- A means the function only available if PostGIS compiled with SFCGAL support.
- A means the function support is provided by SFCGAL if PostGIS compiled with SFCGAL support, otherwise GEOS/built-in support.
- geom Basic 2D geometry support (x,y).
- geog Basic 2D geography support (x,y).
- 2.5D basic 2D geometries in 3 D/4D space (has Z or M coord).
- PS Polyhedral surfaces
- T Triangles and Triangulated Irregular Network surfaces (TIN)

Function	geom	geog	2.5D	Curves	SQL MM	PS	T
Box2D	√			√		√	√
Box3D	√		√	√		_	√
Find_SRID							
GeometryType	· 🗸		√	√		√	√
ST_3DArea							
ST_3DCloses	tPoint 🗸		√				
ST_3DDFully	Withi		√			- ✓	
ST_3DDWith	in 🗸		✓		✓	√	
ST_3DDiffere	nce 👤						
ST_3DDistance	ce 🗸		<u>(1)</u>		4	<u> </u>	
ST_3DExtent	√		√	~			√
ST_3DInterse	ction						
ST_3DInterse	cts 🗸		4		4	<u> </u>	<u> </u>

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 712 / 791

Function	geom	geog	2.5D	Curves	SQL MM	PS	Т
ST_3DLength	✓		✓				
ST_3DLonges	tLine /		✓			✓	
ST_3DMakeB	ox 🗸		✓				
ST_3DMaxDis	stance		√			- ✓	
ST_3DPerimet	er 🗸		√				
ST_3DShortes	tLine 🗸		√			- ✓	
ST_3DUnion							
ST_Accum			√	√			√
ST_AddMeasu	ire 🗸		√				
ST_AddPoint			~				
ST_Affine			√	√			~
ST_Approxima	ateM Axis						
ST_Area	✓	✓			()	<u>(1)</u>	
ST_AsBinary	√	√	√	√	✓	√	√
ST_AsEWKB	√		√	√		√	✓
ST_AsEWKT	√	√	√	√		√	✓
ST_AsEncode	dPoly /						
ST_AsGML	√	√	√			√	~
ST_AsGeoJSC	ON V	√	√				
ST_AsHEXEV	VKB 🗸		√	√			
ST_AsKML	_/	√	√				
ST_AsLatLon	Text /						
ST_AsSVG		√					
ST_AsTWKB	_/						
ST_AsText		√		- ✓	-		
ST_AsX3D			√				~
ST_Azimuth		√					
ST_BdMPolyF	From 7						
ST_BdPolyFro	omTe ₂ /						
ST_Boundary			√		✓		✓
ST_BoundingI	Diago /		√				
ST_Box2dFroi	mGec h						

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 713 / 791

Function	geom	geog	2.5D	Curves	SQL MM	PS	T
ST_Buffer	✓				✓		
ST_BuildArea	√						
ST_CPAWithi	n 🗸		√				
ST_Centroid	/				/		
ST_ClipByBo	x2D /						
ST_ClosestPo	int 🗸						
ST_ClosestPo	intOf ₄ roach		√				
ST_ClusterDE	BSCA /						
ST_ClusterInt	ersect						
ST_ClusterKN	Aeans /						
ST_ClusterWi	thin 🗸						
ST_Collect	√		√	√			
ST_Collection	Extra						
ST_Collection	Hom ize						
ST_ConcaveH	full 🗸						
ST_Contains	~				/		
ST_ContainsP	roper						
ST_ConvexHu	ıll 🗸		√		/		
ST_CoordDin			√	√	/	_/	√
ST_CoveredB	y /	√					
ST_Covers	_/	√					
ST_Crosses	/				/		
ST_CurveToL	ine /		√	- ✓	-		
ST_DFullyWi	thin 🗸						
ST_DWithin	_/	√					
ST_Delaunay	Friang		√				√
ST_Difference	/		~		✓		
ST_Dimension	n 🗸				─ ✓	_/	/
ST_Disjoint	√				 ✓		
ST_Distance	✓	✓		✓	<u> </u>		
ST_DistanceC	PA /		_/				
ST_DistanceS							
ST_DistanceS							

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 714 / 791

Function	geom	geog	2.5D	Curves	SQL MM	PS	T
ST_Dump	✓		✓	✓		✓	✓
ST_DumpPoir	nts 🗸		✓	✓		√	~
ST_DumpRin	gs 🗸		✓				
ST_EndPoint	√		✓	√	✓		
ST_Envelope	- ✓				✓		
ST_Equals	√				✓		
ST_Estimated	Exten			√			
ST_Expand	√					√	√
ST_Extent	√					√	√
ST_ExteriorRi	ing 🗸		✓		✓		
ST_Extrude							
ST_FlipCoord	inates		~	√			~
ST_Force2D	_/		/	✓		_/	
ST_ForceCurv	/e ✓		~	√			
ST_ForceLHR							
ST_ForceRHR	─ ✓		/				
ST_ForceSFS			/	✓		_/	/
ST_Force3D			/	√			
ST_Force3DM				√			
ST_Force3DZ			_/	- ✓			
ST_Force4D			_/	√			
ST_ForceColl	ection		_/	- ✓		_/	
ST_GMLToS(QL V				/		
ST_GenerateP	oints 🗸						
ST_GeoHash				√			
ST_GeogFrom	nText	/					
ST_GeogFrom	nWKB	-		─ ✓			
ST_Geograph	yFromText	-					
ST_GeomColl	From				/		
ST_GeomFrom	nEW]		/			_/	/
ST_GeomFrom			/	─ ✓		_/	/
ST_GeomFror	mGMI 🗸		_/			_/	/
ST_GeomFrom							

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 715 / 791

Function	geom	geog	2.5D	Curves	SQL MM	PS	T
ST_GeomFron	mGeo. N		√				
ST_GeomFron	mKM 🗸		√				
ST_GeomFron	mTW]						
ST_GeomFron	mText 🗸			- ✓	✓		
ST_GeomFron	mWK 🗸				✓		
ST_Geometric	Medi		_/				
ST_Geometry	From'				/		
ST_Geometry	N /		/		/		-
ST_Geometry	Type /		_ /		/		
>>	/						
<<	/						
~	/						
@	/						
=	/	√		/		√	
<<	/						
&>	/						
&<	/						
&<	/						
&>	~						
>>	/						
~=	/						
ST_HasArc	/		_/				
ST_Hausdorff	Distar						
ST_InteriorRi	ngN 🗸		/		/		
ST_Interpolate	ePoint 🗸		- ✓				
ST_Intersection	on 🗸				<u>(1)</u>		
ST_Intersects	✓	✓			()		
ST_IsClosed	/		_/	_/	_/		
ST_IsCollection	on /						
ST_IsEmpty	_/				_/		
ST_IsPlanar				****			
ST_IsRing	_/				_/		
ST_IsSimple			_/				

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 716 / 791

Function	geom	geog	2.5D	Curves	SQL MM	PS	T
ST_IsSolid							
ST_IsValid	√				✓		
ST_IsValidDet	ail 🗸						
ST_IsValidRea	ason 🗸						
ST_IsValidTra	jectoi 🗸		√				
ST_Length	✓	✓			4		
ST_Length2D	✓						
ST_Length2D	_Sphe l						
ST_LengthSph	neroid		✓				
ST_LineCross	ingDi ion						
ST_LineFrom	Encoc olylir	e					
ST_LineFrom	Multi t		/				
ST_LineFrom	Text 🗸				✓		
ST_LineFrom	WKB 🗸				✓		
ST_LineInterp	olatel / t		√				
ST_LineLocat	ePoin 🗸						
ST_LineMerge	· /						
ST_LineSubst	ring 🗸		✓				
ST_LineToCu	rve 🗸		/	√			
ST_Linestring	From B				✓		
ST_LocateAlo	ng 🗸						
ST_LocateBet	ween 🗸						
ST_LocateBet	ween ations		/				
ST_LongestLi	ne 🗸						
ST_M			/		✓		
ST_MLineFro	mTex 🗸				✓		
ST_MPointFro	omTe ₁				✓		
ST_MPolyFro	mTex 🗸				✓		
ST_MakeBox	2D 🗸						
ST_MakeEnve	elope 🗸						
ST_MakeLine	√		/				
ST_MakePoin	<u>·</u> ✓		/				
ST_MakePoin	tM 🗸						

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 717 / 791

Function	geom	geog	2.5D	Curves	SQL MM	PS	T
ST_MakePoly	gon /		✓				
ST_MakeSolid	d 🌷						
ST_MakeValio	ı √		√				
ST_MaxDista	nce 🗸						
ST_MemSize	√		√	√		√	✓
ST_MemUnio	n 🗸		√				
ST_Minimum	Boun Circle						
ST_Minimum	Boun Radius	s					
ST_Minimum	Clear						
ST_Minimum	Clear Line						
ST_Minkowsk	tiSun 👤						
ST_Multi	√						
ST_NDims	√		√				
ST_NPoints	√		√	√		_/	
ST_NRings	√		√	√			
ST_Node	√		√				
ST_Normalize	√						
ST_NumGeor	netrie		√		✓	_/	✓
ST_NumInter	orRin /						
ST_NumInter	iorRin 🗸				✓		
ST_NumPatch	ies 🗸		√		✓		
ST_NumPoint	s √				✓		
ST_OffsetCur	ve 🗸						
ST_OrderingE	Equals				✓		
ST_Orientatio	n 👤						
ST_Overlaps	√				✓		
ST_PatchN	_/		_		─ ✓	_/	
ST_Perimeter	√	√			✓		
ST_Perimeter	2D 🗸						
ST_Point	_/				✓		
ST_PointFron							
ST_PointFron					✓ _		
ST_PointFron	nWKE.		✓	✓	✓		

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 718 / 791

Function	geom	geog	2.5D	Curves	SQL MM	PS	T
ST_PointN	✓		✓	✓	✓		
ST_PointOnSurf	ace		/		✓		
ST_PointInsideC	Circ						
ST_Points	√		√	√			
ST_Polygon	√		_/		✓		
ST_PolygonFrom	nTe 🗸				/		
ST_Polygonize	_						
ST_Project							
ST_Relate	_/				-		
ST_RelateMatch	1						
ST_RemovePoir	nt 🗸		✓				
ST_RemoveRep	eate ints		√			- ✓	
ST_Reverse	√						
ST_Rotate	√		√	√			√
ST_RotateX	/		✓			√	/
ST_RotateY	√		√			_/	✓
ST_RotateZ	√		_/	√		_/	/
ST_SRID	√			√	✓		
ST_Scale	√		_/	√		_/	~
ST_Segmentize	~						
ST_SetEffective	Are						
ST_SetPoint	√		/				
ST_SetSRID	_			- ✓			
ST_SharedPaths	_/						
ST_ShiftLongitu	ide 🗸		/			_/	√
ST_ShortestLine	√						
ST_Simplify	√						
ST_SimplifyPres	serv polog	y					
ST_SimplifyVW	· ·						
ST_Snap	~						
ST_SnapToGrid	~		-				
ST_Split	_						
ST_StartPoint	_		_		✓		
ST_StraightSkel	eto						

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 719 / 791

Function	geom	geog	2.5D	Curves	SQL MM	PS	T
ST_Subdivide	√						
ST_Summary	√	√		√		√	√
ST_SwapOrdin	nates 🗸		√	√		√	√
ST_SymDiffer	ence /		/		√		
ST_Tesselate							
ST_Touches	√				√		
ST_TransScale	_/		√	√			
ST_Transform	_/				 ✓		
ST_Translate	_/		√	-			
ST_UnaryUnio	on 🗸		/				
ST_Union	- ✓				√		
ST_Volume							
ST_VoronoiLi	nes 🗸						
ST_VoronoiPo	lygor						
ST_WKBToS	QL 🗸				√		
ST_WKTToS(QL /				-		
ST_Within	_/				- /		
ST_WrapX	_/		/				
ST_X	_/		/		─ ✓		
ST_XMax	V		_/	- /			
ST_XMin	V		_/	-			
ST_Y	_/		_/		 ✓		
ST_YMax	V		/				
ST_YMin	W.		_/	-			
ST_Z	_/		/		 ✓		
ST_ZMax	W.		_/	- /			
ST_ZMin	V		/				
ST_Zmflag			_/	_/_			
~(box2df,box2	df)						
~(box2df,geon							
~(geometry,bo							
<#>				7.00			
<<#>>>							

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 720 / 791

Function	geom	geog	2.5D	Curves	SQL MM	PS	T
<<->>	✓						
=	√						
<->	√	√					
&&	√	√		√			
&&&	√		√	√			√
@(box2df,bo	x2df)			√		√	
@(box2df,ge	ometry			√		√	
@(geometry,l	box2df			✓		_/	
&&(box2df,b	ox2df)			✓		_/	
&&(box2df,g	eomet			✓		_/	
&&(geometry	y,box2(~		√	
&&&(geome	try,gid:		/	✓		_/	√
&&&(gidx,ge	eometr 🗸		- ✓	✓		_/	√
&&&(gidx,gi	idx)		√	√		√	√
postgis.backe	nd						
postgis.enable	e_outdb_rasters						
postgis.gdal_	datapath						
postgis.gdal_	enabled_drivers						
postgis_sfcga							

14.12 New, Enhanced or changed PostGIS Functions



Note

PostGIS 2.3.0: PostgreSQL 9.6+ support for parallel queries.



Note

PostGIS 2.3.0: PostgreSQL 9.4+ support for BRIN indexes. Refer to Section 4.6.2.



Note

PostGIS 2.3.0: Tiger Geocoder upgraded to work with TIGER 2016 data.



Note

PostGIS 2.3.4: All 3D related including SFCGAL marked as parallel safe.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 721 / 791

14.12.1 PostGIS Functions new or enhanced in 2.3

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that were added or enhanced.

Functions new in PostGIS 2.3

- ST_GeometricMedian Availability: 2.3.0 Returns the geometric median of a MultiPoint.
- &&&(geometry,gidx) Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+. Returns TRUE if a geometry's (cached) n-D bounding box intersects a n-D float precision bounding box (GIDX).
- &&&(gidx,geometry) Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+. Returns TRUE if a n-D float precision bounding box (GIDX) intersects a geometry's (cached) n-D bounding box.
- &&&(gidx,gidx) Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+. Returns TRUE if two n-D float precision bounding boxes (GIDX) intersect each other.
- &&(box2df,box2df) Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+. Returns TRUE if two 2D float precision bounding boxes (BOX2DF) intersect each other.
- &&(box2df,geometry) Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+. Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) intersects a geometry's (cached) 2D bounding box.
- &&(geometry,box2df) Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+. Returns TRUE if a geometry's (cached) 2D bounding box intersects a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).
- @(box2df,box2df) Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+. Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) is contained into another 2D float precision bounding box.
- @(box2df,geometry) Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+. Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) is contained into a geometry's 2D bounding box.
- @(geometry,box2df) Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+. Returns TRUE if a geometry's 2D bounding box is contained into a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).
- Populate_Topology_Layer Availability: 2.3.0 Adds missing entries to topology.layer table by reading metadata from topo tables.
- ST_ClusterDBSCAN Availability: 2.3.0 requires GEOS Windowing function that returns integer id for the cluster each input geometry is in based on 2D implementation of Density-based spatial clustering of applications with noise (DBSCAN) algorithm.
- ST_ClusterKMeans Availability: 2.3.0 requires GEOS Windowing function that returns integer id for the cluster each input geometry is in.
- ST_GeneratePoints Availability: 2.3.0 Converts a polygon or multi-polygon into a multi-point composed of randomly location points within the original areas.
- ST_MakeLine Availability: 2.3.0 Support for multipoint input elements was introduced Creates a Linestring from point, multipoint, or line geometries.
- ST_MinimumClearance Availability: 2.3.0 requires GEOS >= 3.6.0 Returns the minimum clearance of a geometry, a measure of a geometry's robustness.
- ST_MinimumClearanceLine Availability: 2.3.0 requires GEOS >= 3.6.0 Returns the two-point LineString spanning a geometry's minimum clearance.
- ST_Points Availability: 2.3.0 Returns a MultiPoint containing all of the coordinates of a geometry.
- ST_VoronoiLines Availability: 2.3.0 requires GEOS >= 3.5.0. Returns the boundaries between the cells of the Voronoi diagram constructed from the vertices of a geometry.
- ST_VoronoiPolygons Availability: 2.3.0 requires GEOS >= 3.5.0. Returns the cells of the Voronoi diagram constructed from the vertices of a geometry.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 722 / 791

- ST WrapX Availability: 2.3.0 Wrap a geometry around an X value.
- TopoGeom_addElement Availability: 2.3 Add an element to the definition of a TopoGeometry
- TopoGeom_remElement Availability: 2.3 Remove an element from the definition of a TopoGeometry
- ~(box2df,box2df) Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+.
 Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) contains another 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF).
- ~(box2df,geometry) Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+. Returns TRUE if a 2D float precision bounding box (BOX2DF) contains a geometry's 2D bonding box.
- ~(geometry,box2df) Availability: 2.3.0 support for Block Range INdexes (BRIN) was introduced. Requires PostgreSQL 9.5+. Returns TRUE if a geometry's 2D bonding box contains a 2D float precision bounding box (GIDX).

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that are enhanced in PostGIS 2.3.

- ST_Contains Enhanced: 2.3.0 Enhancement to PIP short-circuit extended to support MultiPoints with few points. Prior versions only supported point in polygon.
- ST_Covers Enhanced: 2.3.0 Enhancement to PIP short-circuit for geometry extended to support MultiPoints with few points.
 Prior versions only supported point in polygon.
- ST_Expand Enhanced: 2.3.0 support was added to expand a box by different amounts in different dimensions.
- ST_Intersects Enhanced: 2.3.0 Enhancement to PIP short-circuit extended to support MultiPoints with few points. Prior versions only supported point in polygon.
- ST_Segmentize Enhanced: 2.3.0 Segmentize geography now uses equal length segments
- ST_Transform Enhanced: 2.3.0 support for direct PROJ.4 text was introduced.
- ST_Within Enhanced: 2.3.0 Enhancement to PIP short-circuit for geometry extended to support MultiPoints with few points. Prior versions only supported point in polygon.

14.12.2 PostGIS Functions new or enhanced in 2.2

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that were added or enhanced.



Note

postgis_sfcgal now can be installed as an extension using CREATE EXTENSION postgis_sfcgal;



Note

PostGIS 2.2.0: Tiger Geocoder upgraded to work with TIGER 2015 data.



Note

address_standardizer, address_standardizer_data_us extensions for standardizing address data refer to Chapter 12 for details.



Note

Many functions in topology rewritten as C functions for increased performance.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 723 / 791

Functions new in PostGIS 2.2

</#>> - Availability: 2.2.0 -- KNN only available for PostgreSQL 9.1+ Returns the n-D distance between A and B bounding boxes.

- <->> Availability: 2.2.0 -- KNN only available for PostgreSQL 9.1+ Returns the n-D distance between the centroids of A and B boundingboxes.
- ST_3DDifference Availability: 2.2.0 Perform 3D difference
- ST_3DUnion Availability: 2.2.0 Perform 3D union
- ST_ApproximateMedialAxis Availability: 2.2.0 Compute the approximate medial axis of an areal geometry.
- ST_AsEncodedPolyline Availability: 2.2.0 Returns an Encoded Polyline from a LineString geometry.
- ST_AsTWKB Availability: 2.2.0 Returns the geometry as TWKB, aka "Tiny Well-Known Binary"
- ST_BoundingDiagonal Availability: 2.2.0 Returns the diagonal of the supplied geometry's bounding box.
- ST_CPAWithin Availability: 2.2.0 Returns true if the trajectories' closest points of approachare within the specified distance.
- ST_ClipByBox2D Availability: 2.2.0 requires GEOS >= 3.5.0. Returns the portion of a geometry falling within a rectangle.
- ST_ClosestPointOfApproach Availability: 2.2.0 Returns the measure at which points interpolated along two lines are closest.
- ST_ClusterIntersecting Availability: 2.2.0 requires GEOS Aggregate. Returns an array with the connected components of a set of geometries
- ST_ClusterWithin Availability: 2.2.0 requires GEOS Aggregate. Returns an array of GeometryCollections, where each GeometryCollection represents a set of geometries separated by no more than the specified distance.
- ST_CountAgg Availability: 2.2.0 Aggregate. Returns the number of pixels in a given band of a set of rasters. If no band is specified defaults to band 1. If exclude_nodata_value is set to true, will only count pixels that are not equal to the NODATA value.
- ST_CreateOverview Availability: 2.2.0 Create an reduced resolution version of a given raster coverage.
- ST_DistanceCPA Availability: 2.2.0 Returns the distance between closest points of approach in two trajectories.
- ST_ForceCurve Availability: 2.2.0 Upcast a geometry into its curved type, if applicable.
- ST_IsPlanar Availability: 2.2.0: This was documented in 2.1.0 but got accidentally left out in 2.1 release. Check if a surface is or not planar
- ST_IsSolid Availability: 2.2.0 Test if the geometry is a solid. No validity check is performed.
- ST_IsValidTrajectory Availability: 2.2.0 Returns true if the geometry is a valid trajectory.
- ST_LineFromEncodedPolyline Availability: 2.2.0 Creates a LineString from an Encoded Polyline.
- ST_MakeSolid Availability: 2.2.0 Cast the geometry into a solid. No check is performed. To obtain a valid solid, the input geometry must be a closed Polyhedral Surface or a closed TIN.
- ST_MapAlgebra Availability: 2.2.0: Ability to add a mask Callback function version Returns a one-band raster given one or more input rasters, band indexes and one user-specified callback function.
- ST_MemSize Availability: 2.2.0 Returns the amount of space (in bytes) the raster takes.
- ST RemoveRepeatedPoints Availability: 2.2.0 Returns a version of the given geometry with duplicated points removed.
- ST_Retile Availability: 2.2.0 Return a set of configured tiles from an arbitrarily tiled raster coverage.
- ST_SetEffectiveArea Availability: 2.2.0 Sets the effective area for each vertex, storing the value in the M ordinate. A simplified geometry can then be generated by filtering on the M ordinate.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 724 / 791

• ST_SimplifyVW - Availability: 2.2.0 Returns a "simplified" version of the given geometry using the Visvalingam-Whyatt algorithm

- ST_Subdivide Availability: 2.2.0 requires GEOS >= 3.5.0. Returns a set of geometry where no geometry in the set has more than the specified number of vertices.
- ST_SummaryStatsAgg Availability: 2.2.0 Aggregate. Returns summarystats consisting of count, sum, mean, stddev, min, max for a given raster band of a set of raster. Band 1 is assumed is no band is specified.
- ST_SwapOrdinates Availability: 2.2.0 Returns a version of the given geometry with given ordinate values swapped.
- ST_Volume Availability: 2.2.0 Computes the volume of a 3D solid. If applied to surface (even closed) geometries will return 0.
- parse_address Availability: 2.2.0 Takes a 1 line address and breaks into parts
- postgis.enable_outdb_rasters Availability: 2.2.0 A boolean configuration option to enable access to out-db raster bands.
- postgis.gdal_datapath Availability: 2.2.0 A configuration option to assign the value of GDAL's GDAL_DATA option. If not set, the environmentally set GDAL_DATA variable is used.
- postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers Availability: 2.2.0 A configuration option to set the enabled GDAL drivers in the PostGIS environment. Affects the GDAL configuration variable GDAL_SKIP.
- standardize_address Availability: 2.2.0 Returns an stdaddr form of an input address utilizing lex, gaz, and rule tables.
- |=| Availability: 2.2.0. Index-supported only available for PostgreSQL 9.5+ Returns the distance between A and B trajectories at their closest point of approach.

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that are enhanced in PostGIS 2.2.

- AsTopoJSON Enhanced: 2.2.1 added support for puntal inputs
- ST_Area Enhanced: 2.2.0 measurement on spheroid performed with GeographicLib for improved accuracy and robustness. Requires Proj >= 4.9.0 to take advantage of the new feature.
- ST_AsX3D Enhanced: 2.2.0: Support for GeoCoordinates and axis (x/y, long/lat) flipping. Look at options for details.
- ST_Azimuth Enhanced: 2.2.0 measurement on spheroid performed with GeographicLib for improved accuracy and robustness. Requires Proj >= 4.9.0 to take advantage of the new feature.
- ST_Distance Enhanced: 2.2.0 measurement on spheroid performed with GeographicLib for improved accuracy and robustness. Requires Proj >= 4.9.0 to take advantage of the new feature.
- ST_Scale Enhanced: 2.2.0 support for scaling all dimension (geometry parameter) was introduced.
- ST_Summary Enhanced: 2.2.0 Added support for TIN and Curves
- <-> Enhanced: 2.2.0 -- True KNN ("K nearest neighbor") behavior for geometry and geography for PostgreSQL 9.5+. Note
 for geography KNN is based on sphere rather than spheroid. For PostgreSQL 9.4 and below, geography support is new but
 only supports centroid box.

14.12.3 PostGIS functions breaking changes in 2.2

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that have possibly breaking changes in PostGIS 2.2. If you use any of these, you may need to check your existing code.

- Get_Geocode_Setting Changed: 2.2.0: default settings are now kept in a table called geocode_settings_default. Use customized settingsa are in geocode_settings and only contain those that have been set by user.
- ST_3DClosestPoint Changed: 2.2.0 if 2 2D geometries are input, a 2D point is returned (instead of old behavior assuming 0 for missing Z). In case of 2D and 3D, Z is no longer assumed to be 0 for missing Z.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 725 / 791

- ST 3DDistance Changed: 2.2.0 In case of 2D and 3D, Z is no longer assumed to be 0 for missing Z.
- ST_3DLongestLine Changed: 2.2.0 if 2 2D geometries are input, a 2D point is returned (instead of old behavior assuming 0 for missing Z). In case of 2D and 3D, Z is no longer assumed to be 0 for missing Z.
- ST 3DMaxDistance Changed: 2.2.0 In case of 2D and 3D, Z is no longer assumed to be 0 for missing Z.
- ST_3DShortestLine Changed: 2.2.0 if 2 2D geometries are input, a 2D point is returned (instead of old behavior assuming 0 for missing Z). In case of 2D and 3D, Z is no longer assumed to be 0 for missing Z.
- ST_DistanceSphere Changed: 2.2.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Distance_Sphere
- ST_DistanceSpheroid Changed: 2.2.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Distance_Spheroid
- ST_Equals Changed: 2.2.0 Returns true even for invalid geometries if they are binary equal
- ST_LengthSpheroid Changed: 2.2.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Length_Spheroid and used to have a ST_3DLength_Spheroid alias
- ST_MemSize Changed: 2.2.0 name changed to ST_MemSize to follow naming convention. In prior versions this function was called ST_Mem_Size, old name deprecated though still available.
- ST_PointInsideCircle Changed: 2.2.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Point_Inside_Circle
- ST_Split Changed: 2.2.0 support for splitting a line by a multiline, a multipoint or (multi)polygon boundary was introduced.
- ValidateTopology Changed: 2.2.0 values for id1 and id2 were swapped for 'edge crosses node' to be consistent with error description.
- <-> Changed: 2.2.0 -- For PostgreSQL 9.5 users, old Hybrid syntax may be slower, so you'll want to get rid of that hack if you are running your code only on PostGIS 2.2+ 9.5+. See examples below.

14.12.4 PostGIS Functions new or enhanced in 2.1

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that were added or enhanced.



Note

More Topology performance Improvements. Please refer to Chapter 11 for more details.



Note

Bug fixes (particularly with handling of out-of-band rasters), many new functions (often shortening code you have to write to accomplish a common task) and massive speed improvements to raster functionality. Refer to Chapter 9 for more details.



Note

PostGIS 2.1.0: Tiger Geocoder upgraded to work with TIGER 2012 census data. geocode_settings added for debugging and tweaking rating preferences, loader made less greedy, now only downloads tables to be loaded. PostGIS 2.1.1: Tiger Geocoder upgraded to work with TIGER 2013 data. Please refer to Section 13.1 for more details.

Functions new in PostGIS 2.1

- AsTopoJSON Availability: 2.1.0 Returns the TopoJSON representation of a topogeometry.
- Drop_Nation_Tables_Generate_Script Availability: 2.1.0 Generates a script that drops all tables in the specified schema that start with county_all, state_all or state code followed by county or state.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 726 / 791

- Get Geocode Setting Availability: 2.1.0 Returns value of specific setting stored in tiger.geocode settings table.
- Loader_Generate_Nation_Script Availability: 2.1.0 Generates a shell script for the specified platform that loads in the county and state lookup tables.
- Pagc_Normalize_Address Availability: 2.1.0 Given a textual street address, returns a composite norm_addy type that has road suffix, prefix and type standardized, street, streetname etc. broken into separate fields. This function will work with just the lookup data packaged with the tiger_geocoder (no need for tiger census data). Requires address_standardizer extension.
- ST 3DArea Availability: 2.1.0 Computes area of 3D surface geometries. Will return 0 for solids.
- ST_3DIntersection Availability: 2.1.0 Perform 3D intersection
- ST_Box2dFromGeoHash Availability: 2.1.0 Return a BOX2D from a GeoHash string.
- ST_ColorMap Availability: 2.1.0 Creates a new raster of up to four 8BUI bands (grayscale, RGB, RGBA) from the source raster and a specified band. Band 1 is assumed if not specified.
- ST_Contains Availability: 2.1.0 Return true if no points of raster rastB lie in the exterior of raster rastA and at least one point of the interior of rastB lies in the interior of rastA.
- ST_ContainsProperly Availability: 2.1.0 Return true if rastB intersects the interior of rastA but not the boundary or exterior of rastA.
- ST_CoveredBy Availability: 2.1.0 Return true if no points of raster rastA lie outside raster rastB.
- ST_Covers Availability: 2.1.0 Return true if no points of raster rastB lie outside raster rastA.
- ST_DFullyWithin Availability: 2.1.0 Return true if rasters rastA and rastB are fully within the specified distance of each other.
- ST_DWithin Availability: 2.1.0 Return true if rasters rastA and rastB are within the specified distance of each other.
- ST_DelaunayTriangles Availability: 2.1.0 requires GEOS >= 3.4.0. Return a Delaunay triangulation around the given input points.
- ST_Disjoint Availability: 2.1.0 Return true if raster rastA does not spatially intersect rastB.
- ST_DumpValues Availability: 2.1.0 Get the values of the specified band as a 2-dimension array.
- ST_Extrude Availability: 2.1.0 Extrude a surface to a related volume
- ST_ForceLHR Availability: 2.1.0 Force LHR orientation
- ST_FromGDALRaster Availability: 2.1.0 Returns a raster from a supported GDAL raster file.
- ST_GeomFromGeoHash Availability: 2.1.0 Return a geometry from a GeoHash string.
- ST_InvDistWeight4ma Availability: 2.1.0 Raster processing function that interpolates a pixel's value from the pixel's neighborhood.
- ST_MapAlgebra Availability: 2.1.0 Callback function version Returns a one-band raster given one or more input rasters, band indexes and one user-specified callback function.
- ST_MapAlgebra Availability: 2.1.0 Expression version Returns a one-band raster given one or two input rasters, band indexes and one or more user-specified SQL expressions.
- ST_MinConvexHull Availability: 2.1.0 Return the convex hull geometry of the raster excluding NODATA pixels.
- ST_MinDist4ma Availability: 2.1.0 Raster processing function that returns the minimum distance (in number of pixels) between the pixel of interest and a neighboring pixel with value.
- ST_MinkowskiSum Availability: 2.1.0 Performs Minkowski sum
- ST_NearestValue Availability: 2.1.0 Returns the nearest non-NODATA value of a given band's pixel specified by a columnx and rowy or a geometric point expressed in the same spatial reference coordinate system as the raster.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 727 / 791

• ST_Neighborhood - Availability: 2.1.0 Returns a 2-D double precision array of the non-NODATA values around a given band's pixel specified by either a columnX and rowY or a geometric point expressed in the same spatial reference coordinate system as the raster.

- ST_NotSameAlignmentReason Availability: 2.1.0 Returns text stating if rasters are aligned and if not aligned, a reason why.
- ST_Orientation Availability: 2.1.0 Determine surface orientation
- ST_Overlaps Availability: 2.1.0 Return true if raster rastA and rastB intersect but one does not completely contain the other.
- ST_PixelAsCentroid Availability: 2.1.0 Returns the centroid (point geometry) of the area represented by a pixel.
- ST_PixelAsCentroids Availability: 2.1.0 Returns the centroid (point geometry) for each pixel of a raster band along with the value, the X and the Y raster coordinates of each pixel. The point geometry is the centroid of the area represented by a pixel.
- ST_PixelAsPoint Availability: 2.1.0 Returns a point geometry of the pixel's upper-left corner.
- ST_PixelAsPoints Availability: 2.1.0 Returns a point geometry for each pixel of a raster band along with the value, the X and the Y raster coordinates of each pixel. The coordinates of the point geometry are of the pixel's upper-left corner.
- ST_PixelOfValue Availability: 2.1.0 Get the columnx, rowy coordinates of the pixel whose value equals the search value.
- ST_PointFromGeoHash Availability: 2.1.0 Return a point from a GeoHash string.
- ST_RasterToWorldCoord Availability: 2.1.0 Returns the raster's upper left corner as geometric X and Y (longitude and latitude) given a column and row. Column and row starts at 1.
- ST_Resize Availability: 2.1.0 Requires GDAL 1.6.1+ Resize a raster to a new width/height
- ST_Roughness Availability: 2.1.0 Returns a raster with the calculated "roughness" of a DEM.
- ST_SetValues Availability: 2.1.0 Returns modified raster resulting from setting the values of a given band.
- ST_Simplify Availability: 2.1.0 Returns a "simplified" geometry version of the given TopoGeometry using the Douglas-Peucker algorithm.
- ST_StraightSkeleton Availability: 2.1.0 Compute a straight skeleton from a geometry
- ST Summary Availability: 2.1.0 Returns a text summary of the contents of the raster.
- ST_TPI Availability: 2.1.0 Returns a raster with the calculated Topographic Position Index.
- ST_TRI Availability: 2.1.0 Returns a raster with the calculated Terrain Ruggedness Index.
- ST_Tesselate Availability: 2.1.0 Perform surface Tesselation of a polygon or polyhedralsurface and returns as a TIN or collection of TINS
- ST_Tile Availability: 2.1.0 Returns a set of rasters resulting from the split of the input raster based upon the desired dimensions of the output rasters.
- ST_Touches Availability: 2.1.0 Return true if raster rastA and rastB have at least one point in common but their interiors do not intersect.
- ST_Union Availability: 2.1.0 ST_Union(rast, unionarg) variant was introduced. Returns the union of a set of raster tiles into a single raster composed of 1 or more bands.
- ST_Within Availability: 2.1.0 Return true if no points of raster rastA lie in the exterior of raster rastB and at least one point of the interior of rastA lies in the interior of rastB.
- ST_WorldToRasterCoord Availability: 2.1.0 Returns the upper left corner as column and row given geometric X and Y (longitude and latitude) or a point geometry expressed in the spatial reference coordinate system of the raster.
- Set Geocode Setting Availability: 2.1.0 Sets a setting that affects behavior of geocoder functions.
- UpdateRasterSRID Availability: 2.1.0 Change the SRID of all rasters in the user-specified column and table.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 728 / 791

- clearTopoGeom Availability: 2.1 Clears the content of a topo geometry
- postgis.backend Availability: 2.1.0 The backend to service a function where GEOS and SFCGAL overlap. Options: geos or sfcgal. Defaults to geos.
- postgis sfcgal version Availability: 2.1.0 Returns the version of SFCGAL in use

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that are enhanced in PostGIS 2.1.

- ST_AddBand Enhanced: 2.1.0 support for addbandarg added.
- ST AddBand Enhanced: 2.1.0 support for new out-db bands added.
- ST_AsBinary Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of outasin
- ST Aspect Enhanced: 2.1.0 Uses ST MapAlgebra() and added optional interpolate nodata function parameter
- ST Clip Enhanced: 2.1.0 Rewritten in C
- ST_Distinct4ma Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of Variant 2
- ST_HillShade Enhanced: 2.1.0 Uses ST_MapAlgebra() and added optional interpolate_nodata function parameter
- ST_Max4ma Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of Variant 2
- ST_Mean4ma Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of Variant 2
- ST_Min4ma Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of Variant 2
- ST_PixelAsPolygons Enhanced: 2.1.0 exclude_nodata_value optional argument was added.
- ST_Polygon Enhanced: 2.1.0 Improved Speed (fully C-Based) and the returning multipolygon is ensured to be valid.
- ST_Range4ma Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of Variant 2
- ST_SameAlignment Enhanced: 2.1.0 addition of Aggegrate variant
- ST_SetGeoReference Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of ST_SetGeoReference(raster, double precision, ...) variant
- ST_SetValue Enhanced: 2.1.0 Geometry variant of ST_SetValue() now supports any geometry type, not just point. The geometry variant is a wrapper around the geomval[] variant of ST_SetValues()
- ST_Slope Enhanced: 2.1.0 Uses ST_MapAlgebra() and added optional units, scale, interpolate_nodata function parameters
- ST_StdDev4ma Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of Variant 2
- ST_Sum4ma Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of Variant 2
- ST Transform Enhanced: 2.1.0 Addition of ST Transform(rast, alignto) variant
- ST_Union Enhanced: 2.1.0 Improved Speed (fully C-Based).
- ST_Union Enhanced: 2.1.0 ST_Union(rast) (variant 1) unions all bands of all input rasters. Prior versions of PostGIS assumed the first band.
- ST_Union Enhanced: 2.1.0 ST_Union(rast, uniontype) (variant 4) unions all bands of all input rasters.
- ST_AsGML Enhanced: 2.1.0 id support was introduced, for GML 3.
- ST_Boundary Enhanced: 2.1.0 support for Triangle was introduced
- ST_DWithin Enhanced: 2.1.0 improved speed for geography. See Making Geography faster for details.
- ST_DWithin Enhanced: 2.1.0 support for curved geometries was introduced.
- ST_Distance Enhanced: 2.1.0 improved speed for geography. See Making Geography faster for details.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 729 / 791

- ST Distance Enhanced: 2.1.0 support for curved geometries was introduced.
- ST_DumpPoints Enhanced: 2.1.0 Faster speed. Reimplemented as native-C.
- ST_MakeValid Enhanced: 2.1.0 added support for GEOMETRYCOLLECTION and MULTIPOINT.
- ST_Segmentize Enhanced: 2.1.0 support for geography was introduced.
- ST_Summary Enhanced: 2.1.0 S flag to denote if has a known spatial reference system
- toTopoGeom Enhanced: 2.1.0 adds the version taking an existing TopoGeometry.

14.12.5 PostGIS functions breaking changes in 2.1

raster).

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that have possibly breaking changes in PostGIS 2.1. If you use any of these, you may need to check your existing code.

- ST_Aspect Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, return values were in radians. Now, return values default to degrees
- ST_HillShade Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, azimuth and altitude were expressed in radians. Now, azimuth and altitude are expressed in degrees
- ST_Intersects Changed: 2.1.0 The behavior of the ST_Intersects(raster, geometry) variants changed to match that of ST_Intersects(geometry)
- ST_PixelAsCentroids Changed: 2.1.1 Changed behavior of exclude_nodata_value.
- ST_PixelAsPoints Changed: 2.1.1 Changed behavior of exclude_nodata_value.
- ST_PixelAsPolygons Changed: 2.1.1 Changed behavior of exclude_nodata_value.
- ST_Polygon Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions would sometimes return a polygon, changed to always return multipolygon.
- ST RasterToWorldCoordX Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, this was called ST Raster2WorldCoordX
- ST_RasterToWorldCoordY Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, this was called ST_Raster2WorldCoordY
- ST_Resample Changed: 2.1.0 Parameter srid removed. Variants with a reference raster no longer applies the reference raster's SRID. Use ST_Transform() to reproject raster. Works on rasters with no SRID.
- ST_Rescale Changed: 2.1.0 Works on rasters with no SRID
- ST_Reskew Changed: 2.1.0 Works on rasters with no SRID
- ST_Slope Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, return values were in radians. Now, return values default to degrees
- ST_SnapToGrid Changed: 2.1.0 Works on rasters with no SRID
- ST WorldToRasterCoordX Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, this was called ST World2RasterCoordX
- ST_WorldToRasterCoordY Changed: 2.1.0 In prior versions, this was called ST_World2RasterCoordY
- ST_EstimatedExtent Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Estimated_Extent.
- ST_Force2D Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Force_2D.
- ST_Force3D Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Force_3D.
- ST_Force3DM Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Force_3DM.
- ST_Force3DZ Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Force_3DZ.
- ST_Force4D Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Force_4D.
- ST_ForceCollection Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Force_Collection.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 730 / 791

- ST LineInterpolatePoint Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST Line Interpolate Point.
- ST_LineLocatePoint Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Line_Locate_Point.
- ST_LineSubstring Changed: 2.1.0. Up to 2.0.x this was called ST_Line_Substring.

• ST_Segmentize - Changed: 2.1.0 As a result of the introduction of geography support: The construct SELECT ST_Segmentize('LINES 2, 3 4)',0.5); will result in ambiguous function error. You need to have properly typed object e.g. a geometry/geography column, use ST_GeomFromText, ST_GeogFromText or SELECT ST_Segmentize('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4)'::geometry,0.5);

14.12.6 PostGIS Functions new, behavior changed, or enhanced in 2.0

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that were added, enhanced, or have Section 14.12.7 breaking changes in 2.0 releases.

New geometry types: TIN and Polyhedral surfaces was introduced in 2.0



Note

Greatly improved support for Topology. Please refer to Chapter 11 for more details.

Note



In PostGIS 2.0, raster type and raster functionality has been integrated. There are way too many new raster functions to list here and all are new so please refer to Chapter 9 for more details of the raster functions available. Earlier pre-2.0 versions had raster_columns/raster_overviews as real tables. These were changed to views before release. Functions such as ST_AddRasterColumn were removed and replaced with AddRasterConstraints, DropRasterConstraints as a result some apps that created raster tables may need changing.



Note

Tiger Geocoder upgraded to work with TIGER 2010 census data and now included in the core PostGIS documentation. A reverse geocoder function was also added. Please refer to Section 13.1 for more details.

- && Availability: 2.0.0 Returns TRUE if A's bounding box intersects B's bounding box.
- &&& Availability: 2.0.0 Returns TRUE if A's n-D bounding box intersects B's n-D bounding box.
- <#> Availability: 2.0.0 -- KNN only available for PostgreSQL 9.1+ Returns the 2D distance between A and B bounding boxes.
- <-> Availability: 2.0.0 -- Weak KNN provides nearest neighbors based on geometry centroid distances instead of true distances. Exact results for points, inexact for all other types. Available for PostgreSQL 9.1+ Returns the 2D distance between A and B.
- AddEdge Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0. Adds a linestring edge to the edge table and associated start and end points to the point nodes table of the specified topology schema using the specified linestring geometry and returns the edgeid of the new (or existing) edge.
- AddFace Availability: 2.0.0 Registers a face primitive to a topology and gets its identifier.
- AddNode Availability: 2.0.0 Adds a point node to the node table in the specified topology schema and returns the nodeid of new node. If point already exists as node, the existing nodeid is returned.
- AddOverviewConstraints Availability: 2.0.0 Tag a raster column as being an overview of another.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 731 / 791

AddRasterConstraints - Availability: 2.0.0 Adds raster constraints to a loaded raster table for a specific column that constraints spatial ref, scaling, blocksize, alignment, bands, band type and a flag to denote if raster column is regularly blocked. The table must be loaded with data for the constraints to be inferred. Returns true of the constraint setting was accomplished and if issues a notice.

- AsGML Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the GML representation of a topogeometry.
- CopyTopology Availability: 2.0.0 Makes a copy of a topology structure (nodes, edges, faces, layers and TopoGeometries).
- DropOverviewConstraints Availability: 2.0.0 Untag a raster column from being an overview of another.
- DropRasterConstraints Availability: 2.0.0 Drops PostGIS raster constraints that refer to a raster table column. Useful if you need to reload data or update your raster column data.
- Drop_Indexes_Generate_Script Availability: 2.0.0 Generates a script that drops all non-primary key and non-unique indexes on tiger schema and user specified schema. Defaults schema to tiger_data if no schema is specified.
- Drop_State_Tables_Generate_Script Availability: 2.0.0 Generates a script that drops all tables in the specified schema that are prefixed with the state abbreviation. Defaults schema to tiger data if no schema is specified.
- Geocode_Intersection Availability: 2.0.0 Takes in 2 streets that intersect and a state, city, zip, and outputs a set of possible locations on the first cross street that is at the intersection, also includes a geomout as the point location in NAD 83 long lat, a normalized_address (addy) for each location, and the rating. The lower the rating the more likely the match. Results are sorted by lowest rating first. Can optionally pass in maximum results, defaults to 10. Uses Tiger data (edges, faces, addr), PostgreSQL fuzzy string matching (soundex, levenshtein).
- GetEdgeByPoint Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0. Find the edge-id of an edge that intersects a given point
- GetFaceByPoint Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0. Find the face-id of a face that intersects a given point
- GetNodeByPoint Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0. Find the id of a node at a point location
- GetNodeEdges Availability: 2.0 Returns an ordered set of edges incident to the given node.
- GetRingEdges Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the ordered set of signed edge identifiers met by walking on ana given edge side.
- of the given TopoGeometry (primitive elements)

 GetTopologySRID Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the SRID of a topology in the topology topology table given the name of the

• GetTopoGeomElements - Availability: 2.0.0 Returns a set of topoelement objects containing the topological element_id,element_type

- GetTopologySRID Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the SRID of a topology in the topology.topology table given the name of the topology.
- Get_Tract Availability: 2.0.0 Returns census tract or field from tract table of where the geometry is located. Default to returning short name of tract.
- Install_Missing_Indexes Availability: 2.0.0 Finds all tables with key columns used in geocoder joins and filter conditions that are missing used indexes on those columns and will add them.
- Loader_Generate_Census_Script Availability: 2.0.0 Generates a shell script for the specified platform for the specified states that will download Tiger census state tract, bg, and tabblocks data tables, stage and load into tiger_data schema. Each state script is returned as a separate record.
- Loader_Generate_Script Availability: 2.0.0 to support Tiger 2010 structured data and load census tract (tract), block groups (bg), and blocks (tabblocks) tables. Generates a shell script for the specified platform for the specified states that will download Tiger data, stage and load into tiger_data schema. Each state script is returned as a separate record. Latest version supports Tiger 2010 structural changes and also loads census tract, block groups, and blocks tables.
- Missing_Indexes_Generate_Script Availability: 2.0.0 Finds all tables with key columns used in geocoder joins that are missing indexes on those columns and will output the SQL DDL to define the index for those tables.
- Polygonize Availability: 2.0.0 Find and register all faces defined by topology edges
- Reverse_Geocode Availability: 2.0.0 Takes a geometry point in a known spatial ref sys and returns a record containing an array of theoretically possible addresses and an array of cross streets. If include_strnum_range = true, includes the street range in the cross streets.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 732 / 791

• ST_3DClosestPoint - Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the 3-dimensional point on g1 that is closest to g2. This is the first point of the 3D shortest line.

- ST_3DDFullyWithin Availability: 2.0.0 Returns true if all of the 3D geometries are within the specified distance of one another.
- ST_3DDWithin Availability: 2.0.0 For 3d (z) geometry type Returns true if two geometries 3d distance is within number of units.
- ST_3DDistance Availability: 2.0.0 For geometry type Returns the 3-dimensional cartesian minimum distance (based on spatial ref) between two geometries in projected units.
- ST_3DIntersects Availability: 2.0.0 Returns TRUE if the Geometries "spatially intersect" in 3d only for points, linestrings, polygons, polyhedral surface (area). With SFCGAL backend enabled also supports TINS
- ST_3DLongestLine Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the 3-dimensional longest line between two geometries
- ST_3DMaxDistance Availability: 2.0.0 For geometry type Returns the 3-dimensional cartesian maximum distance (based on spatial ref) between two geometries in projected units.
- ST_3DShortestLine Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the 3-dimensional shortest line between two geometries
- ST_AddEdgeModFace Availability: 2.0 Add a new edge and, if in doing so it splits a face, modify the original face and add a new face.
- ST_AddEdgeNewFaces Availability: 2.0 Add a new edge and, if in doing so it splits a face, delete the original face and replace it with two new faces.
- ST_AsGDALRaster Availability: 2.0.0 requires GDAL >= 1.6.0. Return the raster tile in the designated GDAL Raster format. Raster formats are one of those supported by your compiled library. Use ST_GDALRasters() to get a list of formats supported by your library.
- ST_AsJPEG Availability: 2.0.0 requires GDAL >= 1.6.0. Return the raster tile selected bands as a single Joint Photographic Exports Group (JPEG) image (byte array). If no band is specified and 1 or more than 3 bands, then only the first band is used. If only 3 bands then all 3 bands are used and mapped to RGB.
- ST_AsLatLonText Availability: 2.0 Return the Degrees, Minutes, Seconds representation of the given point.
- ST_AsPNG Availability: 2.0.0 requires GDAL >= 1.6.0. Return the raster tile selected bands as a single portable network graphics (PNG) image (byte array). If 1, 3, or 4 bands in raster and no bands are specified, then all bands are used. If more 2 or more than 4 bands and no bands specified, then only band 1 is used. Bands are mapped to RGB or RGBA space.
- ST AsRaster Availability: 2.0.0 requires GDAL >= 1.6.0. Converts a PostGIS geometry to a PostGIS raster.
- ST_AsTIFF Availability: 2.0.0 requires GDAL >= 1.6.0. Return the raster selected bands as a single TIFF image (byte array). If no band is specified, then will try to use all bands.
- ST_AsX3D Availability: 2.0.0: ISO-IEC-19776-1.2-X3DEncodings-XML Returns a Geometry in X3D xml node element format: ISO-IEC-19776-1.2-X3DEncodings-XML
- ST_Aspect Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the aspect (in degrees by default) of an elevation raster band. Useful for analyzing terrain.
- ST_Band Availability: 2.0.0 Returns one or more bands of an existing raster as a new raster. Useful for building new rasters from existing rasters.
- ST_BandIsNoData Availability: 2.0.0 Returns true if the band is filled with only nodata values.
- ST_Clip Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the raster clipped by the input geometry. If band number not is specified, all bands are processed. If crop is not specified or TRUE, the output raster is cropped.
- ST_CollectionHomogenize Availability: 2.0.0 Given a geometry collection, return the "simplest" representation of the contents.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 733 / 791

• ST_ConcaveHull - Availability: 2.0.0 The concave hull of a geometry represents a possibly concave geometry that encloses all geometries within the set. You can think of it as shrink wrapping.

- ST_Count Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the number of pixels in a given band of a raster or raster coverage. If no band is specified defaults to band 1. If exclude_nodata_value is set to true, will only count pixels that are not equal to the nodata value.
- ST_CreateTopoGeo Availability: 2.0 Adds a collection of geometries to a given empty topology and returns a message detailing success.
- ST_Distinct4ma Availability: 2.0.0 Raster processing function that calculates the number of unique pixel values in a neighborhood.
- ST_FlipCoordinates Availability: 2.0.0 Returns a version of the given geometry with X and Y axis flipped. Useful for people who have built latitude/longitude features and need to fix them.
- ST_GDALDrivers Availability: 2.0.0 requires GDAL >= 1.6.0. Returns a list of raster formats supported by your lib gdal. These are the formats you can output your raster using ST_AsGDALRaster.
- ST_GeomFromGeoJSON Availability: 2.0.0 requires JSON-C >= 0.9 Takes as input a geojson representation of a geometry and outputs a PostGIS geometry object
- ST_GetFaceEdges Availability: 2.0 Returns a set of ordered edges that bound aface.
- ST_HasNoBand Availability: 2.0.0 Returns true if there is no band with given band number. If no band number is specified, then band number 1 is assumed.
- ST_HillShade Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the hypothetical illumination of an elevation raster band using provided azimuth, altitude, brightness and scale inputs.
- ST_Histogram Availability: 2.0.0 Returns a set of record summarizing a raster or raster coverage data distribution separate bin ranges. Number of bins are autocomputed if not specified.
- ST_InterpolatePoint Availability: 2.0.0 Return the value of the measure dimension of a geometry at the point closed to the provided point.
- ST_IsEmpty Availability: 2.0.0 Returns true if the raster is empty (width = 0 and height = 0). Otherwise, returns false.
- ST_IsValidDetail Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0. Returns a valid_detail (valid,reason,location) row stating if a geometry is valid or not and if not valid, a reason why and a location where.
- ST_IsValidReason Availability: 2.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0 for the version taking flags. Returns text stating if a geometry is valid or not and if not valid, a reason why.
- ST_MakeLine Availability: 2.0.0 Support for linestring input elements was introduced Creates a Linestring from point, multipoint, or line geometries.
- ST_MakeValid Availability: 2.0.0, requires GEOS-3.3.0 Attempts to make an invalid geometry valid without losing vertices.
- ST_MapAlgebraExpr Availability: 2.0.0 1 raster band version: Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL algebraic operation on the input raster band and of pixeltype provided. Band 1 is assumed if no band is specified.
- ST_MapAlgebraExpr Availability: 2.0.0 2 raster band version: Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL algebraic operation on the two input raster bands and of pixeltype provided. band 1 of each raster is assumed if no band numbers are specified. The resulting raster will be aligned (scale, skew and pixel corners) on the grid defined by the first raster and have its extent defined by the "extenttype" parameter. Values for "extenttype" can be: INTERSECTION, UNION, FIRST, SECOND.
- ST_MapAlgebraFct Availability: 2.0.0 1 band version Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL function on the input raster band and of pixeltype prodived. Band 1 is assumed if no band is specified.
- ST_MapAlgebraFct Availability: 2.0.0 2 band version Creates a new one band raster formed by applying a valid PostgreSQL function on the 2 input raster bands and of pixeltype prodived. Band 1 is assumed if no band is specified. Extent type defaults to INTERSECTION if not specified.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 734 / 791

• ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb - Availability: 2.0.0 1-band version: Map Algebra Nearest Neighbor using user-defined PostgreSQL function. Return a raster which values are the result of a PLPGSQL user function involving a neighborhood of values from the input raster band.

- ST_Max4ma Availability: 2.0.0 Raster processing function that calculates the maximum pixel value in a neighborhood.
- ST_Mean4ma Availability: 2.0.0 Raster processing function that calculates the mean pixel value in a neighborhood.
- ST_Min4ma Availability: 2.0.0 Raster processing function that calculates the minimum pixel value in a neighborhood.
- ST_ModEdgeHeal Availability: 2.0 Heal two edges by deleting the node connecting them, modifying the first edgeand deleting the second edge. Returns the id of the deleted node.
- ST_NewEdgeHeal Availability: 2.0 Heal two edges by deleting the node connecting them, deleting both edges, and replacing them with an edge whose direction is the same as the firstedge provided.
- ST_Node Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0. Node a set of linestrings.
- ST_NumPatches Availability: 2.0.0 Return the number of faces on a Polyhedral Surface. Will return null for non-polyhedral geometries.
- ST_OffsetCurve Availability: 2.0 requires GEOS >= 3.2, improved with GEOS >= 3.3 Return an offset line at a given distance and side from an input line. Useful for computing parallel lines about a center line
- ST_PatchN Availability: 2.0.0 Return the 1-based Nth geometry (face) if the geometry is a POLYHEDRALSURFACE, POLYHEDRALSURFACEM. Otherwise, return NULL.
- ST_PixelAsPolygon Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the polygon geometry that bounds the pixel for a particular row and column.
- ST_PixelAsPolygons Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the polygon geometry that bounds every pixel of a raster band along with the value, the X and the Y raster coordinates of each pixel.
- ST_Project Availability: 2.0.0 Returns a POINT projected from a start point using a distance in meters and bearing (azimuth) in radians.
- ST_Quantile Availability: 2.0.0 Compute quantiles for a raster or raster table coverage in the context of the sample or population. Thus, a value could be examined to be at the raster's 25%, 50%, 75% percentile.
- ST_Range4ma Availability: 2.0.0 Raster processing function that calculates the range of pixel values in a neighborhood.
- ST_Reclass Availability: 2.0.0 Creates a new raster composed of band types reclassified from original. The nband is the band to be changed. If nband is not specified assumed to be 1. All other bands are returned unchanged. Use case: convert a 16BUI band to a 8BUI and so forth for simpler rendering as viewable formats.
- ST_RelateMatch Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0. Returns true if intersectionMattrixPattern1 implies intersectionMatrixPattern2
- ST_RemEdgeModFace Availability: 2.0 Removes an edge and, if the removed edge separated two faces, delete one of the them and modify the other to take the space of both.
- ST_RemEdgeNewFace Availability: 2.0 Removes an edge and, if the removed edge separated two faces, delete the original faces and replace them with a new face.
- ST_Resample Availability: 2.0.0 Requires GDAL 1.6.1+ Resample a raster using a specified resampling algorithm, new dimensions, an arbitrary grid corner and a set of raster georeferencing attributes defined or borrowed from another raster.
- ST_Rescale Availability: 2.0.0 Requires GDAL 1.6.1+ Resample a raster by adjusting only its scale (or pixel size). New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. Default is NearestNeighbor.
- ST_Reskew Availability: 2.0.0 Requires GDAL 1.6.1+ Resample a raster by adjusting only its skew (or rotation parameters). New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. Default is NearestNeighbor.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 735 / 791

• ST_SameAlignment - Availability: 2.0.0 Returns true if rasters have same skew, scale, spatial ref, and offset (pixels can be put on same grid without cutting into pixels) and false if they don't with notice detailing issue.

- ST_SetBandIsNoData Availability: 2.0.0 Sets the isnodata flag of the band to TRUE.
- ST_SharedPaths Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0. Returns a collection containing paths shared by the two input linestrings/multilinestrings.
- ST_Slope Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the slope (in degrees by default) of an elevation raster band. Useful for analyzing terrain.
- ST_Snap Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0. Snap segments and vertices of input geometry to vertices of a reference geometry.
- ST_SnapToGrid Availability: 2.0.0 Requires GDAL 1.6.1+ Resample a raster by snapping it to a grid. New pixel values are computed using the NearestNeighbor (english or american spelling), Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline or Lanczos resampling algorithm. Default is NearestNeighbor.
- ST_Split Availability: 2.0.0 Returns a collection of geometries resulting by splitting a geometry.
- ST_StdDev4ma Availability: 2.0.0 Raster processing function that calculates the standard deviation of pixel values in a neighborhood.
- ST_Sum4ma Availability: 2.0.0 Raster processing function that calculates the sum of all pixel values in a neighborhood.
- ST_SummaryStats Availability: 2.0.0 Returns summarystats consisting of count, sum, mean, stddev, min, max for a given raster band of a raster or raster coverage. Band 1 is assumed is no band is specified.
- ST_Transform Availability: 2.0.0 Requires GDAL 1.6.1+ Reprojects a raster in a known spatial reference system to another known spatial reference system using specified resampling algorithm. Options are NearestNeighbor, Bilinear, Cubic, CubicSpline, Lanczos defaulting to NearestNeighbor.
- ST_UnaryUnion Availability: 2.0.0 requires GEOS >= 3.3.0. Like ST_Union, but working at the geometry component level.
- ST_Union Availability: 2.0.0 Returns the union of a set of raster tiles into a single raster composed of 1 or more bands.
- ST_ValueCount Availability: 2.0.0 Returns a set of records containing a pixel band value and count of the number of pixels in a given band of a raster (or a raster coverage) that have a given set of values. If no band is specified defaults to band 1. By default nodata value pixels are not counted. and all other values in the pixel are output and pixel band values are rounded to the nearest integer.
- TopoElementArray_Agg Availability: 2.0.0 Returns a topoelementarray for a set of element_id, type arrays (topoelements)
- TopoGeo_AddLineString Availability: 2.0.0 Adds a linestring to an existing topology using a tolerance and possibly splitting existing edges/faces. Returns edge identifiers
- TopoGeo_AddPoint Availability: 2.0.0 Adds a point to an existing topology using a tolerance and possibly splitting an existing edge.
- TopoGeo_AddPolygon Availability: 2.0.0 Adds a polygon to an existing topology using a tolerance and possibly splitting existing edges/faces.
- TopologySummary Availability: 2.0.0 Takes a topology name and provides summary totals of types of objects in topology
- Topology_Load_Tiger Availability: 2.0.0 Loads a defined region of tiger data into a PostGIS Topology and transforming the tiger data to spatial reference of the topology and snapping to the precision tolerance of the topology.
- toTopoGeom Availability: 2.0 Converts a simple Geometry into a topo geometry
- ~= Availability: 2.0.0 Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is the same as B's.

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that are enhanced in PostGIS 2.0.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 736 / 791

AddGeometryColumn - Enhanced: 2.0.0 use_typmod argument introduced. Defaults to creating typmod geometry column instead of constraint-based.

- Box2D Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- Box3D Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- Geocode Enhanced: 2.0.0 to support Tiger 2010 structured data and revised some logic to improve speed, accuracy of geocoding, and to offset point from centerline to side of street address is located on. The new parameter max_results useful for specifying number of best results or just returning the best result.
- GeometryType Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- Populate_Geometry_Columns Enhanced: 2.0.0 use_typmod optional argument was introduced that allows controlling if columns are created with typmodifiers or with check constraints.
- ST_Intersection Enhanced: 2.0.0 Intersection in the raster space was introduced. In earlier pre-2.0.0 versions, only intersection performed in vector space were supported.
- ST_Intersects Enhanced: 2.0.0 support raster/raster intersects was introduced.
- ST_Value Enhanced: 2.0.0 exclude_nodata_value optional argument was added.
- ST_3DExtent Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_Accum Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_Affine Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_Area Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for 2D polyhedral surfaces was introduced.
- ST_AsBinary Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_AsBinary Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for higher coordinate dimensions was introduced.
- ST_AsBinary Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for specifying endian with geography was introduced.
- ST_AsEWKB Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_AsEWKT Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Geography, Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_AsGML Enhanced: 2.0.0 prefix support was introduced. Option 4 for GML3 was introduced to allow using LineString instead of Curve tag for lines. GML3 Support for Polyhedral surfaces and TINS was introduced. Option 32 was introduced to output the box.
- ST AsKML Enhanced: 2.0.0 Add prefix namespace. Default is no prefix
- ST_Azimuth Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for geography was introduced.
- ST ChangeEdgeGeom Enhanced: 2.0.0 adds topological consistency enforcement
- ST_Dimension Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces and TINs was introduced. No longer throws an exception if given empty geometry.
- ST_Dump Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_DumpPoints Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_Expand Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_Extent Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_Force2D Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.
- ST_ForceRHR Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.
- ST_Force3D Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 737 / 791

- ST Force3DZ Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.
- ST_ForceCollection Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.
- ST_GMLToSQL Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces and TIN was introduced.
- ST_GMLToSQL Enhanced: 2.0.0 default srid optional parameter added.
- ST_GeomFromEWKB Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces and TIN was introduced.
- ST_GeomFromEWKT Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces and TIN was introduced.
- ST_GeomFromGML Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces and TIN was introduced.
- ST GeomFromGML Enhanced: 2.0.0 default srid optional parameter added.
- ST_GeometryN Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_GeometryType Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.
- ST_IsClosed Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.
- ST_MakeEnvelope Enhanced: 2.0: Ability to specify an envelope without specifying an SRID was introduced.
- ST Make Valid Enhanced: 2.0.1, speed improvements requires GEOS-3.3.4
- ST_NPoints Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.
- ST_NumGeometries Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_Relate Enhanced: 2.0.0 added support for specifying boundary node rule (requires GEOS >= 3.0).
- ST_Rotate Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_Rotate Enhanced: 2.0.0 additional parameters for specifying the origin of rotation were added.
- ST_RotateX Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_RotateY Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_RotateZ Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_Scale Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces, Triangles and TIN was introduced.
- ST_ShiftLongitude Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces and TIN was introduced.
- ST_Summary Enhanced: 2.0.0 added support for geography
- ST_Transform Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.
- ValidateTopology Enhanced: 2.0.0 more efficient edge crossing detection and fixes for false positives that were existent in prior versions.
- && Enhanced: 2.0.0 support for Polyhedral surfaces was introduced.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 738 / 791

14.12.7 PostGIS Functions changed behavior in 2.0

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that have changed behavior in PostGIS 2.0 and may require application changes.



Note

Most deprecated functions have been removed. These are functions that haven't been documented since 1.2 or some internal functions that were never documented. If you are using a function that you don't see documented, it's probably deprecated, about to be deprecated, or internal and should be avoided. If you have applications or tools that rely on deprecated functions, please refer to [?qandaentry] for more details.

Note!

Note

Bounding boxes of geometries have been changed from float4 to double precision (float8). This has an impact on answers you get using bounding box operators and casting of bounding boxes to geometries. E.g ST_SetSRID(abbox) will often return a different more accurate answer in PostGIS 2.0+ than it did in prior versions which may very well slightly change answers to view port queries.



is set.

Note

The arguments has no data was replaced with exclude_nodata_value which has the same meaning as the older has no data but clearer in purpose.

- AddGeometryColumn Changed: 2.0.0 This function no longer updates geometry_columns since geometry_columns is a
 view that reads from system catalogs. It by default also does not create constraints, but instead uses the built in type modifier
 behavior of PostgreSQL. So for example building a wgs84 POINT column with this function is now equivalent to: ALTER
 TABLE some_table ADD COLUMN geom geometry(Point, 4326);
- AddGeometryColumn Changed: 2.0.0 If you require the old behavior of constraints use the default use_typmod, but set it to false.
- AddGeometryColumn Changed: 2.0.0 Views can no longer be manually registered in geometry_columns, however views built
 against geometry typmod tables geometries and used without wrapper functions will register themselves correctly because they
 inherit the typmod behavior of their parent table column. Views that use geometry functions that output other geometries will
 need to be cast to typmod geometries for these view geometry columns to be registered correctly in geometry_columns. Refer
 to.
- DropGeometryColumn Changed: 2.0.0 This function is provided for backward compatibility. Now that since geometry_columns is now a view against the system catalogs, you can drop a geometry column like any other table column using ALTER TABLE
- DropGeometryTable Changed: 2.0.0 This function is provided for backward compatibility. Now that since geometry_columns is now a view against the system catalogs, you can drop a table with geometry columns like any other table using DROP TABLE
- Populate_Geometry_Columns Changed: 2.0.0 By default, now uses type modifiers instead of check constraints to constrain geometry types. You can still use check constraint behavior instead by using the new use_typmod and setting it to false.
- Box3D Changed: 2.0.0 In pre-2.0 versions, there used to be a box2d instead of box3d. Since box2d is a deprecated type, this was changed to box3d.
- ST_GDALDrivers Changed: 2.0.6, 2.1.3 by default no drivers are enabled, unless GUC or Environment variable gdal_enabled_drive
- ST ScaleX Changed: 2.0.0. In WKTRaster versions this was called ST PixelSizeX.
- ST_ScaleY Changed: 2.0.0. In WKTRaster versions this was called ST_PixelSizeY.
- ST_SetScale Changed: 2.0.0 In WKTRaster versions this was called ST_SetPixelSize. This was changed in 2.0.0.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 739 / 791

- ST 3DExtent Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST Extent3D
- ST_3DLength Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Length3D
- ST_3DMakeBox Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_MakeBox3D
- ST_3DPerimeter Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions this used to be called ST_Perimeter3D
- ST_AsBinary Changed: 2.0.0 Inputs to this function can not be unknown -- must be geometry. Constructs such as ST_AsBinary('POI 2)') are no longer valid and you will get an n st_asbinary(unknown) is not unique error. Code like that needs to be changed to ST_AsBinary('POINT(1 2)'::geometry);. If that is not possible, then install legacy.sql.
- ST AsGML Changed: 2.0.0 use default named args
- ST_AsGeoJSON Changed: 2.0.0 support default args and named args.
- ST AsKML Changed: 2.0.0 uses default args and supports named args
- ST_AsSVG Changed: 2.0.0 to use default args and support named args
- ST_EndPoint Changed: 2.0.0 no longer works with single geometry multilinestrings. In older versions of PostGIS -- a single line multilinestring would work happily with this function and return the start point. In 2.0.0 it just returns NULL like any other multilinestring. The older behavior was an undocumented feature, but people who assumed they had their data stored as LINESTRING may experience these returning NULL in 2.0 now.
- ST_GeomFromText Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions of PostGIS ST_GeomFromText('GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(EMPTY)') was allowed. This is now illegal in PostGIS 2.0.0 to better conform with SQL/MM standards. This should now be written as ST_GeomFromText('GEOMETRYCOLLECTION EMPTY')
- ST_GeometryN Changed: 2.0.0 Prior versions would return NULL for singular geometries. This was changed to return the geometry for ST_GeometryN(..,1) case.
- ST_IsEmpty Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions of PostGIS ST_GeomFromText('GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(EMPTY)') was allowed. This is now illegal in PostGIS 2.0.0 to better conform with SQL/MM standards
- ST_Length Changed: 2.0.0 Breaking change -- in prior versions applying this to a MULTI/POLYGON of type geography would give you the perimeter of the POLYGON/MULTIPOLYGON. In 2.0.0 this was changed to return 0 to be in line with geometry behavior. Please use ST_Perimeter if you want the perimeter of a polygon
- ST_LocateAlong Changed: 2.0.0 in prior versions this used to be called ST_Locate_Along_Measure. The old name has been deprecated and will be removed in the future but is still available.
- ST_LocateBetween Changed: 2.0.0 in prior versions this used to be called ST_Locate_Between_Measures. The old name has been deprecated and will be removed in the future but is still available for backward compatibility.
- ST_ModEdgeSplit Changed: 2.0 In prior versions, this was misnamed ST_ModEdgesSplit
- ST_NumGeometries Changed: 2.0.0 In prior versions this would return NULL if the geometry was not a collection/MULTI type. 2.0.0+ now returns 1 for single geometries e.g POLYGON, LINESTRING, POINT.
- ST_NumInteriorRings Changed: 2.0.0 in prior versions it would allow passing a MULTIPOLYGON, returning the number
 of interior rings of first POLYGON.
- ST_PointN Changed: 2.0.0 no longer works with single geometry multilinestrings. In older versions of PostGIS -- a single line multilinestring would work happily with this function and return the start point. In 2.0.0 it just returns NULL like any other multilinestring.
- ST_StartPoint Changed: 2.0.0 no longer works with single geometry multilinestrings. In older versions of PostGIS -- a single line multilinestring would work happily with this function and return the start point. In 2.0.0 it just returns NULL like any other multilinestring. The older behavior was an undocumented feature, but people who assumed they had their data stored as LINESTRING may experience these returning NULL in 2.0 now.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 740 / 791

14.12.8 PostGIS Functions new, behavior changed, or enhanced in 1.5

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that were introduced or enhanced in this minor release.

- PostGIS_LibXML_Version Availability: 1.5 Returns the version number of the libxml2 library.
- ST_AddMeasure Availability: 1.5.0 Return a derived geometry with measure elements linearly interpolated between the start and end points.
- ST_AsBinary Availability: 1.5.0 geography support was introduced. Return the Well-Known Binary (WKB) representation of the geometry/geography without SRID meta data.
- ST_AsGML Availability: 1.5.0 geography support was introduced. Return the geometry as a GML version 2 or 3 element.
- ST_AsGeoJSON Availability: 1.5.0 geography support was introduced. Return the geometry as a GeoJSON element.
- ST_AsText Availability: 1.5 support for geography was introduced. Return the Well-Known Text (WKT) representation of the geometry/geography without SRID metadata.
- ST_Buffer Availability: 1.5 ST_Buffer was enhanced to support different endcaps and join types. These are useful for example to convert road linestrings into polygon roads with flat or square edges instead of rounded edges. Thin wrapper for geography was added. requires GEOS >= 3.2 to take advantage of advanced geometry functionality. (T)Returns a geometry covering all points within a given distancefrom the input geometry.
- ST_ClosestPoint Availability: 1.5.0 Returns the 2-dimensional point on g1 that is closest to g2. This is the first point of the shortest line.
- ST_CollectionExtract Availability: 1.5.0 Given a (multi)geometry, return a (multi)geometry consisting only of elements of the specified type.
- ST_Covers Availability: 1.5 support for geography was introduced. Returns 1 (TRUE) if no point in Geometry B is outside Geometry A
- ST_DFullyWithin Availability: 1.5.0 Returns true if all of the geometries are within the specified distance of one another
- ST_DWithin Availability: 1.5.0 support for geography was introduced Returns true if the geometries are within the specified distance of one another. For geometry units are in those of spatial reference and For geography units are in meters and measurement is defaulted to use_spheroid=true (measure around spheroid), for faster check, use_spheroid=false to measure along sphere.
- ST_Distance Availability: 1.5.0 geography support was introduced in 1.5. Speed improvements for planar to better handle large or many vertex geometries For geometry type Returns the 2D Cartesian distance between two geometries in projected units (based on spatial ref). For geography type defaults to return minimum geodesic distance between two geographies in meters.
- ST_DistanceSphere Availability: 1.5 support for other geometry types besides points was introduced. Prior versions only work with points. Returns minimum distance in meters between two lon/lat geometries. Uses a spherical earth and radius derived from the spheroid defined by the SRID. Faster than ST_DistanceSpheroid, but less accurate. PostGIS versions prior to 1.5 only implemented for points.
- ST_DistanceSpheroid Availability: 1.5 support for other geometry types besides points was introduced. Prior versions only work with points. Returns the minimum distance between two lon/lat geometries given a particular spheroid. PostGIS versions prior to 1.5 only support points.
- ST_DumpPoints Availability: 1.5.0 Returns a set of geometry_dump (geom,path) rows of all points that make up a geometry.
- ST_Envelope Availability: 1.5.0 behavior changed to output double precision instead of float4 Returns a geometry representing the double precision (float8) bounding box of the supplied geometry.
- ST_GMLToSQL Availability: 1.5, requires libxml2 1.6+ Return a specified ST_Geometry value from GML representation. This is an alias name for ST_GeomFromGML

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 741 / 791

• ST_GeomFromGML - Availability: 1.5, requires libxml2 1.6+ Takes as input GML representation of geometry and outputs a PostGIS geometry object

- ST_GeomFromKML Availability: 1.5,libxml2 2.6+ Takes as input KML representation of geometry and outputs a PostGIS geometry object
- ~= Availability: 1.5.0 changed behavior Returns TRUE if A's bounding box is the same as B's.
- ST_HausdorffDistance Availability: 1.5.0 requires GEOS >= 3.2.0 Returns the Hausdorff distance between two geometries. Basically a measure of how similar or dissimilar 2 geometries are. Units are in the units of the spatial reference system of the geometries.
- ST_Intersection Availability: 1.5 support for geography data type was introduced. (T)Returns a geometry that represents the shared portion of geomA and geomB.
- ST_Intersects Availability: 1.5 support for geography was introduced. Returns TRUE if the Geometries/Geography "spatially intersect in 2D" (share any portion of space) and FALSE if they don't (they are Disjoint). For geography -- tolerance is 0.00001 meters (so any points that close are considered to intersect)
- ST_Length Availability: 1.5.0 geography support was introduced in 1.5. Returns the 2D length of the geometry if it is a LineString or MultiLineString. geometry are in units of spatial reference and geography are in meters (default spheroid)
- ST_LongestLine Availability: 1.5.0 Returns the 2-dimensional longest line points of two geometries. The function will only return the first longest line if more than one, that the function finds. The line returned will always start in g1 and end in g2. The length of the line this function returns will always be the same as st_maxdistance returns for g1 and g2.
- ST_MakeEnvelope Availability: 1.5 Creates a rectangular Polygon formed from the given minimums and maximums. Input values must be in SRS specified by the SRID.
- ST_MaxDistance Availability: 1.5.0 Returns the 2-dimensional largest distance between two geometries in projected units.
- ST_ShortestLine Availability: 1.5.0 Returns the 2-dimensional shortest line between two geometries
- && Availability: 1.5.0 support for geography was introduced. Returns TRUE if A's 2D bounding box intersects B's 2D bounding box.

14.12.9 PostGIS Functions new, behavior changed, or enhanced in 1.4

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that were introduced or enhanced in the 1.4 release.

- Populate_Geometry_Columns Ensures geometry columns are defined with type modifiers or have appropriate spatial constraints This ensures they will be registered correctly in geometry_columns view. By default will convert all geometry columns with no type modifier to ones with type modifiers. To get old behavior set use_typmod=false Availability: 1.4.0
- ST_AsSVG Returns a Geometry in SVG path data given a geometry or geography object. Availability: 1.2.2. Availability: 1.4.0 Changed in PostGIS 1.4.0 to include L command in absolute path to conform to http://www.w3.org/TR/SVG/paths.html#PathDat
- ST_Collect Return a specified ST_Geometry value from a collection of other geometries. Availability: 1.4.0 ST_Collect(geomarray) was introduced. ST_Collect was enhanced to handle more geometries faster.
- ST_ContainsProperly Returns true if B intersects the interior of A but not the boundary (or exterior). A does not contain properly itself, but does contain itself. Availability: 1.4.0 requires GEOS >= 3.1.0.
- ST_Extent an aggregate function that returns the bounding box that bounds rows of geometries. Availability: 1.4.0
- ST_GeoHash Return a GeoHash representation of the geometry. Availability: 1.4.0
- ST_IsValidReason Returns text stating if a geometry is valid or not and if not valid, a reason why. Availability: 1.4 requires GEOS >= 3.1.0.
- ST_LineCrossingDirection Given 2 linestrings, returns a number between -3 and 3 denoting what kind of crossing behavior. 0 is no crossing. Availability: 1.4

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 742 / 791

• ST_LocateBetweenElevations - Return a derived geometry (collection) value with elements that intersect the specified range of elevations inclusively. Only 3D, 4D LINESTRINGS and MULTILINESTRINGS are supported. Availability: 1.4.0

- ST_MakeLine Creates a Linestring from point, multipoint, or line geometries. Availability: 1.4.0 ST_MakeLine(geomarray) was introduced. ST_MakeLine aggregate functions was enhanced to handle more points faster.
- ST_MinimumBoundingCircle Returns the smallest circle polygon that can fully contain a geometry. Default uses 48 segments per quarter circle. Availability: 1.4.0 requires GEOS
- ST_Union Returns a geometry that represents the point set union of the Geometries. Availability: 1.4.0 ST_Union was enhanced. ST_Union(geomarray) was introduced and also faster aggregate collection in PostgreSQL. If you are using GEOS 3.1.0+ ST_Union will use the faster Cascaded Union algorithm described in http://blog.cleverelephant.ca/2009/01/must-faster-unions-in-postgis-14.html

14.12.10 PostGIS Functions new in 1.3

The functions given below are PostGIS functions that were introduced in the 1.3 release.

- ST_AsGML Return the geometry as a GML version 2 or 3 element. Availability: 1.3.2
- ST_AsGeoJSON Return the geometry as a GeoJSON element. Availability: 1.3.4
- ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology Returns a "simplified" version of the given geometry using the Douglas-Peucker algorithm. Will avoid creating derived geometries (polygons in particular) that are invalid. Availability: 1.3.3

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 743 / 791

Chapter 15

Reporting Problems

15.1 Reporting Software Bugs

Reporting bugs effectively is a fundamental way to help PostGIS development. The most effective bug report is that enabling PostGIS developers to reproduce it, so it would ideally contain a script triggering it and every information regarding the environment in which it was detected. Good enough info can be extracted running SELECT postgis_full_version() [for postgis] and SELECT version() [for postgresql].

If you aren't using the latest release, it's worth taking a look at its release changelog first, to find out if your bug has already been fixed.

Using the PostGIS bug tracker will ensure your reports are not discarded, and will keep you informed on its handling process. Before reporting a new bug please query the database to see if it is a known one, and if it is please add any new information you have about it.

You might want to read Simon Tatham's paper about How to Report Bugs Effectively before filing a new report.

15.2 Reporting Documentation Issues

The documentation should accurately reflect the features and behavior of the software. If it doesn't, it could be because of a software bug or because the documentation is in error or deficient.

Documentation issues can also be reported to the PostGIS bug tracker.

If your revision is trivial, just describe it in a new bug tracker issue, being specific about its location in the documentation.

If your changes are more extensive, a Subversion patch is definitely preferred. This is a four step process on Unix (assuming you already have Subversion installed):

1. Check out a copy of PostGIS' Subversion trunk. On Unix, type:

svn checkout http://svn.osgeo.org/postgis/trunk/

This will be stored in the directory ./trunk

2. Make your changes to the documentation with your favorite text editor. On Unix, type (for example):

vim trunk/doc/postgis.xml

Note that the documentation is written in DocBook XML rather than HTML, so if you are not familiar with it please follow the example of the rest of the documentation.

3. Make a patch file containing the differences from the master copy of the documentation. On Unix, type:

svn diff trunk/doc/postgis.xml > doc.patch

4. Attach the patch to a new issue in bug tracker.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 744 / 791

Appendix A

Appendix

A.1 Release 2.3.9

Release date: 2019/03/10

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.1.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements

#4139, Make mixed-dimension ND index build tree correctly. WARNING: REINDEX your ND index on tables that have records with different M/Z dimensions for &&& operator to work predictably. (Darafei Praliaskouski, Arthur Lesuisse, Andrew Gierth, Raúl Marín)

#4290, More robust distance calculations in geography (Paul Ramsey)

#4267, Enable Proj 6 deprecated APIs (Darafei Praliaskouski, Raúl Marín)

#4275, Avoid passing a NULL pointer to GEOSisEmpty (Raúl Marín)

#4298, Geodetic tolerance issue in 32-bit (Paul Ramsey)

#4290, Schema qualify geometry casts in raster functions (Regina Obe)

A.2 Release 2.3.8

Release date: 2018/11/24

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.2.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements

#4071, ST_ClusterKMeans crash on NULL/EMPTY fixed (Darafei Praliaskouski)

#4074, Disable interrupt tests by default (Regina Obe)

#3997, fix bug in lwgeom_median and avoid division by zero (Raúl Marín)

#4093, Inconsistent results from qsort callback (yugr)

#4160, Use qualified names in topology extension install (Raúl Marín)

#4189, Fix undefined behaviour in SADFWrite (Raúl Marín)

#4191, Fix undefined behaviour in ptarray_clone_deep (Raúl Marín)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 745 / 791

#4020, Fix leftovers in topology upgrade from 2.1 (Sandro Santilli)

#4203, Fix build with GNU Make 4.1 (Sandro Santilli)

#4206, Fix support for PostgreSQL 12 dev branch (Laurenz Albe)

#3457, Fix raster envelope shortcut in ST_Clip (Sai-bot)

#4223, Fix parallel/near rectangle case in geography (Paul Ramsey)

#4326, Allocate enough memory in gidx_to_string (Raúl Marín)

#4247, Avoid undefined behaviour in next_float functions (Raúl Marín)

#4249, Fix undefined behaviour in raster intersection (Raúl Marín)

#4246, Fix undefined behaviour in ST_3DDistance (Raúl Marín)

#4244, Avoid unaligned memory access in BOX2D_out (Raúl Marín)

A.3 Release 2.3.7

Release date: 2018/04/06

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.3.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements

#3055, [raster] ST_Clip() on a raster without band crashes the server (Regina Obe)

#3978, Fix KNN when upgrading from 2.1 or older (Sandro Santilli)

#4003, lwpoly_construct_circle: Avoid division by zero (Raúl Marín Rodríguez)

#4017, lwgeom lexer memory corruption (Peter E)

#4020, Casting from box3d to geometry now returns correctly connected PolyhedralSurface (Matthias Bay)

#4025, #4032 Incorrect answers for temporally "almost overlapping" ranges in ST_ClosestPointOfApproach and ST_CPAWithin (Paul Ramsey, Darafei Praliaskouski)

#4052, schema qualify several functions in geography (Regina Obe)

A.4 Release 2.3.6

Release date: 2018/01/17

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.4.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements

#3713, Support encodings that happen to output a '\' character

#3822, Have postgis_full_version() also show and check version of PostgreSQL the scripts were built against (Sandro Santilli)

#3965, ST_ClusterKMeans used to lose some clusters on initialization (Darafei Praliaskouski)

#3956, Brin opclass object does not upgrade properly (Sandro Santilli)

#3982, ST_AsEncodedPolyline supports LINESTRING EMPTY and MULTIPOINT EMPTY (Darafei Praliaskouski)

#3975, ST_Transform runs query on spatial_ref_sys without schema qualification. May cause restore issues. (Paul Ramsey)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 746 / 791

A.5 Release 2.3.5

Release date: 2017/11/15

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.5.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements

#3667, Fix for bug in geography ST_Segmentize

#3926, Add missing 2.2.6 upgrade path

A.6 Release 2.3.4

Release date: 2017/10/18

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.6.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements

PostgreSQL 10 support

#3782, Memory leak in lwline_from_wkb_state (Even Rouault)

#3101, Fix buffer overflow in pgsql2shp (Sandro Santilli)

#3786, ptarray null and heap issues on is_closed

#3795, Solaris build issues due to missing isfinite define (Julian Schauder)

#3792, mark all 3D related including SFCGAL as parallel safe

#3800, shp2pgql-gui allow export of foreign tables, materialized views, and partitioned tables

#3806, Reverse geocoder missing suffix direction when present

#3698, loading census tabblock is broken

#3839, loader tests sometimes crash because of variables not initialized also reenable cunit loader tests to always run.

#3774, Trigonometric length for CompoundCurves

#3731, Crash on very small table of homogenous data

#2836, Receiving ERROR: ExteriorRing: geom is not a polygon with ST_ConcaveHull

#3781, Not-quite curved CurvePolygon rejected by ST_Contains

#3818, Triangles unclosed in M should be parseable

#3866, Rare crash generating TWKB with large coordinate values

#3869, Fix build with "gold" linker

#3845, Gracefully handle short-measure issue

#3879, Division by zero in some arc cases

#3878, Single defn of signum in header

#3880, Undefined behaviour in TYPMOD_GET_SRID

#3875, Fix undefined behaviour in shift operation

#3874, lw_dist2d_pt_arc division by zero

#3882, undefined behaviour in zigzag with negative inputs

#3891, undefined behaviour in pointarray_to_encoded_polyline

#3895, throw error on malformed WKB input

#3907, Allocate enough space for all possible GBOX string outputs (Raúl Marín Rodríguez)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 747 / 791

A.7 Release 2.3.3

Release date: 2017/07/01

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.7.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements

#3777, GROUP BY anomaly with empty geometries

#3711, Azimuth error upon adding 2.5D edges to topology

#3726, PDF manual from dblatex renders fancy quotes for programlisting (Mike Toews)

#3738, raster: Using -s without -Y in raster2pgsql transforms raster data instead of setting srid

#3744, ST_Subdivide loses subparts of inverted geometries (Darafei Praliaskouski Komzpa)

#3750, @ and ~ operator not always schema qualified in geometry and raster functions. Causes restore issues. (Shane StClair of Axiom Data Science)

#3682, Strange fieldlength for boolean in result of pgsql2shp

#3701, Escape double quotes issue in pgsql2shp

#3704, ST_AsX3D crashes on empty geometry

#3730, Change ST_Clip from Error to Notice when ST_Clip can't compute a band

A.8 Release 2.3.2

Release date: 2017/01/31

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.8.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements

#3418, KNN recheck in 9.5+ fails with index returned tuples in wrong order

#3675, Relationship functions not using an index in some cases

#3680, PostGIS upgrade scripts missing GRANT for views

#3683, Unable to update postgis after postgres pg_upgrade going from < 9.5 to pg > 9.4

#3688, ST_AsLatLonText: round minutes

A.9 Release 2.3.1

Release date: 2016/11/28

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 748 / 791

A.9.1 Bug Fixes and Enhancements

#1973, st_concavehull() returns sometimes empty geometry collection Fix from gde

#3501, add raster constraint max extent exceeds array size limit for large tables

#3643, PostGIS not building on latest OSX XCode

#3644, Deadlock on interrupt

#3650, Mark ST Extent, ST 3DExtent and ST Mem* agg functions as parallel safe so they can be parallelized

#3652, Crash on Collection(MultiCurve())

#3656, Fix upgrade of aggregates from 2.2 or lower version

#3659, Crash caused by raster GUC define after CREATE EXTENSION using wrong memory context. (manaeem)

#3665, Index corruption and memory leak in BRIN indexes patch from Julien Rouhaud (Dalibo)

#3667, geography ST_Segmentize bug patch from Hugo Mercier (Oslandia)

A.10 Release 2.3.0

Release date: 2016/09/26

This is a new feature release, with new functions, improved performance, all relevant bug fixes from PostGIS 2.2.3, and other goodies.

A.10.1 Important / Breaking Changes

#3466, Casting from box3d to geometry now returns a 3D geometry (Julien Rouhaud of Dalibo)

#3396, ST_EstimatedExtent, throw WARNING instead of ERROR (Regina Obe)

A.10.2 New Features

Add support for custom TOC in postgis_restore.pl (Christoph Moench-Tegeder)

Add support for negative indexing in ST_PointN and ST_SetPoint (Rémi Cura)

Add parameters for geography ST_Buffer (Thomas Bonfort)

TopoGeom_addElement, TopoGeom_remElement (Sandro Santilli)

populate_topology_layer (Sandro Santilli)

#454, ST_WrapX and lwgeom_wrapx (Sandro Santilli)

#1758, ST_Normalize (Sandro Santilli)

#2236, shp2pgsql -d now emits "DROP TABLE IF EXISTS"

#2259, ST_VoronoiPolygons and ST_VoronoiLines (Dan Baston)

#2841 and #2996, ST_MinimumBoundingRadius and new ST_MinimumBoundingCircle implementation using Welzl's algorithm (Dan Baston)

#2991, Enable ST_Transform to use PROJ.4 text (Mike Toews)

#3059, Allow passing per-dimension parameters in ST_Expand (Dan Baston)

#3339, ST GeneratePoints (Paul Ramsey)

#3362, ST_ClusterDBSCAN (Dan Baston)

#3364, ST_GeometricMedian (Dan Baston)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 749 / 791

#3391, Add table inheritance support in ST EstimatedExtent (Alessandro Pasotti)

#3424, ST_MinimumClearance (Dan Baston)

#3428, ST_Points (Dan Baston)

#3465, ST_ClusterKMeans (Paul Ramsey)

#3469, ST_MakeLine with MULTIPOINTs (Paul Norman)

#3549, Support PgSQL 9.6 parallel query mode, as far as possible (Paul Ramsey, Regina Obe)

#3557, Geometry function costs based on query stats (Paul Norman)

#3591, Add support for BRIN indexes. PostgreSQL 9.4+ required. (Giuseppe Broccolo of 2nd Quadrant, Julien Rouhaud and Ronan Dunklau of Dalibo)

#3496, Make postgis non-relocateable for extension install, schema qualify calls in functions (Regina Obe) Should resolve once and for all for extensions #3494, #3486, #3076

#3547, Update tiger geocoder to support TIGER 2016 and to support both http and ftp.

#3613, Segmentize geography using equal length segments (Hugo Mercier of Oslandia)

A.10.3 Bug Fixes

All relevant bug fixes from PostGIS 2.2.3

#2841, ST_MinimumBoundingCircle not covering original

#3604, pgcommon/Makefile.in orders CFLAGS incorrectly leading to wrong liblwgeom.h (Greg Troxel)

A.10.4 Performance Enhancements

#75, Enhancement to PIP short circuit (Dan Baston)

#3383, Avoid deserializing small geometries during index operations (Dan Baston)

#3400, Minor optimization of PIP routines (Dan Baston)

Make adding a line to topology interruptible (Sandro Santilli)

Documentation updates from Mike Toews

A.11 Release 2.2.2

Release date: 2016/03/22

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.11.1 New Features

#3463, Fix crash on face-collapsing edge change

#3422, Improve ST_Split robustness on standard precision double systems (arm64, ppc64el, s390c, powerpc, ...)

#3427, Update spatial_ref_sys to EPSG version 8.8

#3433, ST_ClusterIntersecting incorrect for MultiPoints

#3435, ST_AsX3D fix rendering of concave geometries

#3436, memory handling mistake in ptarray_clone_deep

#3437, ST_Intersects incorrect for MultiPoints

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 750 / 791

#3461, ST_GeomFromKML crashes Postgres when there are innerBoundaryIs and no outerBoundaryIs

#3429, upgrading to 2.3 or from 2.1 can cause loop/hang on some platforms

#3460, ST_ClusterWithin 'Tolerance not defined' error after upgrade

#3490, Raster data restore issues, materialized views. Scripts postgis_proc_set_search_path.sql, rtpostgis_proc_set_search_path.sql refer to http://postgis.net/docs/manual-2.2/RT_FAQ.html#faq_raster_data_not_restore

#3426, failing POINT EMPTY tests on fun architectures

A.12 Release 2.2.1

Release date: 2016/01/06

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.12.1 New Features

#2232, avoid accumulated error in SVG rounding

#3321, Fix performance regression in topology loading

#3329, Fix robustness regression in TopoGeo_addPoint

#3349, Fix installation path of postgis_topology scripts

#3351, set endnodes isolation on ST_RemoveIsoEdge (and lwt_RemIsoEdge)

#3355, geography ST_Segmentize has geometry bbox

#3359, Fix toTopoGeom loss of low-id primitives from TopoGeometry definition

#3360, _raster_constraint_info_scale invalid input syntax

#3375, crash in repeated point removal for collection(point)

#3378, Fix handling of hierarchical TopoGeometries in presence of multiple topologies

#3380, #3402, Decimate lines on topology load

#3388, #3410, Fix missing end-points in ST_Removepoints

#3389, Buffer overflow in lwgeom_to_geojson

#3390, Compilation under Alpine Linux 3.2 gives an error when compiling the postgis and postgis_topology extension

#3393, ST_Area NaN for some polygons

#3401, Improve ST_Split robustness on 32bit systems

#3404, ST_ClusterWithin crashes backend

#3407, Fix crash on splitting a face or an edge defining multiple TopoGeometry objects

#3411, Clustering functions not using spatial index

#3412, Improve robustness of snapping step in TopoGeo_addLinestring

#3415, Fix OSX 10.9 build under pkgsrc

Fix memory leak in lwt_ChangeEdgeGeom [liblwgeom]

A.13 Release 2.2.0

Release date: 2015/10/07

This is a new feature release, with new functions, improved performance, and other goodies.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 751 / 791

A.13.1 New Features

Topology API in liblwgeom (Sandro Santilli / Regione Toscana - SITA)

New lwgeom_unaryunion method in liblwgeom

New lwgeom_linemerge method in liblwgeom

New lwgeom_is_simple method in liblwgeom

#3169, Add SFCGAL 1.1 support: add ST_3DDifference, ST_3DUnion, ST_Volume, ST_MakeSolid, ST_IsSolid (Vincent Mora / Oslandia)

#3169, ST_ApproximateMedialAxis (Sandro Santilli)

ST CPAWithin (Sandro Santilli / Boundless)

Add |=| operator with CPA semantic and KNN support with PgSQL 9.5+ (Sandro Santilli / Boundless)

#3131, KNN support for the geography type (Paul Ramsey / CartoDB)

#3023, ST_ClusterIntersecting / ST_ClusterWithin (Dan Baston)

#2703, Exact KNN results for all geometry types, aka "KNN re-check" (Paul Ramsey / CartoDB)

#1137, Allow a tolerance value in ST_RemoveRepeatedPoints (Paul Ramsey / CartoDB)

#3062, Allow passing M factor to ST_Scale (Sandro Santilli / Boundless)

#3139, ST_BoundingDiagonal (Sandro Santilli / Boundless)

#3129, ST_IsValidTrajectory (Sandro Santilli / Boundless)

#3128, ST ClosestPointOfApproach (Sandro Santilli / Boundless)

#3152, ST_DistanceCPA (Sandro Santilli / Boundless)

Canonical output for index key types

ST SwapOrdinates (Sandro Santilli / Boundless)

#2918, Use GeographicLib functions for geodetics (Mike Toews)

#3074, ST_Subdivide to break up large geometry (Paul Ramsey / CartoDB)

#3040, KNN GiST index based centroid (<<->>) n-D distance operators (Sandro Santilli / Boundless)

Interruptibility API for liblwgeom (Sandro Santilli / CartoDB)

#2939, ST_ClipByBox2D (Sandro Santilli / CartoDB)

#2247, ST_Retile and ST_CreateOverview: in-db raster overviews creation (Sandro Santilli / Vizzuality)

#899, -m shp2pgsql attribute names mapping -m switch (Regina Obe / Sandro Santilli)

#1678, Added GUC postgis.gdal_datapath to specify GDAL config variable GDAL_DATA

#2843, Support reprojection on raster import (Sandro Santilli / Vizzuality)

#2349, Support for encoded_polyline input/output (Kashif Rasul)

#2159, report libison version from postgis full version()

#2770, ST_MemSize(raster)

Add postgis_noop(raster)

Added missing variants of ST_TPI(), ST_TRI() and ST_Roughness()

Added GUC postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers to specify GDAL config variable GDAL_SKIP

Added GUC postgis.enable_outdb_rasters to enable access to rasters with out-db bands

#2387, address_standardizer extension as part of PostGIS (Stephen Woodbridge / imaptools.com, Walter Sinclair, Regina Obe)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 752 / 791

#2816, address_standardizer_data_us extension provides reference lex,gaz,rules for address_standardizer (Stephen Woodbridge / imaptools.com, Walter Sinclair, Regina Obe)

#2341, New mask parameter for ST_MapAlgebra

#2397, read encoding info automatically in shapefile loader

#2430, ST_ForceCurve

#2565, ST_SummaryStatsAgg()

#2567, ST_CountAgg()

#2632, ST_AsGML() support for curved features

#2652, Add --upgrade-path switch to run_test.pl

#2754, sfcgal wrapped as an extension

#2227, Simplification with Visvalingam-Whyatt algorithm ST_SimplifyVW, ST_SetEffectiveArea (Nicklas Avén)

Functions to encode and decode TWKB ST_AsTWKB, ST_GeomFromTWKB (Paul Ramsey / Nicklas Avén / CartoDB)

A.13.2 Enhancements

#3223, Add memcmp short-circuit to ST_Equals (Daniel Baston)

#3227, Tiger geocoder upgraded to support Tiger 2015 census

#2278, Make liblwgeom compatible between minor releases

#897, ST_AsX3D support for GeoCoordinates and systems "GD" "WE" ability to flip x/y axis (use option = 2, 3)

ST_Split: allow splitting lines by multilines, multipoints and (multi)polygon boundaries

#3070, Simplify geometry type constraint

#2839, Implement selectivity estimator for functional indexes, speeding up spatial queries on raster tables. (Sandro Santilli / Vizzuality)

#2361, Added spatial_index column to raster_columns view

#2390, Testsuite for pgsql2shp

#2527, Added -k flag to raster2pgsql to skip checking that band is NODATA

#2616, Reduce text casts during topology building and export

#2717, support startpoint, endpoint, pointn, numpoints for compoundcurve

#2747, Add support for GDAL 2.0

#2754, SFCGAL can now be installed with CREATE EXTENSION (Vincent Mora @ Oslandia)

#2828, Convert ST_Envelope(raster) from SQL to C

#2829, Shortcut ST_Clip(raster) if geometry fully contains the raster and no NODATA specified

#2906, Update tiger geocoder to handle tiger 2014 data

#3048, Speed up geometry simplification (J.Santana @ CartoDB)

#3092, Slow performance of geometry_columns with many tables

A.14 Release 2.1.8

Release date: 2015-07-07

This is a critical bug fix release.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 753 / 791

A.14.1 Bug Fixes

#3159, do not force a bbox cache on ST_Affine

#3018, GROUP BY geography sometimes returns duplicate rows

#3084, shp2pgsql - illegal number format when specific system locale set

#3094, Malformed GeoJSON inputs crash backend

#3104, st_asgml introduces random characters in ID field

#3155, Remove liblwgeom.h on make uninstall

#3177, gserialized_is_empty cannot handle nested empty cases

Fix crash in ST_LineLocatePoint

A.15 Release 2.1.7

Release date: 2015-03-30

This is a critical bug fix release.

A.15.1 Bug Fixes

#3086, ST_DumpValues() crashes backend on cleanup with invalid band indexes

#3088, Do not (re)define streasestr in a liblwgeom.h

#3094, Malformed GeoJSON inputs crash backend

A.16 Release 2.1.6

Release date: 2015-03-20

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.16.1 Enhancements

#3000, Ensure edge splitting and healing algorithms use indexes

#3048, Speed up geometry simplification (J.Santana @ CartoDB)

#3050, Speed up geometry type reading (J.Santana @ CartoDB)

A.16.2 Bug Fixes

#2941, allow geography columns with SRID other than 4326

#3069, small objects getting inappropriately fluffed up w/ boxes

#3068, Have postgis_typmod_dims return NULL for unconstrained dims

#3061, Allow duplicate points in JSON, GML, GML ST_GeomFrom* functions

#3058, Fix ND-GiST picksplit method to split on the best plane

#3052, Make operators <-> and <#> available for PostgreSQL < 9.1

#3045, Fix dimensionality confusion in &&& operator

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 754 / 791

#3016, Allow unregistering layers of corrupted topologies

#3015, Avoid exceptions from TopologySummary

#3020, ST_AddBand out-db bug where height using width value

#3031, Allow restore of Geometry(Point) tables dumped with empties in them

A.17 Release 2.1.5

Release date: 2014-12-18

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.17.1 Enhancements

#2933, Speedup construction of large multi-geometry objects

A.17.2 Bug Fixes

#2947, Fix memory leak in lwgeom_make_valid for single-component collection input

#2949, Fix memory leak in lwgeom_mindistance2d for curve input

#2931, BOX representation is case sensitive

#2942, PostgreSQL 9.5 support

#2953, 2D stats not generated when Z/M values are extreme

#3009, Geography cast may effect underlying tuple

A.18 Release 2.1.4

Release date: 2014-09-10

This is a bug fix and performance improvement release.

A.18.1 Enhancements

#2745, Speedup ST_Simplify calls against points

#2747, Support for GDAL 2.0

#2749, Make rtpostgis_upgrade_20_21.sql ACID

#2811, Do not specify index names when loading shapefiles/rasters

#2829, Shortcut ST_Clip(raster) if geometry fully contains the raster and no NODATA specified

#2895, Raise cost of ST_ConvexHull(raster) to 300 for better query plans

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 755 / 791

A.18.2 Bug Fixes

```
#2605, armel: _ST_Covers() returns true for point in hole
```

#2911, Fix output scale on ST_Rescale/ST_Resample/ST_Resize of rasters with scale 1/-1 and offset 0/0.

Fix crash in ST_Union(raster)

#2704, ST_GeomFromGML() does not work properly with array of gml:pos (Even Roualt)

#2708, updategeometrysrid doesn't update srid check when schema not specified. Patch from Marc Jansen

#2720, lwpoly_add_ring should update maxrings after realloc

#2759, Fix postgis_restore.pl handling of multiline object comments embedding sql comments

#2774, fix undefined behavior in ptarray_calculate_gbox_geodetic

Fix potential memory fault in ST_MakeValid

#2784, Fix handling of bogus argument to --with-sfcgal

#2772, Premature memory free in RASTER_getBandPath (ST_BandPath)

#2755, Fix regressions tests against all versions of SFCGAL

#2775, lwline_from_lwmpoint leaks memory

#2802, ST_MapAlgebra checks for valid callback function return value

#2803, ST_MapAlgebra handles no userarg and STRICT callback function

#2834, ST_Estimated_Extent and mixedCase table names (regression bug)

#2845, Bad geometry created from ST_AddPoint

#2870, Binary insert into geography column results geometry being inserted

#2872, make install builds documentation (Greg Troxell)

#2819, find isfinite or replacement on Centos5 / Solaris

#2899, geocode limit 1 not returning best answer (tiger geocoder)

#2903, Unable to compile on FreeBSD

#2927 reverse_geocode not filling in direction prefix (tiger geocoder) get rid of deprecated ST_Line_Locate_Point called

A.19 Release 2.1.3

Release date: 2014/05/13

This is a bug fix and security release.

A.19.1 Important changes

Starting with this version offline raster access and use of GDAL drivers are disabled by default.

An environment variable is introduced to allow for enabling specific GDAL drivers: POSTGIS_GDAL_ENABLED_DRIVERS. By default, all GDAL drivers are disabled

An environment variable is introduced to allow for enabling out-db raster bands: POSTGIS_ENABLE_OUTDB_RASTERS. By default, out-db raster bands are disabled

The environment variables must be set for the PostgreSQL process, and determines the behavior of the whole cluster.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 756 / 791

A.19.2 Bug Fixes

#2697, invalid GeoJSON Polygon input crashes server process

#2700, Fix dumping of higher-dimension datasets with null rows

#2706, ST_DumpPoints of EMPTY geometries crashes server

A.20 Release 2.1.2

Release date: 2014/03/31

This is a bug fix release, addressing issues that have been filed since the 2.1.1 release.

A.20.1 Bug Fixes

```
#2666, Error out at configure time if no SQL preprocessor can be found
```

#2534, st_distance returning incorrect results for large geographies

#2539, Check for json-c/json.h presence/usability before json/json.h

#2543, invalid join selectivity error from simple query

#2546, GeoJSON with string coordinates parses incorrectly

#2547, Fix ST_Simplify(TopoGeometry) for hierarchical topogeoms

#2552, Fix NULL raster handling in ST_AsPNG, ST_AsTIFF and ST_AsJPEG

#2555, Fix parsing issue of range arguments of ST_Reclass

#2556, geography ST Intersects results depending on insert order

#2580, Do not allow installing postgis twice in the same database

#2589, Remove use of unnecessary void pointers

#2607, Cannot open more than 1024 out-db files in one process

#2610, Ensure face splitting algorithm uses the edge index

#2615, EstimatedExtent (and hence, underlying stats) gathering wrong bbox

#2619, Empty rings array in GeoJSON polygon causes crash

#2634, regression in sphere distance code

#2638, Geography distance on M geometries sometimes wrong

#2648, #2653, Fix topology functions when "topology" is not in search_path

#2654, Drop deprecated calls from topology

#2655, Let users without topology privileges call postgis_full_version()

#2674, Fix missing operator = and hash_raster_ops opclass on raster

#2675, #2534, #2636, #2634, #2638, Geography distance issues with tree optimization

A.20.2 Enhancements

#2494, avoid memcopy in GiST index (hayamiz)

#2560, soft upgrade: avoid drop/recreate of aggregates that hadn't changed

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 757 / 791

A.21 Release 2.1.1

Release date: 2013/11/06

This is a bug fix release, addressing issues that have been filed since the 2.1.0 release.

A.21.1 Important Changes

#2514, Change raster license from GPL v3+ to v2+, allowing distribution of PostGIS Extension as GPLv2.

A.21.2 Bug Fixes

```
#2396, Make regression tests more endian-agnostic
```

- #2434, Fix ST_Intersection(geog,geog) regression in rare cases
- #2454, Fix behavior of ST_PixelAsXXX functions regarding exclude_nodata_value parameter
- #2489, Fix upgrades from 2.0 leaving stale function signatures
- #2525, Fix handling of SRID in nested collections
- #2449, Fix potential infinite loop in index building
- #2493, Fix behavior of ST_DumpValues when passed an empty raster
- #2502, Fix postgis_topology_scripts_installed() install schema
- #2504, Fix segfault on bogus pgsql2shp call
- #2512, Support for foreign tables and materialized views in raster_columns and raster_overviews

A.21.3 Enhancements

#2478, support for tiger 2013

#2463, support for exact length calculations on arc geometries

A.22 Release 2.1.0

Release date: 2013/08/17

This is a minor release addressing both bug fixes and performance and functionality enhancements addressing issues since 2.0.3 release. If you are upgrading from 2.0+, only a soft upgrade is required. If you are upgrading from 1.5 or earlier, a hard upgrade is required.

A.22.1 Important / Breaking Changes

#1653, Removed srid parameter from ST_Resample(raster) and variants with reference raster no longer apply reference raster's SRID

#1962 ST_Segmentize - As a result of the introduction of geography support, The construct: SELECT ST_Segmentize('LINESTRING(1 2, 3 4)',0.5); will result in ambiguous function error

#2026, ST_Union(raster) now unions all bands of all rasters

#2089, liblwgeom: lwgeom_set_handlers replaces lwgeom_init_allocators.

#2150, regular_blocking is no longer a constraint. column of same name in raster_columns now checks for existance of spatially_unique and coverage_tile constraints

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 758 / 791

ST_Intersects(raster, geometry) behaves in the same manner as ST_Intersects(geometry, raster).

point variant of ST_SetValue(raster) previously did not check SRID of input geometry and raster.

ST_Hillshade parameters azimuth and altitude are now in degrees instead of radians.

ST_Slope and ST_Aspect return pixel values in degrees instead of radians.

#2104, ST_World2RasterCoord, ST_World2RasterCoordX and ST_World2RasterCoordY renamed to ST_WorldToRasterCoord, ST_WorldToRasterCoordX and ST_WorldToRasterCoordY. ST_Raster2WorldCoord, ST_Raster2WorldCoordX and ST_Raster2WorldCoordX and ST_Raster2WorldCoordX and ST_RasterToWorldCoordY

ST_Estimated_Extent renamed to ST_EstimatedExtent

ST_Line_Interpolate_Point renamed to ST_LineInterpolatePoint

ST_Line_Substring renamed to ST_LineSubstring

ST_Line_Locate_Point renamed to ST_LineLocatePoint

ST Force XXX renamed to ST ForceXXX

ST_MapAlgebraFctNgb and 1 and 2 raster variants of ST_MapAlgebraFct. Use ST_MapAlgebra instead

1 and 2 raster variants of ST_MapAlgebraExpr. Use expression variants of ST_MapAlgebra instead

A.22.2 New Features

- Refer to http://postgis.net/docs/manual-2.1/PostGIS_Special_Functions_Index.html#NewFunctions_2_1 for complete list of new functions

#310, ST_DumpPoints converted to a C function (Nathan Wagner) and much faster

#739, UpdateRasterSRID()

#945, improved join selectivity, N-D selectivity calculations, user accessible selectivity and stats reader functions for testing (Paul Ramsey / OpenGeo)

toTopoGeom with TopoGeometry sink (Sandro Santilli / Vizzuality)

clearTopoGeom (Sandro Santilli / Vizzuality)

ST_Segmentize(geography) (Paul Ramsey / OpenGeo)

ST_DelaunayTriangles (Sandro Santilli / Vizzuality)

ST NearestValue, ST Neighborhood (Bborie Park / UC Davis)

ST_PixelAsPoint, ST_PixelAsPoints (Bborie Park / UC Davis)

ST PixelAsCentroid, ST PixelAsCentroids (Bborie Park / UC Davis)

ST Raster2WorldCoord, ST World2RasterCoord (Bborie Park / UC Davis)

Additional raster/raster spatial relationship functions (ST_Contains, ST_ContainsProperly, ST_Covers, ST_CoveredBy, ST_Disjoint, ST_Overlaps, ST_Touches, ST_Within, ST_DWithin, ST_DFullyWithin) (Bborie Park / UC Davis)

Added array variants of ST_SetValues() to set many pixel values of a band in one call (Bborie Park / UC Davis)

#1293, ST_Resize(raster) to resize rasters based upon width/height

#1627, package tiger_geocoder as a PostgreSQL extension

#1643, #2076, Upgrade tiger geocoder to support loading tiger 2011 and 2012 (Regina Obe / Paragon Corporation) Funded by Hunter Systems Group

GEOMETRYCOLLECTION support for ST_MakeValid (Sandro Santilli / Vizzuality)

#1709, ST_NotSameAlignmentReason(raster, raster)

#1818, ST_GeomFromGeoHash and friends (Jason Smith (darkpanda))

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 759 / 791

#1856, reverse geocoder rating setting for prefer numbered highway name

ST PixelOfValue (Bborie Park / UC Davis)

Casts to/from PostgreSQL geotypes (point/path/polygon).

Added geomval array variant of ST_SetValues() to set many pixel values of a band using a set of geometries and corresponding values in one call (Bborie Park / UC Davis)

ST_Tile(raster) to break up a raster into tiles (Bborie Park / UC Davis)

#1895, new r-tree node splitting algorithm (Alex Korotkov)

#2011, ST_DumpValues to output raster as array (Bborie Park / UC Davis)

#2018, ST_Distance support for CircularString, CurvePolygon, MultiCurve, MultiSurface, CompoundCurve

#2030, n-raster (and n-band) ST_MapAlgebra (Bborie Park / UC Davis)

#2193, Utilize PAGC parser as drop in replacement for tiger normalizer (Steve Woodbridge, Regina Obe)

#2210, ST_MinConvexHull(raster)

lwgeom_from_geojson in liblwgeom (Sandro Santilli / Vizzuality)

#1687, ST_Simplify for TopoGeometry (Sandro Santilli / Vizzuality)

#2228, TopoJSON output for TopoGeometry (Sandro Santilli / Vizzuality)

#2123, ST FromGDALRaster

#613, ST_SetGeoReference with numerical parameters instead of text

#2276, ST_AddBand(raster) variant for out-db bands

#2280, ST Summary(raster)

#2163, ST_TPI for raster (Nathaniel Clay)

#2164, ST_TRI for raster (Nathaniel Clay)

#2302, ST_Roughness for raster (Nathaniel Clay)

#2290, ST_ColorMap(raster) to generate RGBA bands

#2254, Add SFCGAL backend support. (Backend selection throught postgis.backend var) Functions available both throught GEOS or SFCGAL: ST_Intersects, ST_3DIntersects, ST_Intersection, ST_Area, ST_Distance, ST_3DDistance New functions available only with SFCGAL backend: ST_3DIntersection, ST_Tesselate, ST_3DArea, ST_Extrude, ST_ForceLHR ST_Orientation, ST_Minkowski, ST_StraightSkeleton postgis_sfcgal_version New function available in PostGIS: ST_ForceSFS (Olivier Courtin and Hugo Mercier / Oslandia)

A.22.3 Enhancements

For detail of new functions and function improvements, please refer to Section 14.12.4.

Much faster raster ST_Union, ST_Clip and many more function additions operations

For geometry/geography better planner selectivity and a lot more functions.

#823, tiger geocoder: Make loader_generate_script download portion less greedy

#826, raster2pgsql no longer defaults to padding tiles. Flag -P can be used to pad tiles

#1363, ST_AddBand(raster, ...) array version rewritten in C

#1364, ST_Union(raster, ...) aggregate function rewritten in C

#1655, Additional default values for parameters of ST_Slope

#1661, Add aggregate variant of ST_SameAlignment

#1719, Add support for Point and GeometryCollection ST_MakeValid inputs

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 760 / 791

- #1780, support ST GeoHash for geography
- #1796, Big performance boost for distance calculations in geography
- #1802, improved function interruptibility.
- #1823, add parameter in ST_AsGML to use id column for GML 3 output (become mandatory since GML 3.2.1)
- #1856, tiger geocoder: reverse geocoder rating setting for prefer numbered highway name
- #1938, Refactor basic ST_AddBand to add multiple new bands in one call
- #1978, wrong answer when calculating length of a closed circular arc (circle)
- #1989, Preprocess input geometry to just intersection with raster to be clipped
- #2021, Added multi-band support to ST_Union(raster, ...) aggregate function
- #2006, better support of ST_Area(geography) over poles and dateline
- #2065, ST_Clip(raster, ...) now a C function
- #2069, Added parameters to ST_Tile(raster) to control padding of tiles
- #2078, New variants of ST_Slope, ST_Aspect and ST_HillShade to provide solution to handling tiles in a coverage
- #2097, Added RANGE uniontype option for ST Union(raster)
- #2105, Added ST Transform(raster) variant for aligning output to reference raster
- #2119, Rasters passed to ST_Resample(), ST_Rescale(), ST_Reskew(), and ST_SnapToGrid() no longer require an SRID
- #2141, More verbose output when constraints fail to be added to a raster column
- #2143, Changed blocksize constraint of raster to allow multiple values
- #2148, Addition of coverage_tile constraint for raster
- #2149, Addition of spatially_unique constraint for raster

TopologySummary output now includes unregistered layers and a count of missing TopoGeometry objects from their natural layer.

ST_HillShade(), ST_Aspect() and ST_Slope() have one new optional parameter to interpolate NODATA pixels before running the operation.

Point variant of ST SetValue(raster) is now a wrapper around geomval variant of ST SetValues(rast).

Proper support for raster band's isnodata flag in core API and loader.

Additional default values for parameters of ST_Aspect and ST_HillShade

- #2178, ST_Summary now advertises presence of known srid with an [S] flag
- #2202, Make libjson-c optional (--without-json configure switch)
- #2213, Add support libjson-c 0.10+
- #2231, raster2pgsql supports user naming of filename column with -n
- #2200, ST_Union(raster, uniontype) unions all bands of all rasters
- #2264, postgis_restore.pl support for restoring into databases with postgis in a custom schema
- #2244, emit warning when changing raster's georeference if raster has out-db bands
- #2222, add parameter OutAsIn to flag whether ST_AsBinary should return out-db bands as in-db bands

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 761 / 791

A.22.4 Fixes

- #1839, handling of subdatasets in GeoTIFF in raster2pgsql.
- #1840, fix logic of when to compute # of tiles in raster2pgsql.
- #1870, align the docs and actual behavior of raster's ST_Intersects
- #1872, fix ST_ApproxSummarystats to prevent division by zero
- #1875, ST_SummaryStats returns NULL for all parameters except count when count is zero
- #1932, fix raster2pgsql of syntax for index tablespaces
- #1936, ST GeomFromGML on CurvePolygon causes server crash
- #1939, remove custom data types: summarystats, histogram, quantile, valuecount
- #1951, remove crash on zero-length linestrings
- #1957, ST_Distance to a one-point LineString returns NULL
- #1976, Geography point-in-ring code overhauled for more reliability
- #1981, cleanup of unused variables causing warnings with gcc 4.6+
- #1996, support POINT EMPTY in GeoJSON output
- #2062, improve performance of distance calculations
- #2057, Fixed linking issue for raster2psql to libpq
- #2077, Fixed incorrect values returning from ST_Hillshade()
- #2019, ST_FlipCoordinates does not update bbox
- #2100, ST_AsRaster may not return raster with specified pixel type
- #2126, Better handling of empty rasters from ST ConvexHull()
- #2165, ST_NumPoints regression failure with CircularString
- #2168, ST_Distance is not always commutative
- #2182, Fix issue with outdb rasters with no SRID and ST Resize
- #2188, Fix function parameter value overflow that caused problems when copying data from a GDAL dataset
- #2198, Fix incorrect dimensions used when generating bands of out-db rasters in ST_Tile()
- #2201, ST_GeoHash wrong on boundaries
- #2203, Changed how rasters with unknown SRID and default geotransform are handled when passing to GDAL Warp API
- #2215, Fixed raster exclusion constraint for conflicting name of implicit index
- #2251, Fix bad dimensions when rescaling rasters with default geotransform matrix
- #2133, Fix performance regression in expression variant of ST_MapAlgebra
- #2257, GBOX variables not initialized when testing with empty geometries
- #2271, Prevent parallel make of raster
- #2282, Fix call to undefined function nd_stats_to_grid() in debug mode
- #2307, ST_MakeValid outputs invalid geometries
- #2309, Remove confusing INFO message when trying to get SRS info
- #2336, FIPS 20 (KS) causes wildcard expansion to wget all files
- #2348, Provide raster upgrade path for 2.0 to 2.1
- #2351, st_distance between geographies wrong
- #2359, Fix handling of schema name when adding overview constraints
- #2371, Support GEOS versions with more than 1 digit in micro
- #2383, Remove unsafe use of \' from raster warning message
- #2384, Incorrect variable datatypes for ST_Neighborhood

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 762 / 791

A.22.5 Known Issues

#2111, Raster bands can only reference the first 256 bands of out-db rasters

A.23 Release 2.0.5

Release date: 2014/03/31

This is a bug fix release, addressing issues that have been filed since the 2.0.4 release. If you are using PostGIS 2.0+ a soft upgrade is required. For users of PostGIS 1.5 or below, a hard upgrade is required.

A.23.1 Bug Fixes

- #2494, avoid memcpy in GIST index
- #2502, Fix postgis_topology_scripts_installed() install schema
- #2504, Fix segfault on bogus pgsql2shp call
- #2528, Fix memory leak in ST_Split / lwline_split_by_line
- #2532, Add missing raster/geometry commutator operators
- #2533, Remove duplicated signatures
- #2552, Fix NULL raster handling in ST_AsPNG, ST_AsTIFF and ST_AsJPEG
- #2555, Fix parsing issue of range arguments of ST_Reclass
- #2589, Remove use of unnecessary void pointers
- #2607, Cannot open more than 1024 out-db files in process
- #2610, Ensure face splitting algorithm uses the edge index
- #2619, Empty ring array in GeoJSON polygon causes crash
- #2638, Geography distance on M geometries sometimes wrong

A.23.2 Important Changes

##2514, Change raster license from GPL v3+ to v2+, allowing distribution of PostGIS Extension as GPLv2.

A.24 Release 2.0.4

Release date: 2013/09/06

This is a bug fix release, addressing issues that have been filed since the 2.0.3 release. If you are using PostGIS 2.0+ a soft upgrade is required. For users of PostGIS 1.5 or below, a hard upgrade is required.

A.24.1 Bug Fixes

#2110, Equality operator between EMPTY and point on origin

Allow adding points at precision distance with TopoGeo_addPoint

- #1968, Fix missing edge from toTopoGeom return
- #2165, ST_NumPoints regression failure with CircularString

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 763 / 791

- #2168, ST_Distance is not always commutative
- #2186, gui progress bar updates too frequent
- #2201, ST_GeoHash wrong on boundaries
- #2257, GBOX variables not initialized when testing with empty geometries
- #2271, Prevent parallel make of raster
- #2267, Server crash from analyze table
- #2277, potential segfault removed
- #2307, ST_MakeValid outputs invalid geometries
- #2351, st_distance between geographies wrong
- #2359, Incorrect handling of schema for overview constraints
- #2371, Support GEOS versions with more than 1 digit in micro
- #2372, Cannot parse space-padded KML coordinates

Fix build with systemwide liblwgeom installed

- #2383, Fix unsafe use of \' in warning message
- #2410, Fix segmentize of collinear curve
- #2412, ST_LineToCurve support for lines with less than 4 vertices
- #2415, ST_Multi support for COMPOUNDCURVE and CURVEPOLYGON
- #2420, ST_LineToCurve: require at least 8 edges to define a full circle
- #2423, ST_LineToCurve: require all arc edges to form the same angle
- #2424, ST_CurveToLine: add support for COMPOUNDCURVE in MULTICURVE
- #2427, Make sure to retain first point of curves on ST_CurveToLine

A.24.2 Enhancements

#2269, Avoid uselessly detoasting full geometries on ANALYZE

A.24.3 Known Issues

#2111, Raster bands can only reference the first 256 bands of out-db rasters

A.25 Release 2.0.3

Release date: 2013/03/01

This is a bug fix release, addressing issues that have been filed since the 2.0.2 release. If you are using PostGIS 2.0+ a soft upgrade is required. For users of PostGIS 1.5 or below, a hard upgrade is required.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 764 / 791

A.25.1 Bug Fixes

#2126, Better handling of empty rasters from ST_ConvexHull()

#2134, Make sure to process SRS before passing it off to GDAL functions

Fix various memory leaks in liblwgeom

#2173, Fix robustness issue in splitting a line with own vertex also affecting topology building (#2172)

#2174, Fix usage of wrong function lwpoly_free()

#2176, Fix robustness issue with ST_ChangeEdgeGeom

#2184, Properly copy topologies with Z value

postgis_restore.pl support for mixed case geometry column name in dumps

#2188, Fix function parameter value overflow that caused problems when copying data from a GDAL dataset

#2216, More memory errors in MultiPolygon GeoJSON parsing (with holes)

Fix Memory leak in GeoJSON parser

A.25.2 Enhancements

#2141, More verbose output when constraints fail to be added to a raster column

Speedup ST_ChangeEdgeGeom

A.26 Release 2.0.2

Release date: 2012/12/03

This is a bug fix release, addressing issues that have been filed since the 2.0.1 release.

A.26.1 Bug Fixes

```
#1287, Drop of "gist_geometry_ops" broke a few clients package of legacy_gist.sql for these cases
```

#1391, Errors during upgrade from 1.5

#1828, Poor selectivity estimate on ST_DWithin

#1838, error importing tiger/line data

#1869, ST_AsBinary is not unique added to legacy_minor/legacy.sql scripts

#1885, Missing field from tabblock table in tiger2010 census_loader.sql

#1891, Use LDFLAGS environment when building liblwgeom

#1900, Fix pgsql2shp for big-endian systems

#1932, Fix raster2pgsql for invalid syntax for setting index tablespace

#1936, ST_GeomFromGML on CurvePolygon causes server crash

#1955, ST_ModEdgeHeal and ST_NewEdgeHeal for doubly connected edges

#1957, ST_Distance to a one-point LineString returns NULL

#1976, Geography point-in-ring code overhauled for more reliability

#1978, wrong answer calculating length of closed circular arc (circle)

#1981, Remove unused but set variables as found with gcc 4.6+

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 765 / 791

- #1987, Restore 1.5.x behaviour of ST_Simplify
- #1989, Preprocess input geometry to just intersection with raster to be clipped
- #1991, geocode really slow on PostgreSQL 9.2
- #1996, support POINT EMPTY in GeoJSON output
- #1998, Fix ST_{Mod,New}EdgeHeal joining edges sharing both endpoints
- #2001, ST_CurveToLine has no effect if the geometry doesn't actually contain an arc
- #2015, ST_IsEmpty('POLYGON(EMPTY)') returns False
- #2019, ST_FlipCoordinates does not update bbox
- #2025, Fix side location conflict at TopoGeo_AddLineString
- #2026, improve performance of distance calculations
- #2033, Fix adding a splitting point into a 2.5d topology
- #2051, Fix excess of precision in ST_AsGeoJSON output
- #2052, Fix buffer overflow in lwgeom_to_geojson
- #2056, Fixed lack of SRID check of raster and geometry in ST_SetValue()
- #2057, Fixed linking issue for raster2psql to libpq
- #2060, Fix "dimension" check violation by GetTopoGeomElementArray
- #2072, Removed outdated checks preventing ST_Intersects(raster) from working on out-db bands
- #2077, Fixed incorrect answers from ST_Hillshade(raster)
- #2092, Namespace issue with ST_GeomFromKML,ST_GeomFromGML for libxml 2.8+
- #2099, Fix double free on exception in ST_OffsetCurve
- #2100, ST_AsRaster() may not return raster with specified pixel type
- #2108, Ensure ST_Line_Interpolate_Point always returns POINT
- #2109, Ensure ST_Centroid always returns POINT
- #2117, Ensure ST_PointOnSurface always returns POINT
- #2129, Fix SRID in ST_Homogenize output with collection input
- #2130, Fix memory error in MultiPolygon GeoJson parsing

Update URL of Maven jar

A.26.2 Enhancements

- #1581, ST_Clip(raster, ...) no longer imposes NODATA on a band if the corresponding band from the source raster did not have NODATA
- #1928, Accept array properties in GML input multi-geom input (Kashif Rasul and Shoaib Burq / SpacialDB)
- #2082, Add indices on start_node and end_node of topology edge tables
- #2087, Speedup topology. GetRingEdges using a recursive CTE

A.27 Release 2.0.1

Release date: 2012/06/22

This is a bug fix release, addressing issues that have been filed since the 2.0.0 release.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 766 / 791

A.27.1 Bug Fixes

```
#1264, fix st_dwithin(geog, geog, 0).
#1468 shp2pgsql-gui table column schema get shifted
#1694, fix building with clang. (vince)
#1708, improve restore of pre-PostGIS 2.0 backups.
#1714, more robust handling of high topology tolerance.
#1755, ST_GeographyFromText support for higher dimensions.
#1759, loading transformed shapefiles in raster enabled db.
#1761, handling of subdatasets in NetCDF, HDF4 and HDF5 in raster2pgsql.
#1763, topology.toTopoGeom use with custom search_path.
#1766, don't let ST_RemEdge* destroy peripheral TopoGeometry objects.
#1774, Clearer error on setting an edge geometry to an invalid one.
#1775, ST ChangeEdgeGeom collision detection with 2-vertex target.
#1776, fix ST_SymDifference(empty, geom) to return geom.
#1779, install SQL comment files.
#1782, fix spatial reference string handling in raster.
#1789, fix false edge-node crossing report in ValidateTopology.
#1790, fix toTopoGeom handling of duplicated primitives.
#1791, fix ST_Azimuth with very close but distinct points.
#1797, fix (ValidateTopology(xxx)).* syntax calls.
#1805, put back the 900913 SRID entry.
#1813, Only show readable relations in metadata tables.
#1819, fix floating point issues with ST_World2RasterCoord and ST_Raster2WorldCoord variants.
#1820 compilation on 9.2beta1.
#1822, topology load on PostgreSQL 9.2beta1.
#1825, fix prepared geometry cache lookup
#1829, fix uninitialized read in GeoJSON parser
#1834, revise postgis extension to only backup user specified spatial ref sys
#1839, handling of subdatasets in GeoTIFF in raster2pgsql.
#1840, fix logic of when to compute # of tiles in raster2pgsql.
#1851, fix spatial_ref_system parameters for EPSG:3844
#1857, fix failure to detect endpoint mismatch in ST_AddEdge*Face*
#1865, data loss in postgis_restore.pl when data rows have leading dashes.
#1867, catch invalid topology name passed to topogeo_add*
#1872, fix ST ApproxSummarystats to prevent division by zero
#1873, fix ptarray_locate_point to return interpolated Z/M values for on-the-line case
#1875, ST_SummaryStats returns NULL for all parameters except count when count is zero
#1881, shp2pgsql-gui -- editing a field sometimes triggers removing row
```

#1883, Geocoder install fails trying to run create_census_base_tables() (Brian Panulla)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 767 / 791

A.27.2 Enhancements

More detailed exception message from topology editing functions.

#1786, improved build dependencies

#1806, speedup of ST_BuildArea, ST_MakeValid and ST_GetFaceGeometry.

#1812, Add lwgeom_normalize in LIBLWGEOM for more stable testing.

A.28 Release 2.0.0

Release date: 2012/04/03

This is a major release. A hard upgrade is required. Yes this means a full dump reload and some special preparations if you are using obsolete functions. Refer to Section 2.10.2 for details on upgrading. Refer to Section 14.12.6 for more details and changed/new functions.

A.28.1 Testers - Our unsung heroes

We are most indebted to the numerous members in the PostGIS community who were brave enough to test out the new features in this release. No major release can be successful without these folk.

Below are those who have been most valiant, provided very detailed and thorough bug reports, and detailed analysis.

Andrea Peri - Lots of testing on topology, checking for correctness

Andreas Forø Tollefsen - raster testing

Chris English - topology stress testing loader functions

Salvatore Larosa - topology robustness testing

Brian Hamlin - Benchmarking (also experimental experimental branches before they are folded into core), general testing of various Mike Pease - Tiger geocoder testing - very detailed reports of issues

Tom van Tilburg - raster testing

A.28.2 Important / Breaking Changes

#722, #302, Most deprecated functions removed (over 250 functions) (Regina Obe, Paul Ramsey)

Unknown SRID changed from -1 to 0. (Paul Ramsey)

- -- (most deprecated in 1.2) removed non-ST variants buffer, length, intersects (and internal functions renamed) etc.
- -- If you have been using deprecated functions CHANGE your apps or suffer the consequences. If you don't see a function documented -- it ain't supported or it is an internal function. Some constraints in older tables were built with deprecated functions. If you restore you may need to rebuild table constraints with populate_geometry_columns(). If you have applications or tools that rely on deprecated functions, please refer to [?qandaentry] for more details.
- #944 geometry_columns is now a view instead of a table (Paul Ramsey, Regina Obe) for tables created the old way reads (srid, type, dims) constraints for geometry columns created with type modifiers reads rom column definition
- #1081, #1082, #1084, #1088 Mangement functions support typmod geometry column creation functions now default to typmod creation (Regina Obe)
- #1083 probe_geometry_columns(), rename_geometry_table_constraints(), fix_geometry_columns(); removed now obsolete with geometry_column view (Regina Obe)
- #817 Renaming old 3D functions to the convention ST_3D (Nicklas Avén)
- #548 (sorta), ST_NumGeometries,ST_GeometryN now returns 1 (or the geometry) instead of null for single geometries (Sandro Santilli, Maxime van Noppen)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 768 / 791

A.28.3 New Features

KNN Gist index based centroid (<->) and box (<#>) distance operators (Paul Ramsey / funded by Vizzuality)

Support for TIN and PolyHedralSurface and enhancement of many functions to support 3D (Olivier Courtin / Oslandia)

Raster support integrated and documented (Pierre Racine, Jorge Arévalo, Mateusz Loskot, Sandro Santilli, David Zwarg, Regina Obe, Bborie Park) (Company developer and funding: University Laval, Deimos Space, CadCorp, Michigan Tech Research Institute, Azavea, Paragon Corporation, UC Davis Center for Vectorborne Diseases)

Making spatial indexes 3D aware - in progress (Paul Ramsey, Mark Cave-Ayland)

Topology support improved (more functions), documented, testing (Sandro Santilli / Faunalia for RT-SIGTA), Andrea Peri, Regina Obe, Jose Carlos Martinez Llari

3D relationship and measurement support functions (Nicklas Avén)

ST_3DDistance, ST_3DClosestPoint, ST_3DIntersects, ST_3DShortestLine and more...

N-Dimensional spatial indexes (Paul Ramsey / OpenGeo)

ST_Split (Sandro Santilli / Faunalia for RT-SIGTA)

ST_IsValidDetail (Sandro Santilli / Faunalia for RT-SIGTA)

ST_MakeValid (Sandro Santilli / Faunalia for RT-SIGTA)

ST_RemoveRepeatedPoints (Sandro Santilli / Faunalia for RT-SIGTA)

ST_GeometryN and ST_NumGeometries support for non-collections (Sandro Santilli)

ST_IsCollection (Sandro Santilli, Maxime van Noppen)

ST_SharedPaths (Sandro Santilli / Faunalia for RT-SIGTA)

ST_Snap (Sandro Santilli)

ST_RelateMatch (Sandro Santilli / Faunalia for RT-SIGTA)

ST_ConcaveHull (Regina Obe and Leo Hsu / Paragon Corporation)

ST_UnaryUnion (Sandro Santilli / Faunalia for RT-SIGTA)

ST AsX3D (Regina Obe / Arrival 3D funding)

ST_OffsetCurve (Sandro Santilli, Rafal Magda)

ST_GeomFromGeoJSON (Kashif Rasul, Paul Ramsey / Vizzuality funding)

A.28.4 Enhancements

Made shape file loader tolerant of truncated multibyte values found in some free worldwide shapefiles (Sandro Santilli)

Lots of bug fixes and enhancements to shp2pgsql Beefing up regression tests for loaders Reproject support for both geometry and geography during import (Jeff Adams / Azavea, Mark Cave-Ayland)

pgsql2shp conversion from predefined list (Loic Dachary / Mark Cave-Ayland)

Shp-pgsql GUI loader - support loading multiple files at a time. (Mark Leslie)

Extras - upgraded tiger_geocoder from using old TIGER format to use new TIGER shp and file structure format (Stephen Frost)

Extras - revised tiger_geocoder to work with TIGER census 2010 data, addition of reverse geocoder function, various bug fixes, accuracy enhancements, limit max result return, speed improvements, loading routines. (Regina Obe, Leo Hsu / Paragon Corporation / funding provided by Hunter Systems Group)

Overall Documentation proofreading and corrections. (Kasif Rasul)

Cleanup PostGIS JDBC classes, revise to use Maven build. (Maria Arias de Reyna, Sandro Santilli)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 769 / 791

A.28.5 Bug Fixes

#1335 ST_AddPoint returns incorrect result on Linux (Even Rouault)

A.28.6 Release specific credits

We thank U.S Department of State Human Information Unit (HIU) and Vizzuality for general monetary support to get PostGIS 2.0 out the door.

A.29 Release 1.5.4

Release date: 2012/05/07

This is a bug fix release, addressing issues that have been filed since the 1.5.3 release.

A.29.1 Bug Fixes

```
#547, ST_Contains memory problems (Sandro Santilli)
#621, Problem finding intersections with geography (Paul Ramsey)
#627, PostGIS/PostgreSQL process die on invalid geometry (Paul Ramsey)
#810, Increase accuracy of area calculation (Paul Ramsey)
#852, improve spatial predicates robustness (Sandro Santilli, Nicklas Avén)
#877, ST_Estimated_Extent returns NULL on empty tables (Sandro Santilli)
#1028, ST_AsSVG kills whole postgres server when fails (Paul Ramsey)
#1056, Fix boxes of arcs and circle stroking code (Paul Ramsey)
#1121, populate_geometry_columns using deprecated functions (Regin Obe, Paul Ramsey)
#1135, improve testsuite predictability (Andreas 'ads' Scherbaum)
#1146, images generator crashes (bronaugh)
#1170, North Pole intersection fails (Paul Ramsey)
#1179, ST_AsText crash with bad value (kjurka)
#1184, honour DESTDIR in documentation Makefile (Bryce L Nordgren)
#1227, server crash on invalid GML
#1252, SRID appearing in WKT (Paul Ramsey)
#1264, st_dwithin(g, g, 0) doesn't work (Paul Ramsey)
#1344, allow exporting tables with invalid geometries (Sandro Santilli)
#1389, wrong proj4text for SRID 31300 and 31370 (Paul Ramsey)
#1406, shp2pgsql crashes when loading into geography (Sandro Santilli)
#1595, fixed SRID redundancy in ST_Line_SubString (Sandro Santilli)
#1596, check SRID in UpdateGeometrySRID (Mike Toews, Sandro Santilli)
#1602, fix ST Polygonize to retain Z (Sandro Santilli)
#1697, fix crash with EMPTY entries in GiST index (Paul Ramsey)
#1772, fix ST Line Locate Point with collapsed input (Sandro Santilli)
```

#1799, Protect ST_Segmentize from max_length=0 (Sandro Santilli)

Alter parameter order in 900913 (Paul Ramsey) Support builds with "gmake" (Greg Troxel) PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 770 / 791

A.30 Release 1.5.3

Release date: 2011/06/25

This is a bug fix release, addressing issues that have been filed since the 1.5.2 release. If you are running PostGIS 1.3+, a soft upgrade is sufficient otherwise a hard upgrade is recommended.

A.30.1 Bug Fixes

```
#1056, produce correct bboxes for arc geometries, fixes index errors (Paul Ramsey)
```

#1007, ST_IsValid crash fix requires GEOS 3.3.0+ or 3.2.3+ (Sandro Santilli, reported by Birgit Laggner)

#940, support for PostgreSQL 9.1 beta 1 (Regina Obe, Paul Ramsey, patch submitted by stl)

#845, ST_Intersects precision error (Sandro Santilli, Nicklas Avén) Reported by cdestigter

#884, Unstable results with ST_Within, ST_Intersects (Chris Hodgson)

#779, shp2pgsql -S option seems to fail on points (Jeff Adams)

#666, ST_DumpPoints is not null safe (Regina Obe)

#631, Update NZ projections for grid transformation support (jpalmer)

#630, Peculiar Null treatment in arrays in ST_Collect (Chris Hodgson) Reported by David Bitner

#624, Memory leak in ST_GeogFromText (ryang, Paul Ramsey)

#609, Bad source code in manual section 5.2 Java Clients (simoc, Regina Obe)

#604, shp2pgsql usage touchups (Mike Toews, Paul Ramsey)

#573 ST_Union fails on a group of linestrings Not a PostGIS bug, fixed in GEOS 3.3.0

#457 ST_CollectionExtract returns non-requested type (Nicklas Avén, Paul Ramsey)

#441 ST_AsGeoJson Bbox on GeometryCollection error (Olivier Courtin)

#411 Ability to backup invalid geometries (Sando Santilli) Reported by Regione Toscana

#409 ST_AsSVG - degraded (Olivier Courtin) Reported by Sdikiy

#373 Documentation syntax error in hard upgrade (Paul Ramsey) Reported by psvensso

A.31 Release 1.5.2

Release date: 2010/09/27

This is a bug fix release, addressing issues that have been filed since the 1.5.1 release. If you are running PostGIS 1.3+, a soft upgrade is sufficient otherwise a hard upgrade is recommended.

A.31.1 Bug Fixes

Loader: fix handling of empty (0-verticed) geometries in shapefiles. (Sandro Santilli)

#536, Geography ST_Intersects, ST_Covers, ST_CoveredBy and Geometry ST_Equals not using spatial index (Regina Obe, Nicklas Aven)

#573, Improvement to ST_Contains geography (Paul Ramsey)

Loader: Add support for command-q shutdown in Mac GTK build (Paul Ramsey)

#393, Loader: Add temporary patch for large DBF files (Maxime Guillaud, Paul Ramsey)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 771 / 791

```
#507, Fix wrong OGC URN in GeoJSON and GML output (Olivier Courtin)
spatial_ref_sys.sql Add datum conversion for projection SRID 3021 (Paul Ramsey)
Geography - remove crash for case when all geographies are out of the estimate (Paul Ramsey)
#469, Fix for array_aggregation error (Greg Stark, Paul Ramsey)
#532, Temporary geography tables showing up in other user sessions (Paul Ramsey)
#562, ST_Dwithin errors for large geographies (Paul Ramsey)
#513, shape loading GUI tries to make spatial index when loading DBF only mode (Paul Ramsey)
#527, shape loading GUI should always append log messages (Mark Cave-Ayland)
#504, shp2pgsql should rename xmin/xmax fields (Sandro Santilli)
#458, postgis_comments being installed in contrib instead of version folder (Mark Cave-Ayland)
#474, Analyzing a table with geography column crashes server (Paul Ramsey)
#581, LWGEOM-expand produces inconsistent results (Mark Cave-Ayland)
#513, Add dbf filter to shp2pgsql-gui and allow uploading dbf only (Paul Ramsey)
Fix further build issues against PostgreSQL 9.0 (Mark Cave-Ayland)
#572, Password whitespace for Shape File (Mark Cave-Ayland)
```

#603, shp2pgsql: "-w" produces invalid WKT for MULTI* objects. (Mark Cave-Ayland)

A.32 Release 1.5.1

Release date: 2010/03/11

This is a bug fix release, addressing issues that have been filed since the 1.4.1 release. If you are running PostGIS 1.3+, a soft upgrade is sufficient otherwise a hard upgrade is recommended.

A.32.1 Bug Fixes

```
#410, update embedded bbox when applying ST_SetPoint, ST_AddPoint ST_RemovePoint to a linestring (Paul Ramsey)
#411, allow dumping tables with invalid geometries (Sandro Santilli, for Regione Toscana-SIGTA)
#414, include geography_columns view when running upgrade scripts (Paul Ramsey)
#419, allow support for multilinestring in ST_Line_Substring (Paul Ramsey, for Lidwala Consulting Engineers)
#421, fix computed string length in ST_AsGML() (Olivier Courtin)
#441, fix GML generation with heterogeneous collections (Olivier Courtin)
#443, incorrect coordinate reversal in GML 3 generation (Olivier Courtin)
#450, #451, wrong area calculation for geography features that cross the date line (Paul Ramsey)
Ensure support for upcoming 9.0 PgSQL release (Paul Ramsey)
```

A.33 Release 1.5.0

Release date: 2010/02/04

This release provides support for geographic coordinates (lat/lon) via a new GEOGRAPHY type. Also performance enhancements, new input format support (GML,KML) and general upkeep.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 772 / 791

A.33.1 API Stability

The public API of PostGIS will not change during minor (0.0.X) releases.

The definition of the =~ operator has changed from an exact geometric equality check to a bounding box equality check.

A.33.2 Compatibility

GEOS, Proj4, and LibXML2 are now mandatory dependencies

The library versions below are the minimum requirements for PostGIS 1.5

PostgreSQL 8.3 and higher on all platforms

GEOS 3.1 and higher only (GEOS 3.2+ to take advantage of all features)

LibXML2 2.5+ related to new ST_GeomFromGML/KML functionality

Proj4 4.5 and higher only

A.33.3 New Features

Section 14.12.8

Added Hausdorff distance calculations (#209) (Vincent Picavet)

 $Added\ parameters\ argument\ to\ ST_Buffer\ operation\ to\ support\ one\ -sided\ buffering\ and\ other\ buffering\ styles\ (Sandro\ Santilli)$

Addition of other Distance related visualization and analysis functions (Nicklas Aven)

- ST_ClosestPoint
- ST DFullyWithin
- ST LongestLine
- ST_MaxDistance
- ST ShortestLine

ST_DumpPoints (Maxime van Noppen)

KML, GML input via ST_GeomFromGML and ST_GeomFromKML (Olivier Courtin)

Extract homogeneous collection with ST_CollectionExtract (Paul Ramsey)

Add measure values to an existing linestring with ST_AddMeasure (Paul Ramsey)

History table implementation in utils (George Silva)

Geography type and supporting functions

- Spherical algorithms (Dave Skea)
- Object/index implementation (Paul Ramsey)
- Selectivity implementation (Mark Cave-Ayland)
- Serializations to KML, GML and JSON (Olivier Courtin)
- ST_Area, ST_Distance, ST_DWithin, ST_GeogFromText, ST_GeogFromWKB, ST_Intersects, ST_Covers, ST_Buffer (Paul Ramsey)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 773 / 791

A.33.4 Enhancements

Performance improvements to ST_Distance (Nicklas Aven)

Documentation updates and improvements (Regina Obe, Kevin Neufeld)

Testing and quality control (Regina Obe)

PostGIS 1.5 support PostgreSQL 8.5 trunk (Guillaume Lelarge)

Win32 support and improvement of core shp2pgsql-gui (Mark Cave-Ayland)

In place 'make check' support (Paul Ramsey)

A.33.5 Bug fixes

http://trac.osgeo.org/postgis/query?status=closed&milestone=PostGIS+1.5.0&order=priority

A.34 Release 1.4.0

Release date: 2009/07/24

This release provides performance enhancements, improved internal structures and testing, new features, and upgraded documentation. If you are running PostGIS 1.1+, a soft upgrade is sufficient otherwise a hard upgrade is recommended.

A.34.1 API Stability

As of the 1.4 release series, the public API of PostGIS will not change during minor releases.

A.34.2 Compatibility

The versions below are the *minimum* requirements for PostGIS 1.4

PostgreSQL 8.2 and higher on all platforms

GEOS 3.0 and higher only

PROJ4 4.5 and higher only

A.34.3 New Features

ST_Union() uses high-speed cascaded union when compiled against GEOS 3.1+ (Paul Ramsey)

ST_ContainsProperly() requires GEOS 3.1+

ST_Intersects(), ST_Contains(), ST_Within() use high-speed cached prepared geometry against GEOS 3.1+ (Paul Ramsey / funded by Zonar Systems)

Vastly improved documentation and reference manual (Regina Obe & Kevin Neufeld)

Figures and diagram examples in the reference manual (Kevin Neufeld)

ST_IsValidReason() returns readable explanations for validity failures (Paul Ramsey)

ST_GeoHash() returns a geohash.org signature for geometries (Paul Ramsey)

GTK+ multi-platform GUI for shape file loading (Paul Ramsey)

ST_LineCrossingDirection() returns crossing directions (Paul Ramsey)

ST_LocateBetweenElevations() returns sub-string based on Z-ordinate. (Paul Ramsey)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 774 / 791

Geometry parser returns explicit error message about location of syntax errors (Mark Cave-Ayland)

ST_AsGeoJSON() return JSON formatted geometry (Olivier Courtin)

Populate_Geometry_Columns() -- automatically add records to geometry_columns for TABLES and VIEWS (Kevin Neufeld)

ST_MinimumBoundingCircle() -- returns the smallest circle polygon that can encompass a geometry (Bruce Rindahl)

A.34.4 Enhancements

Core geometry system moved into independent library, liblwgeom. (Mark Cave-Ayland)

New build system uses PostgreSQL "pgxs" build bootstrapper. (Mark Cave-Ayland)

Debugging framework formalized and simplified. (Mark Cave-Ayland)

All build-time #defines generated at configure time and placed in headers for easier cross-platform support (Mark Cave-Ayland)

Logging framework formalized and simplified (Mark Cave-Ayland)

Expanded and more stable support for CIRCULARSTRING, COMPOUNDCURVE and CURVEPOLYGON, better parsing, wider support in functions (Mark Leslie & Mark Cave-Ayland)

Improved support for OpenSolaris builds (Paul Ramsey)

Improved support for MSVC builds (Mateusz Loskot)

Updated KML support (Olivier Courtin)

Unit testing framework for liblwgeom (Paul Ramsey)

New testing framework to comprehensively exercise every PostGIS function (Regine Obe)

Performance improvements to all geometry aggregate functions (Paul Ramsey)

Support for the upcoming PostgreSQL 8.4 (Mark Cave-Ayland, Talha Bin Rizwan)

Shp2pgsql and pgsql2shp re-worked to depend on the common parsing/unparsing code in liblwgeom (Mark Cave-Ayland)

Use of PDF DbLatex to build PDF docs and preliminary instructions for build (Jean David Techer)

Automated User documentation build (PDF and HTML) and Developer Doxygen Documentation (Kevin Neufeld)

Automated build of document images using ImageMagick from WKT geometry text files (Kevin Neufeld)

More attractive CSS for HTML documentation (Dane Springmeyer)

A.34.5 Bug fixes

http://trac.osgeo.org/postgis/query?status=closed&milestone=PostGIS+1.4.0&order=priority

A.35 Release 1.3.6

Release date: 2009/05/04

If you are running PostGIS 1.1+, a soft upgrade is sufficient otherwise a hard upgrade is recommended. This release adds support for PostgreSQL 8.4, exporting prj files from the database with shape data, some crash fixes for shp2pgsql, and several small bug fixes in the handling of "curve" types, logical error importing dbf only files, improved error handling of AddGeometryColumns.

A.36 Release 1.3.5

Release date: 2008/12/15

If you are running PostGIS 1.1+, a soft upgrade is sufficient otherwise a hard upgrade is recommended. This release is a bug fix release to address a failure in ST_Force_Collection and related functions that critically affects using MapServer with LINE layers.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 775 / 791

A.37 Release 1.3.4

Release date: 2008/11/24

This release adds support for GeoJSON output, building with PostgreSQL 8.4, improves documentation quality and output aesthetics, adds function-level SQL documentation, and improves performance for some spatial predicates (point-in-polygon tests).

Bug fixes include removal of crashers in handling circular strings for many functions, some memory leaks removed, a linear referencing failure for measures on vertices, and more. See the NEWS file for details.

A.38 Release 1.3.3

Release date: 2008/04/12

This release fixes bugs shp2pgsql, adds enhancements to SVG and KML support, adds a ST_SimplifyPreserveTopology function, makes the build more sensitive to GEOS versions, and fixes a handful of severe but rare failure cases.

A.39 Release 1.3.2

Release date: 2007/12/01

This release fixes bugs in ST_EndPoint() and ST_Envelope, improves support for JDBC building and OS/X, and adds better support for GML output with ST_AsGML(), including GML3 output.

A.40 Release 1.3.1

Release date: 2007/08/13

This release fixes some oversights in the previous release around version numbering, documentation, and tagging.

A.41 Release 1.3.0

Release date: 2007/08/09

This release provides performance enhancements to the relational functions, adds new relational functions and begins the migration of our function names to the SQL-MM convention, using the spatial type (SP) prefix.

A.41.1 Added Functionality

JDBC: Added Hibernate Dialect (thanks to Norman Barker)

Added ST_Covers and ST_CoveredBy relational functions. Description and justification of these functions can be found at http://lin-ear-th-inking.blogspot.com/2007/06/subtleties-of-ogc-covers-spatial.html

Added ST_DWithin relational function.

A.41.2 Performance Enhancements

Added cached and indexed point-in-polygon short-circuits for the functions ST_Contains, ST_Intersects, ST_Within and ST_Disjoint Added inline index support for relational functions (except ST_Disjoint)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 776 / 791

A.41.3 Other Changes

Extended curved geometry support into the geometry accessor and some processing functions

Began migration of functions to the SQL-MM naming convention; using a spatial type (ST) prefix.

Added initial support for PostgreSQL 8.3

A.42 Release 1.2.1

Release date: 2007/01/11

This release provides bug fixes in PostgreSQL 8.2 support and some small performance enhancements.

A.42.1 Changes

Fixed point-in-polygon shortcut bug in Within().

Fixed PostgreSQL 8.2 NULL handling for indexes.

Updated RPM spec files.

Added short-circuit for Transform() in no-op case.

JDBC: Fixed JTS handling for multi-dimensional geometries (thanks to Thomas Marti for hint and partial patch). Additionally, now JavaDoc is compiled and packaged. Fixed classpath problems with GCJ. Fixed pgjdbc 8.2 compatibility, losing support for jdk 1.3 and older.

A.43 Release 1.2.0

Release date: 2006/12/08

This release provides type definitions along with serialization/deserialization capabilities for SQL-MM defined curved geometries, as well as performance enhancements.

A.43.1 Changes

Added curved geometry type support for serialization/deserialization

Added point-in-polygon shortcircuit to the Contains and Within functions to improve performance for these cases.

A.44 Release 1.1.6

Release date: 2006/11/02

This is a bugfix release, in particular fixing a critical error with GEOS interface in 64bit systems. Includes an updated of the SRS parameters and an improvement in reprojections (take Z in consideration). Upgrade is *encouraged*.

A.44.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.3 or later follow the soft upgrade procedure.

If you are upgrading from a release *between 1.0.0RC6 and 1.0.2* (inclusive) and really want a live upgrade read the upgrade section of the 1.0.3 release notes chapter.

Upgrade from any release prior to 1.0.0RC6 requires an hard upgrade.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 777 / 791

A.44.2 Bug fixes

fixed CAPI change that broke 64-bit platforms

loader/dumper: fixed regression tests and usage output Fixed setSRID() bug in JDBC, thanks to Thomas Marti

A.44.3 Other changes

use Z ordinate in reprojections

spatial_ref_sys.sql updated to EPSG 6.11.1

Simplified Version.config infrastructure to use a single pack of version variables for everything.

Include the Version.config in loader/dumper USAGE messages

Replace hand-made, fragile JDBC version parser with Properties

A.45 Release 1.1.5

Release date: 2006/10/13

This is an bugfix release, including a critical segfault on win32. Upgrade is *encouraged*.

A.45.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.3 or later follow the soft upgrade procedure.

If you are upgrading from a release *between 1.0.0RC6 and 1.0.2* (inclusive) and really want a live upgrade read the upgrade section of the 1.0.3 release notes chapter.

Upgrade from any release prior to 1.0.0RC6 requires an hard upgrade.

A.45.2 Bug fixes

Fixed MingW link error that was causing pgsql2shp to segfault on Win32 when compiled for PostgreSQL 8.2

fixed nullpointer Exception in Geometry.equals() method in Java

Added EJB3Spatial.odt to fulfill the GPL requirement of distributing the "preferred form of modification"

Removed obsolete synchronization from JDBC Jts code.

Updated heavily outdated README files for shp2pgsql/pgsql2shp by merging them with the manpages.

Fixed version tag in jdbc code that still said "1.1.3" in the "1.1.4" release.

A.45.3 New Features

Added -S option for non-multi geometries to shp2pgsql

A.46 Release 1.1.4

Release date: 2006/09/27

This is an bugfix release including some improvements in the Java interface. Upgrade is encouraged.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 778 / 791

A.46.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.3 or later follow the soft upgrade procedure.

If you are upgrading from a release *between 1.0.0RC6 and 1.0.2* (inclusive) and really want a live upgrade read the upgrade section of the 1.0.3 release notes chapter.

Upgrade from any release prior to 1.0.0RC6 requires an hard upgrade.

A.46.2 Bug fixes

Fixed support for PostgreSQL 8.2

Fixed bug in collect() function discarding SRID of input

Added SRID match check in MakeBox2d and MakeBox3d

Fixed regress tests to pass with GEOS-3.0.0

Improved pgsql2shp run concurrency.

A.46.3 Java changes

reworked JTS support to reflect new upstream JTS developers' attitude to SRID handling. Simplifies code and drops build depend on GNU trove.

Added EJB2 support generously donated by the "Geodetix s.r.l. Company"

Added EJB3 tutorial / examples donated by Norman Barker <nbarker@ittvis.com>

Reorganized java directory layout a little.

A.47 Release 1.1.3

Release date: 2006/06/30

This is an bugfix release including also some new functionalities (most notably long transaction support) and portability enhancements. Upgrade is *encouraged*.

A.47.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.3 or later follow the soft upgrade procedure.

If you are upgrading from a release *between 1.0.0RC6 and 1.0.2* (inclusive) and really want a live upgrade read the upgrade section of the 1.0.3 release notes chapter.

Upgrade from any release prior to 1.0.0RC6 requires an hard upgrade.

A.47.2 Bug fixes / correctness

BUGFIX in distance(poly,poly) giving wrong results.

BUGFIX in pgsql2shp successful return code.

BUGFIX in shp2pgsql handling of MultiLine WKT.

BUGFIX in affine() failing to update bounding box.

WKT parser: forbidden construction of multigeometries with EMPTY elements (still supported for GEOMETRYCOLLECTION).

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 779 / 791

A.47.3 New functionalities

NEW Long Transactions support.

NEW DumpRings() function.

NEW AsHEXEWKB(geom, XDR|NDR) function.

A.47.4 JDBC changes

Improved regression tests: MultiPoint and scientific ordinates

Fixed some minor bugs in jdbc code

Added proper accessor functions for all fields in preparation of making those fields private later

A.47.5 Other changes

NEW regress test support for loader/dumper.

Added --with-proj-libdir and --with-geos-libdir configure switches.

Support for build Tru64 build.

Use Jade for generating documentation.

Don't link pgsql2shp to more libs then required.

Initial support for PostgreSQL 8.2.

A.48 Release 1.1.2

Release date: 2006/03/30

This is an bugfix release including some new functions and portability enhancements. Upgrade is encouraged.

A.48.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.3 or later follow the soft upgrade procedure.

If you are upgrading from a release *between 1.0.0RC6 and 1.0.2* (inclusive) and really want a live upgrade read the upgrade section of the 1.0.3 release notes chapter.

Upgrade from any release prior to 1.0.0RC6 requires an hard upgrade.

A.48.2 Bug fixes

BUGFIX in SnapToGrid() computation of output bounding box

BUGFIX in EnforceRHR()

jdbc2 SRID handling fixes in JTS code

Fixed support for 64bit archs

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 780 / 791

A.48.3 New functionalities

Regress tests can now be run *before* postgis installation

New affine() matrix transformation functions

New rotate $\{X,Y,Z\}$ () function

Old translating and scaling functions now use affine() internally

Embedded access control in estimated_extent() for builds against pgsql >= 8.0.0

A.48.4 Other changes

More portable ./configure script

Changed ./run_test script to have more sane default behaviour

A.49 Release 1.1.1

Release date: 2006/01/23

This is an important Bugfix release, upgrade is *highly recommended*. Previous version contained a bug in postgis_restore.pl preventing hard upgrade procedure to complete and a bug in GEOS-2.2+ connector preventing GeometryCollection objects to be used in topological operations.

A.49.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.3 or later follow the soft upgrade procedure.

If you are upgrading from a release *between 1.0.0RC6 and 1.0.2* (inclusive) and really want a live upgrade read the upgrade section of the 1.0.3 release notes chapter.

Upgrade from any release prior to 1.0.0RC6 requires an hard upgrade.

A.49.2 Bug fixes

Fixed a premature exit in postgis_restore.pl

BUGFIX in geometrycollection handling of GEOS-CAPI connector

Solaris 2.7 and MingW support improvements

BUGFIX in line locate point()

Fixed handling of postgresql paths

BUGFIX in line substring()

Added support for localized cluster in regress tester

A.49.3 New functionalities

New Z and M interpolation in line_substring()

New Z and M interpolation in line_interpolate_point()

added NumInteriorRing() alias due to OpenGIS ambiguity

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 781 / 791

A.50 Release 1.1.0

Release date: 2005/12/21

This is a Minor release, containing many improvements and new things. Most notably: build procedure greatly simplified; transform() performance drastically improved; more stable GEOS connectivity (CAPI support); lots of new functions; draft topology support.

It is *highly recommended* that you upgrade to GEOS-2.2.x before installing PostGIS, this will ensure future GEOS upgrades won't require a rebuild of the PostGIS library.

A.50.1 Credits

This release includes code from Mark Cave Ayland for caching of proj4 objects. Markus Schaber added many improvements in his JDBC2 code. Alex Bodnaru helped with PostgreSQL source dependency relief and provided Debian specifies. Michael Fuhr tested new things on Solaris arch. David Techer and Gerald Fenoy helped testing GEOS C-API connector. Hartmut Tschauner provided code for the azimuth() function. Devrim GUNDUZ provided RPM specifies. Carl Anderson helped with the new area building functions. See the credits section for more names.

A.50.2 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.3 or later you *DO NOT* need a dump/reload. Simply sourcing the new lwpostgis_upgrade.sql script in all your existing databases will work. See the soft upgrade chapter for more information.

If you are upgrading from a release *between 1.0.0RC6 and 1.0.2* (inclusive) and really want a live upgrade read the upgrade section of the 1.0.3 release notes chapter.

Upgrade from any release prior to 1.0.0RC6 requires an hard upgrade.

A.50.3 New functions

scale() and transscale() companion methods to translate()

line_substring()

line_locate_point()

M(point)

LineMerge(geometry)

shift_longitude(geometry)

azimuth(geometry)

locate_along_measure(geometry, float8)

locate_between_measures(geometry, float8, float8)

SnapToGrid by point offset (up to 4d support)

BuildArea(any_geometry)

OGC BdPolyFromText(linestring_wkt, srid)

OGC BdMPolyFromText(linestring_wkt, srid)

RemovePoint(linestring, offset)

ReplacePoint(linestring, offset, point)

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 782 / 791

A.50.4 Bug fixes

Fixed memory leak in polygonize()

Fixed bug in lwgeom_as_anytype cast functions

Fixed USE_GEOS, USE_PROJ and USE_STATS elements of postgis_version() output to always reflect library state.

A.50.5 Function semantic changes

SnapToGrid doesn't discard higher dimensions

Changed Z() function to return NULL if requested dimension is not available

A.50.6 Performance improvements

Much faster transform() function, caching proj4 objects

Removed automatic call to fix_geometry_columns() in AddGeometryColumns() and update_geometry_stats()

A.50.7 JDBC2 works

Makefile improvements

JTS support improvements

Improved regression test system

Basic consistency check method for geometry collections

Support for (Hex)(E)wkb

Autoprobing DriverWrapper for HexWKB / EWKT switching

fix compile problems in ValueSetter for ancient jdk releases.

fix EWKT constructors to accept SRID=4711; representation

added preliminary read-only support for java2d geometries

A.50.8 Other new things

Full autoconf-based configuration, with PostgreSQL source dependency relief

GEOS C-API support (2.2.0 and higher)

Initial support for topology modelling

Debian and RPM specfiles

New lwpostgis_upgrade.sql script

A.50.9 Other changes

JTS support improvements

Stricter mapping between DBF and SQL integer and string attributes

Wider and cleaner regression test suite

old jdbc code removed from release

obsoleted direct use of postgis_proc_upgrade.pl

scripts version unified with release version

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 783 / 791

A.51 Release 1.0.6

Release date: 2005/12/06

Contains a few bug fixes and improvements.

A.51.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.3 or later you DO NOT need a dump/reload.

If you are upgrading from a release *between 1.0.0RC6 and 1.0.2* (inclusive) and really want a live upgrade read the upgrade section of the 1.0.3 release notes chapter.

Upgrade from any release prior to 1.0.0RC6 requires an hard upgrade.

A.51.2 Bug fixes

Fixed palloc(0) call in collection deserializer (only gives problem with --enable-cassert)

Fixed bbox cache handling bugs

Fixed geom_accum(NULL, NULL) segfault

Fixed segfault in addPoint()

Fixed short-allocation in lwcollection_clone()

Fixed bug in segmentize()

Fixed bbox computation of SnapToGrid output

A.51.3 Improvements

Initial support for postgresql 8.2

Added missing SRID mismatch checks in GEOS ops

A.52 Release 1.0.5

Release date: 2005/11/25

Contains memory-alignment fixes in the library, a segfault fix in loader's handling of UTF8 attributes and a few improvements and cleanups.



Note

Return code of shp2pgsql changed from previous releases to conform to unix standards (return 0 on success).

A.52.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.3 or later you DO NOT need a dump/reload.

If you are upgrading from a release *between 1.0.0RC6 and 1.0.2* (inclusive) and really want a live upgrade read the upgrade section of the 1.0.3 release notes chapter.

Upgrade from any release prior to 1.0.0RC6 requires an hard upgrade.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 784 / 791

A.52.2 Library changes

Fixed memory alignment problems

Fixed computation of null values fraction in analyzer

Fixed a small bug in the getPoint4d_p() low-level function

Speedup of serializer functions

Fixed a bug in force 3dm(), force 3dz() and force 4d()

A.52.3 Loader changes

Fixed return code of shp2pgsql

Fixed back-compatibility issue in loader (load of null shapefiles)

Fixed handling of trailing dots in dbf numerical attributes

Segfault fix in shp2pgsql (utf8 encoding)

A.52.4 Other changes

Schema aware postgis_proc_upgrade.pl, support for pgsql 7.2+

New "Reporting Bugs" chapter in manual

A.53 Release 1.0.4

Release date: 2005/09/09

Contains important bug fixes and a few improvements. In particular, it fixes a memory leak preventing successful build of GiST indexes for large spatial tables.

A.53.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.3 you DO NOT need a dump/reload.

If you are upgrading from a release *between 1.0.0RC6 and 1.0.2* (inclusive) and really want a live upgrade read the upgrade section of the 1.0.3 release notes chapter.

Upgrade from any release prior to 1.0.0RC6 requires an hard upgrade.

A.53.2 Bug fixes

Memory leak plugged in GiST indexing

Segfault fix in transform() handling of proj4 errors

Fixed some proj4 texts in spatial_ref_sys (missing +proj)

Loader: fixed string functions usage, reworked NULL objects check, fixed segfault on MULTILINESTRING input.

Fixed bug in MakeLine dimension handling

Fixed bug in translate() corrupting output bounding box

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 785 / 791

A.53.3 Improvements

Documentation improvements

More robust selectivity estimator

Minor speedup in distance()

Minor cleanups

GiST indexing cleanup

Looser syntax acceptance in box3d parser

A.54 Release 1.0.3

Release date: 2005/08/08

Contains some bug fixes - including a severe one affecting correctness of stored geometries - and a few improvements.

A.54.1 Upgrading

Due to a bug in a bounding box computation routine, the upgrade procedure requires special attention, as bounding boxes cached in the database could be incorrect.

An hard upgrade procedure (dump/reload) will force recomputation of all bounding boxes (not included in dumps). This is *required* if upgrading from releases prior to 1.0.0RC6.

If you are upgrading from versions 1.0.0RC6 or up, this release includes a perl script (utils/rebuild_bbox_caches.pl) to force recomputation of geometries' bounding boxes and invoke all operations required to propagate eventual changes in them (geometry statistics update, reindexing). Invoke the script after a make install (run with no args for syntax help). Optionally run utils/postgis_proc_upgrade.pl to refresh postgis procedures and functions signatures (see Soft upgrade).

A.54.2 Bug fixes

Severe bugfix in lwgeom's 2d bounding box computation

Bugfix in WKT (-w) POINT handling in loader

Bugfix in dumper on 64bit machines

Bugfix in dumper handling of user-defined queries

Bugfix in create_undef.pl script

A.54.3 Improvements

Small performance improvement in canonical input function

Minor cleanups in loader

Support for multibyte field names in loader

Improvement in the postgis_restore.pl script

New rebuild_bbox_caches.pl util script

A.55 Release 1.0.2

Release date: 2005/07/04

Contains a few bug fixes and improvements.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 786 / 791

A.55.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.0RC6 or up you DO NOT need a dump/reload.

Upgrading from older releases requires a dump/reload. See the upgrading chapter for more informations.

A.55.2 Bug fixes

Fault tolerant btree ops

Memory leak plugged in pg_error

Rtree index fix

Cleaner build scripts (avoided mix of CFLAGS and CXXFLAGS)

A.55.3 Improvements

New index creation capabilities in loader (-I switch)

Initial support for postgresql 8.1dev

A.56 Release 1.0.1

Release date: 2005/05/24

Contains a few bug fixes and some improvements.

A.56.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.0RC6 or up you DO NOT need a dump/reload.

Upgrading from older releases requires a dump/reload. See the upgrading chapter for more informations.

A.56.2 Library changes

BUGFIX in 3d computation of length_spheroid()

BUGFIX in join selectivity estimator

A.56.3 Other changes/additions

BUGFIX in shp2pgsql escape functions

better support for concurrent postgis in multiple schemas

documentation fixes

jdbc2: compile with "-target 1.2 -source 1.2" by default

NEW -k switch for pgsql2shp

NEW support for custom createdb options in postgis_restore.pl

BUGFIX in pgsql2shp attribute names unicity enforcement

BUGFIX in Paris projections definitions

postgis_restore.pl cleanups

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 787 / 791

A.57 Release 1.0.0

Release date: 2005/04/19

Final 1.0.0 release. Contains a few bug fixes, some improvements in the loader (most notably support for older postgis versions),

and more docs.

A.57.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.0RC6 you DO NOT need a dump/reload.

Upgrading from any other precedent release requires a dump/reload. See the upgrading chapter for more informations.

A.57.2 Library changes

BUGFIX in transform() releasing random memory address

BUGFIX in force_3dm() allocating less memory then required

BUGFIX in join selectivity estimator (defaults, leaks, tuplecount, sd)

A.57.3 Other changes/additions

BUGFIX in shp2pgsql escape of values starting with tab or single-quote

NEW manual pages for loader/dumper

NEW shp2pgsql support for old (HWGEOM) postgis versions

NEW -p (prepare) flag for shp2pgsql

NEW manual chapter about OGC compliancy enforcement

NEW autoconf support for JTS lib

BUGFIX in estimator testers (support for LWGEOM and schema parsing)

A.58 Release 1.0.0RC6

Release date: 2005/03/30

Sixth release candidate for 1.0.0. Contains a few bug fixes and cleanups.

A.58.1 Upgrading

You need a dump/reload to upgrade from precedent releases. See the upgrading chapter for more informations.

A.58.2 Library changes

BUGFIX in multi()

early return [when noop] from multi()

A.58.3 Scripts changes

dropped $\{x,y\}\{\min,\max\}(box2d)$ functions

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 788 / 791

A.58.4 Other changes

BUGFIX in postgis_restore.pl scrip

BUGFIX in dumper's 64bit support

A.59 Release 1.0.0RC5

Release date: 2005/03/25

Fifth release candidate for 1.0.0. Contains a few bug fixes and a improvements.

A.59.1 Upgrading

If you are upgrading from release 1.0.0RC4 you DO NOT need a dump/reload.

Upgrading from any other precedent release requires a dump/reload. See the upgrading chapter for more informations.

A.59.2 Library changes

BUGFIX (segfaulting) in box3d computation (yes, another!).

BUGFIX (segfaulting) in estimated_extent().

A.59.3 Other changes

Small build scripts and utilities refinements.

Additional performance tips documented.

A.60 Release 1.0.0RC4

Release date: 2005/03/18

Fourth release candidate for 1.0.0. Contains bug fixes and a few improvements.

A.60.1 Upgrading

You need a dump/reload to upgrade from precedent releases. See the upgrading chapter for more informations.

A.60.2 Library changes

 $BUGFIX\ (segfaulting)\ in\ geom_accum().$

BUGFIX in 64bit architectures support.

BUGFIX in box3d computation function with collections.

NEW subselects support in selectivity estimator.

Early return from force_collection.

Consistency check fix in SnapToGrid().

Box2d output changed back to 15 significant digits.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 789 / 791

A.60.3 Scripts changes

NEW distance_sphere() function.

Changed get_proj4_from_srid implementation to use PL/PGSQL instead of SQL.

A.60.4 Other changes

BUGFIX in loader and dumper handling of MultiLine shapes

BUGFIX in loader, skipping all but first hole of polygons.

jdbc2: code cleanups, Makefile improvements

FLEX and YACC variables set *after* pgsql Makefile.global is included and only if the pgsql *stripped* version evaluates to the empty string

Added already generated parser in release

Build scripts refinements

improved version handling, central Version.config

improvements in postgis_restore.pl

A.61 Release 1.0.0RC3

Release date: 2005/02/24

Third release candidate for 1.0.0. Contains many bug fixes and improvements.

A.61.1 Upgrading

You need a dump/reload to upgrade from precedent releases. See the upgrading chapter for more informations.

A.61.2 Library changes

BUGFIX in transform(): missing SRID, better error handling.

BUGFIX in memory alignment handling

BUGFIX in force_collection() causing mapserver connector failures on simple (single) geometry types.

BUGFIX in GeometryFromText() missing to add a bbox cache.

reduced precision of box2d output.

prefixed DEBUG macros with PGIS_ to avoid clash with pgsql one

plugged a leak in GEOS2POSTGIS converter

Reduced memory usage by early releasing query-context palloced one.

A.61.3 Scripts changes

BUGFIX in 72 index bindings.

BUGFIX in probe_geometry_columns() to work with PG72 and support multiple geometry columns in a single table

NEW bool::text cast

Some functions made IMMUTABLE from STABLE, for performance improvement.

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 790 / 791

A.61.4 JDBC changes

jdbc2: small patches, box2d/3d tests, revised docs and license.

jdbc2: bug fix and testcase in for pgjdbc 8.0 type autoregistration

jdbc2: Removed use of jdk1.4 only features to enable build with older jdk releases.

jdbc2: Added support for building against pg72jdbc2.jar

jdbc2: updated and cleaned makefile

jdbc2: added BETA support for jts geometry classes

jdbc2: Skip known-to-fail tests against older PostGIS servers.

jdbc2: Fixed handling of measured geometries in EWKT.

A.61.5 Other changes

new performance tips chapter in manual

documentation updates: pgsql72 requirement, lwpostgis.sql

few changes in autoconf

BUILDDATE extraction made more portable

fixed spatial_ref_sys.sql to avoid vacuuming the whole database.

spatial_ref_sys: changed Paris entries to match the ones distributed with 0.x.

A.62 Release 1.0.0RC2

Release date: 2005/01/26

Second release candidate for 1.0.0 containing bug fixes and a few improvements.

A.62.1 Upgrading

You need a dump/reload to upgrade from precedent releases. See the upgrading chapter for more informations.

A.62.2 Library changes

BUGFIX in pointarray box3d computation

BUGFIX in distance_spheroid definition

BUGFIX in transform() missing to update bbox cache

NEW jdbc driver (jdbc2)

GEOMETRYCOLLECTION(EMPTY) syntax support for backward compatibility

Faster binary outputs

Stricter OGC WKB/WKT constructors

A.62.3 Scripts changes

More correct STABLE, IMMUTABLE, STRICT uses in lwpostgis.sql

stricter OGC WKB/WKT constructors

PostGIS 2.3.9 Manual 791 / 791

A.62.4 Other changes

Faster and more robust loader (both i18n and not)

Initial autoconf script

A.63 Release 1.0.0RC1

Release date: 2005/01/13

This is the first candidate of a major postgis release, with internal storage of postgis types redesigned to be smaller and faster on indexed queries.

A.63.1 Upgrading

You need a dump/reload to upgrade from precedent releases. See the upgrading chapter for more informations.

A.63.2 Changes

Faster canonical input parsing.

Lossless canonical output.

EWKB Canonical binary IO with PG>73.

Support for up to 4d coordinates, providing lossless shapefile->postgis->shapefile conversion.

New function: UpdateGeometrySRID(), AsGML(), SnapToGrid(), ForceRHR(), estimated_extent(), accum().

Vertical positioning indexed operators.

JOIN selectivity function.

More geometry constructors / editors.

PostGIS extension API.

UTF8 support in loader.